IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filter installed.
2. Always replace the ozone filter with the specified one at the specified interval.
3. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The copier and its peripheral must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The RAM pack has a lithium battery which can explode if handled incorrectly, replace only with same RAM pack. Do not recharge, or burn this battery. Used RAM pack must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

1. Do not incinerate the toner cartridge or the used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors according to local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.

SECTION 1

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1. SPECIFICATIONS

Configuration: Desk top

Copy Process: Dry electrostatic transfer system

Originals: Sheet/Book

Original Size: Maximum A3/11" x 17" – A077/A078 copiers
B4/10" x 14" – A076 copier

Copy Paper Size: Maximum – B4/10" x 14"
Minimum – A5 (lengthwise)/5 1/2" x 8 1/2"

Copy Paper Weight: Paper tray feed – 52 to 90 g/m^2 (14 to 24 lb)
Manual feed – 52 to 157 g/m^2 (14 to 42 lb)

Reproduction Ratios: 2 Enlargement and 3 Reduction
(A077/A078 copiers only)

	A4 Version	Letter Version
Enlargement	141% 122%	129% 121%
Full size	100%	100%
Reduction	93% 82% 71%	93% 74% 65%

Zoom: From 61% to 141% in 1% steps
(A077/A078 copiers only)

Copying Speed: 13 copies/minute (A4 lengthwise/8 1/2" x 11")
10 copies/minute (B4/10" x 14")

Warm-Up Time: 30 seconds (at 20°C/68°F)

First Copy Time: 9 seconds (A4 lengthwise/8 1/2" x 11")

Copy Number Input: Quantity keys, 1 to 99 (count up)

Manual Image Density Selection: 7 steps

Automatic Reset: 1 minute standard setting; can also be set to 3 minutes or no auto reset.

Automatic Start: When the Start key is pressed before the copier finishes the warm-up cycle, the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up cycle is completed.

Paper Capacity: Paper tray – 250 sheets
Manual feed table – 1 sheet

Toner Replenishment: Cartridge exchange (320 g/cartridge)

Copy Tray Capacity: 100 sheets (B4/10" x 14" or smaller)

Power Source: 110V/ 60Hz/ 15A (for Taiwan)
115V/ 60Hz/ 15A (for North America)
220~230V/ 50Hz/ 8A (for Europe)
220V/ 60Hz/ 8A (for Middle East)
240V/ 50Hz/ 8A (for Europe)
(Refer to the serial number plate (rating plate) to determine the power source required by the machine.)

Power Consumption:

	Copier Only	With DF
Maximum	1.4 kVA	1.5 kVA
Warm-up	0.60 kVA (average)	0.62 kVA (average)
Copy cycle	0.81 kVA (average)	0.86 kVA (average)
Stand-by	0.16 kVA (average)	0.18 kVA (average)

Noise Emission:

	Copier Only	With DF
Maximum	58 db	60 db
Warm-up	Less than 40 db	Less than 40 db
Copy cycle	Less than 55 db	Less than 55 db

Dimensions:

		Width	Depth	Height
Copier only	A076/A077 copiers	830 mm (32.7")	582 mm (23.0")	403 mm (15.9")
	A078 copier	830 mm (32.7")	582 mm (23.0")	503 mm (19.9")
With DF	A077 copier	830 mm (32.7")	582 mm (23.0")	463 mm (18.3")
	A078 copier	830 mm (32.7")	582 mm (23.0")	563 mm (22.2")

Weight:

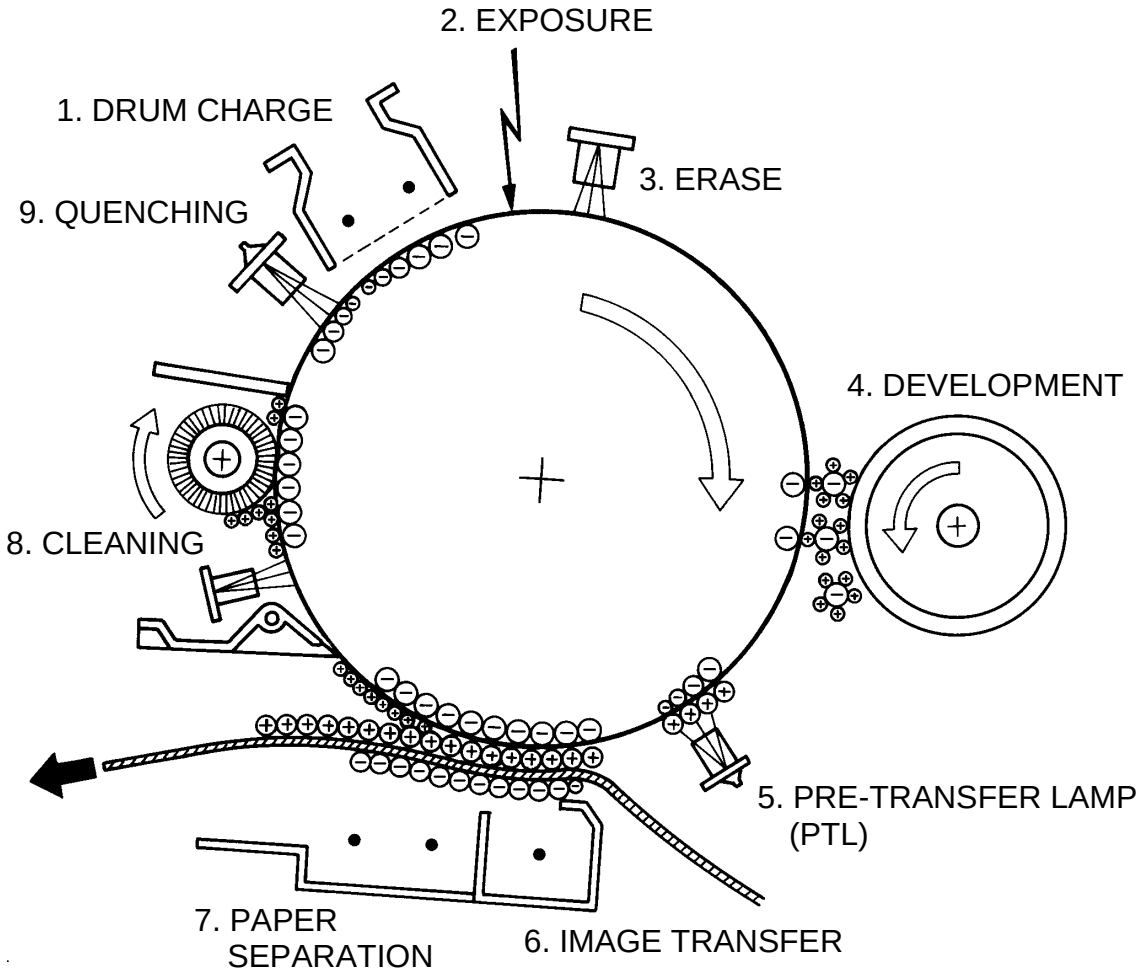
Copier only	– A076/A077 Copiers	43 kg (94.8 lb)
	A078 Copier	51 kg (112.5 lb)
With DF	– A077 Copier	50 kg (110.3 lb)
	A078 Copier	58 kg (127.9 lb)

Optional Equipment:

Document feeder
Key counter
Drum anti-condensation heater
Optics anti-condensation heater

- Specifications are subject to change without notice.

2. COPY PROCESSES AROUND THE DRUM



1. DRUM CHARGE

In the dark, the charge corona unit gives a uniform negative charge to the organic photoconductive (OPC) drum. The charge remains on the surface of the drum because the OPC drum has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

2. EXPOSURE

An image of the original is reflected to the OPC drum surface via the optics assembly. The charge on the drum surface is dissipated in direct proportion to the intensity of the reflected light, thus producing an electrical latent image on the drum surface.

3. ERASE

The erase lamp illuminates the areas of the charged drum surface that will not be used for the copy image. The resistance of the drum in the illuminated areas drops and the charge on those areas dissipates.

4. DEVELOPMENT

Positively charged toner is attracted to the negatively charged areas of the drum, thus developing the latent image. (The positive triboelectric charge is caused by friction between the carrier and toner particles.)

5. PRE-TRANSFER LAMP (PTL)

The PTL illuminates the drum to remove all negative charge from the exposed areas of the drum. This prevents the toner particles from being reattracted to the drum surface during paper separation and makes paper separation easier.

6. IMAGE TRANSFER

Paper is fed to the drum surface at the proper time so as to align the copy paper and the developed image on the drum surface. Then, a strong negative charge is applied to the back side of the copy paper, producing an electrical force which pulls the toner particles from the drum surface to the copy paper. At the same time, the copy paper is electrically attracted to the drum surface.

7. PAPER SEPARATION

A strong ac corona discharge is applied to the back side of the copy paper, reducing the negative charge on the copy paper and breaking the electrical attraction between the paper and the drum. Then, the stiffness of the copy paper causes it to separate from the drum surface. The pick-off pawls help to separate paper.

8. CLEANING

The cleaning brush removes most of the toner on the drum and loosens the remainder. Then the cleaning blade scrapes off the loosened toner.

9. QUENCHING

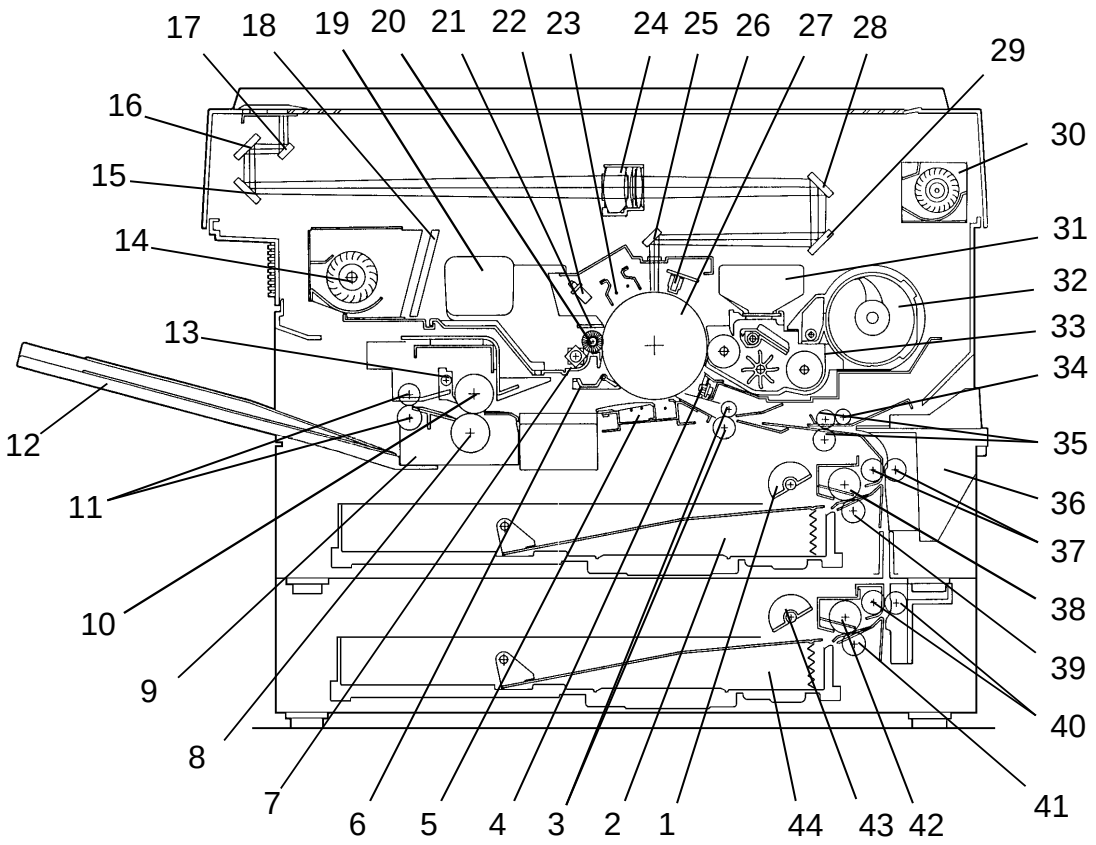
Light from the quenching lamp electrically neutralizes the surface of the drum.

3. COPY PROCESS CONTROL

	Grid Voltage	Exposure Lamp Voltage	Development Bias Voltage	Erase Lamp
Image Density Control	**1. Manual image density mode** Standard image density grid voltage + Manual image density level factor + Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor + Drum temperature correction factor **2. Auto image density mode** Standard image density grid voltage + [Auto image density level factor (SP34)] + Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor + Drum temperature correction factor	[Base exposure lamp voltage **(Manual or ADS mode) (SP48)**] + Reproduction ratio correction factor (A077/A078 copiers only) + Drum temperature correction factor + Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor	[Base bias voltage factor **(Manual or ADS mode [SP34])**] + [Image bias voltage adjustment factor (SP37)] + Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor + Drum temperature correction factor Note: Base bias voltage at manual ID level 7 can be adjusted by SP50.	Depends on paper size and reproduction ratio.
Toner Density Detection	Standard ID sensor grid voltage + Drum wear correction factor (SP57)	Same as image density control	[Depends on ID sensor bias setting (SP33)] Note: For initial 499 copies bias voltage is increased by –20 volts.	ID sensor pattern erase (Vsg detection: Full erase)
Residual Voltage (Vr) Detection	Standard ID sensor grid voltage + Drum wear correction factor (SP57)	Same as image density control	0 volts (Fixed)	Full erase (All LEDs ON)
Between Copies	0 volts (Fixed)	Exposure lamp turns off.	–160 volts (Fixed) + [Base bias voltage adjustment factor (SP37)] + Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor + Drum temperature correction factor	Full erase (All LEDs ON)

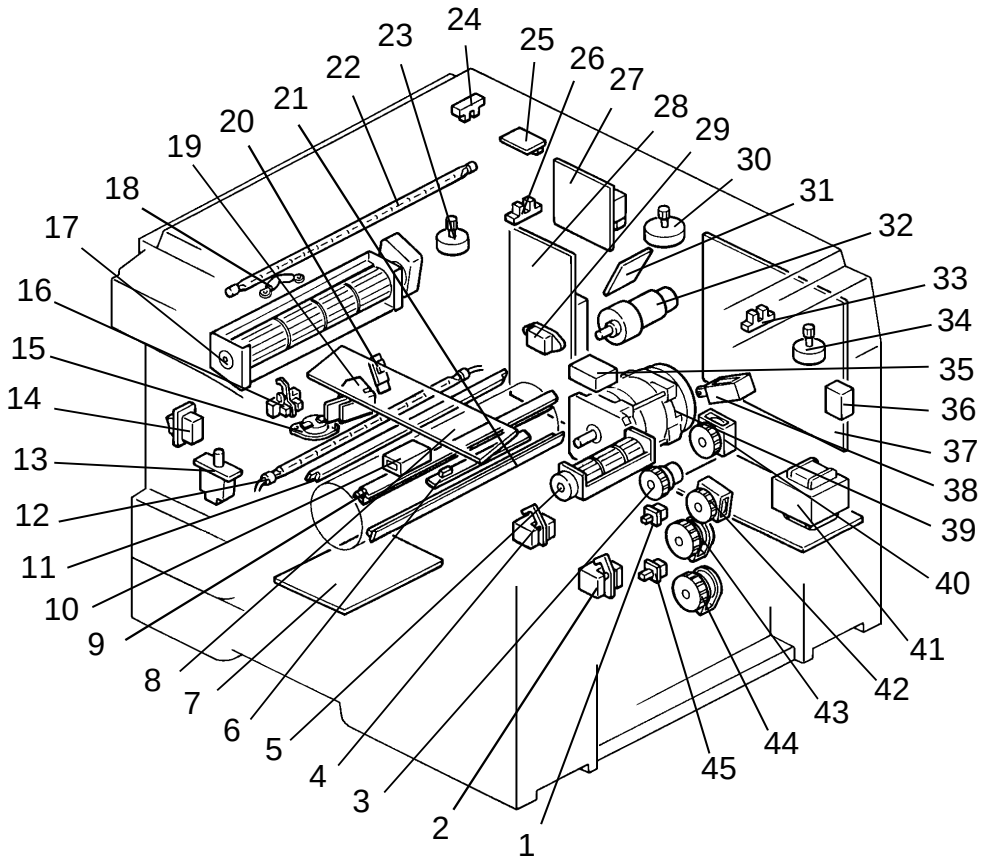
NOTE: The boxed item can be adjusted by SP mode.

4. MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. 1st Semicircular Pick-up rollers
2. 1st Paper Tray
3. Registration Rollers
4. Pre-transfer Lamp (PTL)
5. Transfer and Separation Corona Unit
6. Pick-off Pawls
7. Cleaning Unit
8. Pressure Roller
9. Fusing Unit
10. Hot Roller
11. Exit Rollers
12. Copy Tray
13. Hot Roller Strippers
14. Exhaust Blower Motor
15. 3rd Mirror
16. 2nd Mirror
17. 1st Mirror
18. Ozone Filter
19. Used Toner Tank
20. Cleaning Brush
21. Cleaning Blade
22. Quenching Lamp
23. Charge Corona Unit
24. Lens
25. 6th Mirror
26. Erase Lamp
27. Drum
28. 4th Mirror
29. 5th Mirror
30. Optics Cooling Fan
31. Developer Tank
32. Toner Supply Unit
33. Development Unit
34. Manual Feed Roller
35. 1st Relay Rollers
36. Manual Feed Table
37. 2nd Relay Rollers
38. 1st Paper Feed Roller
39. 1st Torque Roller
40. 2nd Feed Relay Rollers (A078 copier only)
41. 2nd Torque Roller (A078 copier only)
42. 2nd Paper Feed Roller (A078 copier only)
43. 2nd Semicircular Pick-up Rollers (A078 copier only)
44. 2nd Paper Tray (A078 copier only)

5. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. 1st Paper Tray Switch
2. Relay Sensor
3. Registration Clutch
4. Registration Sensor
5. Optics Cooling Fan Motor
6. Image Density Sensor (with drum thermistor)
7. Power Pack-TC/SC
8. Operation Panel Board
9. Erase Lamp
10. Total Counter
11. Quenching Lamp
12. Fusing Lamp
13. Front Cover Safety Switch
14. Main Switch
15. Fusing Thermoswitch
16. Exit Sensor
17. Exhaust Blower Motor
18. Optics Thermofuse
19. Auto Image Density Sensor
20. Fusing Thermistor
21. Pre-transfer Lamp
22. Exposure Lamp
23. Lens Motor (A077/A078 copiers only)
24. Scanner Home Position Sensor
25. DF Interface Board (A077/A078 copiers only)
26. Lens Home Position Sensor (A077/A078 copiers only)
27. Power Pack-CC/Grid/Bias
28. AC Drive Board
29. Fusing Triac (115 V only)
30. Scanner Motor
31. Drum Motor Board
32. Drum Motor
33. 4th/5th Mirror Home Position Sensor (A077/A078 copiers only)
34. 4th/5th Mirror Motor (A077/A078 copiers only)
35. Main Motor Capacitor
36. Key Counter (Option)
37. Main Board
38. Development Clutch Solenoid
39. Main Motor
40. Toner Supply Clutch
41. DC Power Supply Board
42. Relay Roller Clutch
43. 1st Paper Feed Clutch
44. 2nd Paper Feed Clutch (A078 copier only)
45. 2nd Paper Tray Switch (A078 copier only)

6. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS

Motors

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
M1	Main Motor	Drives all the main unit components except for the optics unit, drum unit and fans. (115/220–230/240 Vac [ac synchronous])	39
M2	Scanner Motor	Drives the scanners (1st and 2nd). (dc stepper)	30
M3	Lens Motor	Moves the lens position according to the selected magnification. (dc stepper) … A077/A078 copiers only	23
M4	4th/5th Mirror Motor	Positions the 4th/5th mirrors according to the selected magnification. (dc stepper) … A077/A078 copiers only	34
M5	Optics Cooling Fan Motor	Prevents built up of hot air in the optics cavity. (24 Vdc)	5
M6	Exhaust Blower Motor	Removes heat from around the fusing unit and moves the ozone built up around the charge section to the ozone filter. (115/220–230/240 Vac)	17
M7	Drum Motor	Drives the drum. (dc servo)	32

Magnetic Clutch

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
MC1	Registration Clutch	Drives the registration rollers.	3

Magnetic Spring Clutches

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
MSC1	Toner Supply Clutch	Drives the toner supply roller.	40
MSC2	Relay Roller Clutch	Drives the 1st and 2nd relay rollers.	42
MSC3	1st Paper Feed Clutch	Starts paper feed from the 1st paper feed station.	43
MSC4	2nd Paper Feed Clutch	Starts paper feed from the 2nd paper feed station. … A078 copier only	44

Solenoid

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
SOL1	Development Clutch Solenoid	Transmits the main motor drive to the development drive gears.	38

Switches

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
SW1	Main Switch	Supplies power to the copier.	14
SW2	Front Cover Safety Switch	Cuts the ac power line, when the front cover is open.	13
SW3	1st Paper Tray Switch	Detects when the 1st paper tray is set.	1
SW4	2nd Paper Tray Switch	Detects when the 2nd paper tray is set. … A078 copier only	45

Sensors

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
S1	Scanner Home Position Sensor	Informs the CPU when the 1st scanner is at the home position.	24
S2	Lens Home Position Sensor	Informs the CPU when the lens is at the home position (full size position). … A077/A078 copiers only	26
S3	4th/5th Mirror Home Position Sensor	Informs the CPU when 4th/5th mirrors assembly is at the home position (full size position). … A077/A078 copiers only	33
S4	Registration Sensor	1) Detects misfeeds. 2) Controls the relay roller clutch stop timing.	4
S5	Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.	16
S6	Relay Sensor	1) Detects when the copy paper is set in the manual feed table. 2) Detects misfeeds.	2
S7	Image Density (ID) Sensor	Detects the density of the image on the drum to control the toner density.	6
S8	Auto Image Density Sensor (ADS)	Senses the background density of the original.	19

Printed Circuit Boards

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
PCB1	Main Board	Controls all copier functions both directly and through the other PCBs.	37
PCB2	AC Drive Board	Drives all ac motors, the exposure lamp, fusing lamp, quenching lamp, exhaust blower motor.	28
PCB3	DC Power Supply Board	1) Steps down the wall voltage to 28 Vac. 2) Rectifies 28Vac input and outputs dc voltages. (30 volts, 24 volts, 5 volts)	41
PCB4	DF Interface Board	Interfaces between the copier main board and DF. … A077/A078 copiers only	25
PCB5	Operation Panel Board	Informs the CPU of the selected modes and displays the situations on the panel.	8

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
PCB6	Drum Motor Board	Controls the drum motor speed.	31

Lamps

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
L1	Exposure Lamp	Applies high intensity light to the original for exposure.	22
L2	Fusing Lamp	Provides heat to the hot roller.	12
L3	Quenching Lamp	Neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum surface after cleaning.	11
L4	Erase Lamp	Discharge the drum outside of the image area. Provides leading/trailing edge and side erases.	9
L5	Pre-transfer Lamp	Reduces charge on the drum surface before transfer.	21

Power Packs

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
P1	Power Pack –CC/Grid/Bias	Provides high voltage for the charge corona, grid, and the development roller bias.	27
P2	Power Pack –TC/SC	Provides high voltage for the transfer and separation corona.	7

Heaters

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
H1	Drum Anti-condensation Heater (Option)	Prevents moisture around the drum. When the main switch is turned on (off) the heater turns off (on).	N/A
H2	Optics Anti-condensation Heater (Option)	Prevents moisture from forming on the optics. When the main switch is turned on (off) the heater turns off (on).	N/A

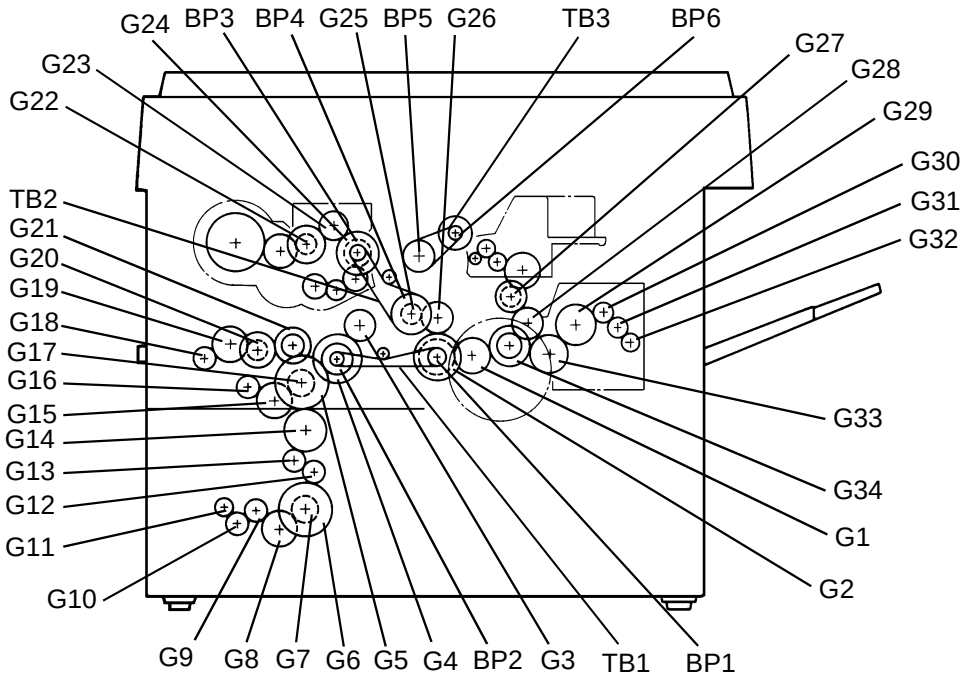
Counters

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
CO1	Total Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.	10
CO2	Key Counter (Option)	Used for control of authorized use. Copier will not operate until installed.	36

Others

SYMBOL	NAME	FUNCTION	INDEX NO.
TH1	Fusing Thermistor	Monitors the fusing temperature.	20
TH2	Drum Thermistor	Monitors the temperature around the drum.	6
TS	Fusing Thermoswitch	Provides back-up overheat protection in the fusing unit.	15
TF	Optics Thermofuse	Provides back-up overheat protection around the exposure lamp.	18
C	Main Motor Capacitor	Start capacitor.	35
TR	Fusing Triac	Switches the fusing lamp on and off. (115 V only) Note: In the 220V-230V/240V version, the triac is built-in the ac drive board	29

7. DRIVE LAYOUT



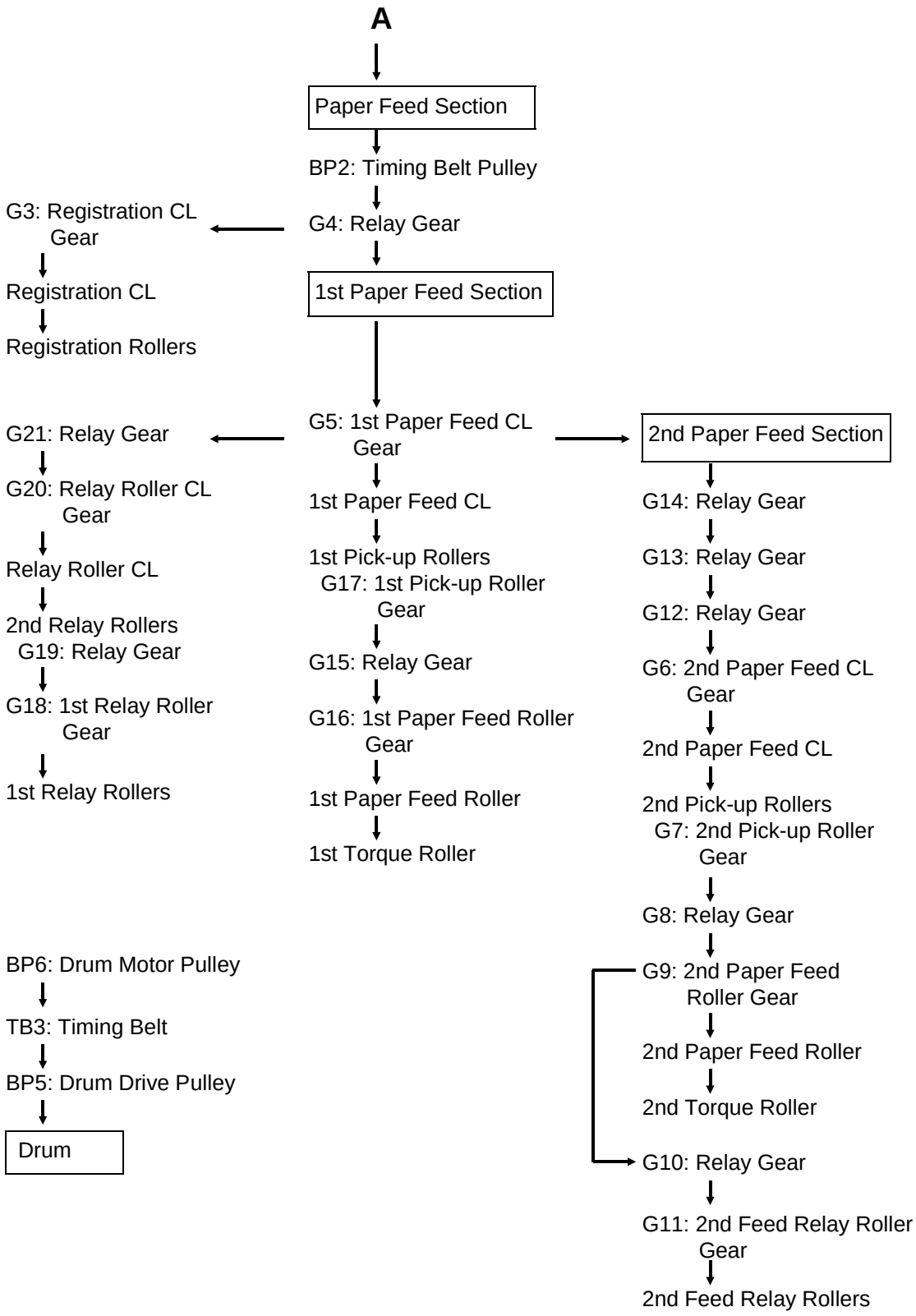
G1: Main Motor Gear → G34: Relay Gear

G34: Relay Gear
↓
G28: Relay Gear
↓
G27: Cleaning Drive Gear
↓
Cleaning Unit

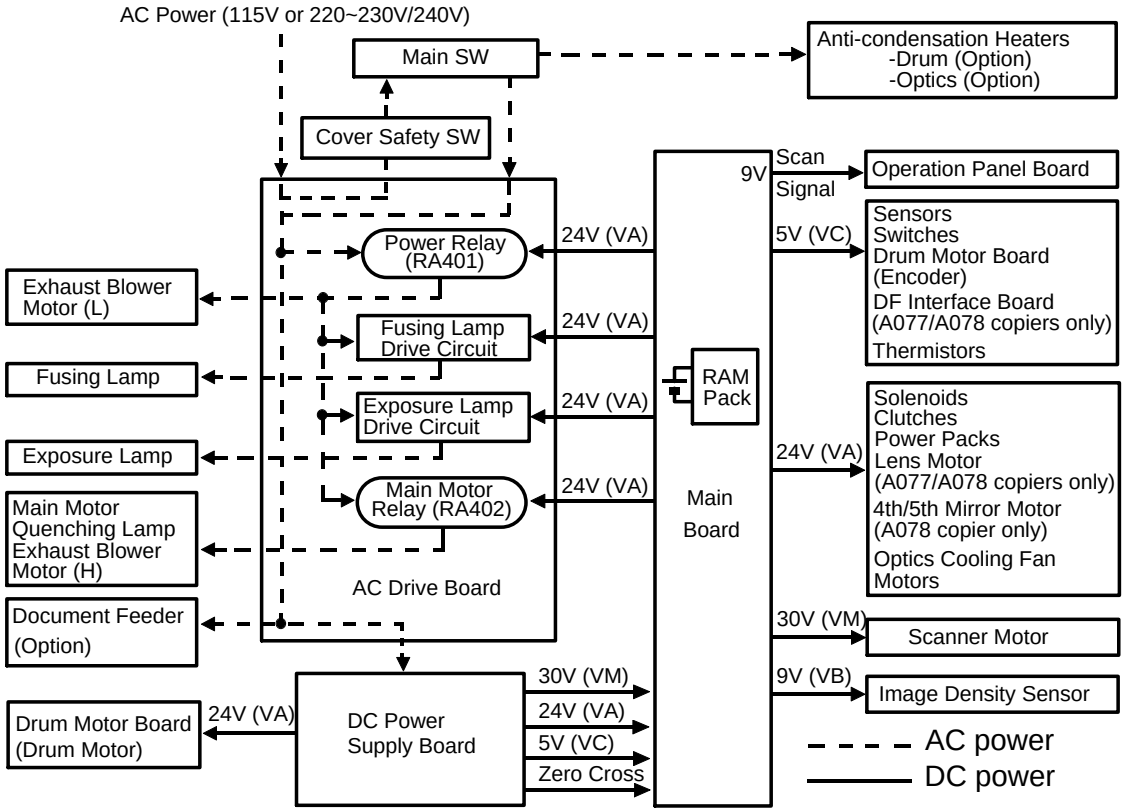
G1: Main Motor Gear
↓
G2: Timing Belt Drive Gear → G26 Relay gear
↓
BP1: Timing Belt Pulley
↓
TB1: Timing Belt
↓
A

G26 Relay gear
↓
G25: Timing Belt Drive Gear
↓
BP4: Timing Belt Pulley
↓
TB2: Timing Belt
↓
Development Section
↓
BP3: Timing Belt Pulley
↓
G24: Development CL Gear
↓
Development CL → Development Unit
↓
G23: Relay Gear
↓
G22: Toner Supply CL Gear
↓
Toner Supply CL → Toner Supply Unit

G34: Relay Gear
↓
G33: Fusing Drive Gear
↓
Fusing and Exit Unit
↓
G29: Hot Roller Gear
↓
G30: Relay Gear
↓
G31: Relay Gear
↓
G32: Exit Roller Gear


A
Paper Feed Section
BP2: Timing Belt Pulley
G4: Relay Gear
G3: Registration CL Gear
Registration CL
Registration Rollers
1st Paper Feed Section
G5: 1st Paper Feed CL Gear
G21: Relay Gear
G20: Relay Roller CL Gear
Relay Roller CL
2nd Relay Rollers
G19: Relay Gear
G18: 1st Relay Roller Gear
1st Relay Rollers
1st Paper Feed CL
1st Pick-up Rollers
G17: 1st Pick-up Roller Gear
G15: Relay Gear
G16: 1st Paper Feed Roller Gear
1st Paper Feed Roller
1st Torque Roller
2nd Paper Feed Section
G14: Relay Gear
G13: Relay Gear
G12: Relay Gear
G6: 2nd Paper Feed CL Gear
2nd Paper Feed CL
2nd Pick-up Rollers
G7: 2nd Pick-up Roller Gear
G8: Relay Gear
G9: 2nd Paper Feed Roller Gear
2nd Paper Feed Roller
2nd Torque Roller
G10: Relay Gear
G11: 2nd Feed Relay Roller Gear
2nd Feed Relay Rollers
BP6: Drum Motor Pulley
TB3: Timing Belt
BP5: Drum Drive Pulley
Drum

8. POWER DISTRIBUTION



When this copier is plugged in and the main switch is turned off, ac power is supplied via the ac drive board to the anti-condensation heaters. When the front cover and/or the exit cover is open, the cover safety switch completely cuts off power to all ac and dc components. The RAM pack has a back up power supply (dc battery) for the service program mode data and misfeed job recovery.

When the main switch is turned on, the ac power supply to the anti-condensation heater is cut off and ac power is supplied to the ac drive board. The dc power supply board receives wall outlet ac power through the ac drive board.

The dc power supply board converts the wall outlet ac power input to +5 volts, +24 volts, +30 volts and a zero cross signal.

The +24 volts is supplied to both the main board and the drum motor board. The +5 volts, +30 volts and the zero cross signal are supplied to the main board.

The main board supplies dc power to all copier dc components except for the drum motor. All sensors (except for the ID sensor), switches, thermistors, the drum motor encoder, plus the DF interface board operate on +5 volts. The image density sensor as well as the operation panel operates on +9 volts, supplied by the main board. The scanner motor operates on +30 volts. All other dc components including the power relay (RA401) and the main motor relay (RA402) operate on +24 volts. The document feeder has a separate dc power supply.

When the main board receives power, it activates the power relay (RA401) which then supplies ac power to the fusing lamp drive circuit, and the exposure lamp drive circuit on the ac drive board. The exhaust blower motor begins rotating at low speed. The fusing lamp drive circuit receives a trigger signal from the main board and the fusing lamp lights. The exposure lamp does not turn on until the main board send a trigger pulse to the exposure lamp drive circuit.

When the Start key is pressed, the main board energizes the main motor relay (RA402). Then, the main motor and the quenching lamp turn on and the exhaust blower starts rotating at high speed.

When the main switch is turned off, power is cut off to the main board and to RA401, and the optional drum and optics anti-condensation heaters are turned on.

SECTION 2

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

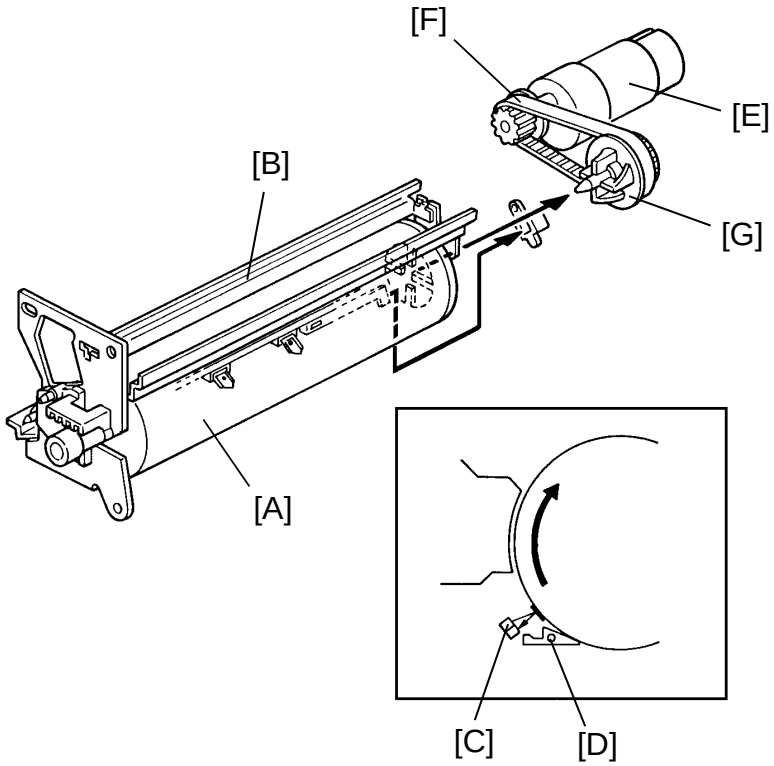
1. DRUM

1.1 DRUM CHARACTERISTICS

The drum has the characteristics of:

1. Being able to accept a high negative electrical charge in the dark. (The electrical resistance of a photoconductor is high in the absence of light.)
2. Dissipating the electrical charge when exposed to light. (Exposure to light greatly increases the conductivity of a photoconductor.)
3. Dissipating an amount of charge in direct proportion to the intensity of the light. That is, where stronger light is directed to the photoconductor surface, a smaller voltage remains on the drum.
4. Under low temperatures, drum photosensitivity drops and residual voltage increases. This makes it necessary to monitor the drum temperature and some compensation is required.
5. During the drum's life, drum residual voltage gradually increases and the photoconductive surface becomes worn.
   Therefore, some compensation for these characteristics is required.

1.2 DRUM UNIT



An organic photoconductor (OPC) drum [A] is used in this model.

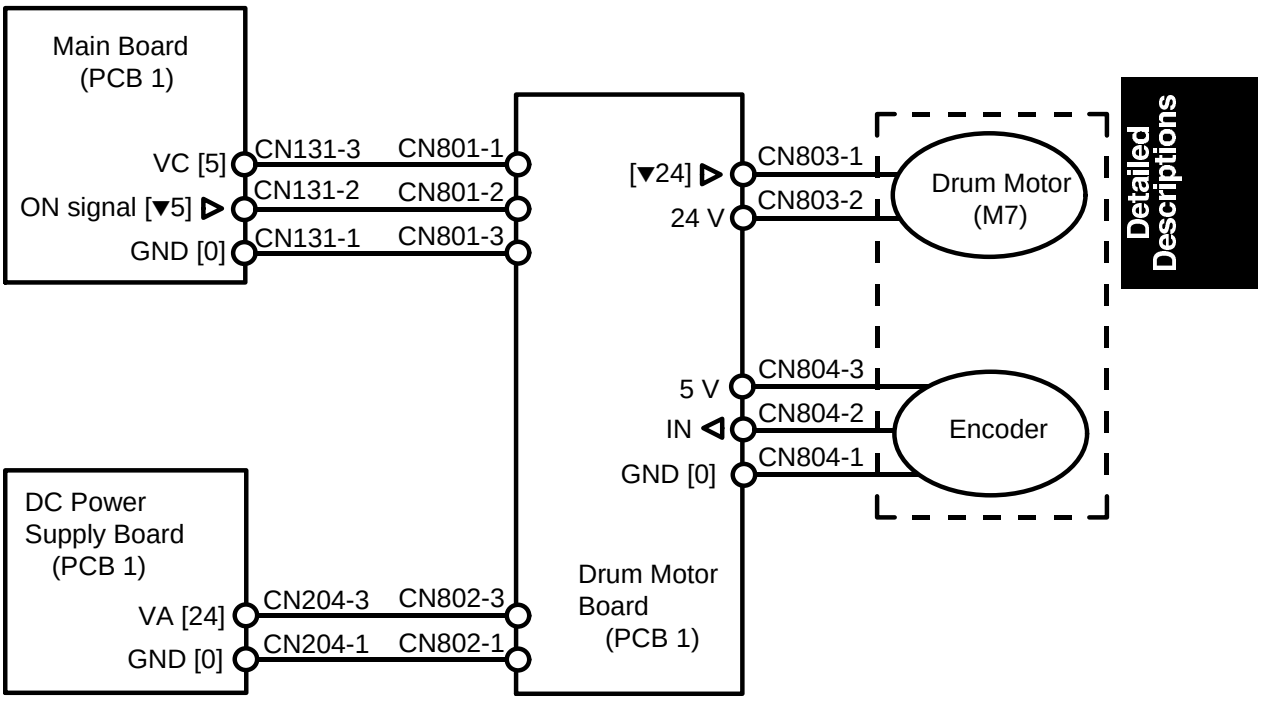
A drum unit [B] holds the drum and prevents stress on the drum. The drum unit consists of an OPC drum, ID sensor board [C] and pick-off pawls [D]. When the drum, the pick-off pawls, or the ID sensor is replaced or cleaned, the drum unit must be removed from the copier.

The drum is driven by an independent drum motor [E] through a timing belt [F] and the drum drive pulley [G].

The pick-off pawls are always in contact with the drum surface.

The ID sensor board consists of the ID sensor and the drum thermistor.

1.3 DRUM MOTOR CONTROL



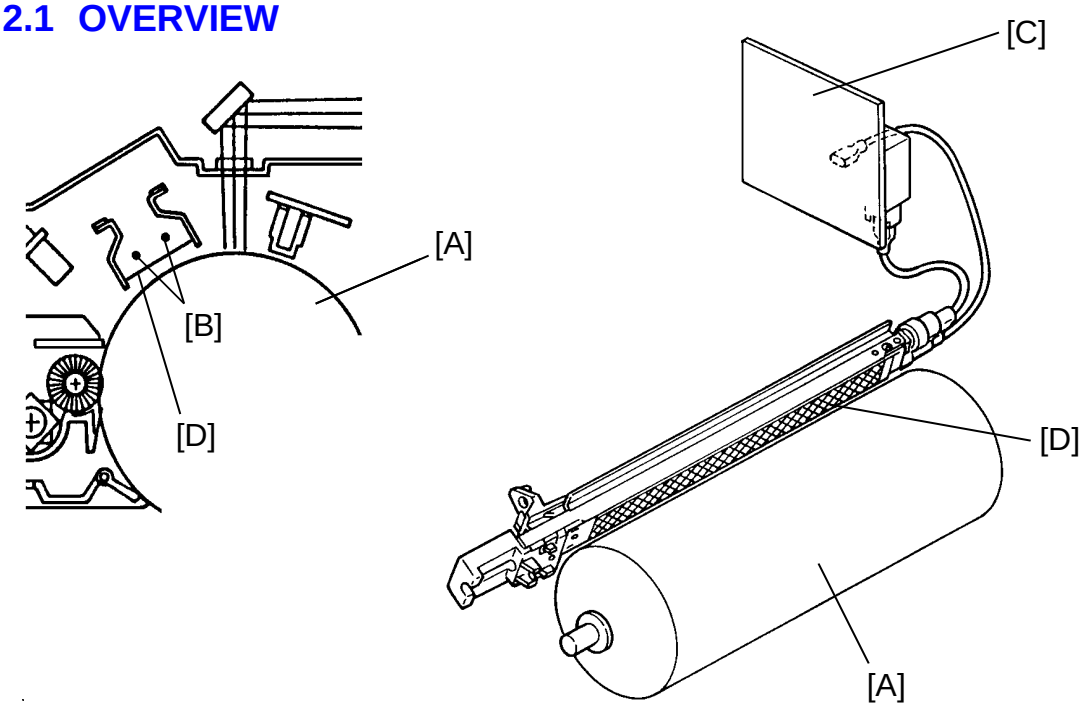
The drum motor is a dc servomotor. The drum motor board controls the speed of this servomotor.

When the Start key is pressed, the main board sends an "ON signal" to the drum motor board (CN131-2) to energize the drum motor.

The encoder on the servomotor has a photointerrupter that generates a series of pulse signals. The drum motor board monitors these pulse signals to regulate the motor speed (100 mm/second).

2. DRUM CHARGE

2.1 OVERVIEW



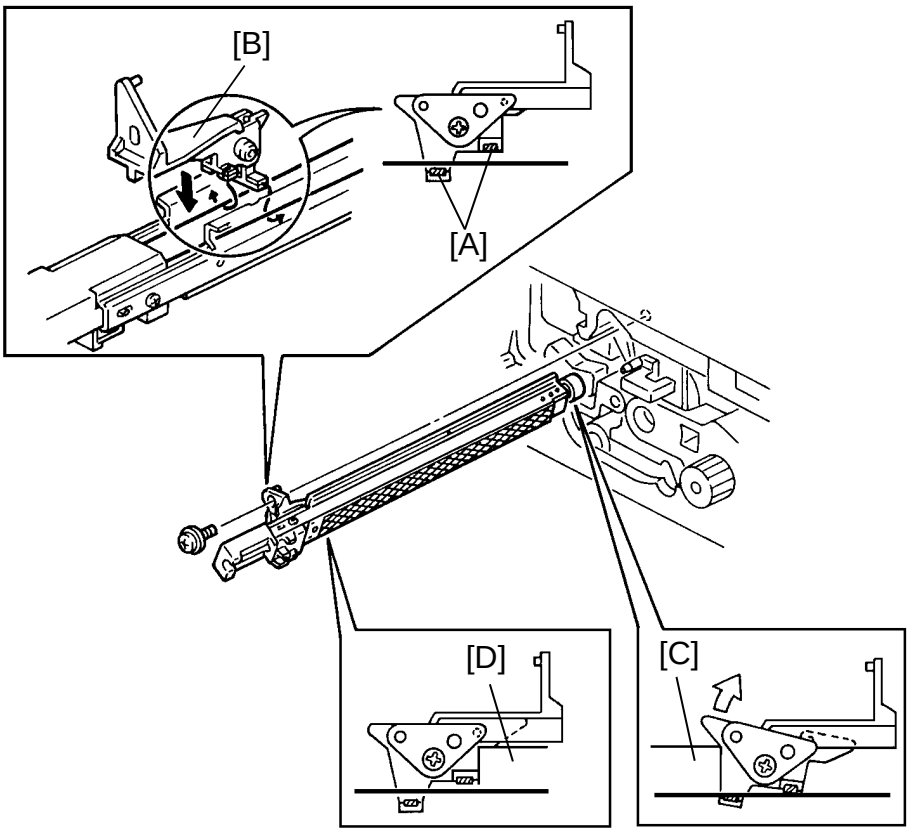
This copier uses a double wire scorotron and a highly sensitive OPC drum [A]. The corona wires [B] generate a corona of negative ions when the CC/Grid/Bias power pack [C] applies a high voltage. The CC/Grid/Bias power pack also applies a negative high voltage to a stainless steel grid plate [D]. This insures that the drum coating receives a uniform negative charge as it rotates past the corona unit.

The exhaust fan, located above the copy exit, causes a flow of air from the upper area of the development unit through the charge corona unit. This prevents an uneven build-up of negative ions that can cause uneven image density. The exhaust fan runs at half speed when in the stand-by condition and at full speed while copying.

The exhaust fan has an ozone filter (active carbon) which adsorbs ozone (O_3) generated by the corona charge. The ozone filter decreases in efficiency over time as it adsorbs ozone. The ozone filter should be replaced at every 80000 copies.

The flow of air around the charge corona wires may deposit paper dust or toner particles on the corona wire. These particles may interfere with charging and cause low density bands on copies. The wire cleaner cleans the corona wire when the operator slides the corona unit out and in.

2.2 CHARGE CORONA WIRE CLEANER MECHANISM



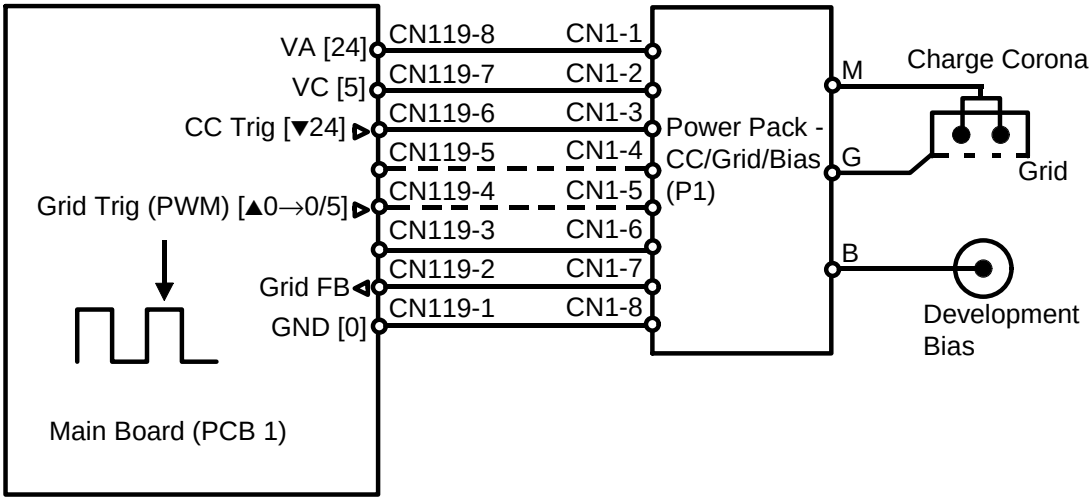
Pads [A] above and below the charge corona wires clean the wires as the charge unit is manually slid in and out.

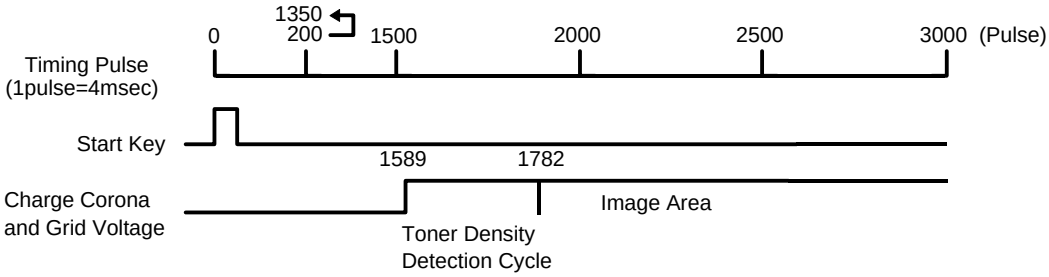
The cleaner pad bracket [B] rotates when the charge unit is fully extended and the bracket is pulled up against the rear endblock [C]. This moves the pads against the corona wires (see illustration). If the charge unit is not fully extended, the pads do not touch the corona wires.

The pads move away from the wires when the charge unit is fully inserted and the cleaning bracket is pushed against the front endblock [D].

After copier installation the key operator should be instructed to use this mechanism when copies exhibit low image density bands.

2.3 CHARGE CORONA CIRCUIT





The main board supplies +24 volts to the CC/Grid/Bias power pack at CN1-1 as the power supply source. About 2.5 seconds after the Start key is pressed (during the toner density detection cycle about 1.8 seconds), the CPU drops CN1-3 from +24 volts to 0 volts. This energizes the charge corona circuit within the CC/Grid/Bias power pack, which applies a high negative voltage of approximately –7.0 K volts to the charge corona wires. The corona wires then generate a negative corona charge.

The grid plate limits the charge voltage to ensure that the charge does not fluctuate and that an even charge is applied to the drum surface.

The grid trigger pulse applied to CN1-5 is a pulse width modulated signal (PWM signal). This signal is not only a trigger signal, it also changes the voltage level of the grid. As the width of the pulse applied increases, the voltage of the grid also increases. The CPU monitors the grid voltage at CN119-2 and controls the width of the grid trigger pulses based on this feedback.

2.4 GRID VOLTAGE CORRECTION

To maintain good copy quality over the drum's life, the grid voltage is changed by the following:

- Drum residual voltage correction (Vr correction)
- Drum temperature correction
- Drum wear correction

2.4.1 Drum Residual Voltage Correction (Vr correction)

During the drum's life, the drum may fatigue electrically and residual voltage (Vr) on the drum may gradually increase. When this happens, the corona charged voltage on the drum is not discharged enough in the quenching and exposure processes. Even if the development bias is applied in the development process, the background area of the original on the drum may attract some toner. This may cause dirty background on copies. The Vr correction prevents this phenomenon as follows:

A pattern (Vr pattern) is developed on the drum every 1000 copies and its reflectivity is detected by the ID sensor to measure the residual voltage. This is called residual voltage detection. (If the reflectivity is low, the residual voltage will be high.) When the Vr pattern is developed, all blocks of the erase lamp turn on, and the development bias voltage is 0 volt.

The CPU determines what level of Vr correction is necessary depending on the output (Vr ratio [L]) from the ID sensor.

$$L = \frac{Vrp}{Vsg} \times 100\ (\%)$$

Vrp: ID sensor output for Vr pattern
Vsg: ID sensor output for bare drum

The current Vr ratio is displayed by SP67.

The CPU increases the development bias voltage depending on the Vr ratio to prevent dirty background on copies, (See page 2-33 for more information.) The CPU also increases the grid voltage to ensure proper image density depending on the Vr ratio. (See page 2-11.)

Because the grid voltage is increased, the charge voltage on the drum's surface is also increased. To compensate for the charge voltage increase, the exposure lamp voltage is also increased. (See page 2-21.)

2.4.2 Drum Temperature Correction

During a low drum temperature condition, the drum's residual voltage increases and drum photosensitivity drops due to the characteristics of the drum. This may cause dirty background on copies.
A drum temperature correction is made to compensate for this phenomenon as follows:

A drum thermistor on the ID sensor board monitors the temperature around the drum. When the drum temperature is less than 20°C, the CPU increases the development bias voltage to prevent dirty background on copies. (See page 2-33.) The CPU also increases the grid voltage to ensure proper image density. (See page 2-11.) The exposure lamp voltage is also increased to compensate for the drum photosensitivity drop. (See page 2-20.) When the drum temperature is 20°C or higher, the drum temperature correction is not made.

2.4.3 Drum Wear Correction

During the drum's life, the photoconductive surface of the drum becomes worn by contact with the cleaning brush. This effects ability of the drum to hold a charge. This characteristic especially affects developing of the ID sensor pattern. The ID sensor pattern developed on the drum becomes lighter causing higher toner concentration in the developer. The drum wear correction is made to prevent this phenomenon and is as follows:

The CPU keeps track of the drum motor rotation time that corresponds to the wear of the photoconductive layer. The grid voltage for the toner density detection increases at set interval. The grid voltage for the residual voltage (Vr) detection also increases at the same interval. (See page 2-12.) The drum motor rotation time is displayed by SP57.

2.5 GRID VOLTAGE FOR IMAGE DENSITY CONTROL

The main board controls the grid voltage for a copy image through the CC/Grid/Bias power pack. As the grid voltage becomes less, the copy image becomes lighter and vice versa. The grid voltage is based on the standard image grid voltage (Vg) and various correction factors.

The method of control is different depending on whether the image density is manually selected, or the auto image density mode is used.

The grid voltage for non-image areas (between copies) is 0 volt (Fixed).

The grid voltage while copying consists of the following factors:

1. Manual image density mode

Grid voltage = Standard image density grid voltage
(Vg = –680 volts [SP60=4])
+
Manual image density level factor
+
Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor
+
Drum temperature correction factor

2. Auto image density mode

Grid voltage = Standard image density grid voltage
(Vg = –680 volts [SP60=4])
+
Auto image density level factor (SP34)
+
Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor
+
Drum temperature correction factor

2.5.1 Manual Image Density Level Factor

Darker ⟷ Lighter

Manual ID level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Change of grid voltage (volts)	±0	±0	±0	±0	±0	+50	+50

The grid voltage does not change for manual image density levels 1 through 5. However, the exposure lamp voltage and the development bias voltage does vary depending on the manual image density level. (See page 2-19 and 2-31.)

The grid voltage at the manual image density level 6 is the same as the one at level 7, however, the exposure lamp voltage and the development bias voltage are different. (See page 2-19 and 2-31.)

2.5.2 Auto Image Density Level Factor (SP34)

Auto image density level	Data (SP34)	Change of grid voltage (volts)
Normal	0	±0
Darker	1	–50
Lighter	2	±0

The grid voltage and the exposure lamp voltage are constant regardless of the output from the auto image density sensor. Only the development bias voltage varies depending on the output from the auto image density sensor.

When the auto image density level data is set to lighter, the change of the grid voltage is 0 volt. However, the development bias voltage is changed –40 volts.

2.5.3 Drum Residual Voltage (Vr) Correction Factor

Vr ratio (L) (%) (SP67)	Change of grid voltage (volts)
100 to 84	±0
83 to 58	–40
57 to 41	–80
40 to 28	–120
27 to 0	–160

L = Vrp/Vsg x 100 (%)
Vrp: ID sensor output for Vr pattern
Vsg: ID sensor output for bare drum

During the drum's life, drum residual voltage (Vr) may gradually increase. Vr correction compensates for the residual voltage on the drum. The Vr correction is done every 1000 copies. The CPU increases the development bias voltage, the grid voltage, and the exposure lamp voltage. The above table shows how the grid voltage changes depending on the Vr ratio.

2.5.4 Drum Temperature Correction Factor

Drum Temperature	Change of grid voltage (volts)
20°C or higher	±0
Lower than 20°C	–40

2.6 GRID VOLTAGE FOR TONER DENSITY DETECTION AND RESIDUAL VOLTAGE (Vr) DETECTION

2.6.1 Grid Voltage for Toner Density Detection

Grid voltage = Standard ID sensor grid voltage (–460 volts [SP62=4])
+
Drum wear correction factor (SP57)

Drum Wear Correction Factor (SP57)

Drum motor rotation time (SP57)	Change of grid voltage (volts)
0 to 2H	±0
2 to 65H	–20
65 to 112H	–40
112 to 157H	–60
More than 157H	–80

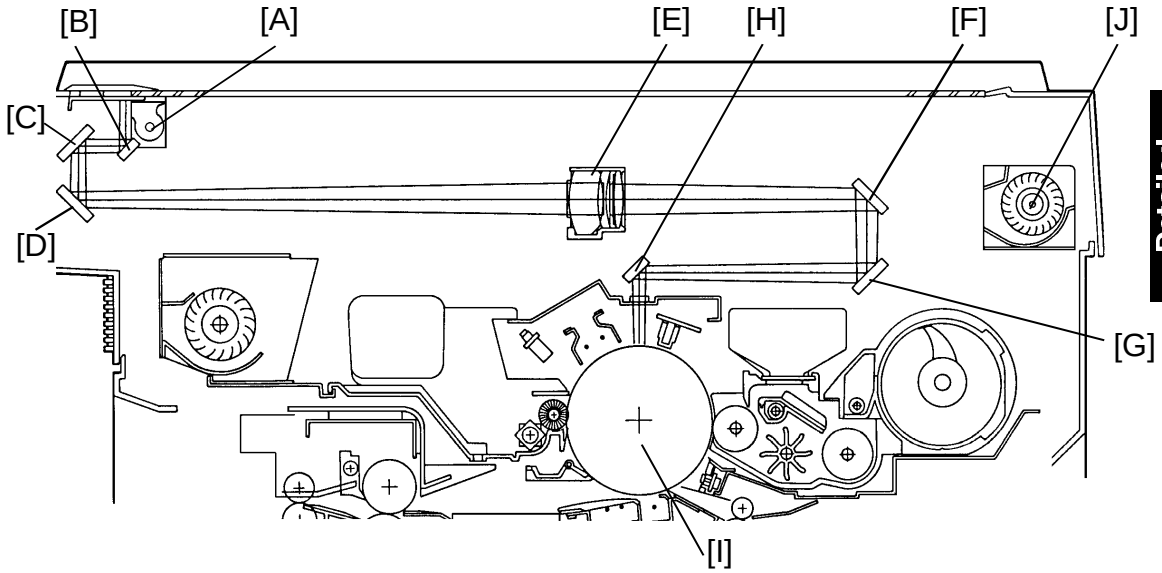
2.6.2 Grid Voltage for Residual Voltage (Vr) Detection

Grid voltage = Standard ID sensor grid voltage (–460 volts [SP62=4])
+
Drum wear correction factor
(SP57 [See the above table.])

The grid voltage for the toner density detection is the same as the one for the residual voltage (Vr) detection, however, the development bias voltage is different. (See page 2-33 and 2-39.)

3. OPTICS

3.1 OVERVIEW



During the copy cycle, an image of the original is reflected onto the drum surface through the optics assembly as follows.

Light Path:

Exposure Lamp [A] → Original → First Mirror [B] → Second Mirror [C] → Third Mirror [D] → Lens [E] → Fourth Mirror [F]→ Fifth Mirror [G] → Sixth Mirror [H] → Drum [I]

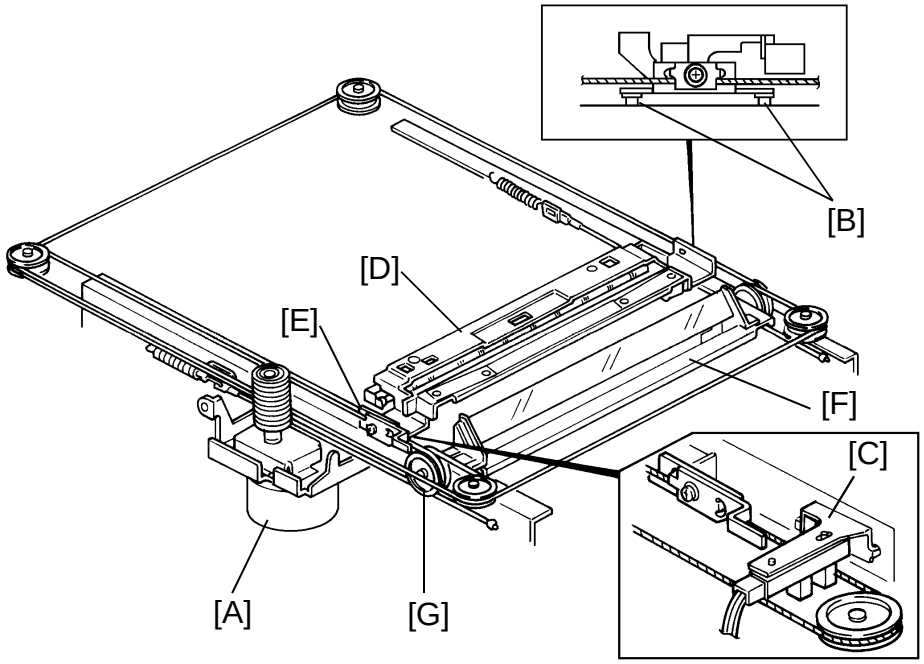
The optics cooling fan [J] draws cool air into the optics cavity. The air flows from the right to the left in the optics cavity and exhausts through the vents in the left side of the upper cover. This fan operates during the copy cycle.

This copier has six standard reproduction ratios (A077/A078 copiers only), three reduction ratios, two enlargement ratios, and full size. It also has a zoom function. The operator can change the reproduction ratio in one percent steps from 61% to 141%.

Stepper motors are used to change the positions of the lens and mirrors (A077/A078 copiers only). Separate motors are used because the wide range of reproduction ratios makes it mechanically difficult for one motor to position both the lens and mirrors. A stepper motor is also used to drive the scanner. This motor changes the scanner speed according to the reproduction ratio.

The thermofuse opens at 126°C and removes ac power to the exposure lamp to prevent overheating.

3.2 SCANNER DRIVE



3.2.1 1st and 2nd Scanner Drive Mechanism

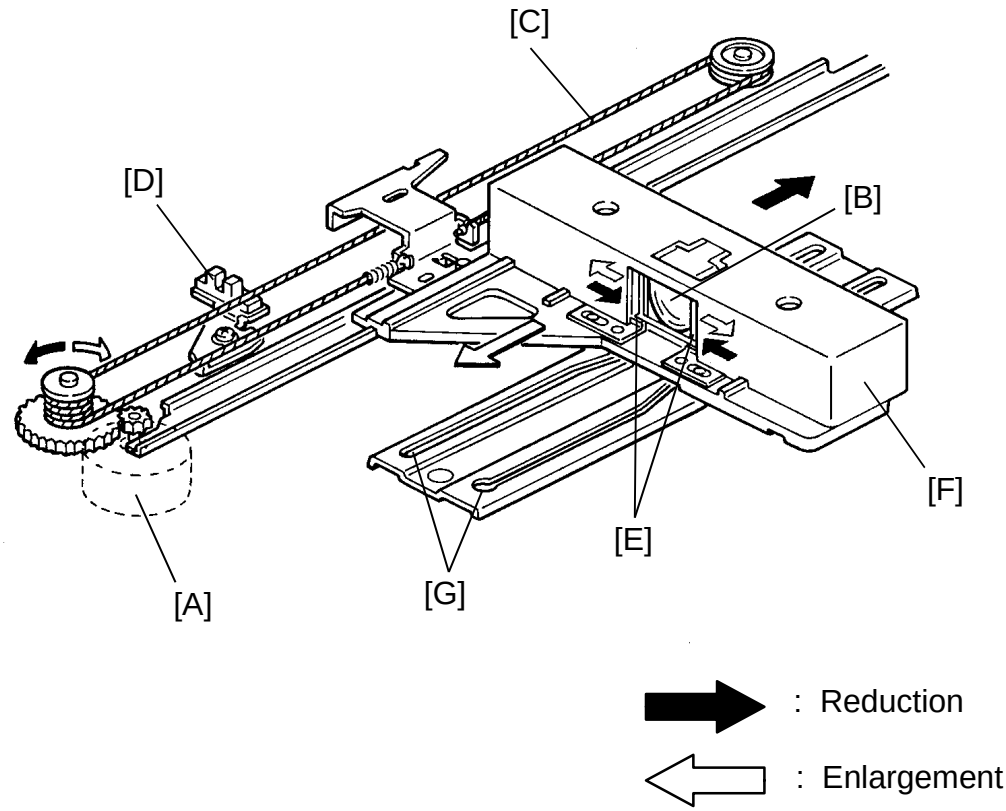
This model uses a stepper motor [A] to drive the scanners. Both ends of each scanner are driven to prevent skewing. The scanners have sliders [B], which ride on guide rails.

The scanner home position is detected by the home position sensor [C]. The scanner return position is determined by counting the scanner motor drive pulses.

The first scanner [D], which consists of the exposure lamp and the first mirror, is connected to the scanner drive wire by the wire clamps [E]. The second scanner [F], which consists of the second and third mirrors, is connected to the scanner drive wire by movable pulleys (the second scanner pulleys [G]). The pulleys move the second scanner at half the velocity of the first scanner. This maintains the focal distance between the original and the lens during scanning. This relationship can be expressed as:

V1r	= 2 (V2r) = VD/r
where r	= Reproduction ratio
V1r	= First scanner velocity (when the reproduction ratio is "r")
V2r	= Second scanner velocity (when the reproduction ratio is "r")
VD	= Drum peripheral velocity (100 mm/s)

3.3 LENS DRIVE (A077/A078 copiers only)



3.3.1 Lens Drive

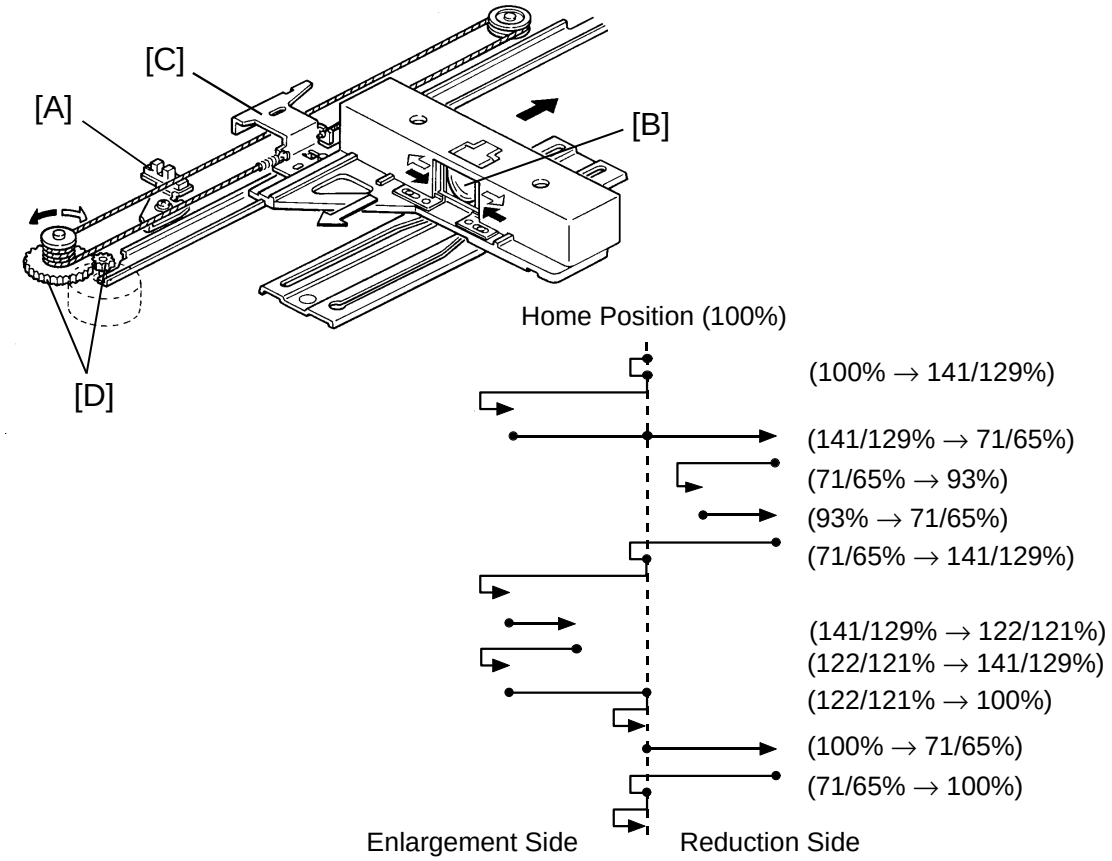
The lens motor [A] (stepper motor) changes the lens [B] position through the lens drive wire [C] in accordance with the selected reproduction ratio to provide the proper optical distance between the lens and the drum surface.

The rotation of the lens drive pulley moves the lens back and forth in discrete steps. The home position of the lens is detected by the home position sensor [D]. The main board keeps track of the lens position based on the number of pulses sent to the lens motor.

3.3.2 Shading Mechanism

The shading plates [E] are installed on the lens housing [F] and are slid open and shut by the groove cams [G]. When the lens moves in the reduction direction, the groove cams move the shading plates closer together. The plate blocks part of the light passing through the lens to keep the intensity of the light on the drum even.

3.3.3 Lens Positioning



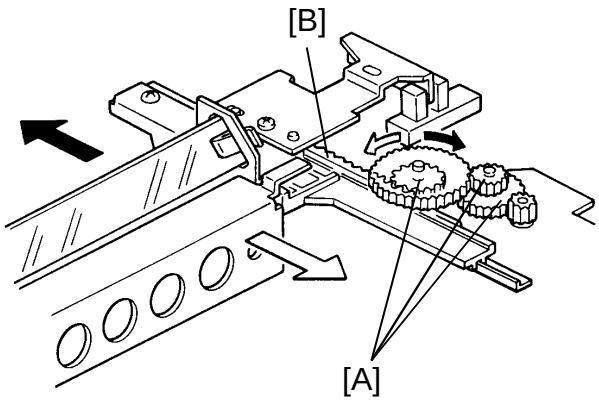
The lens home position sensor [A] informs the main board when the lens is at full size position (home position). The main board determines the lens stop position in reduction and enlargement modes by counting the number of steps the motor makes with reference to the lens home position. When a new reproduction ratio is selected, the lens [B] moves directly to the selected magnification position.

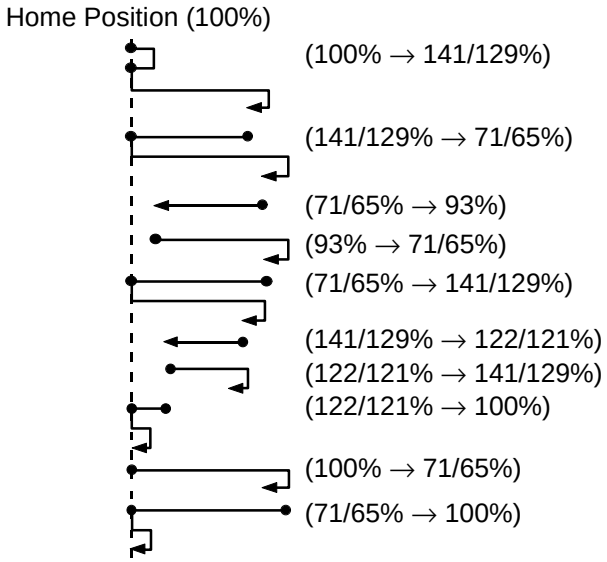
The lens home position is registered each time the lens starts from or passes through the lens home position sensor. As the lens moves from the enlargement side to the reduction side, the sensor registers the home position. This occurs when the actuator plate [C] enters the lens home position sensor.

A small vibration can be observed when the lens moves through home position from the reduction side to the enlargement side because the lens is going in the wrong direction to register the home position. The lens overshoots the home position by only one pulse before going back to register the home position.

The lens always stops while moving from left to right (as viewed from the front) to minimize the error caused by mechanical play in the drive gears [D].

3.4 4TH/5TH MIRROR DRIVE (A077/A078 copiers only)





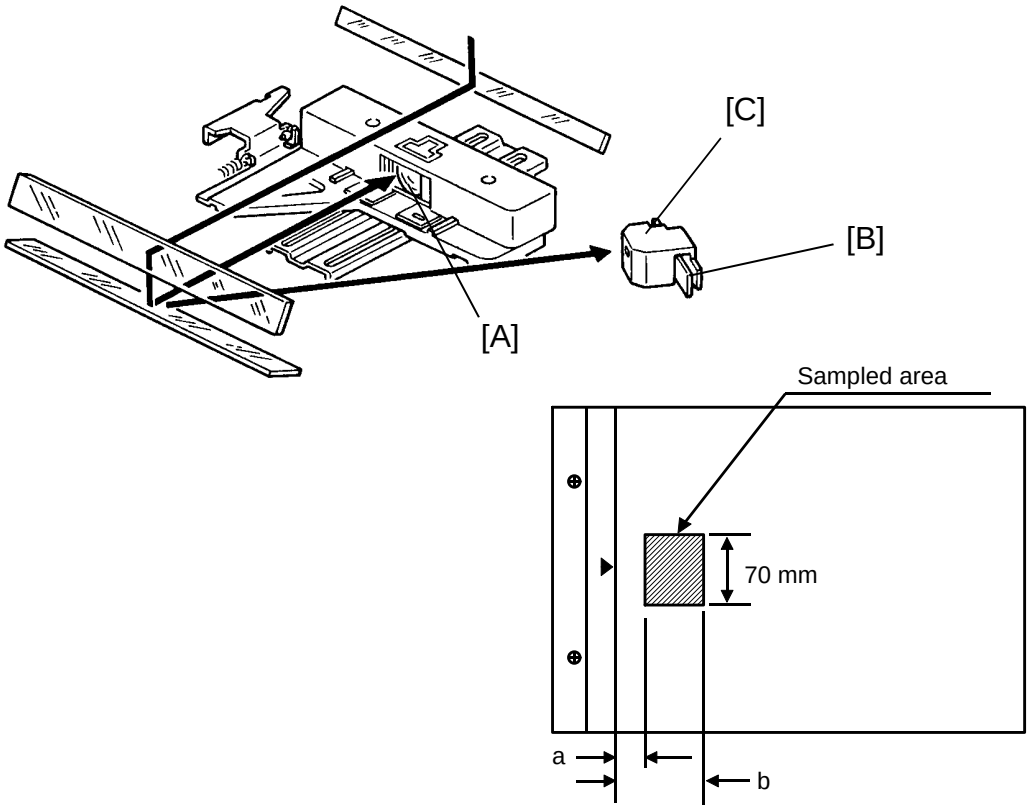
3.4.1 Drive

The 4th/5th mirror drive motor (stepper motor) changes the 4th/5th mirror assembly position through the pinion gears [A] and the rack gear [B] in accordance with the selected reproduction ratio to provide the proper optical distance between the lens and drum surface.

3.4.2 Positioning

The positioning mechanism is similar to that of lens positioning, as shown in the above positioning chart. The 4th/5th mirror assembly always stops while moving from right to left (as viewed from the front).

3.5 AUTOMATIC IMAGE DENSITY SENSING



Light from the exposure lamp is reflected from the original and travels to the lens [A] via the mirrors. The auto ID sensor [B], a photodiode, is mounted on the upper front frame. The sensor cover [C] has a hole in it to allow light to fall directly onto the sensor. Sampling starts 10 millimeters from the leading edge of the original and continues for 40 millimeters from the leading edge of original in full size mode. The length of "a" and "b" will vary depending on the selected reproduction ratio (A077/A078 copiers only).

The lengths "a" and "b" in each reproduction ratio are calculated as follows:

$$a = \frac{10\ mm}{Reproduction Ratio\ (\%)} \times 100 \qquad b = \frac{40\ mm}{Reproduction Ratio\ (\%)} \times 100$$

The photosensor circuit converts the light intensity to a voltage. The detected voltage is amplified and sent to the main PCB. The CPU stores the voltage of each sampled point in RAM. It then computes the image density of the original from the maximum sample voltage and changes the development bias accordingly. (See page 2-31 for details.) The exposure lamp voltage is constant regardless of the image density of the original.

3.6 EXPOSURE LAMP VOLTAGE CONTROL

The main board controls the exposure lamp voltage through the ac drive board. The exposure lamp voltage is based on the base lamp voltage and various correction factors.

The exposure lamp voltage consists of the following four factors:

Exposure lamp voltage =
Base exposure lamp voltage factor
(Manual or auto image density mode)
+
Reproduction ratio correction factor
(A077/A078 copiers only)
+
Drum temperature correction factor
+
Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor

3.6.1 Base Lamp Voltage Factor In Manual Image Density Mode

Darker ⟷ Lighter

Manual ID Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Exposure Lamp Data	Vo –4	Vo –4	Vo –2	Vo ±0	Vo+2	Vo+2	Vo+4

The above table shows changes in the exposure lamp data in the manual image density mode.

SP48 sets the exposure lamp data for level 4 (Vo) of manual image density mode. A value from 100 to 150 can be selected.

3.6.2 Base Lamp Voltage Factor In Auto Image Density Mode

In the auto ID mode, the CPU selects the level 4 (Vo) exposure lamp data (SP48) regardless of the input from the auto image density sensor.

3.6.3 Reproduction Ratio Correction Factor (A077/A078 copiers only)

Reproduction ratio (%)	Change of exposure lamp data
61 to 62	–2
63 to 119	±0
120 to 129	+2
130 to 141	+4

The exposure lamp data is increased or decreased depending on the selected magnification ratio in order to compensate for the change in the concentration of light on the drum.

3.6.4 Drum Temperature Correction Factor

Drum temperature	Change of exposure lamp data
20°C or higher	±0
Lower than 20°C	+2

The exposure lamp data is increased to compensate for the drum photosensitivity drop under low temperature.

If the temperature is lower than 20°C when the main switch is turned on, the CPU increases the exposure lamp data by +2 as shown in the above table.

When the temperature goes to 20°C or higher, this correction is canceled.

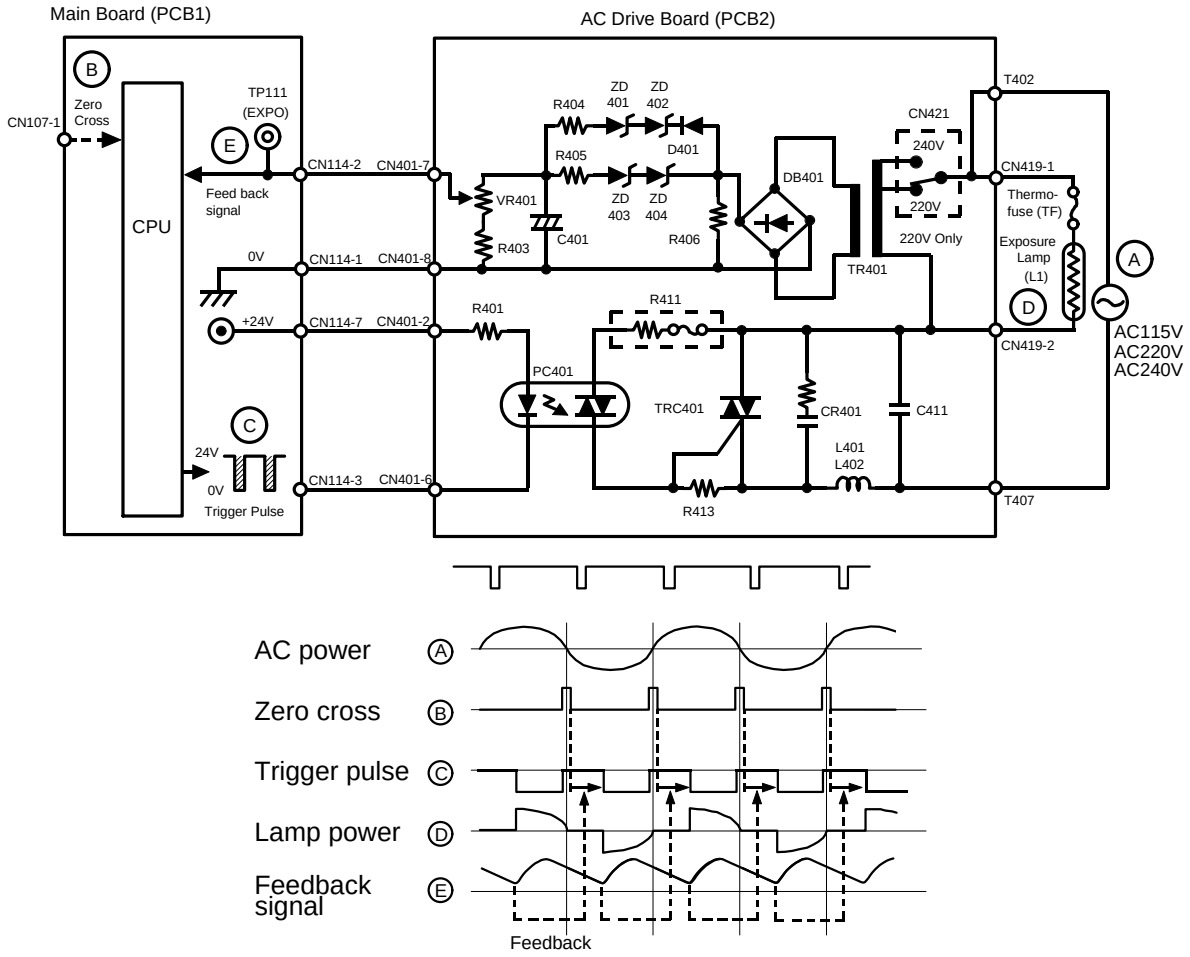
3.6.5 Drum Residual Voltage (Vr) Correction Factor

During the drum's life, drum residual voltage (Vr) may gradually increase. Vr correction compensates for the residual voltage on the drum. The Vr correction is done every 1,000 copies. Depending on the Vr ratio (SP67), the CPU increases the development bias voltage, the grid voltage and the exposure lamp voltage. The following table shows how the lamp data changes depending on the Vr ratio.

Vr ratio (L) (%) (SP67)	Change of exposure lamp data
100 to 84	±0
83 to 58	+2
57 to 41	+4
40 to 28	+6
27 to 0	+8

L = Vrp/Vsg x 100 (%)
Vrp: ID sensor output for Vr pattern
Vsg: ID sensor output for bare drum

3.7 EXPOSURE LAMP CONTROL CIRCUIT



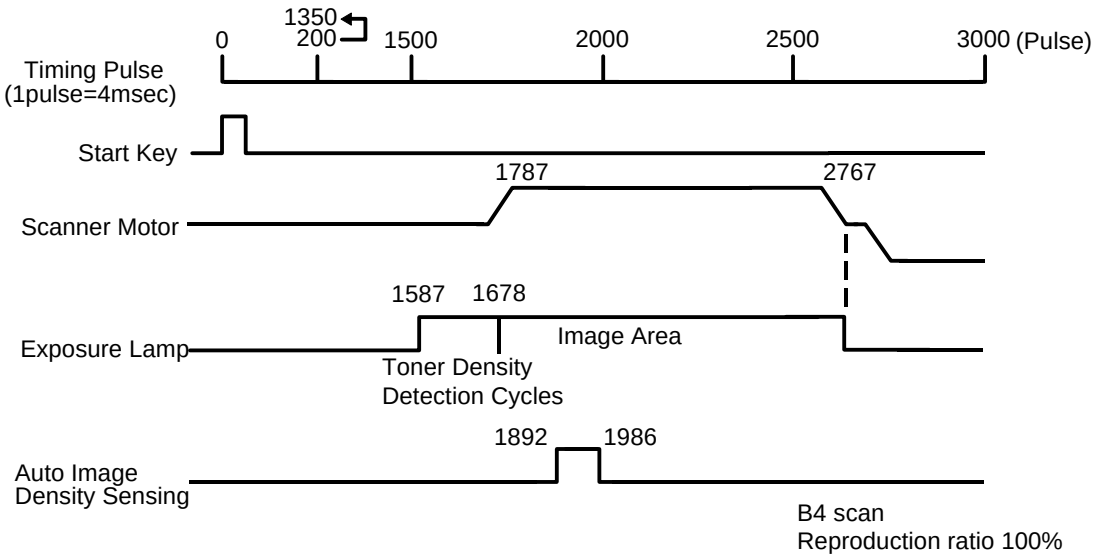
The main board sends lamp trigger (LOW signal) pulses to the ac drive board from CN114-3. PC401 activates TRC401, which provides ac power to the exposure lamp, at the lead edge of each trigger pulse.

The voltage applied to the exposure lamp is also provided to the feedback circuit. The feedback circuit steps down (TR401), rectifies (DB401), and smoothes (sensor diodes and capacitors) the lamp voltage. The CPU monitors the lowest point of the smoothed wave (feedback signal), which is directly proportional to the actual lamp voltage.

The CPU changes the timing of the trigger pulses in response to the feedback voltage. If the lamp voltage is too low, the CPU sends the trigger pulses earlier so that more ac power is applied to the exposure lamp. This feedback control is performed instantly; so, the lamp voltage is always stable even under fluctuating ac power conditions.

The voltage applied to the exposure lamp can be changed with SP48 (Light Intensity Adjustment). The ADS voltage adjustment (SP56) must be done whenever the light intensity adjustment is done.

3.8 OPTICS COMPONENT CONTROL TIMING



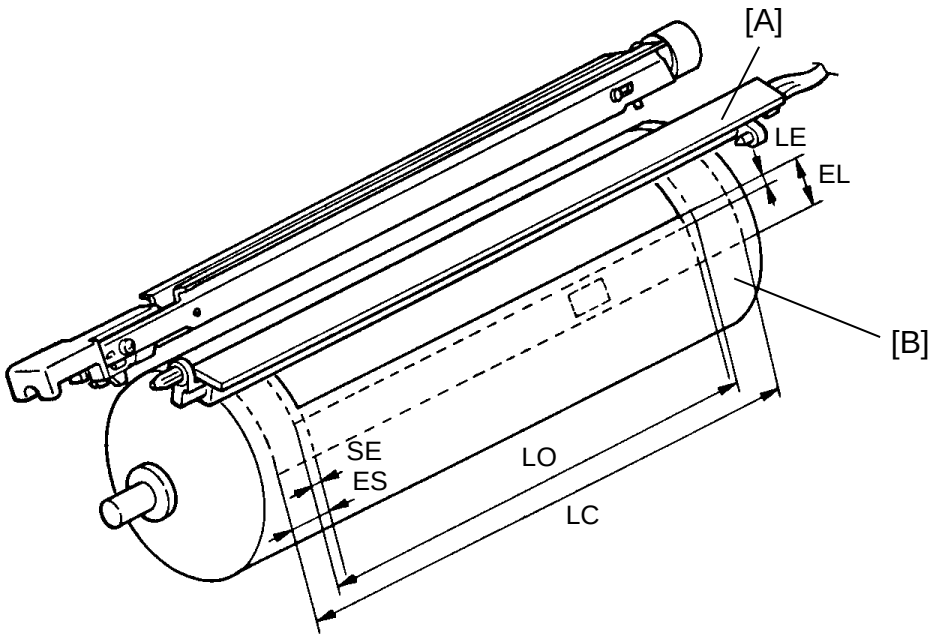
The exposure lamp turns on about 2.1 seconds (on toner density detection cycles about 1.7 seconds) and the scanner motor energizes about 2.5 seconds for the forward scan after the Start key is pressed.

About 6.5 seconds after (B4 scan) the Start key is pressed, the exposure lamp turns off and the scanner motor de-energizes and reverses for the returns scan.

In the auto image density mode, the auto image density sensor senses the original background density between about 3 seconds and 3.3 seconds after the Start key is pressed.

4. ERASE

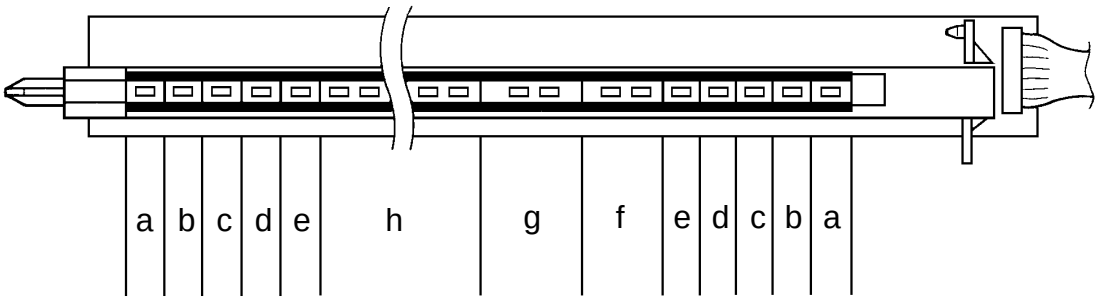
4.1 OVERVIEW



LE: Lead edge erase margin	2.5 ±1.5 mm
SE: Side erase margin	2.0 ±2.0 mm on each side; total of both sides 4 mm or less
LO: Original width	
LC: Charged width of drum	
EL: Lead edge erase	
ES: Side erase	

The erase lamp [A] consists of a single row of LEDs (29 LEDs) extending across the full width of the drum [B].

The erase lamp has three functions: lead edge erase, side erase, and trail edge erase. Trail edge erase begins after the trailing edge of the copy paper; therefore, the trailing edge of the copy will not be erased.



4.1.1 Lead Edge Erase

The entire line of LEDs turn on when the main motor turns on. They stay on until the erase margin slightly overlaps the lead edge of the original image area on the drum (Lead Edge Erase Margin). This prevents the toner density sensor pattern from being developed every copy cycle and the shadow of the original edge from being developed on the paper. At this point, side erase starts. The width of the lead edge erase margin can be adjusted using SP41.

During the toner density detection cycle (once every ten copy cycles), a block of erase lamps (labeled "g" above) turns off long enough for the sensor pattern to be developed.

The entire line of LEDs turn on when the residual voltage on the OPC drum is being detected (Vr detection).

4.1.2 Side Erase

This machine has no sensors or switches to detect the copy paper size. Instead, the CPU measures the copy paper length using the registration sensor during the first copy cycle. Based on this length data, the CPU determines which copy paper size is used in the paper tray. (See page 2-57 for more information.)

The LEDs turn on in blocks as labeled "a" – "h" above.

In the full size copy mode, the CPU determines which blocks turn on based on the copy paper length data as follows:

Paper length	Paper size	Blocks ON
364 mm and 356 mm	B4, 10" x 14", 8 1/2" x 14", 8 1/4" x 14"	None
330 mm and 279 mm	8 1/2" x 13", 8 1/4" x 13" (F4), 8" x 13", 8 1/2" x 11"	a – b
297 mm, 267 mm, and 254 mm	A4R, 8" x 10 1/2", 8" x 10"	a – c
257 mm, 216 mm, and 210 mm	B5R, 5 1/2" x 8 1/2", A5R	a – e
For toner density detection cycles.		a – f, h
For residual voltage (Vr) detection cycles.		All

NOTE: Since the CPU cannot distinguish the different paper width, the CPU will determine the size to be the larger standard width based on the measured length.
(EX: 10" x 14", 8 1/2" x 14" → The CPU recognizes as 10" x 14".)

In the reduction or enlargement copy mode (A077/A078 copiers only), the CPU determines which blocks turn on based on the selected reproduction ratio as follows:

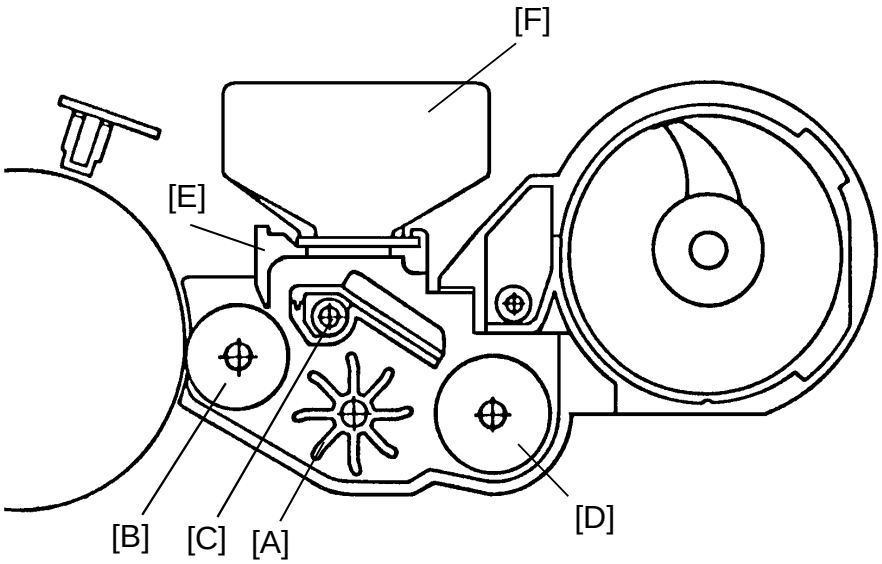
Reproduction ratio (%) (A077/A078 copiers only)	Blocks ON
83 – 99, 101 – 141	None
78 – 82	a
73 – 77	a – b
68 – 72	a – c
64 – 67	a – d
61 – 63	a – e

4.1.3 Trailing Edge Erase

The entire line of LEDs turns on after the trailing edge of the latent image has passed. Therefore, a trailing erase margin cannot be observed on the copy. The LEDs stay on to erase the leading edge of the latent image in the next copy cycle. After the final copy, the erase lamps turn off at the same time as the main motor.

5. DEVELOPMENT

5.1 OVERVIEW



When the main motor turns on, and the development clutch solenoid is de-energized, the paddle roller [A], development roller [B], auger [C], and the agitator [D] start turning. The paddle roller picks up developer in its paddles and transports it to the development roller. Internal permanent magnets in the development roller attract the developer to the development roller sleeve.

The turning sleeve of the development roller then carries the developer past the doctor blade [E]. The doctor blade trims the developer to the desired thickness and creates a developer backspill to the cross-mixing mechanism.

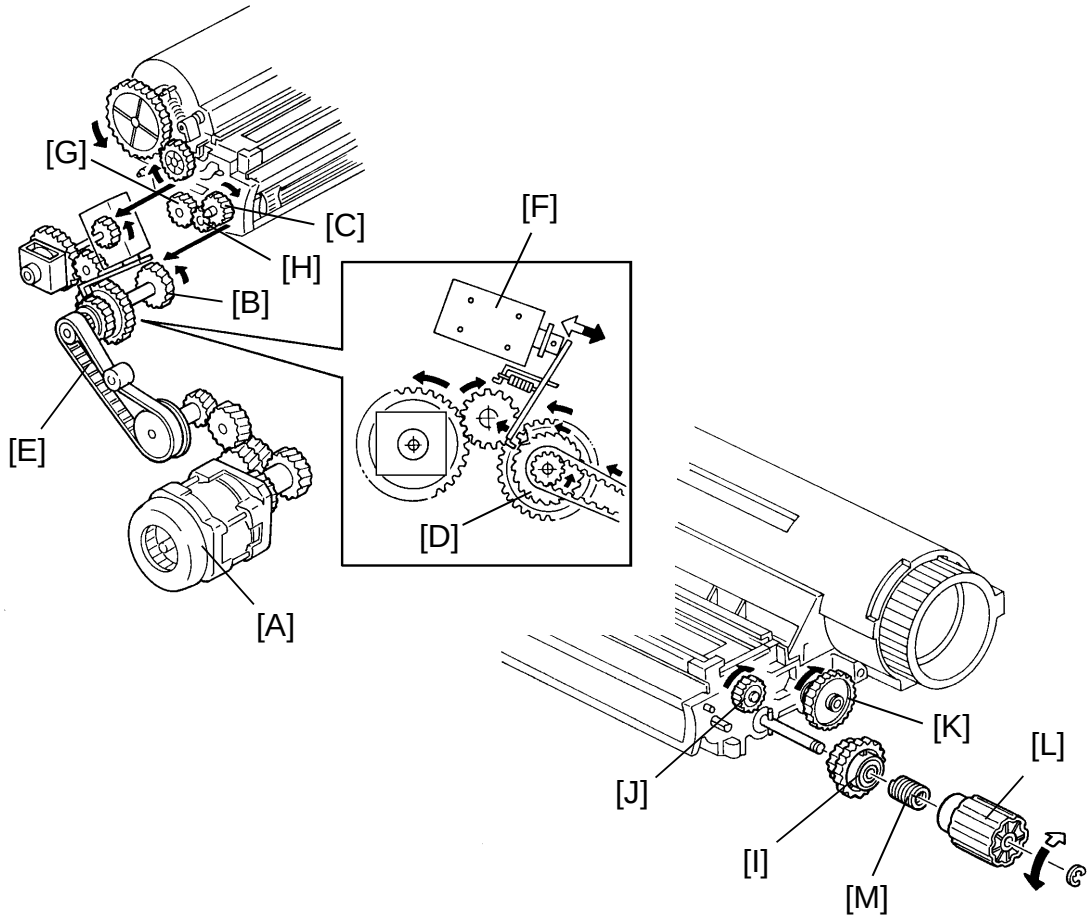
The development roller continues to turn, carrying the developer to the OPC drum. When the developer brush contacts the drum surface, the negatively charged areas of the drum surface attract and hold the positively charged toner. In this way, the latent image is developed.

The development roller is given a negative bias to prevent toner from being attracted to the non-image areas on the drum which may have a residual negative charge. The bias also controls image density.

After turning about 100 degrees more, the development roller releases the developer to the development unit. The developer is agitated by the paddle roller, agitator, and the cross-mixing mechanism.

The developer is installed in the machine in advance. When installing the machine, you must load the developer into the development unit from the developer tank [F] by pulling out the seal. Then, use SP65 to agitate the developer.

5.2 DRIVE MECHANISM

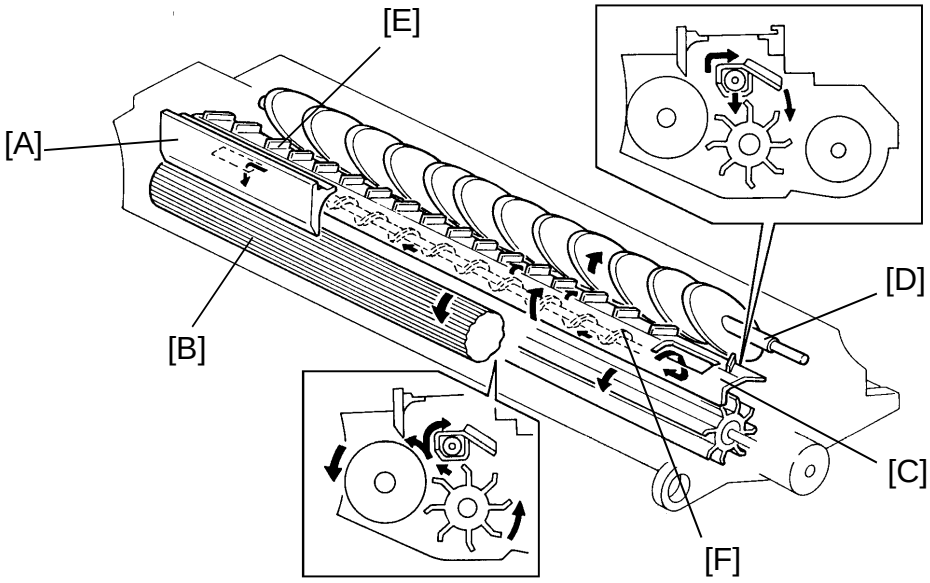


When the main motor [A] turns, the rotation is transmitted from the development drive gear [B] to the development roller gear [C] through the development clutch [D], timing belt [E] and relay gears. (The rotation is transmitted to the development drive gear when the development clutch solenoid [F] is de-energized.) Then, the rotation is transmitted from the development roller gear to the paddle roller gear [G] through the idler gear [H].

A gear [I] on the front end of the paddle roller shaft drives the auger gear [J] and the agitator gear [K]. The paddle roller shaft has a knob [L] on the front end so that it can be turned manually to exchange toner. The knob has a spring clutch [M] inside. The spring clutch prevents the development roller from being turned in the wrong direction.

The development clutch solenoid energizes after image development during the last copy cycle is completed. This stops the rollers, thereby reducing developer fatigue.

5.3 CROSS-MIXING



This copier uses a standard cross-mixing mechanism to keep the toner and developer evenly mixed. It also helps agitate the developer to prevent developer clumps from forming and helps create the triboelectric charge.

The developer on the turning development roller is split into two parts by the doctor blade [A]. The developer that stays on the development roller [B] forms the magnetic brush and develops the latent image on the drum. The remaining developer that is trimmed off by the doctor blade goes to the backspill plate [C].

As the developer slides down the backspill plate to the agitator [D], the mixing vanes [E] move it slightly toward the rear of the unit. Part of the developer falls into the auger inlet and is transported to the front of the unit by the auger [F].

5.4 DEVELOPMENT BIAS FOR IMAGE DENSITY CONTROL

Image density is controlled by changing three items: (1) the amount of bias voltage applied to the development roller sleeve, (2) the amount of voltage applied to the exposure lamp, and (3) the amount of voltage applied to the grid plate.

Applying a bias voltage to the development sleeve reduces the potential between the development roller and the drum, thereby reducing the amount of toner transferred. As the bias voltage becomes greater, the copy image becomes lighter and vice versa.

The method of control is different depending on whether the image density is manually selected or the auto image density mode is used.

The development bias voltage applied to the development roller sleeve has the following four factors:

Development bias voltage =
Base bias voltage factor
(Manual or auto image density mode)
+
Image bias voltage adjustment factor (SP37)
+
Drum residual voltage (Vr) correction factor
+
Drum temperature correction factor

The base bias voltage for non-image areas (between copies) is –160 volts. The above correction factors are also applied.

5.4.1 Base Bias Voltage Factor In Manual Image Density Mode

Darker ⟷ Lighter

Manual ID Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Base Bias Voltage (volts)	–120	–160	–160	–160	–200	–200	–240 *Note
Exposure Lamp Data	Vo –4	Vo –4	Vo –2	Vo ±0	Vo +2	Vo+2	Vo+4
Grid Voltage (volts)	Vg ±0	Vg ±0	Vg ±0	Vg ±0	Vg ±0	Vg +50	Vg +50

Vo: Exposure Lamp Data for ID level 4 (SP48)
Vg: Standard Image Grid Voltage (–680 volts)

In manual ID mode, the base bias voltage depends on the manually selected ID level. The voltage applied at each ID level is shown in the above table. The base exposure lamp voltage and the grid voltage also vary depending on the manual ID level as shown in the table.

***Note:** The base bias voltage at ID level 7 can be changed using SP50 as follows.

Image density	Data (SP50)	Bias voltage (volts)
Normal	0	–240
Darker	1	–200
Lighter	2	–280
Lightest	3	–320

(Factory Setting: –240 volts)

5.4.2 Base Bias Voltage Factor In Automatic Image Density Mode

In auto image density mode, the base exposure lamp voltage is fixed to Vo (SP48). Image density is controlled by changing only the base bias voltage.

The base bias voltage depends on the background image density of the original, which is measured using the auto ID sensor. (See page 2-18 for more information.)

The CPU checks the voltage output from the automatic ID circuit. This circuit has a peak hold function. The peak hold voltage corresponds to the maximum reflectivity of the original. The CPU then determines the proper base bias level with reference to the peak hold voltage.

The table on the following page gives the base bias voltages at each ADS output level.

When the automatic density level is set to lighter by SP34, the base bias voltage shifts –40 volts as shown in the following table.

K	Base Bias Voltage (volts)	
	Normal or Darker (SP34 = 0 or 1)	Lighter (SP34 = 2)
K ≥ TL1	–160	–200
TL1 > K ≥ TL2	–220	–260
TL2 > K ≥ TL3	–280	–320
TL3 > K	–340	–380

$$K = \frac{\text{ADS Output Voltage (Peak Hold Voltage)}}{\text{ADS Reference Voltage (SP56)}}$$

TL1 to TL3: Threshold level (See the following table.)

To maintain the correct image density, the exposure lamp data is incremented when the reproduction ratio is changed or drum temperature correction or drum residual voltage correction is done. This increment in the lamp data increases the intensity of light reflected from the original. Therefore, the auto ID sensor output voltage also changes. In order to maintain a constant voltage for the same original when the lamp data is incremented, the threshold levels are shifted up with each increment in the lamp data as shown in the following table.

Increase of exposure lamp data	+0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6	+7	+8	+9
TL1	0.70	0.75	0.80	0.85	0.89	0.94	0.98	1.03	1.08	1.12
TL2	0.66	0.70	0.74	0.78	0.83	0.87	0.91	0.96	1.00	1.04
TL3	0.29	0.31	0.33	0.35	0.37	0.39	0.41	0.43	0.45	0.48

5.4.3 Image Bias Voltage Adjustment Factor

Image Bias Adjustment (SP37)

Image density	Data (SP37)	Change of bias voltage (volts)
Normal	0	±0
Darkest	1	+40
Darker	2	+20
Lighter	3	–20
Lightest	4	–40

The image bias voltage can be changed by SP37 to adjust the image density level. The above table gives the image bias voltage for SP mode setting. This adjustment should be done only if the exposure lamp voltage adjustment (SP48) fails to achieve the desired image density.

5.4.4 Drum Residual Voltage (Vr) Correction Factor

During the drum's life, drum residual voltage (Vr) may gradually increase. The Vr correction compensates for the residual voltage on the drum. The Vr correction is done every 1,000 copies. The following table shows how the development bias voltage changes depending on the Vr ratio.

Vr ratio (L) (%) (SP67)	Change of bias voltage (volts)
100 to 84	±0
83 to 58	–40
57 to 41	–80
40 to 28	–120
27 to 0	–160

L = Vrp/Vsg x 100 (%)
Vrp: ID sensor output for Vr correction pattern
Vsg: ID sensor output for bare drum

When the Vr correction is made (every 1,000 copies), all blocks of erase lamps turn on and the development bias becomes 0 volt to develop the Vr pattern.

5.4.5 Drum Temperature Correction Factor

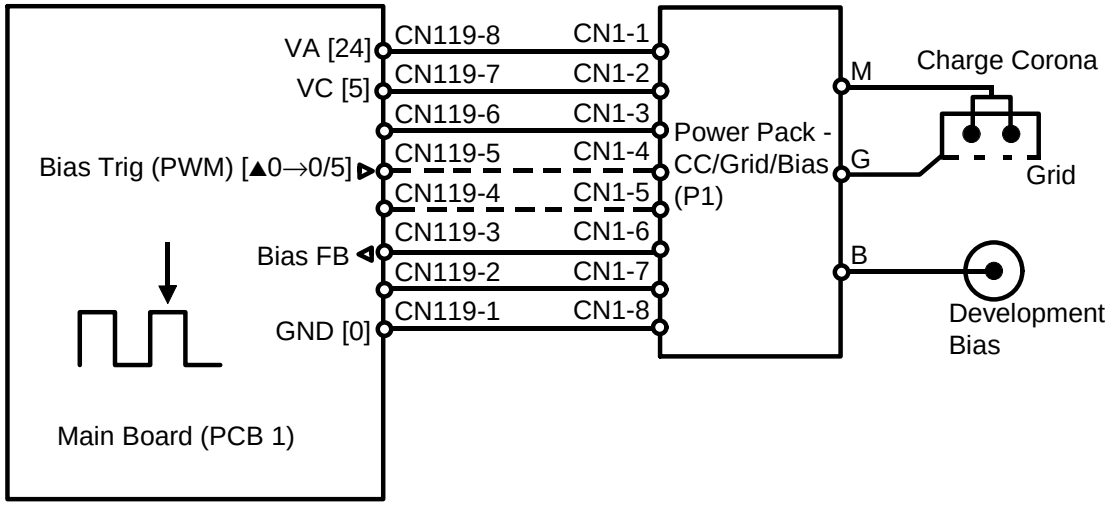
Drum temperature	Change of bias voltage (volts)
20°C or higher	±0
Lower than 20°C	–40

To compensate for the drum photosensitivity drop under low temperature, the development bias voltage is increased.

If the temperature is lower than 20°C when the main switch is turned on, the CPU increases the development bias voltage by –40 volts as shown in the above table.

When the temperature goes to 20°C or higher, this correction is canceled.

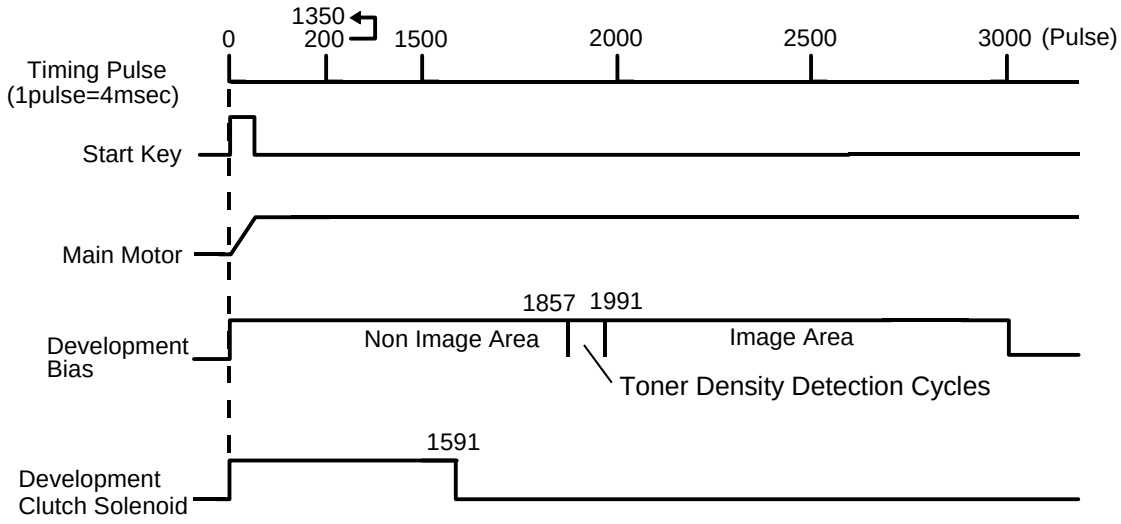
5.5 DEVELOPMENT BIAS CIRCUIT



The main board supplies +24 volts to the CC/Grid/Bias power pack at CN1-1. When the Start key is pressed, the CPU starts sending the bias trigger pulses to CN1-4. This energizes the development bias circuit within the CC/Grid/Bias power pack, which applies a high negative voltage to the development roller. The development bias is applied whenever the drum is rotating except when the Vr pattern is developed.

The bias trigger pulse applied to CN1-4 is a pulse width modulated signal (PWM signal). The width of the pulses controls the voltage level of the development roller. As the width of the trigger pulses increase, the voltage to the development roller also increases. The CPU monitors the development bias voltage at CN119-3 and controls the width of the bias trigger pulses based on this feedback.

5.6 DEVELOPMENT COMPONENT CONTROL TIMING

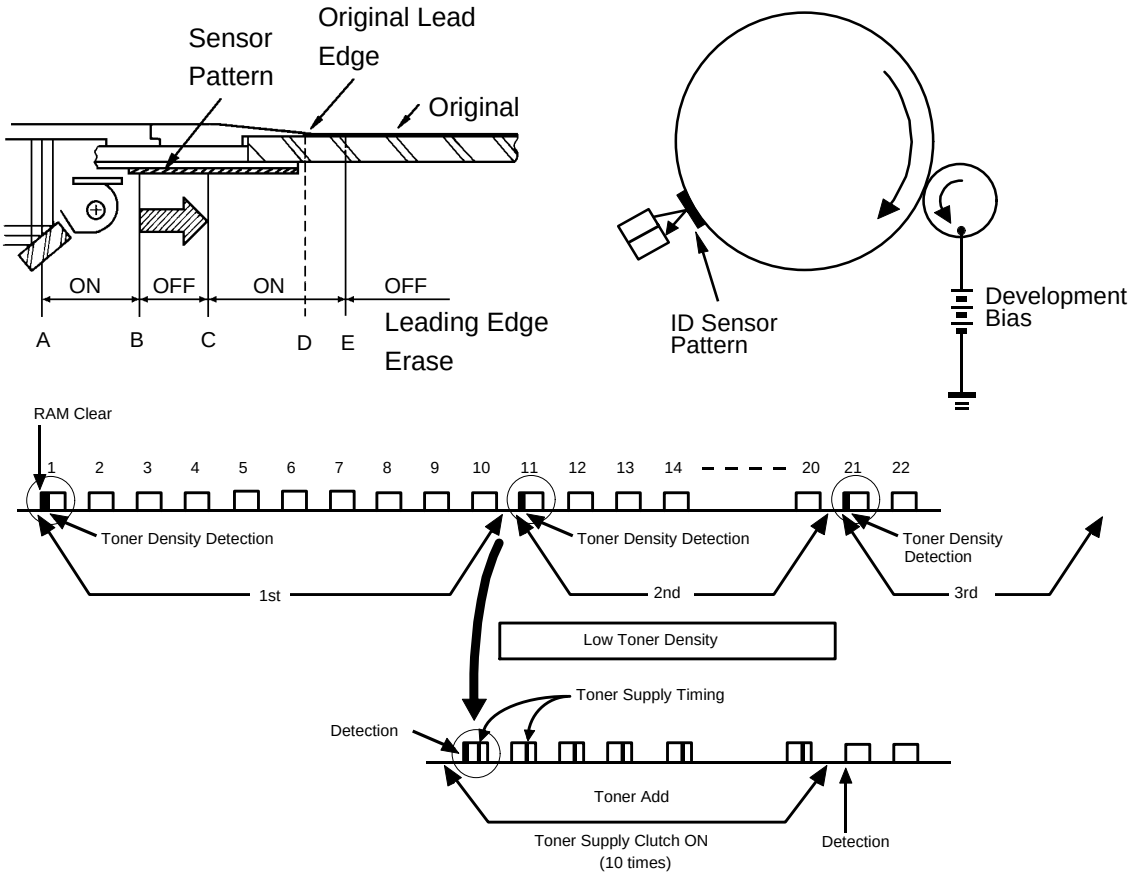


When the Start key is pressed, the main motor starts rotating and the development clutch solenoid is energized. At this time, the rotation from the main motor is not transmitted to the rollers in the development unit. The development clutch solenoid is de-energized about 1.8 seconds after the Start key is pressed. At this time, the rollers in the development unit start rotating.

When the Start key is pressed, the development bias circuit in the CC/Grid/Bias power pack is energized to apply the negative voltage for the non image areas to the development roller. The value of the bias voltage will be different for the image areas. The shift to the image area bias voltage occurs about 3.4 seconds after the Start key is pressed on normal copy cycles. During on toner density detection cycles it occurs about 2.8 seconds after the Start key is pressed. This is necessary since the value of the bias voltage is also changed for toner density detection.

6. TONER DENSITY DETECTION AND TONER SUPPLY

6.1 OVERVIEW



The CPU checks toner density by directly sensing the image density every 10 copy cycles. If the RAM is cleared (SP99), or a new RAM is installed, the CPU checks the image density at the beginning of the first copy cycle.

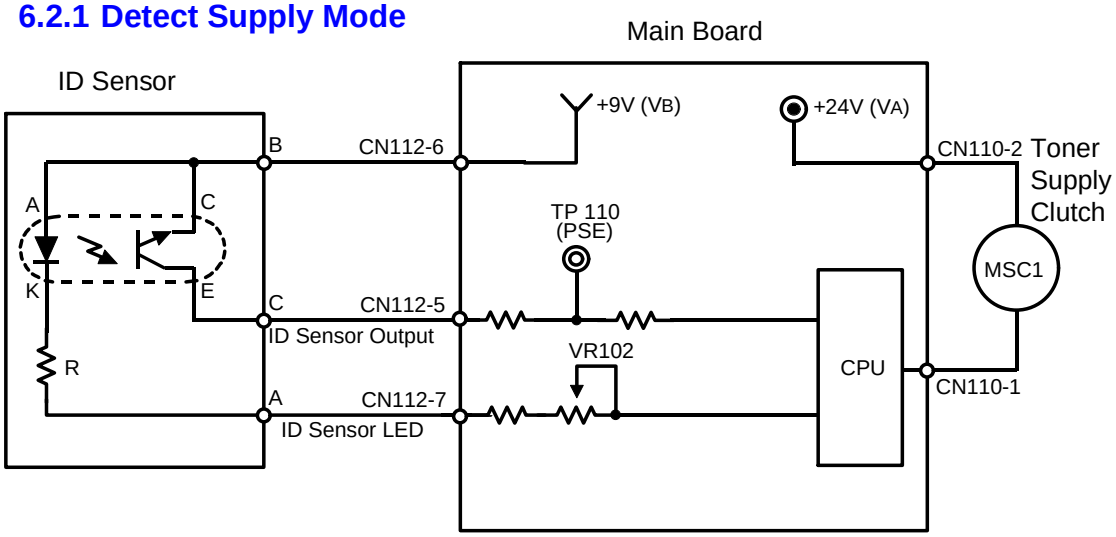
During the check cycles, the sensor pattern is exposed prior to the exposure of the original. After the sensor pattern is developed, its reflectivity is checked by the image density sensor (a photosensor). The CPU notes the reflectivity and if the reflected light is too strong, indicating a too low toner density condition, toner is added to the development unit.

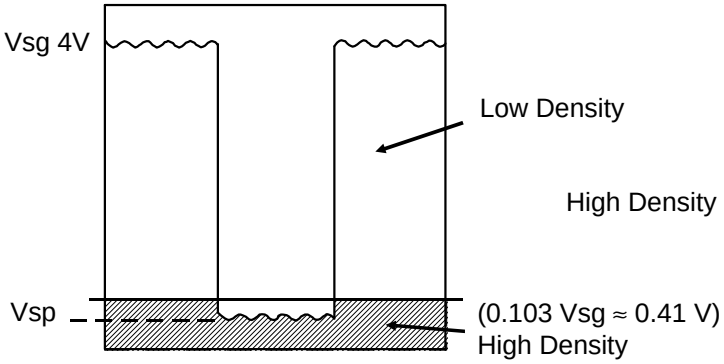
The toner is not added all at once. The CPU will energize the toner supply clutch for the proper amount of time in order to add a selected amount of toner over the next 10 cycles.

When the free run mode (turn DIP switch 101-1 ON) is selected, the CPU checks the toner density every copy cycle.

6.2 ID SENSOR FUNCTION

6.2.1 Detect Supply Mode





The image density sensor checks the density of the sensor pattern image once every 10 copy cycles. The CPU receives two voltage values directly from the sensor: the value for the bare drum (Vsg) and the value for the sensor pattern (Vsp). These two values are then compared to determine whether more toner should be added.

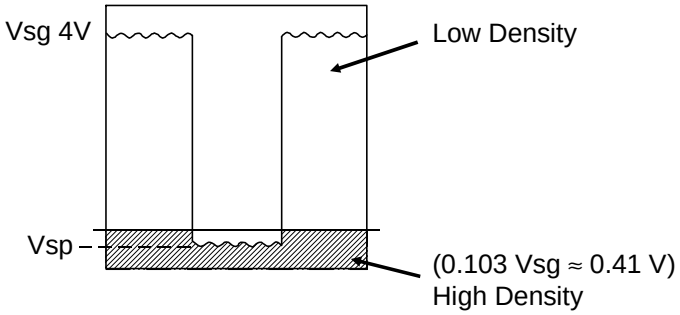
1. $\frac{Vsp}{Vsg} \times 100 < 10.3$ ..... No toner is added. (High density)
2. $\frac{Vsp}{Vsg} \times 100 \geq 10.3$ ..... Toner is added. (Low density)

When the image density is too low, the CPU activates the toner supply clutch to add toner over the next 10 copy cycles. The amount of toner added depends on the value of Vsp, the selected toner supply ratio (SP31) and ID sensor data. (See page 2-41 for more information.)

When the data of SP35 is set to "1" (factory setting = "0"), the CPU changes the interval of the toner density detection from every 10 copies to every 5 copies.

6.2.2 Fixed Supply Mode

When SP30 is set to "1" (factory setting = "0"), the fixed supply mode is selected. In this case, a fixed amount of toner is added every copy cycle depending on the selected toner supply ratio (SP32) and the paper size in use. (See page 2-43 for more information.) However, the toner supply clutch is de-energized to prevent over-toning when Vsp is lower than 0.103 Vsg. (≈ 0.41 volts when Vsg = 4.0 volts).



6.3 ABNORMAL CONDITION IN TONER DENSITY DETECTION

If Vsg goes below 2.5 volts (LOW Vsg) or Vsp goes above 2.5 volts (HIGH Vsp) 5 consecutive toner density detection cycles, the CPU determines that the toner density detection is abnormal. The CPU changes from the detect supply mode to the fixed supply mode. At the same time either the Auto ID indicator or the selected manual ID level starts blinking, and the machine can be operated.

Abnormal Condition In Toner Density Detection

SP55 display		Conditions
Vsp	Vsg	
varies	0.00	Vsg ≤ 2.5 (LOW Vsg)
varies	5.00	Vsp ≥ 2.5 (HIGH Vsp)

6.4 DEVELOPMENT BIAS VOLTAGE FOR TONER DENSITY DETECTION

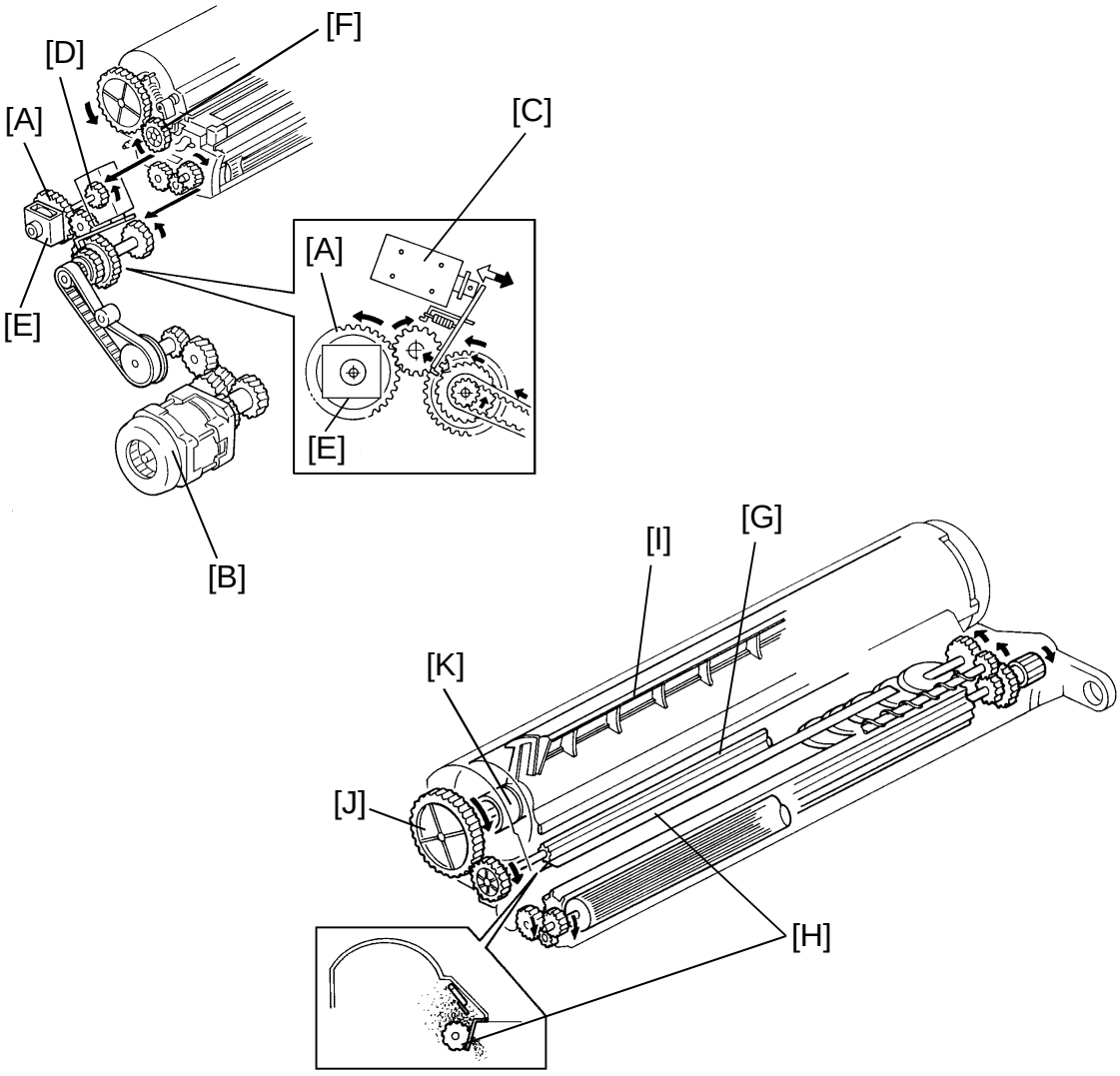
The development bias for toner density detection can be adjusted by SP33 in order to change the toner density level. The following table shows the development bias voltage corresponding to setting of SP33. This SP mode should be used only when the exposure lamp intensity adjustment (SP48) and the base bias adjustment (SP37) for copy image can not achieve the desired image density.

Toner density	SP data (SP33)	Development bias voltage (volts)	
		0 to 499 copies	More than 500 copies
Normal	0	–240	–220
Low	1	–200	–180
High	2	–260	–240
Higher	3	–280	–260

After the developer initial setting (SP65) is performed, the triboelectric charge is still low. In this condition, the ID sensor pattern density is higher than it should be. This will cause the toner concentration in the developer to become too low.

To compensate for this phenomenon, the development bias voltage for the initial 499 copies is increased by –20 volts automatically as shown in the above table.

6.5 TONER SUPPLY AND AGITATOR DRIVE MECHANISM



The toner supply clutch gear [A] turns when the main motor [B] is on and the development clutch solenoid [C] is de-energized. The transmission of this rotation to the toner supply drive gear [D] is controlled by the toner supply clutch [E].

When the toner supply clutch energizes, the toner supply drive gear starts turning, then the toner supply roller gear [F] turns. Toner catches in the grooves on the toner supply roller [G]. Then, as the grooves turn past the pin hole plate [H], the toner drops into the development unit through the pin holes.

The toner agitator [I] mechanism, which is contained in the toner cartridge, prevents toner from clumping. The toner agitator gear [J] turns whenever the toner supply clutch energizes. Rotation passes through the toner cartridge casing to the agitator junction [K].

6.6 TONER SUPPLY AMOUNT

This copier has two different ways of controlling the amount of toner supplied. Normally, the detect supply mode controls toner supply; however, a fixed supply mode also can be selected by SP30.

6.6.1 Detect Supply Mode (SP30 = 0)

The amount of toner supplied depends on the ID sensor data and the detect toner supply ratio data. The toner supply clutch on time in each copy cycle is calculated as follows:

Toner Supply Clutch ON Time = I x T (pulses)

Where : I = ID Sensor Data
T = Detect Toner Supply Ratio Data (SP31)

For example: Vsp = 0.45 volts, which means the toner supply level is "2" and the ID sensor data is 49.

The data of SP31 is set to "0".
The toner supply ratio is 15% and the toner supply data is 2.

Toner Supply Clutch ON Time = I x T
= 49 x 2
= 98 (pulses)
= 392 (msec.) (1 pulse = 4.0 msec.)

ID Sensor Data

Vsp/Vsg x 100 (Vsp, if Vsg = 4.0 volts)	Toner supply level (Toner supply ratio, SP31 = 0)	ID sensor data
0 to 10.3% (0 to 0.41 volts)	No toner supply (0%)	0
10.3 to 10.8% (0.41 to 0.43 volts)	1 (3.75%)	27
10.8 to 11.8% (0.43 to 0.47 volts)	2 (7.5%)	49
11.8 to 15.2% (0.47 to 0.61 volts)	3 (15%)	92
15.2 to 62.5% (0.61 to 2.5 volts) (See note below.)	4 (30%)	184 (Toner End level)
62.5 to more than 100% (2.5 to 5.0 volts)	Fixed supply mode	N/A (Abnormal Condition)

NOTE: If this condition is detected two times consecutively, the toner supply ratio rises to 60% (ID Sensor Data = 368), which is double that at toner supply level 4.

Detect Toner Supply Ratio Data (SP31)

Data (SP31)	Toner supply ratio at toner supply level 3	Toner supply ratio data
0	15%	2
1	7%	1
2	30%	4
3	60%	8

6.6.2 Fixed Supply Mode (SP30 = 1)

The amount of toner supplied depends on the fixed toner supply ratio data and the paper size data. The toner supply clutch on time in each copy cycle is calculated as follows:

Toner Supply Clutch ON Time = T x P x 2 (pulses)

Where: T = Fixed Toner Supply Ratio Data (SP32)
P = Paper Size Data

For example: The data of SP32 is set to "0".
The toner supply ratio is 7.0% and the toner supply data is 2.

Paper size is A4R. The paper size data is 29.

Toner Supply Clutch ON Time = T x P x 2
= 2 x 29 x 2
=116 (pulses)
= 464 (msec.) (1 pulse = 4.0 msec.)

Fixed Toner Supply Ratio Data (SP32)

Data (SP32)	Toner supply ratio	Toner supply ratio data
0	7.0%	2
1	3.5%	1
2	10.5%	3
3	14.0%	4

Paper Size Data

Paper size	Paper size data
B4	43
A4R	29
B5R	23
A5R	15
10" x 14", 8 1/2" x 14", 8 1/4" x 14"	43
8 1/2" x 13", 8 1/4" x 13" (F4), 8" x 13"	33
8 1/2" x 11", 8" x 10 1/2"	29
8" x 10"	27
5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	14

6.7 TONER END CONDITION

The image density sensor is used to detect a toner end condition in both detect and fixed supply modes.

6.7.1 Near Toner End Condition

When the Vsp/Vsg x 100 becomes greater than 15.2 for two consecutive toner detection cycles, the toner supply ratio becomes two times the amount of toner supply level 4 (Toner supply ratio = 60%, ID sensor data = 368) and the ID sensor detection cycle changes from every 10 copies to 5 copies. Then, when this condition is detected five times consecutively, the CPU determines that it is near toner end condition and starts blinking the Add Toner indicator.

6.7.2 Toner End Condition

After the Add Toner indicator starts blinking (Near Toner End Condition), the operator can make 50 copies. If a new toner cartridge is not added within that 50 copies interval, copying is inhibited and a toner end condition is determined. In this condition, the Add Toner indicator lights and the Start indicator turns red.

Example:

Copy number	Toner density detection cycle	Vsp/Vsg x 100	Toner supply ratio (If SP31=0)	Indicator
1st~10th copies	1st copy	15.3	30%	
11th~15th copies	11th copy	15.3	60%	
16th~20th copies	16th copy	15.3	60%	
21st~25th copies	21st copy	15.3	60%	
26th~30th copies	26th copy	15.3	60%	Add Toner indicator starts blinking. (Near toner end condition)
• • • •	• • • •	• • • •	• • • •	Add Toner indicator blinks. (Near toner end condition)
76th copy	—	—	—	Add Toner indicator lights. (Toner end condition)

When the Vsp/Vsg x 100 becomes greater than 28.0 for two consecutive toner detection cycles, the CPU determines immediately that there is a toner end condition and copying is inhibited. This causes the Add Toner indicator to light and the Start indicator turns red.

Example:

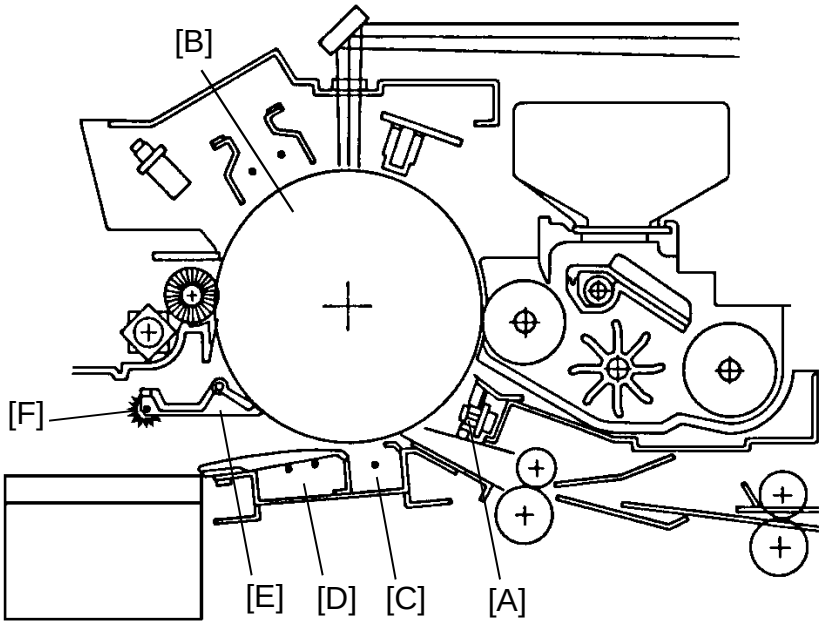
Copy number	Toner density detection cycle	Vsp/Vsg x 100	Toner supply ratio (If SP31=0)	Indicator
1st~10th copies	1st copy	18.3	30%	
11th~15th copies	11th copy	28.3	60%	
15th copy	15th copy	28.3	—	Add Toner indicator lights. (Toner end condition)

6.7.3 Toner End Recovery

After the toner cartridge is replaced and the front cover is closed, the CPU turns on the main motor, de-energizes the development clutch solenoid, and turns on the toner supply clutch for approximately 9 seconds to supply toner to the empty toner supply unit from the toner cartridge. Toner end detection is also done during this 9 second period. When the Vsp/Vsg x 100 becomes less than 15.2, the toner end or near end condition is cleared.

If the Vsp/Vsg x 100 stays greater than 15.2 (when the toner cartridge is not replaced), the toner end or near end condition is not cleared. In the near end condition, the remaining copies, maximum 50 copies, up to the toner end condition can be made. In toner end condition, only one copy can be made. However, if the Vsp/Vsg x 100 becomes greater than 28.0 in toner end condition, copying is inhibited. This prevents the customer from making many copies with the toner end condition by opening and closing the front cover.

7. IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION



7.1 PRE-TRANSFER LAMP (PTL)

After the latent image is developed but before the image is transferred to the copy paper, the drum surface is illuminated by the pre-transfer lamp [A]. This illumination reduces the negative potential on the drum surface [B]. This prevents the toner particles from being re-attracted to the negatively charged drum during the paper separation process. It also makes image transfer and paper separation easier.

7.2 IMAGE TRANSFER

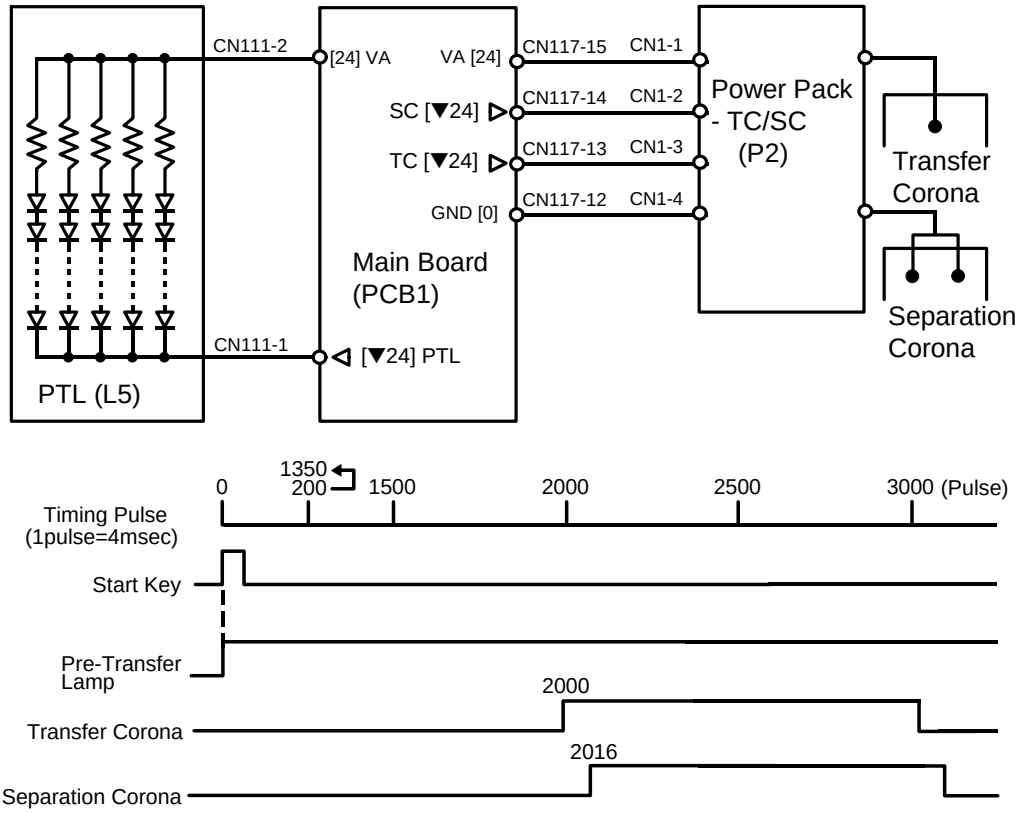
A high negative voltage (–4.8 kilovolts) is applied to the transfer corona wire [C], and the corona wire generates negative ions. These negative ions are applied to the back side of the copy paper. This negative charge forces the paper against the drum and attracts the positively charged toner onto the paper.

7.3 PAPER SEPARATION

After image transfer the copy must be separated from the drum. In order to break the attraction between the paper and the drum, the separation corona wire [D] applies an ac charge to the reverse side of the paper. The stiffness and weight of the paper causes it to separate from the drum.

The negative charge on the paper (from the transfer corona) is not completely discharged until the paper is far enough from the drum that the toner will not be reattracted to the drum. The two pick-off pawls [E] ensure that thin, low stiffness paper and upward curled paper separate completely. The spurs [F] prevent the unfused toner on the paper from being smeared by the pick-off pawls.

7.4 PRE-TRANSFER LAMP AND TRANSFER/SEPARATION CORONA CIRCUIT



When the Start key is pressed, the main board outputs a LOW signal (CN111-1) to turn on the pre-transfer lamp (PTL). The pre-transfer lamp is composed of 50 LEDs.

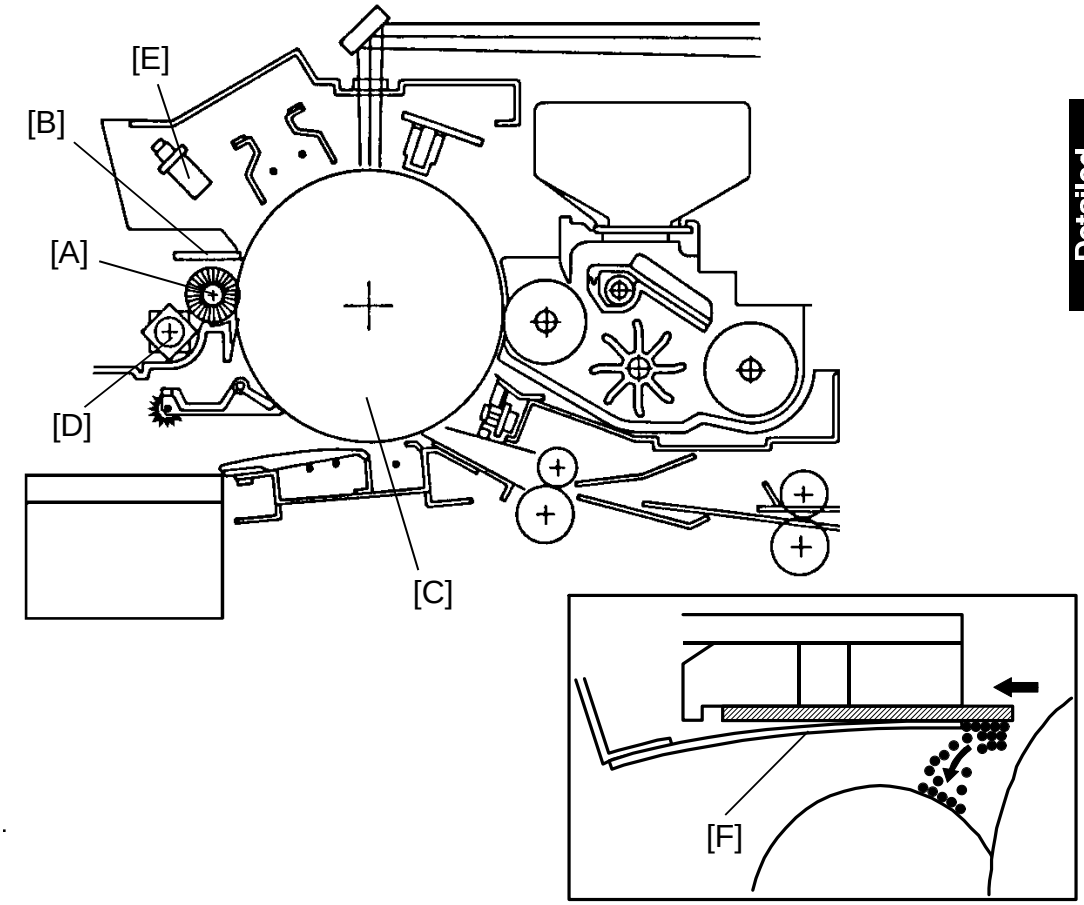
To apply the negative charge for the transfer corona, the main board outputs a LOW signal (CN117-13) 3.4 seconds after the Start key is pressed.
To apply an ac charge for the separation corona, the main board outputs a low signal (CN117-14) about 3.5 seconds after the Start key is pressed.

The TC/SC power pack has a dc to dc converter and a dc to ac inverter. The dc to dc converter changes +24 volts to –4.8 kilovolts for the transfer corona. The inverter changes +24 volts to the 5.0 kilovolts ac (500 Hz) for the separation corona.

The separation corona circuit in the TC/SC power pack has a current leak detection circuit for safety. When this circuit detects that more than 2.2 milliamperes is being supplied to the separation corona, the separation corona turns off immediately. When the main switch is turned off and on, or the front cover or the exit cover is opened and closed, this condition is cleared.

8. DRUM CLEANING

8.1 OVERVIEW



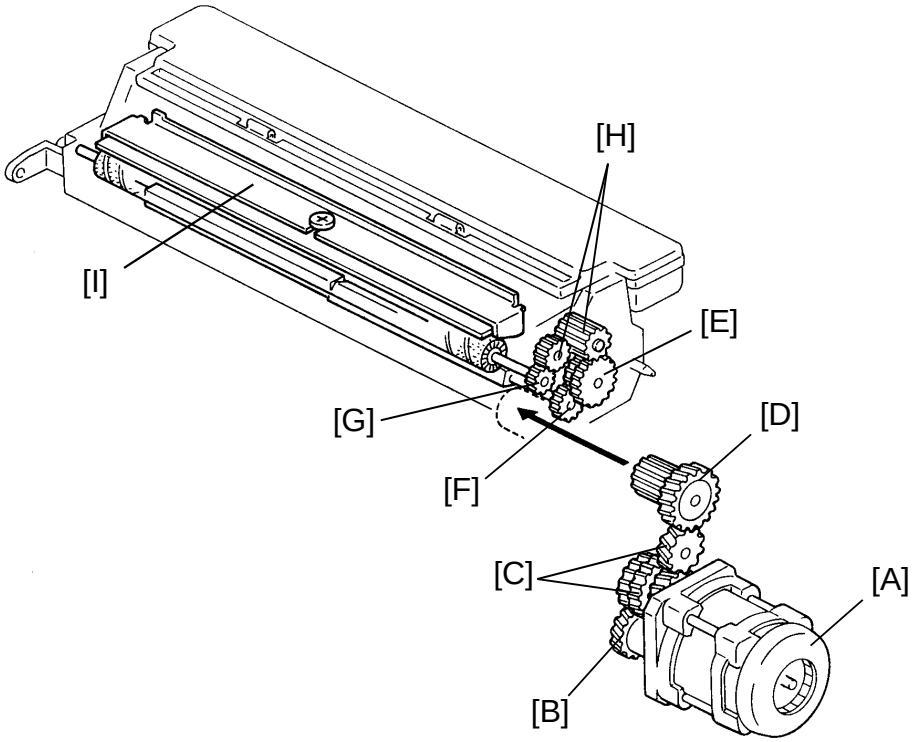
The cleaning brush [A] and cleaning blade [B] will remove any toner remaining on the drum [C] after the image is transferred to the paper.

The cleaning brush and drum move in opposite directions at their point of contact. The cleaning brush removes paper dust and nearly half of the toner from the drum surface to reduce the cleaning load placed on the blade.

The cleaning blade removes the remaining toner. The falling toner catches in the fibers of the cleaning brush and is carried inside the cleaning unit. The toner collection roller [D] carries the used toner to the used toner tank. The quenching lamp [E] neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum in preparation for the next copy cycle.

The cleaning blade releases when the release knob is pressed. This cleans the edge of the cleaning blade using the blade scraper [F], which is mounted under the cleaning blade.

8.2 DRIVE MECHANISM



The rotation of the main motor [A] is transmitted to the cleaning unit through the main motor gear [B], the relay gears [C], and the cleaning drive gear [D].

The gear [E] driven by the cleaning drive gear passes the rotation to the toner collection roller gear [F] and to the cleaning brush gear [G] through the idler gears [H].

The cleaning blade [I] is mounted in the center of the blade and is tilted to apply even pressure.

8.3 USED TONER OVERFLOW DETECTION

The CPU uses the copy quantity or the number of toner end condition to detect the used toner overflow.

A used toner overflow condition is detected when either of the following conditions occur.

(1) When the copy quantity reaches 80000 copies.

When the copy quantity reaches 80000 copies, the CPU starts to blink "E70" on the operation panel. An additional 250 copies can be made before the Start indicator turns red and copying is inhibited.

(2) When the number of toner end condition reaches 11.

When the number of the toner end condition reaches 11, the following number of copies can be made before the "E70" starts to blink.
This number is determined by the copy quantity when the 11th toner end condition was detected.

N: Copy Quantity

78K < N < 80K	The remaining copies to reach 80000 copies can be made.
75K < N ≤ 78K	2000 copies can be made
50K < N ≤ 75K	3000 copies can be made
40K < N ≤ 50K	1000 copies can be made
less than 40K	No copy

After the above number of copies is made, the CPU starts to blink "E70". Up to an additional 250 copies can be made after this. Then, the Start key turns red and copying is inhibited.

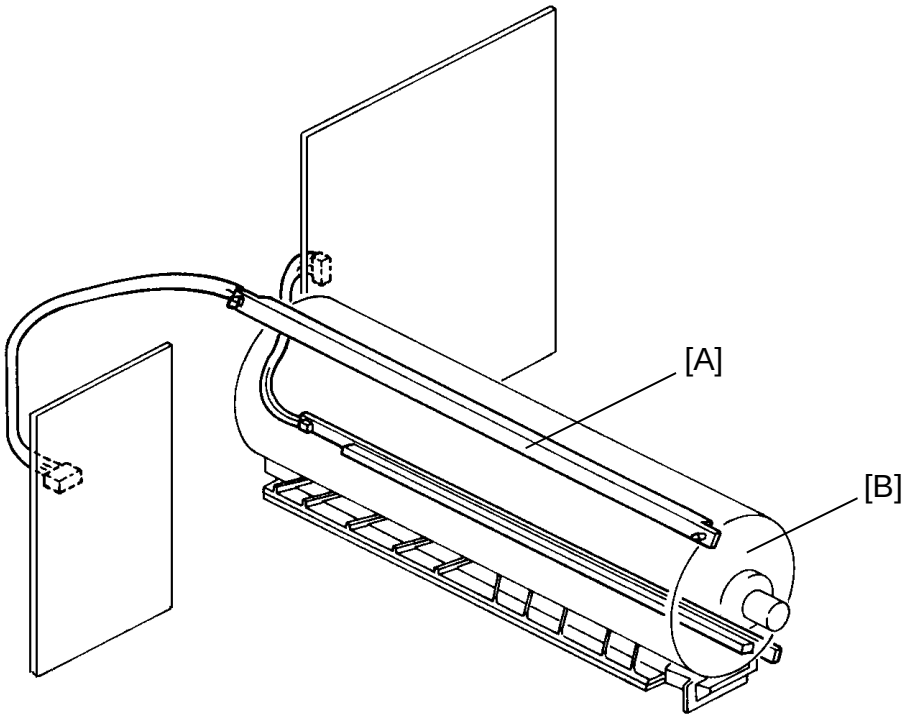
After disposing of the toner in the used toner tank, SP83 should be done to clear the memory counter for the number of toner end condition and copy quantity.

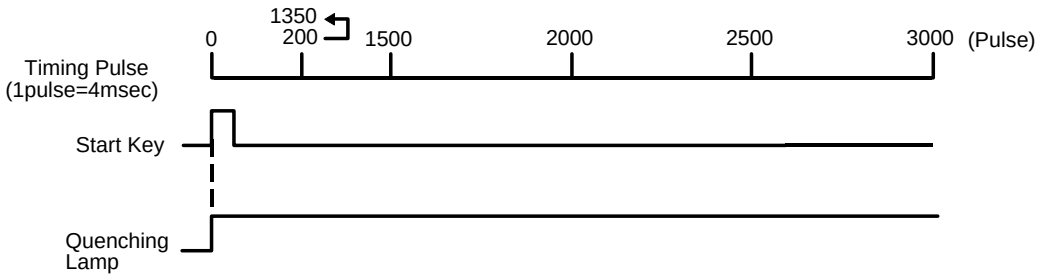
Toner end counter clear (SP83)

Data (SP83)	Memory counter
0	Not clear
1	Clear

SP58 shows the number of toner end condition. When "1" is input in SP83, the data of SP58 is cleared. There is no SP mode to display the copy quantity between toner end counter clearings.

9. QUENCHING



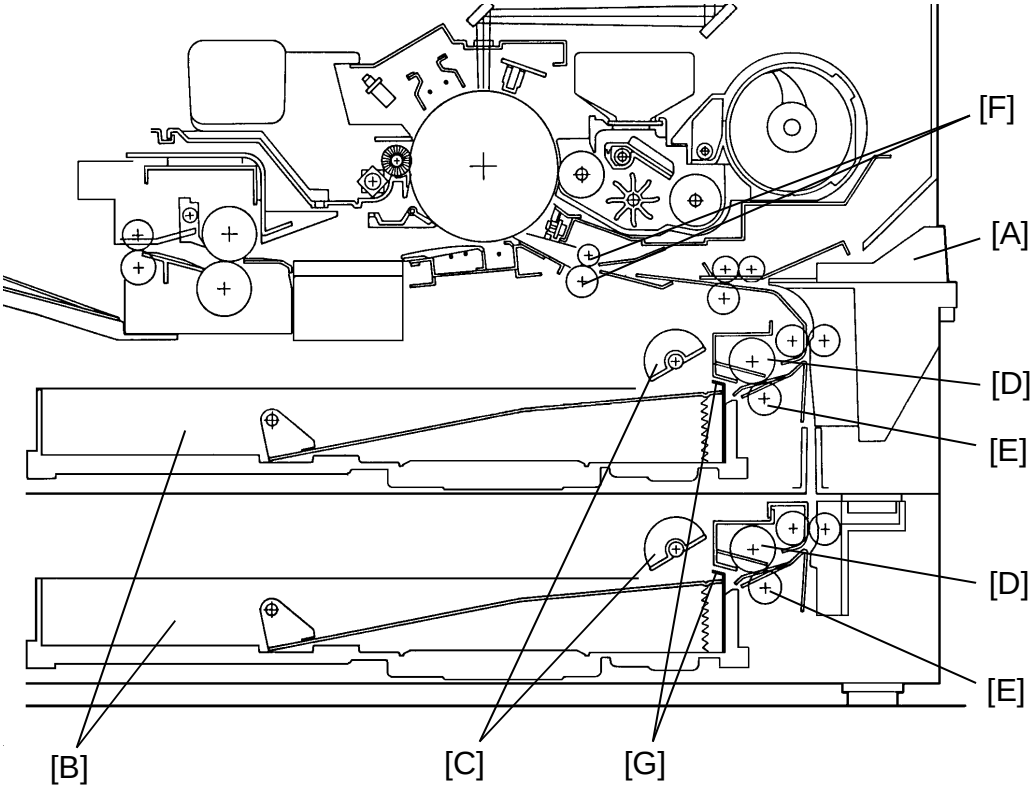


In preparation for the next copy cycle, light from the quenching lamp [A] neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum [B].

A neon lamp is used for quenching. It is turned on when the Start key is pressed.

10. PAPER FEED AND REGISTRATION

10.1 OVERVIEW



A076/A077 copiers has one paper feed station and manual feed table [A]
A078 copier has two paper feed stations and manual feed table.

The first and second feed stations use a paper tray [B] which can load 250 sheets. The manual feed table can load 1 sheet.

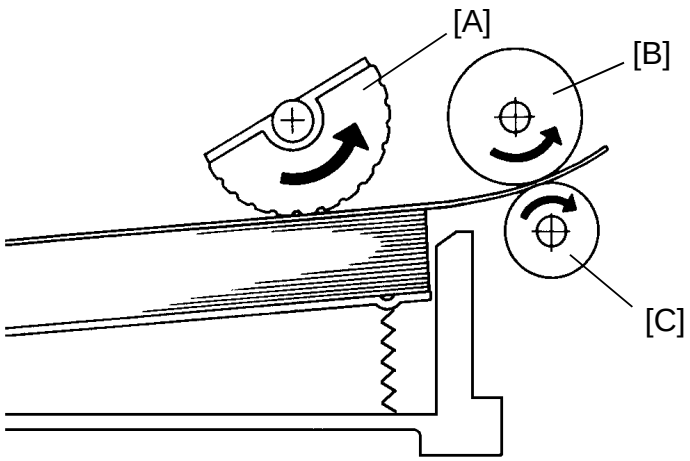
The first and second feed stations utilize an FTR (Feed + Torque Roller) feed system. Rotation of the semicircular pick-up rollers (six rollers) [C] drives the top sheet of paper from the paper tray to the feed [D] and torque [E] rollers. The feed and torque rollers then take over the paper drive. If more than one sheet is fed by the pick-up rollers, the toque roller stops rotating due to a slip clutch (torque limiter clutch) which prevents all but the top sheet from passing through to the registration rollers [F].

The paper tray has two corner separators [G], which help to allow only one sheet to feed. They also serve to set the height of the paper stack.

When the paper tray is closed after the paper is loaded, the paper tray pushes the tray set switch. This informs the CPU that the paper tray is set.

This machine has no sensors or switches to detect the paper size.

10.2 TORQUE ROLLER FEED SYSTEM



This copier uses an FTR (Feed + Torque Roller) paper feed system which utilizes three rollers.

10.2.1 Pick-up Roller

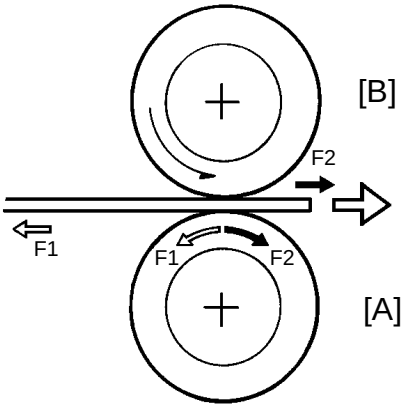
The semicircular pick-up rollers [A] are not in contact with the paper stack before it starts feeding paper.

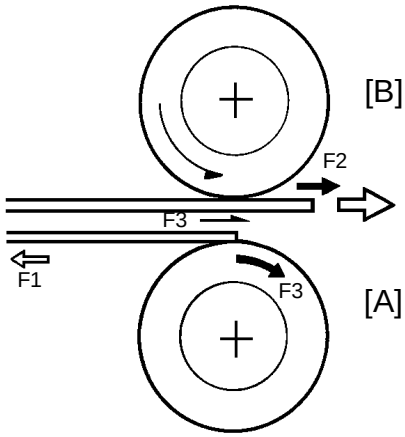
Shortly after the Start key is pressed, the semicircular pick-up roller rotates to feed the top sheet to the feed [B] and torque [C] rollers.

At almost the same time that the paper's leading edge arrives at the feed roller, the semicircular pick-up rollers rotate off of the paper stack. Therefore, the pick-up rollers do not interfere with the operation of the feed and torque rollers. The feed and torque rollers then take over the paper feed process.

10.2.2 Feed and Torque Rollers

There is a one-way bearing inside the feed roller so it can turn only in one direction. The torque roller is driven by the feed roller and can turn in the opposite direction to the feed roller. As the torque roller is only driven by the feed roller, the torque roller can not turn in the same direction.

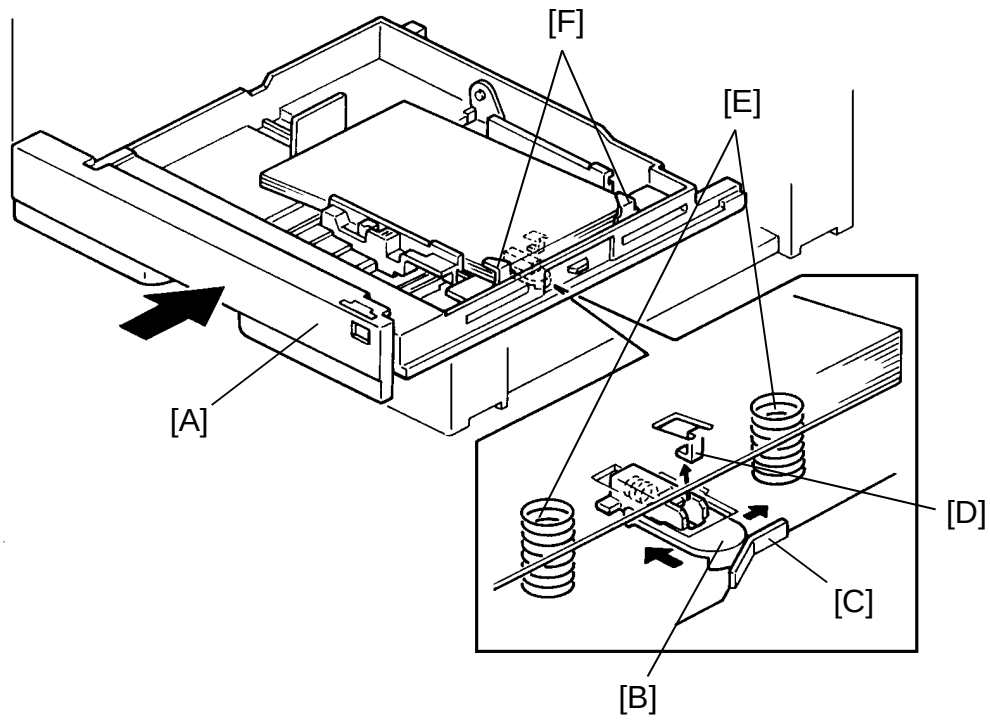




The slip clutch (torque limiter clutch) is located on the shaft of the torque roller [A]. The slip clutch applies a constant counterclockwise force (F1). When there is a single sheet of paper being driven between the rollers, the force of friction between the feed roller [B] and the paper (F2) is greater than F1. So, the torque roller turns clockwise.

When two or more sheets are fed between the rollers, the forward force on the second sheet (F3), is less than F1 because the coefficient of friction between the two sheets is small. So, the torque roller stops rotating and the second sheet cannot be fed.

10.3 PAPER LIFT MECHANISM



When the paper tray [A] is closed after paper is loaded, the plate release slider [B], which is mounted on the bottom part of the paper tray, is pushed by the projection [C] of the copier frame and the release slider comes off the bottom plate hook [D]

Once the release slider comes off, the bottom plate is raised by the pressure springs [E] and the top sheet pushes up the corner separators [F]. This keeps the stack of paper at the correct height.

10.4 PAPER LENGTH DETECTION

The paper length is measured by the registration sensor and is stored in memory while paper is fed through the registration sensor. This is performed only during the first copy after the following actions:

1. When the main switch is turned on.
2. When the front cover is opened and closed.
3. When the paper tray is opened and closed.

The previous paper length memory is also cleared by the above actions.

According to the following table, the CPU determines the size of the paper in the paper tray based on the paper length measured by the registration sensor.

Paper length (mm)	Paper size
364	B4
356	10" x 14"
330	8 1/2" x 13"
297	A4R
279	8 1/2" x 11"
267	8" x 10 1/2"
257	B5R
254	8" x 10"
216	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
210	A5R

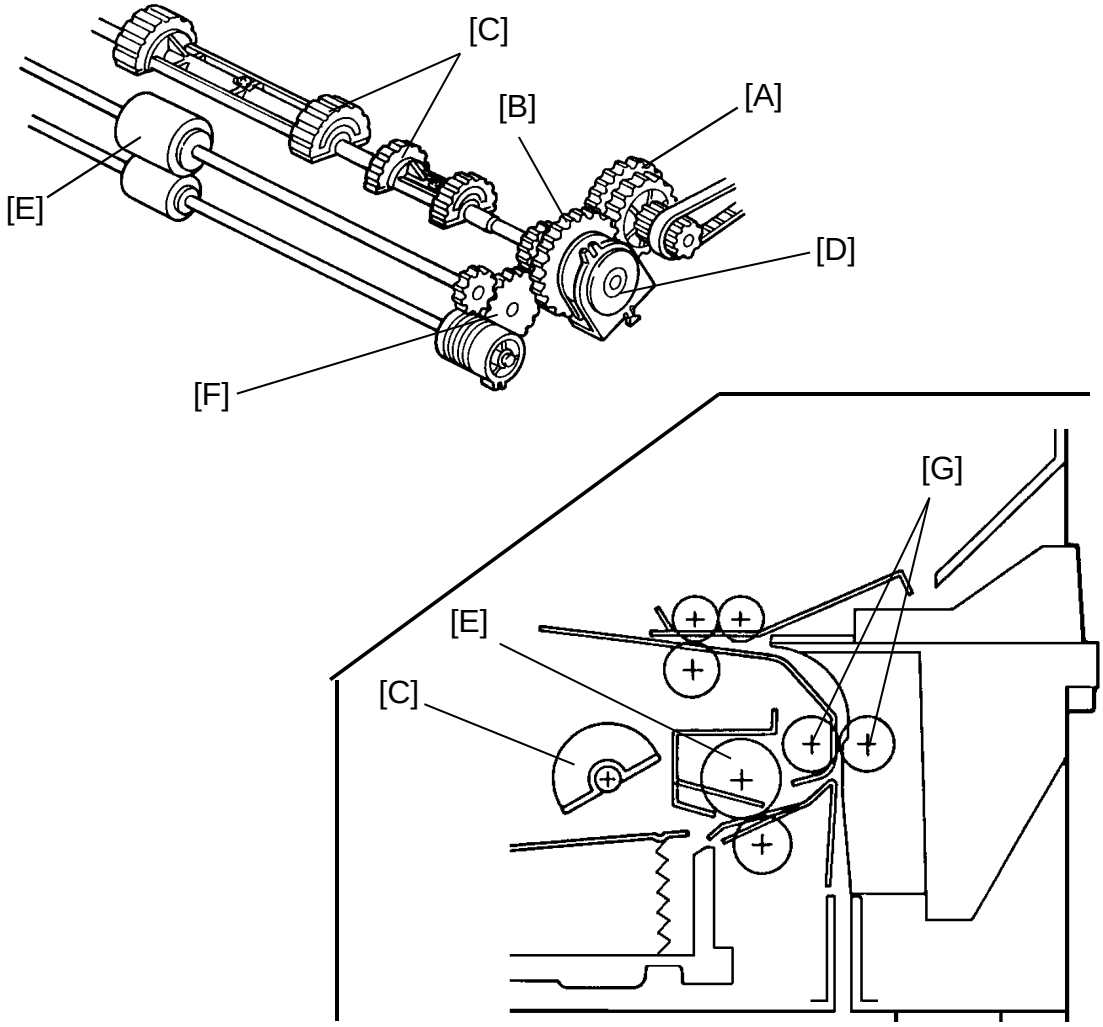
Since the CPU does not have the paper length in memory for the first copy cycle, the CPU controls the machine for the maximum paper size of B4 (257 mm x 364 mm).

From the second copy cycle on, the CPU controls the machine for the correct paper size based on the data stored during the first paper cycle.

Whenever the manual feed table is used, the CPU determines the paper size to be B4 (257 mm x 364 mm).

10.5 PAPER FEED DRIVE MECHANISM

10.5.1 1st Feed Station



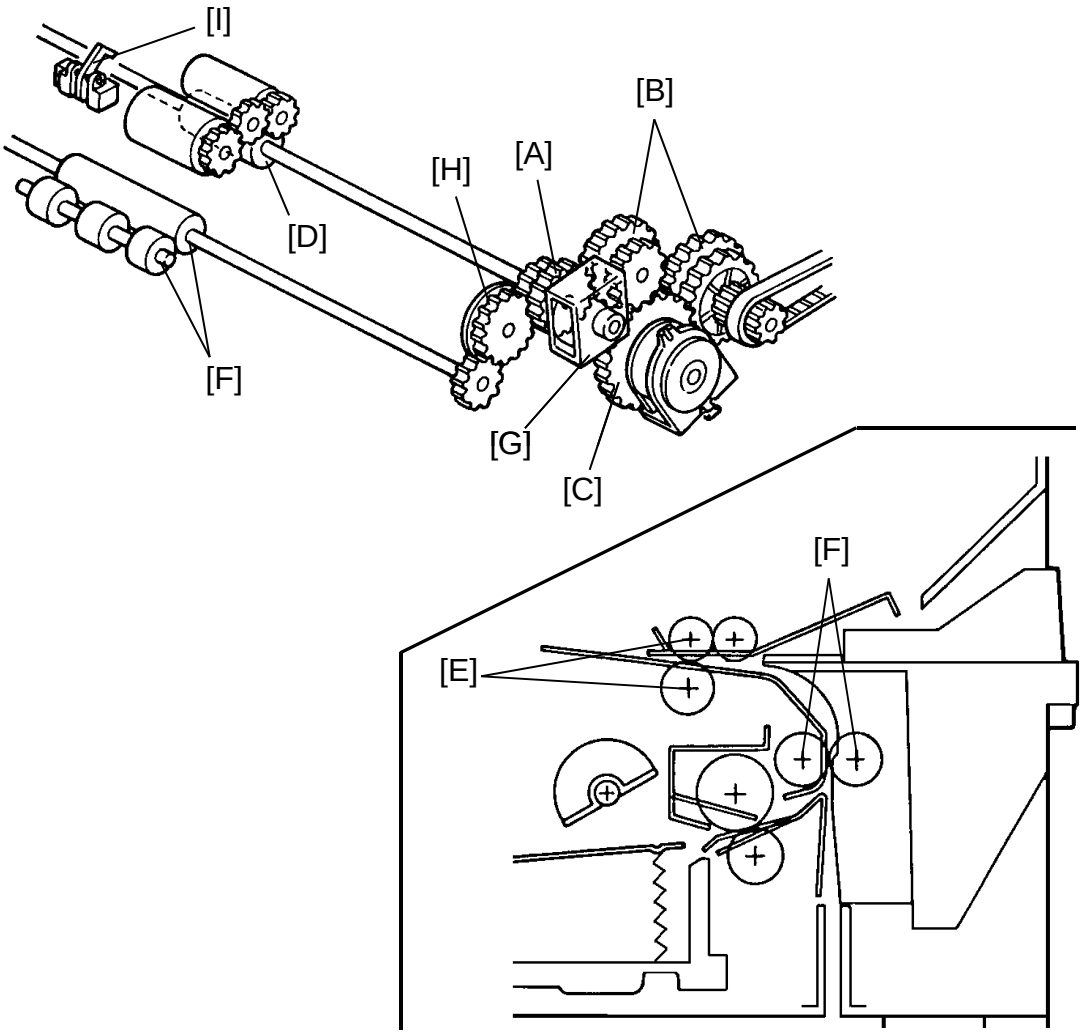
Through several gears and a timing belt, main motor rotation is transmitted to the relay gear [A] and then the 1st paper feed clutch gear [B]. The 1st paper feed clutch gear is secured on the shaft of the semicircular pick-up rollers [C].

The CPU energizes the 1st paper feed clutch [D] 800 milliseconds after the Start key is pressed. At this time, the semicircular pick-up rollers start rotating and this drive is transmitted to the feed rollers [E] by the relay gear [F], then paper starts to feed.

The 1st paper feed clutch stays on for 440 milliseconds. This allows that the semicircular pick-up rollers rotate only one revolution. The feed roller also rotates while the pick-up rollers are rotating.

The leading edge of the copy paper reaches to the 2nd relay rollers [G] when the 1st paper clutch de-energizes.

10.5.2 1st and 2nd Relay Rollers

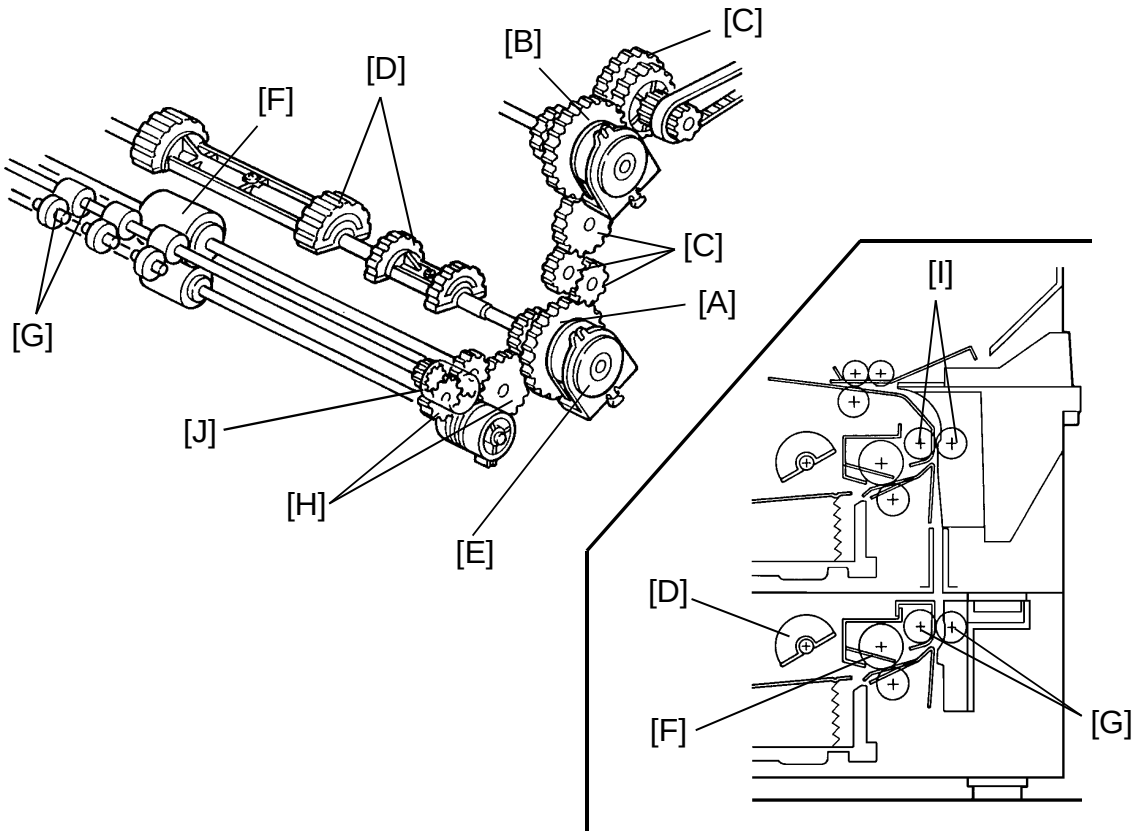


The main motor rotation is transmitted to the relay roller clutch gear [A] through the timing belt, the relay gears [B], and the 1st paper feed clutch gear [C]. The relay roller clutch gear is secured on the shaft of the lower 1st relay roller [D]. The rotation timing for the 1st relay rollers [E] and 2nd relay rollers [F] is controlled by the relay roller clutch [G].

The CPU energizes the relay roller clutch when the 1st or 2nd feed clutch de-energizes. (1.24 seconds after the Start key is pressed.)
At this time, the 1st relay roller starts rotating. This drive is transmitted to the 2nd relay rollers through the relay gear [H]. Then, the leading edge of the copy paper reaches to the 2nd relay rollers. Paper is fed from the 2nd and 1st relay rollers to the registration roller.

The relay sensor [I] is located just before the 1st relay rollers. This sensor is used for paper misfeed detection.

10.5.3 2nd Feed Station (A078 copier only)



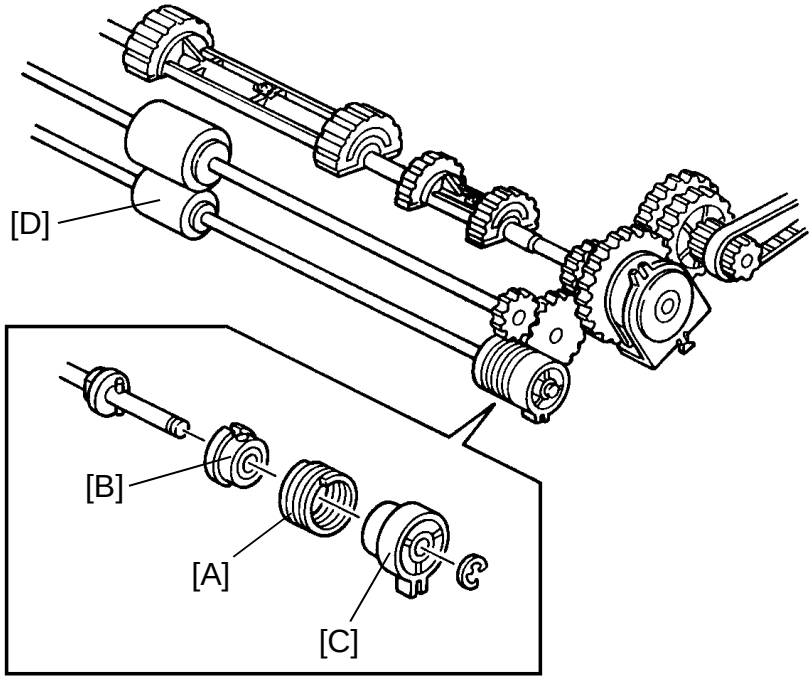
The main motor rotation is transmitted to the 2nd feed clutch gear [A] through a timing belt, 1st paper feed clutch gear [B], and the relay gears [C]. The 2nd feed clutch gear is secured on the shaft of the semi-circular pick-up rollers [D].

The CPU energizes the 2nd paper feed clutch [E] 800 milliseconds after the Start key is pressed. At this time, the semicircular pick-up rollers start rotating and this drive is transmitted to the feed roller [F], and 2nd feed relay rollers [G] through the relay gears [H]. Then paper starts to feed.

The 2nd paper feed clutch turns on twice, one for 600 milliseconds and once for 1140 milliseconds. This allows that the semicircular pick-up rollers will rotate for two revolutions. The feed roller and the feed relay rollers also rotate during the pick-up rollers rotation. This allows the leading edge of the paper to reach the 2nd relay rollers [I]. Then, the 2nd relay rollers take over paper transport.

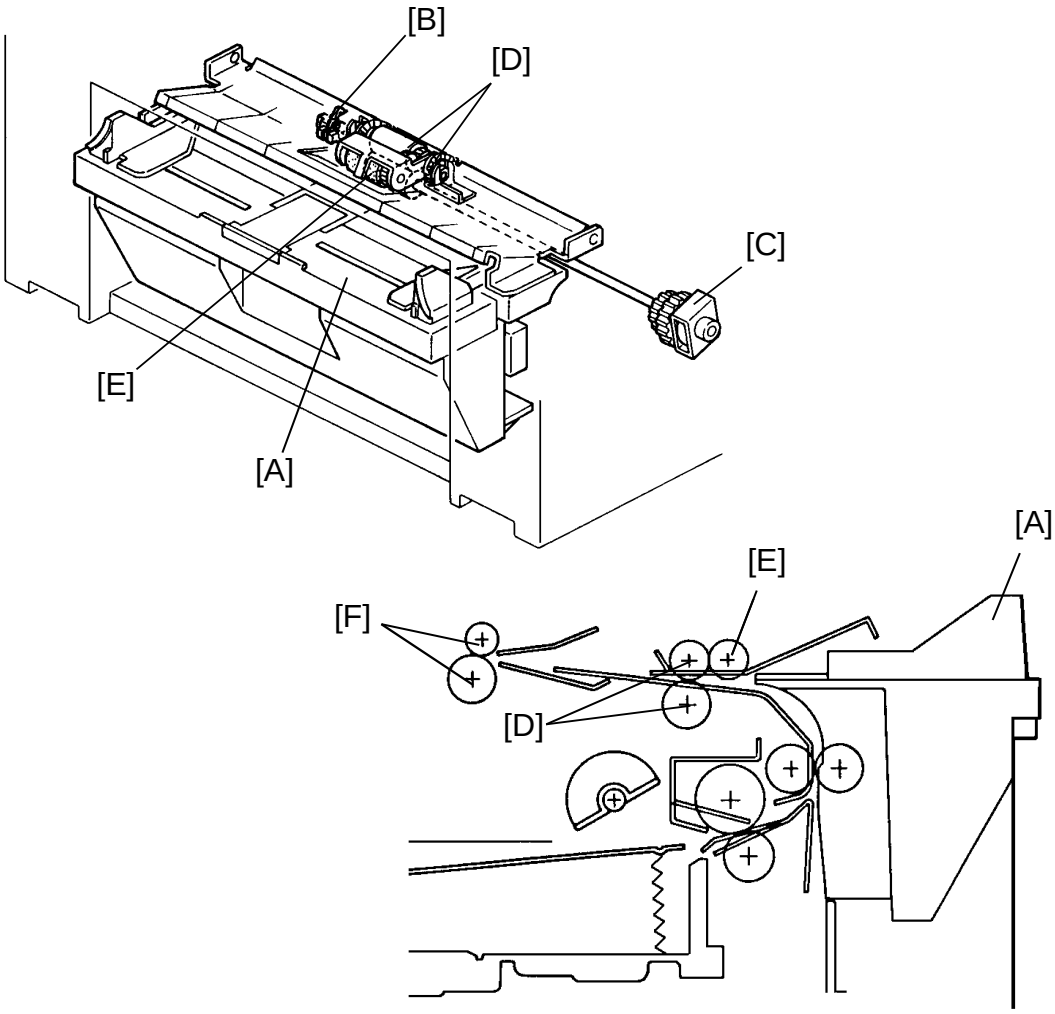
The second feed relay roller shaft has a one-way bearing [J] located on the end of the shaft. Therefore, the second feed relay rollers can rotate freely when a misfed paper is removed.

10.6 SLIP CLUTCH MECHANISM



The slip clutch consists of two hubs connected by a drive spring [A]. The spring grips the input hub [B] loosely and grips the output hub [C] tightly. It will slip if the resistance to rotation is too great. The hubs and spring are precisely machined, and the output hub and spring slip when a single sheet of paper feeds between the feed roller and torque roller [D].

10.7 MANUAL FEED TABLE



The manual feed table [A] can load only one sheet of paper.

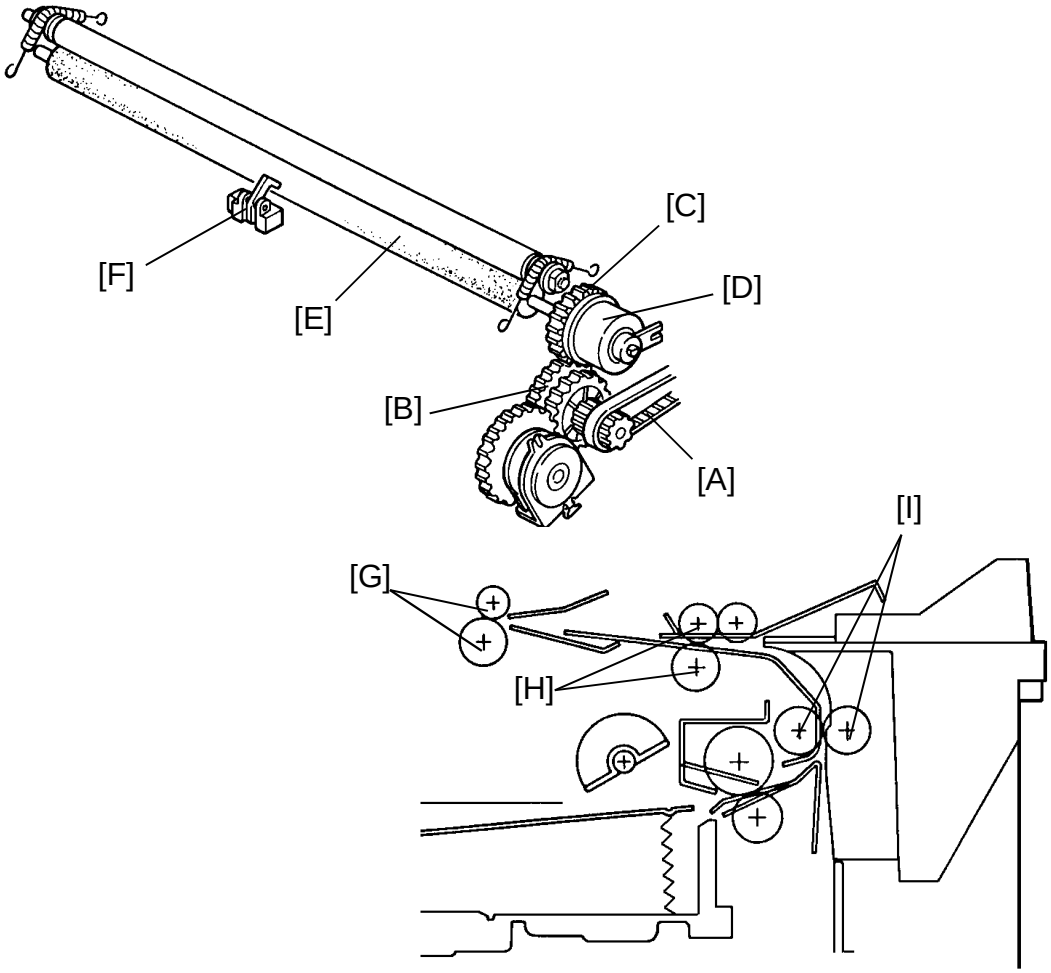
When the copy paper is set in the manual feed table and the leading edge of copy paper activates the relay sensor [B], the sensor sends a low signal to the main board so that the Interrupt indicator turns on. At this time, the CPU places the copier in the manual feed mode.

After the Start key is pressed, the CPU energizes the relay roller clutch [C], (the paper feed clutch does not energized) and the 1st relay rollers [D] starts rotating.

The 1st relay roller drive is transmitted to the manual feed roller [E]. Then, copy paper is fed from the manual feed rollers to the registration rollers [F].

The relay sensor is also used for paper misfeed detection.

10.8 PAPER REGISTRATION



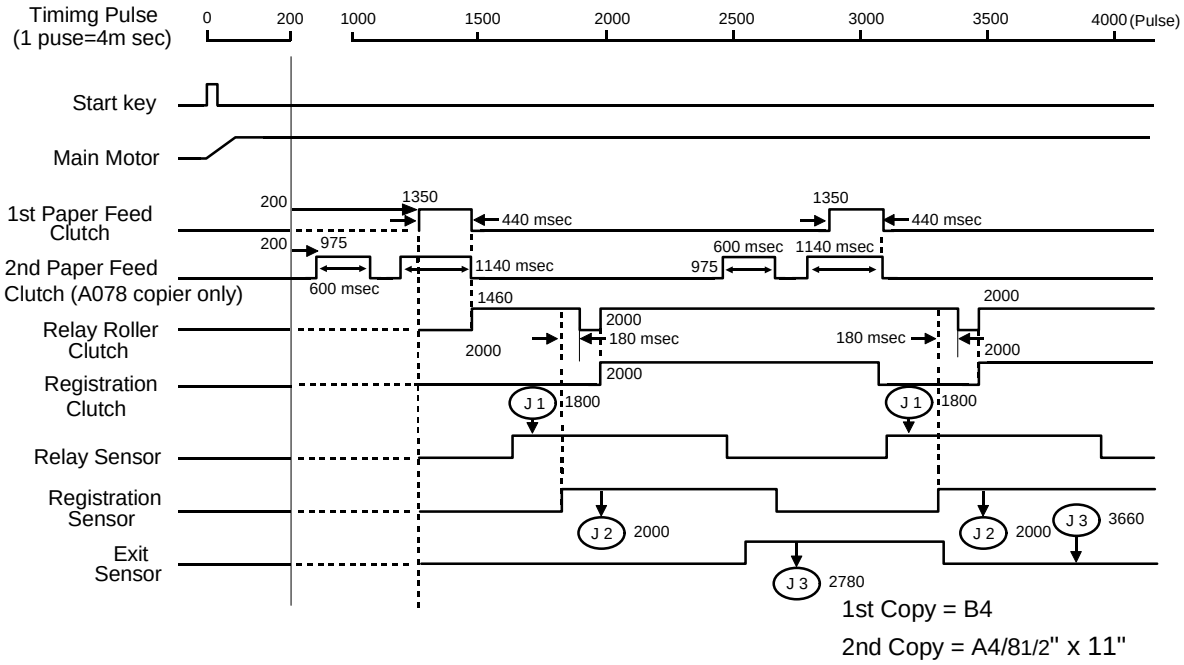
Main motor rotation is transmitted to the timing belt [A] through a series of gears. The timing belt rotate the relay gear [B] and then the registration roller clutch gear [C]. When the registration clutch [D] is energized, the rotation of the clutch gear is transmitted to the lower registration roller [E].

The registration sensor [F], which is positioned just before the registration rollers [G], controls the relay roller clutch stop timing. The relay roller clutch stays on for 180 milliseconds after the leading edge of paper actuates the registration sensor. At the end of the period, the CPU turns off the relay roller clutch. This delay allows time for the paper to press against the registration rollers and buckle slightly to correct skew.

The CPU energizes the registration clutch and re-energizes the relay roller clutch 3.4 seconds after the Start key is pressed. The registration, 1st [H] and 2nd [I] relay rollers then feed the paper to the image transfer section.

The registration sensor is also used for paper misfeed detection.

10.9 PAPER FEED AND MISFEED DETECTION TIMING



The relay sensor, registration sensor and exit sensor monitor the movement of the paper through the paper path. If the CPU determines that a misfeed exists, the Check Paper Path and the Misfeed Location Number (J1, J2, J3) indicators turn on. When the main switch is turned on, the CPU checks these three sensors for initial misfeed.

During the copy cycle, the CPU performs three kinds of misfeed detection:

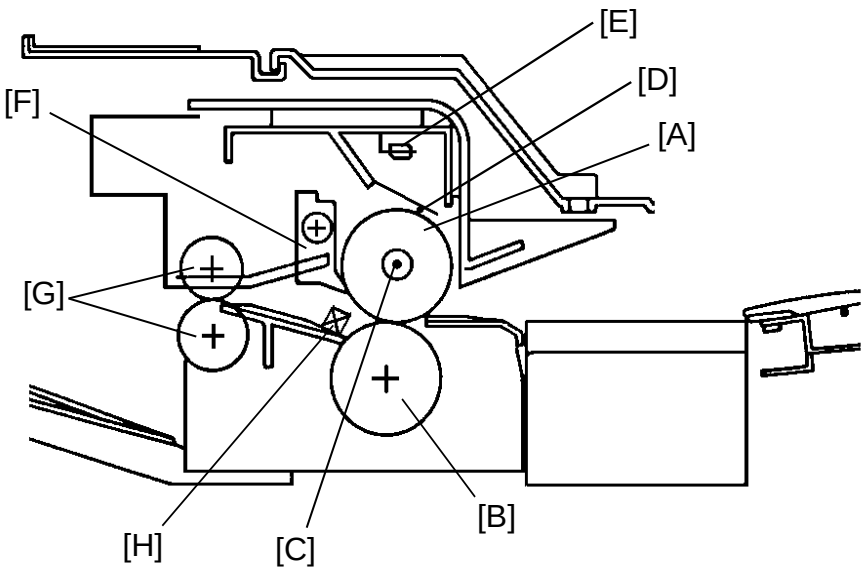
J1: This machine has no indicator and sensor to detect the paper end. J1 indicator is used for the paper misfeed and paper end.
Although the paper tray runs out paper, the Start indicator turns green. After the Start key is pressed, the CPU checks whether the relay sensor is actuated within 1800 pulses (2.6 seconds) (only J1 indicator turns on).

J2: Checks whether the registration sensor is actuated within 2000 pulses (3.4 seconds) after the Start key is pressed. (J2 and Check Paper Path indicators turn on).

J3: Check whether the exit sensor is actuated within 2780 pulses (6.52 seconds) after the Start key is pressed, or whether the copy paper has passed through the exit sensor 1060 pulses (4.24 seconds) (B4 size) after the exit sensor has been actuated. (J3 and Check Paper Path indicators turn on.)

11. IMAGE FUSING

11.1 OVERVIEW

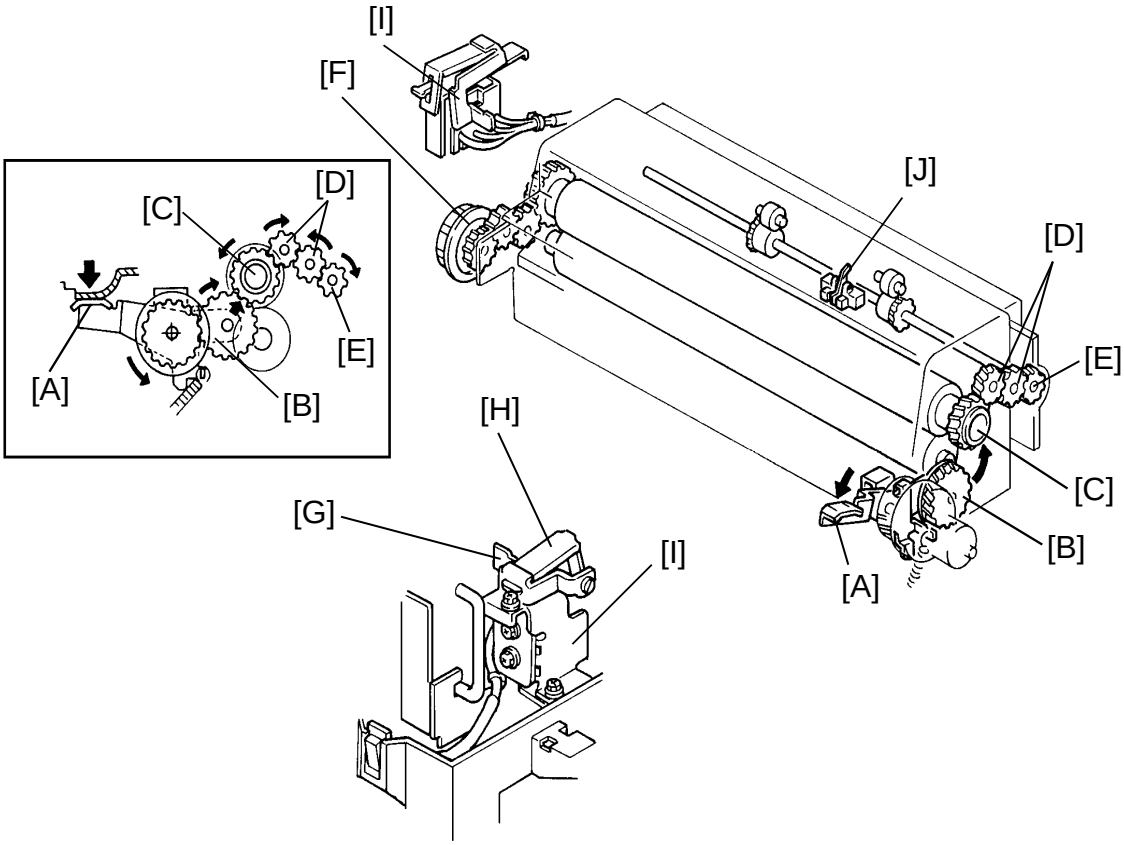


After the image is transferred, the copy paper enters the fusing unit. The image is fused to the copy paper by the process of heat and pressure through the use of a hot roller [A] and pressure roller [B].

The fusing lamp [C] is turned on and off to maintain the operating temperature of 185°C. The CPU monitors the hot roller surface temperature through a thermistor [D] which is in contact with the hot roller's surface. A thermoswitch [E] protects the fusing unit from overheating.

The hot roller strippers [F] separate the copy paper from the hot roller and direct it to the exit rollers [G]. The exit sensor [H] monitors the movement of the copy paper through the fusing unit and acts as a misfeed detector. While the exit rollers drive the copy paper to the copy tray.

11.2 FUSING DRIVE MECHANISM AND COVER SAFETY SWITCH



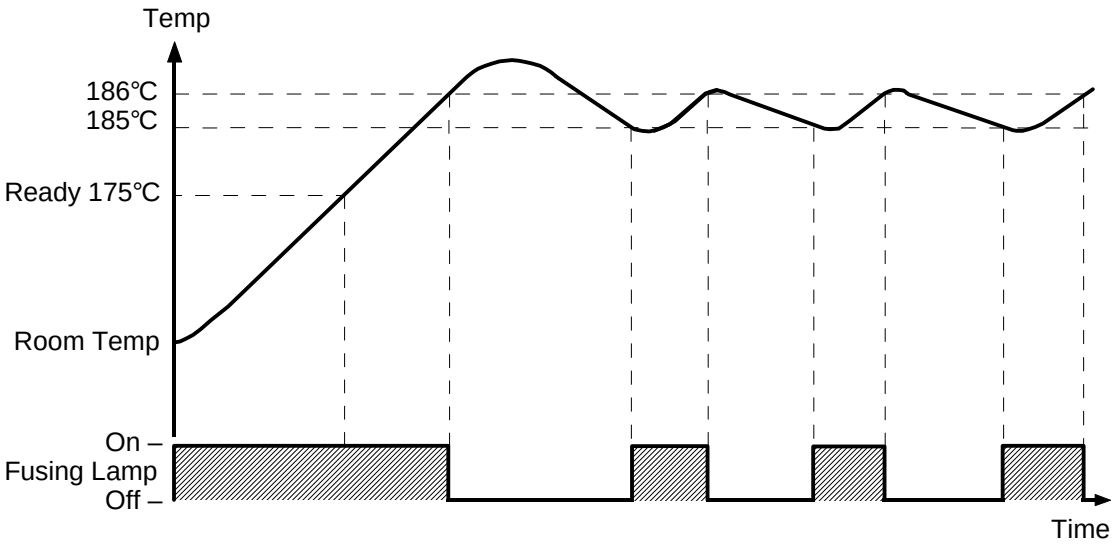
When the upper unit is closed and the lever [A] of fusing drive gear [B] is pushed, the main motor drive is transmitted to the fusing drive gear through a series of gears. The fusing drive gear turns the hot roller gear [C] and rotation passes from the hot roller gear through the idle gears [D] to the exit roller gear [E].

The fusing unit drive release mechanism automatically disengages the fusing drive gear when the upper unit is opened. This allows the fusing drive gear to rotate freely so that misfeed paper can be easily removed by rotation the fusing knob [F].

When the exit cover and/or the front cover is opened, the switch lever [G] and/or the switch arm [H] release the cover safety switch [I] to remove all power from the copier.

The exit sensor [J] is used for paper misfeed detection.

11.3 FUSING LAMP CONTROL



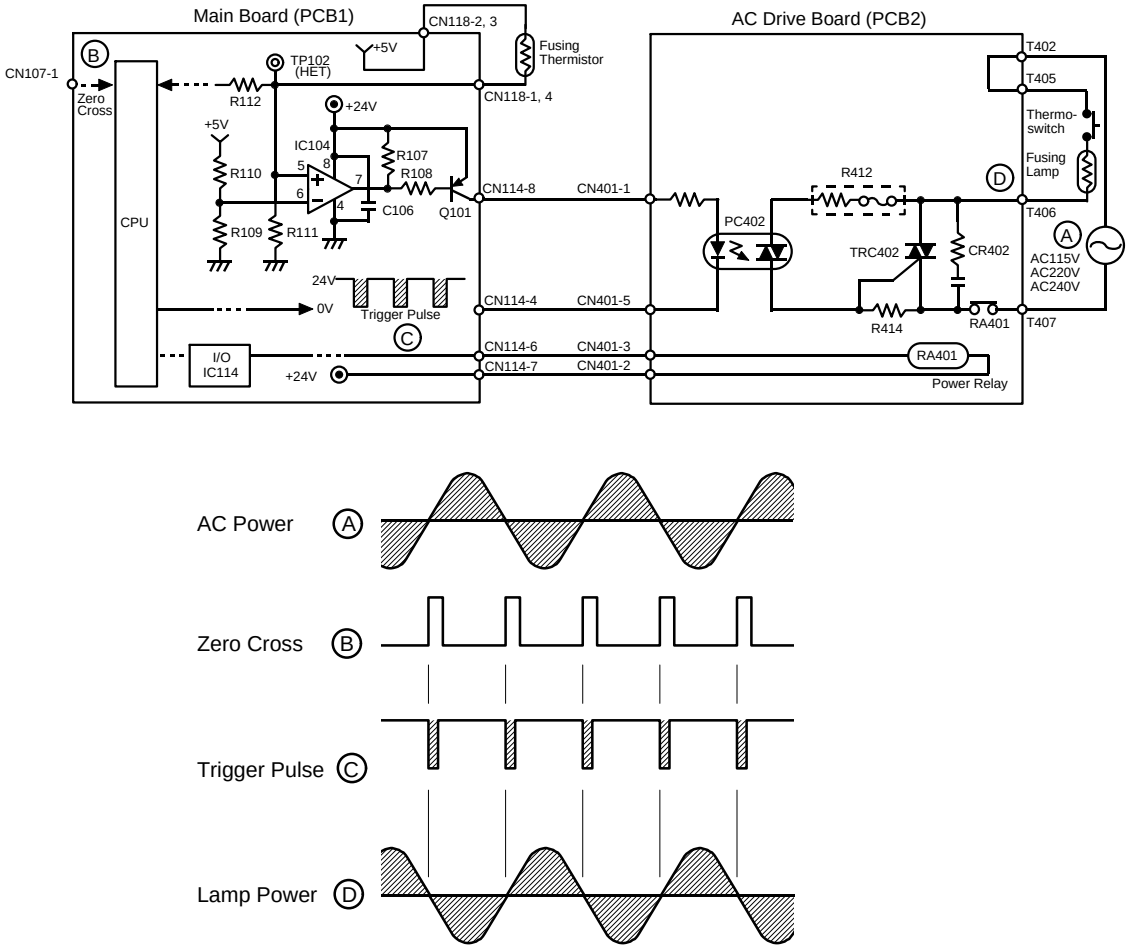
When the main switch is turned on, the CPU starts sending a trigger pulse to the fusing control circuit. The fusing control circuit then applies power to the fusing lamp. The power is applied until the CPU detects the ready temperature of 175°C through the fusing thermistor. This should take less than 30 seconds. Once the CPU detects the ready temperature, the CPU changes the timing of the fusing lamp on/off check (checks whether the fusing lamp should be turned on or off) from every 1 second to every 2 seconds.

During warm-up, the thermistor's temperature lags behind the hot roller's actual temperature. As a result, when the thermistor senses the ready temperature, the hot roller is already at or near the operating temperature. At this time the Start indicator turns green.

After that, the trigger pulse is turned on constantly when thermistor detects a temperature less than 185°C, and is turned off when the thermistor detects 186°C.

If the fusing lamp (900 W) is turned on or off when the exposure lamp is on, the power supplied to the exposure lamp will fluctuate, possibly degrading the copy image. To prevent this, the fusing lamp does not switch during scanning; it stays either on or off.

11.4 FUSING LAMP CONTROL CIRCUIT

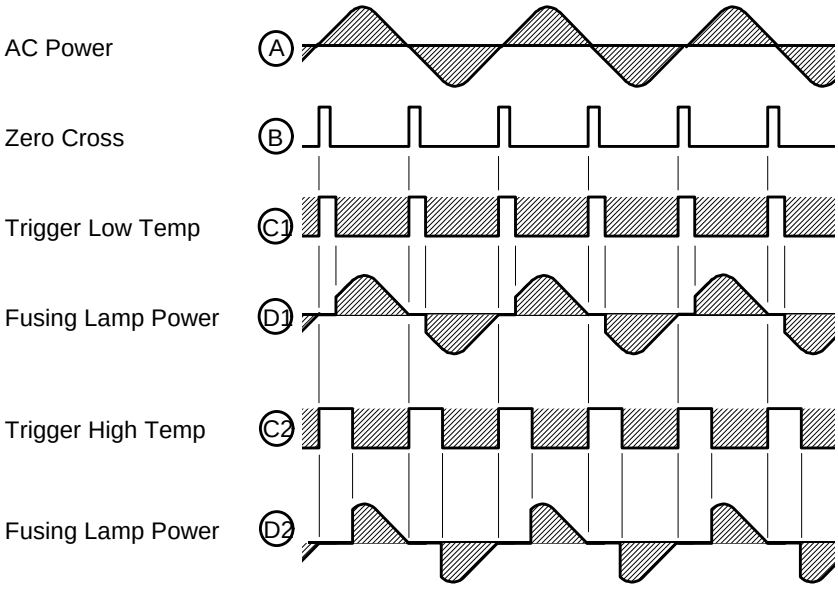


The main board monitors the fusing temperature through a thermistor. It also uses the zero cross signal generated by the dc power supply board to accurately control the applied power.

Normally, the voltage applied to the lamp is a full ac waveform. However, through SP29, fusing power can be phase controlled. (Normally, phase control is used only if the customer has a problem with electrical noise or interference.)

When the main switch is turned on, the main board starts to output a trigger pulse (C), which has the same timing as the zero cross signal (B), to the ac drive board. This trigger pulse allows maximum ac power to be applied to the fusing lamp. When the operating temperature is reached, the CPU stops outputting the trigger pulse (trigger goes HIGH) and the fusing lamp turns off.

11.4.1 Phase Control Mode



The main board sends the fusing lamp trigger pulse (LOW active) (C) to the ac drive board. PC402 activates TRC402, which provides ac power to the fusing lamp at the trailing edge of each trigger pulses. The trigger pulse goes HIGH when the main board receives the zero cross signal.

The amount of time that power is applied to the fusing lamp (D) depends on the temperature of the hot roller.

The trigger pulse (LOW part) is wider (C1) when the hot roller temperature is lower, and it is narrower (C2) when the hot roller is near the operating temperature.

11.4.2 Overheat Protection

IC104 and Q101 form an overheat protection circuit. When the fusing lamp is controlled within the normal range, pin 7 of IC104 stays LOW; therefore, Q101 stays on, allowing PC402 to operate. If the hot roller temperature reaches 240°C, the resistance of the thermistor becomes too low. At that time, pin 7 of IC104 becomes HIGH, turning off Q101 and stopping PC402. At the same time "E53" lights on the operation panel and the power relay (RA401) turns off.

Even if the thermistor overheat protection fails, a thermoswitch is installed in series with the fusing lamp. If the thermoswitch temperature reaches 170°C, the thermoswitch opens, removing power from the fusing lamp.

SECTION 3

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

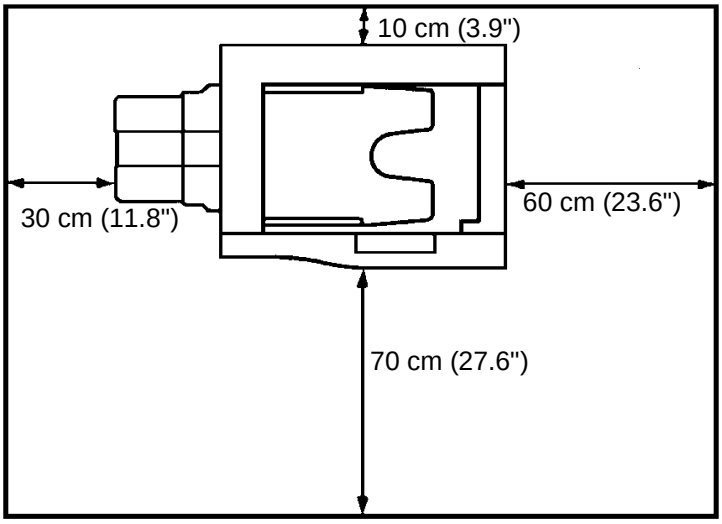
1.1 ENVIRONMENT

1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 30°C (50°F to 86°F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 90% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1500 lux (do not exposure to direct sunlight)
4. Ventilation: Room of more than 20 m^3. Room air should turn over at least 30 m^3/hour/person.
5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.15 mg/m^3 (4×10^{-3} oz/yd^3)
6. If the installation place is air-conditioned or heated, place the machine as follows:
   a) Where it will not be subjected to sudden temperature changes.
   b) Where it will not be directly exposed to cool air from an air-conditioner in the summer.
   c) Where it will not be directly exposed to reflected heat from a space heater in winter.
7. Avoid placing the machine in an area filled with corrosive gas.
8. Avoid any places higher than 2000 meters (6500 feet) above sea level.
9. Place the machine on a strong and level base.
10. Avoid any area where the machine may be subjected to frequent strong vibration.

1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

1. Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level
2. Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS



1. Front: 70 cm (27.6")
2. Back: 10 cm (3.9")
3. Right: 60 cm (23.6")
4. Left: 30 cm (11.8")

1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

1. Input voltage level:

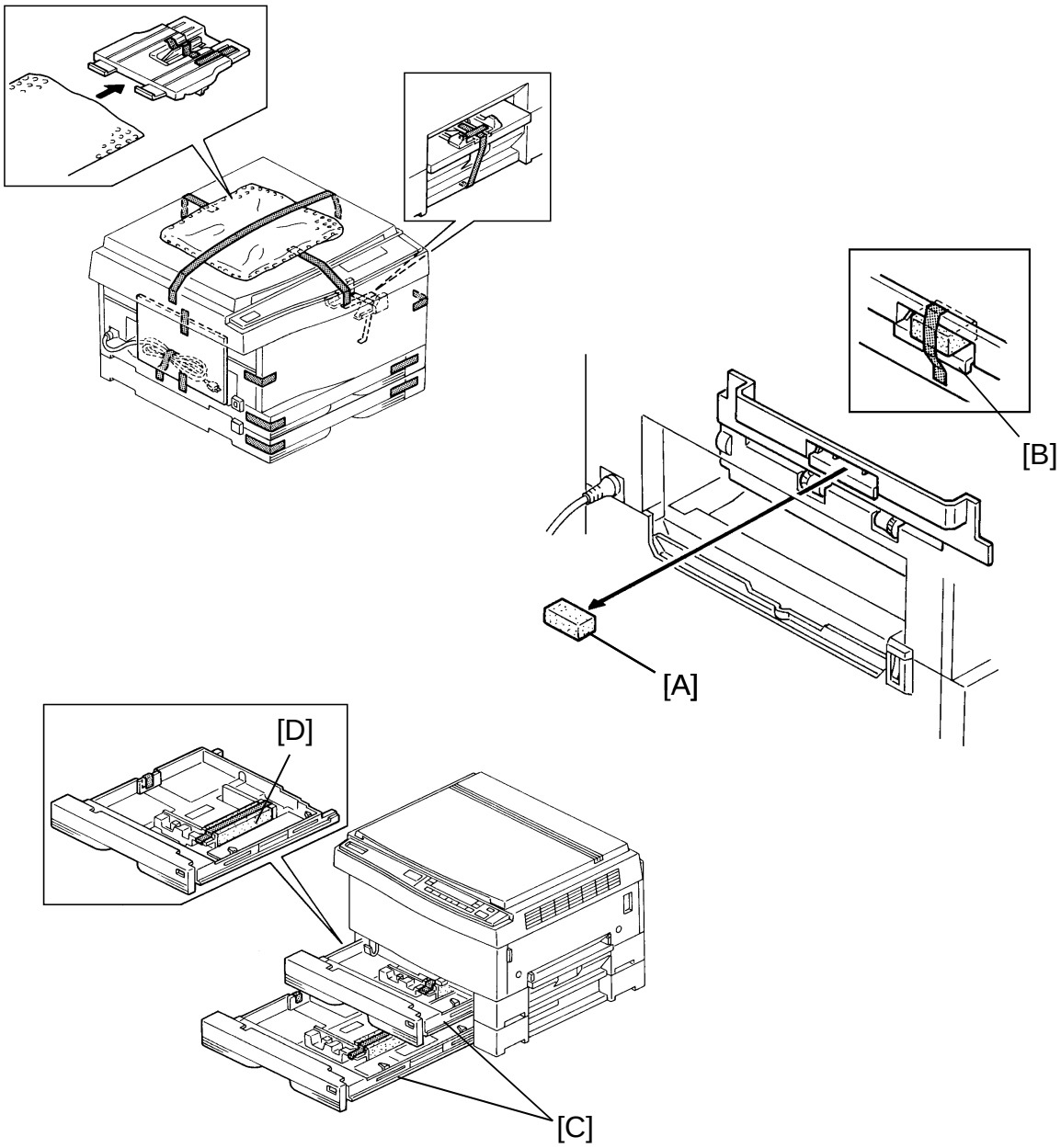
110 V/60 Hz : More than 15 A
115 V/60 Hz : More than 15 A
220~230 V/50 Hz : More than 8 A
220 V/60 Hz : More than 8 A
240 V/50 Hz : More than 8 A

2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10%
3. Do not set anything on the power cord.

NOTE: a) Be sure to ground the machine. (Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe.)
b) Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.
c) Avoid multi-wiring.

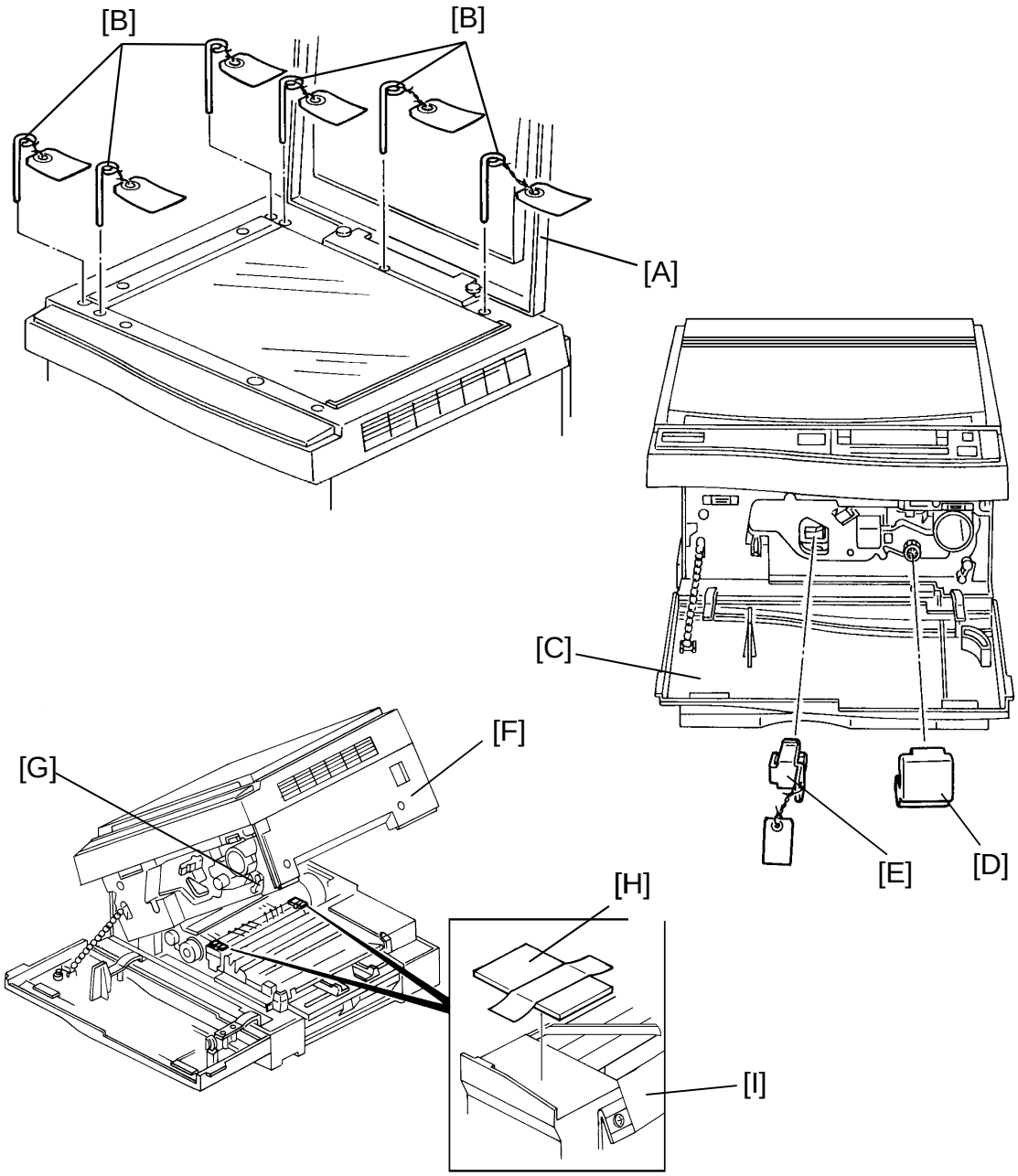
2. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

2.1 COPIER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



1. Remove the strips of tape from the copier as shown.
2. Remove the tape and foam block [A] from the exit release lever [B].
3. Pull out the paper trays [C]; then remove the foam block [D] and tapes. Close the paper trays.

   NOTE: A076 and A077 copiers have one paper tray.



4. Open the platen cover [A] and remove the lock pins [B].
   (A076 copier: 4 pins, A077 and A078 copiers: 6 pins)

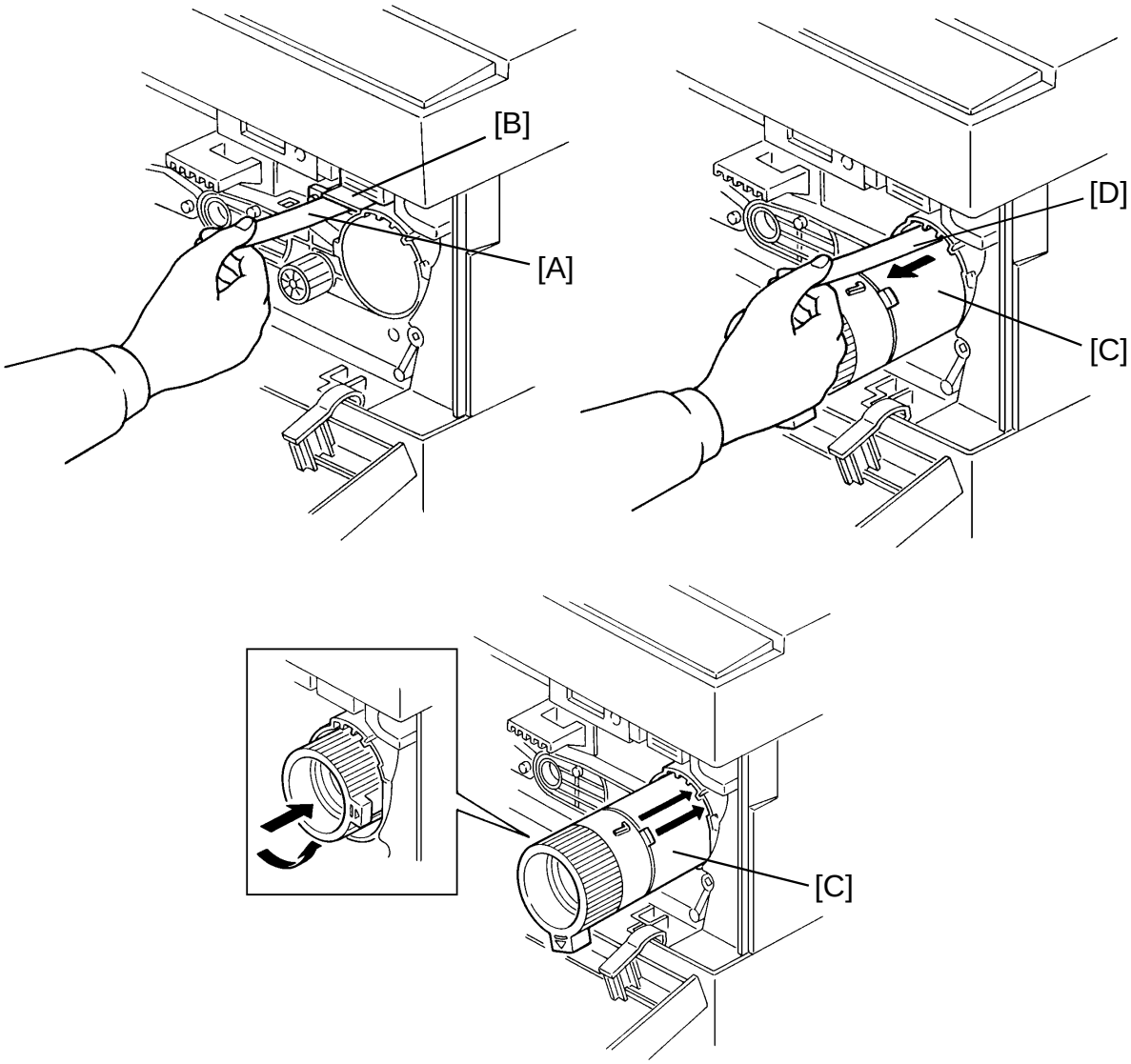
   NOTE: Save the lock pins for future shipping.

5. Open the front cover [C], and remove the foam block [D].

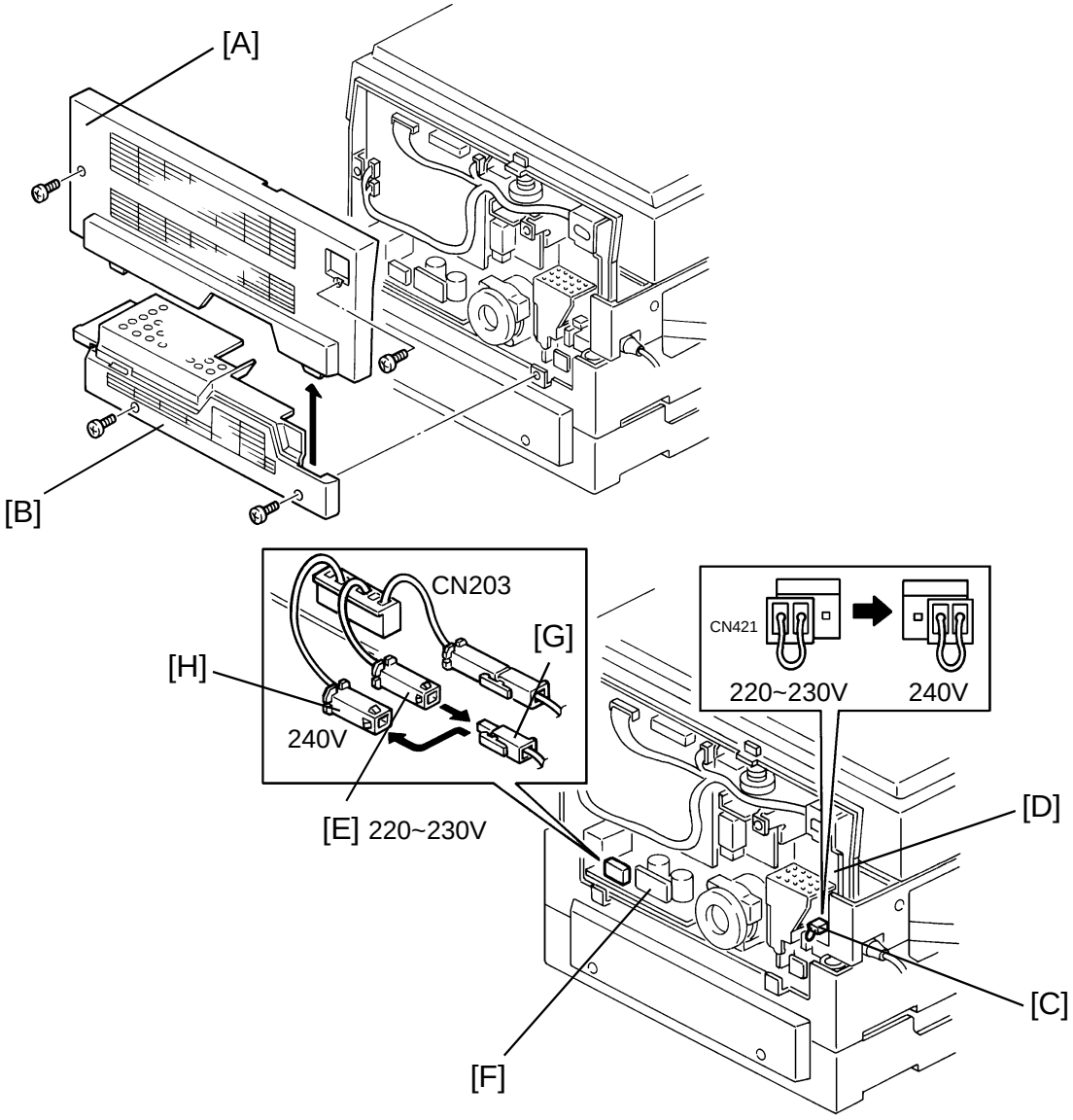
6. Remove the shipping retainer [E].

   NOTE: Save the shipping retainer for future shipping.

7. Open the upper unit [F] by pressing the release lever [G]. Remove the shipping spacers [H] from the transfer/separation corona unit [I].
   Close the upper unit.

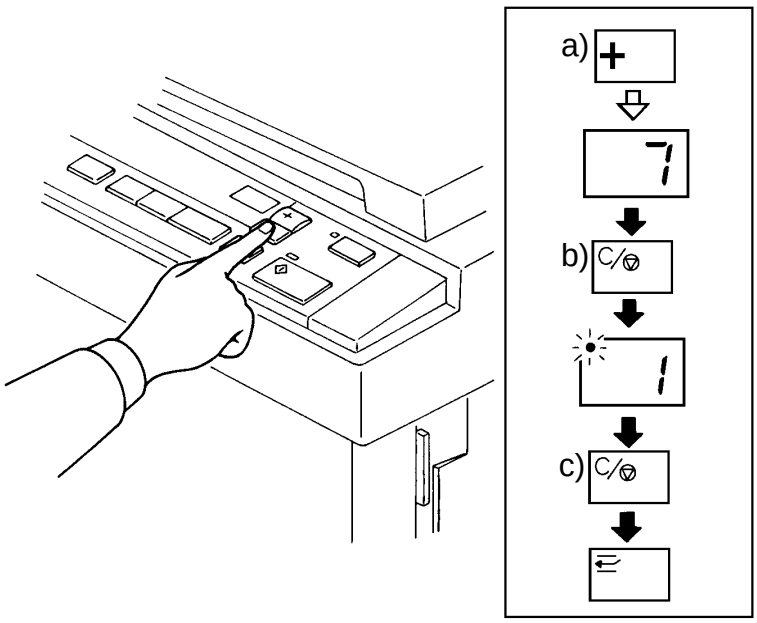


8. Pull off the seal [A] from the developer tank [B] to load the developer into the development unit.
9. Shake the toner cartridge [C] well and insert the cartridge while pulling off the seal [D]. Then, install the cartridge as shown.
10. Close the front cover.



CAUTION: This procedure (step 11) must be done only in 240 volt areas.

11. Perform the conversion from 220~230 V to 240 V as follows:
    1) Remove the upper rear cover [A] (2 screws).
    2) Remove the lower rear cover [B] (2 screws).
    3) Disconnect the short connector [C] (2P/White) on the ac drive board [D] from CN421 and reconnect it to CN421 as shown in the illustration.
    4) Disconnect the connector (1P/White) for 220~230 V [E] (Red Wire) on the dc power supply PCB [F] from the ac harness connector [G] and reconnect the connector (1P/White) for 240 V [H] (White Wire) to the ac harness connector.
    5) Reinstall the rear covers.



6) Plug in the machine and turn on the main switch, then lower the platen cover.

7) Enter the SP mode as follows:

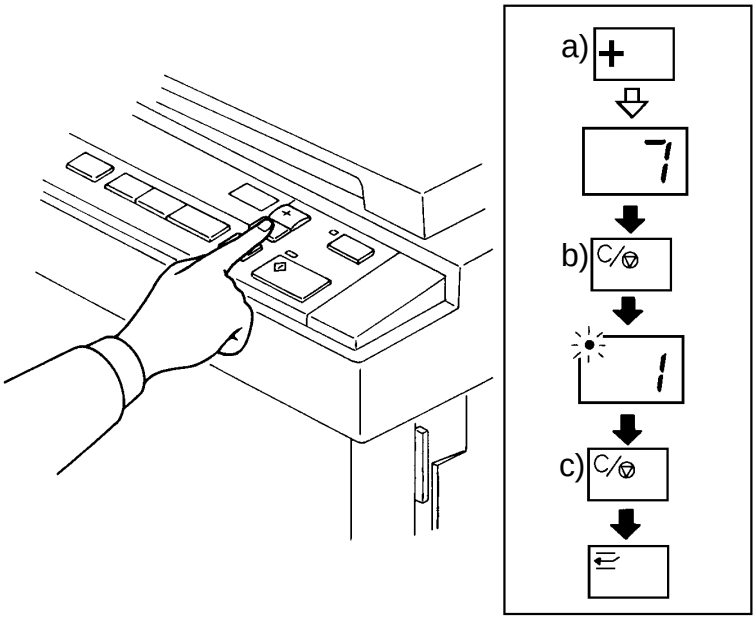
a) Enter "7" using the Quantity Increase (+) key.

b) Press and hold the Clear/Stop key until a dot (•) appears in the top left corner of the copy counter.

c) Press the Clear/Stop key, and then press the Interrupt key. "5" will start blinking.

8) Perform SP12 in the following sequence:

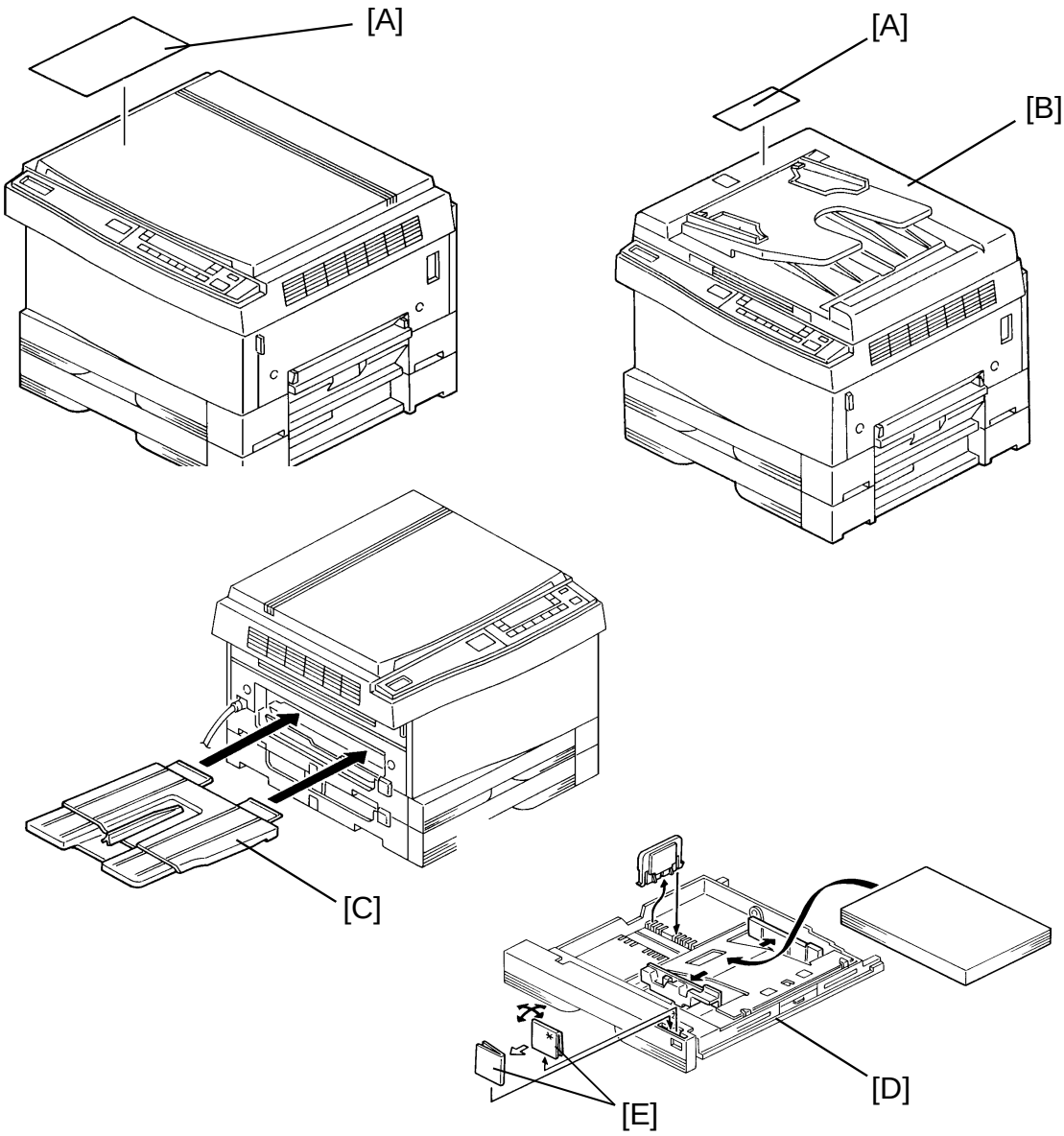
SP Mode Number		Procedure
12	Conversion from 220~230V to 240V.	Enter "12" using the Quantity Increase (+) key. Then, press the Auto Image Density key. Change the data from "0" to "1" using Quantity Increase (+) key. Then, press the Auto Image Density key. "12" will start blinking. Go to the step 12. 3).



12. Perform the developer initial setting.
    1) Plug in the machine and turn on the main switch, then lower the platen cover.
    2) Enter the SP mode as follows:
        a) Enter "7" using the Quantity Increase (+) key.
        b) Press and hold the Clear/Stop key until a dot (•) appears in the top left corner of the copy counter.
        c) Press the Clear/Stop key, and then press the Interrupt key. "5" will start blinking.

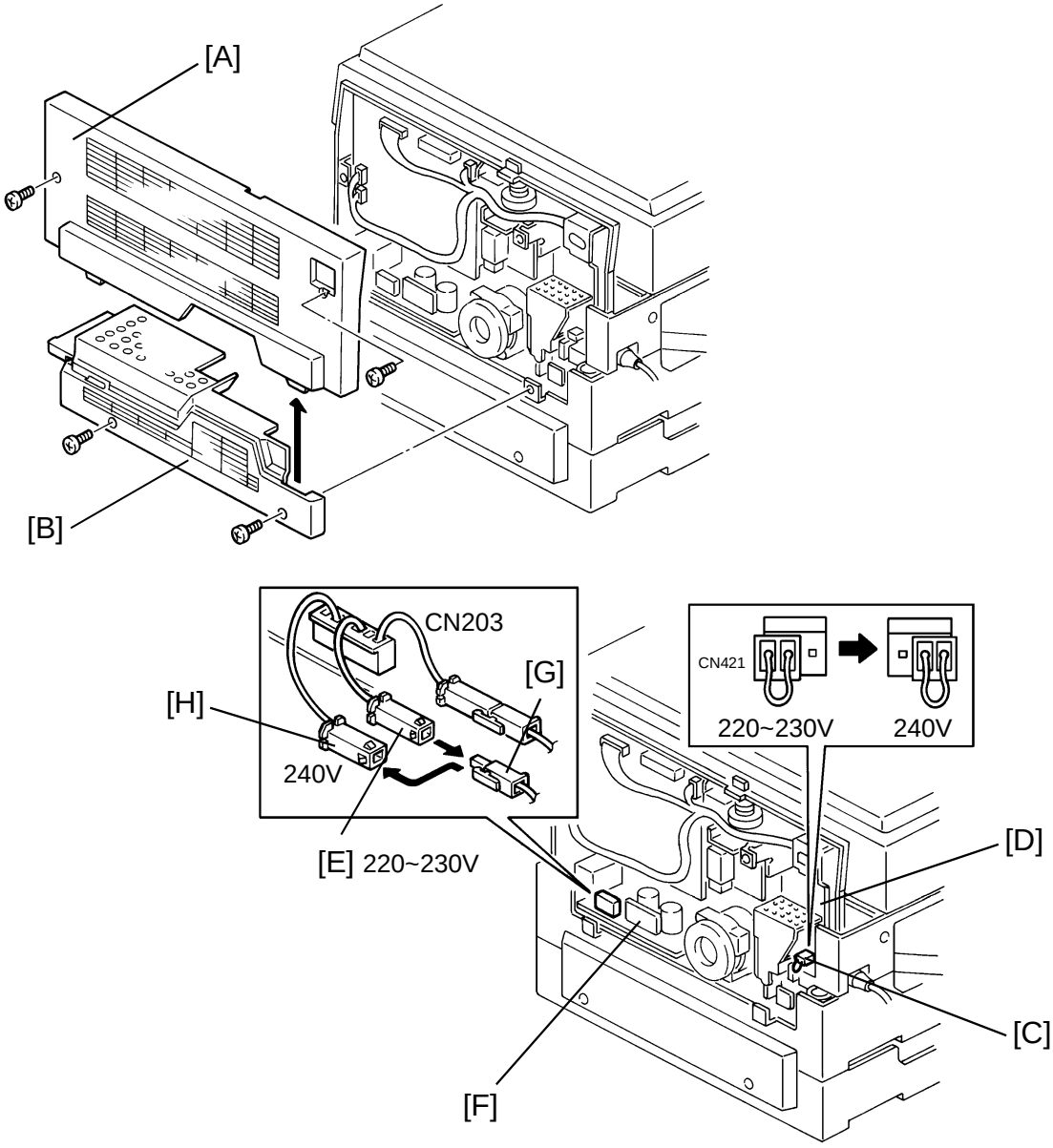
    3) Perform SP65 in the following sequence to agitate the developer.

SP Mode Number		Procedure
65	Developer Initial Setting	Enter "65" using the Quantity Decrease (–) key and press the Auto Image Density key. "50" will be displayed in the copy counter. Press the Start key for initial setting.

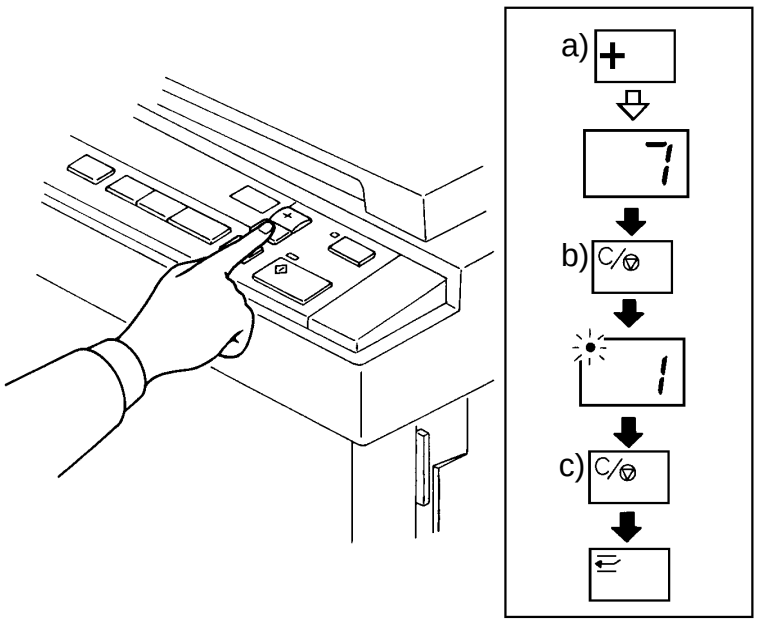


13. Place the decal [A] (symbol explanation) on the platen cover as shown, or when the DF [B] is installed on the machine, place the decal on the DF as shown.
14. Install the copy tray [C].
15. Load paper into the paper tray [D] according to the instruction decal on the paper tray.
16. Change the paper size plate [E] to display the correct paper size.
17. Check the machine operation and copy quality.

2.2 220~230/240V CONVERSION



1. Remove the upper rear cover [A] (2 screws).
2. Remove the lower rear cover [B] (2 screws).
3. Disconnect the short connector [C] (2P/White) on the ac drive board [D] from CN421 and reconnect it to CN421 as shown in the illustration.
4. Disconnect the connector (1P/White) for 220~230 V [E] (Red Wire) on the dc power supply PCB [F] from the ac harness connector [G] and reconnect the connector (1P/White) for 240 V [H] (White Wire) to the ac harness connector.
5. Reinstall the rear covers.



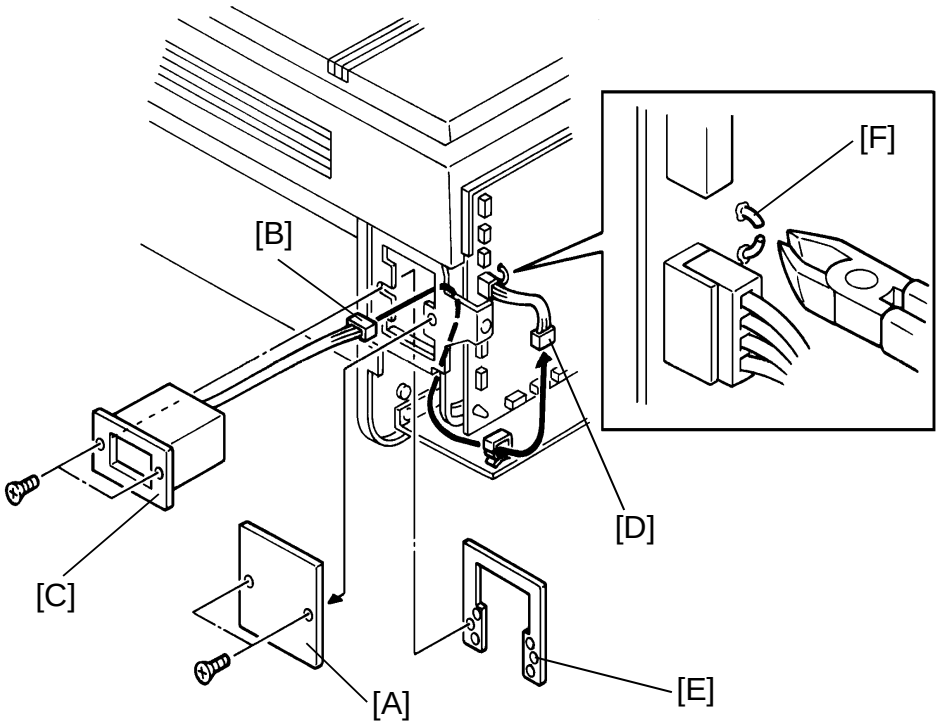
6. Plug in the machine and turn on the main switch, then lower the platen cover.

7. Enter the SP mode as follows:
   a) Enter "7" using the Quantity Increase (+) key.
   b) Press and hold the Clear/Stop key until a dot (•) appears in the top left corner of the copy counter.
   c) Press the Clear/Stop key, and then press the Interrupt key. "5" will start blinking.

8. Perform SP12 in the following sequence:

SP Mode Number		Procedure
12	Conversion from 220~230V to 240V.	Enter "12" using the Quantity Increase (+) key. Then, press the Auto Image Density key. Change the data from "0" to "1" using Quantity Increase (+) key. Then, press the Auto Image Density key. "12" will start blinking. Press the Interrupt key to exit the SP mode.

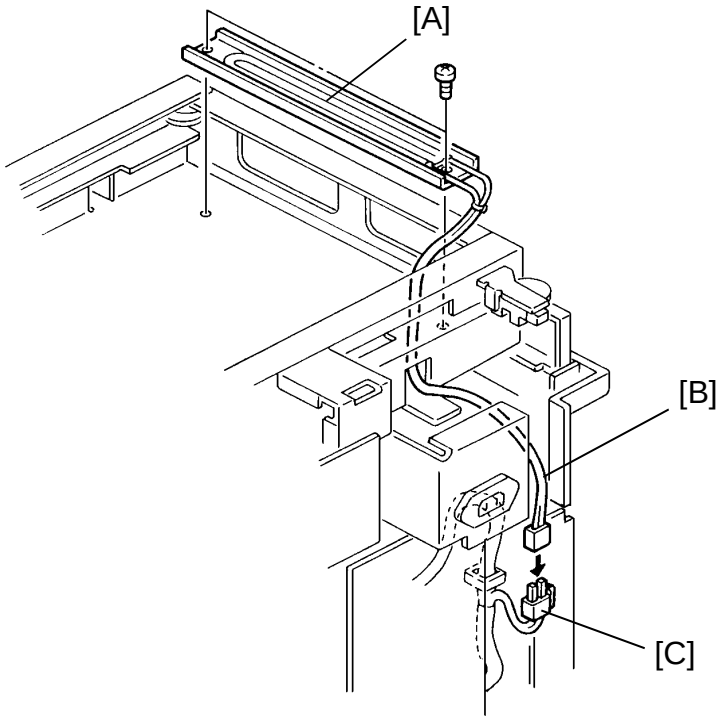
2.3 KEY COUNTER HOLDER INSTALLATION (OPTION)



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Open the upper cover by pressing the release lever.
4. Remove the right cover (2 screws).
5. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
6. Remove the key counter cover [A] (2 screws).
7. Connect the 4P connector [B] of the key counter holder [C] to the key counter harness [D] through the key counter access hole (1 harness clamp).
8. Position the fixing plate [E] as shown in the illustration and insert the key counter holder.
9. Align the holes in the fixing plate with the mounting holes of the key counter holder and secure the key counter holder (2 screws).

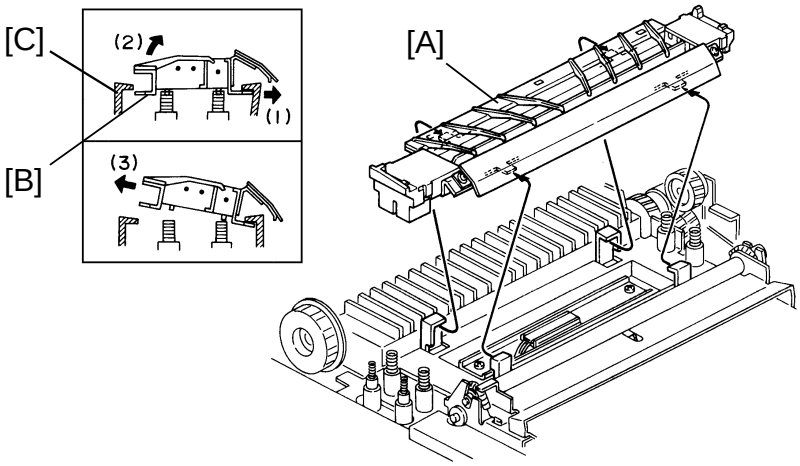
   NOTE: The fixing plate has three different hole sizes. Use the holes that match those on the counter that you are installing.
10. Cut the jumper wire (JP101) [F] with a pair of pliers.
11. Reinstall all covers.

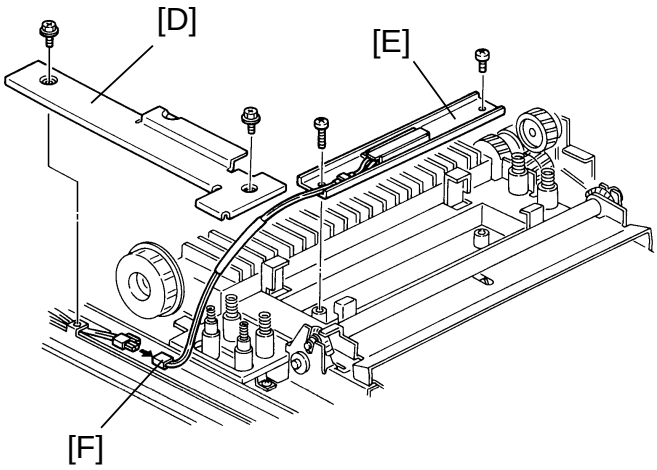
2.4 OPTICS ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER INSTALLATION (OPTION)



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
3. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
4. Install the optics heater [A] in the optics cavity as shown (2 screws).
5. Wire the heater harness [B] and connect the connector [C] as shown.

2.5 DRUM ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER INSTALLATION (OPTION)





1. Open the front cover.
2. Open the upper unit by pushing release lever.
3. Pull the transfer /separation (TC/SC) corona unit [A] toward the registration roller side (1) and release the left positioning tabs [B] of the TC/SC corona unit from the holders [C] of the transport unit (2). Then, take out the TC/SC corona unit (3).
4. Remove the harness cover [D] (2 screws).
5. Install the anti-condensation heater [E] (2 screws) and set the heater connector [F].

SECTION 4

SERVICE TABLES

1. SERVICE TABLES

1.1 TEST POINTS

Copier Main Board

NUMBER	FUNCTION
TP101	GND
TP102	HET (Fusing Thermistor)
TP103	GND
TP104	GIN (Grid Voltage Feed Back)
TP105	BIN (Development Bias Feed Back)
TP106	ADS (Auto Image Density Sensor) Adjust the voltage to +2.5 ± 0.1 volts by VR101.
TP107	AVSS (GND)
TP108	EXP (Exposure Lamp Voltage Feed Back)
TP109	VCC (+5 volts)
TP110	PSE (ID Sensor Voltage) Adjust the voltage to +4.0 ± 0.2 volts by VR102.
TP112	+9 volts (ID Sensor Power)
JP101	Key Counter (Cut this jumper wire when installing the key counter on the machine.)

DF Main Board

NUMBER	FUNCTION
TP1	Factory use
TP2	Factory use
TP3	GND
TP4	+5 volts
TP5	GND
TP6	+24 volts

1.2 DIP SWITCHES AND JUMPER SWITCHES

Copier Main Board

DIP SWITCH	NORMAL	FUNCTION
DPS101-1	OFF	Free run
DPS101-2	OFF	Service program mode access
JUMPER SWITCH	**NORMAL**	**FUNCTION**
JPS101-R (Upper)	Open	Ready temp. bypassed (Factory use)
JPS101-C (Lower)	Open	To clear counters by SP98 or to clear all memory by SP99

DF Main Board

SW1				FUNCTION	
1	2	3	4		
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	Normal (Factory setting)	Lift Switch must be ON
ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Free run (Insert paper)	
OFF	OFF	ON	ON	Solenoid test	
ON	ON	OFF	ON	Motor test	
ON	ON	ON	ON	All indicators ON	

1.3 VARIABLE RESISTORS

Copier Main Board

NUMBER	FUNCTION
VR101	Adjusts ADS voltage (+2.5 ± 0.1 volts)
VR102	Adjusts ID sensor voltage (+4.0 ± 0.2 volts)

CC/Grid/Bias Power Pack

NUMBER	FUNCTION
VRM	Adjusts charge corona current
VRG	Adjusts standard grid voltage
VRB	Adjusts standard development bias voltage (Factory use)

TC/SC Power Pack

NUMBER	FUNCTION
VRT	Adjusts transfer corona current
VRD	Adjusts separation corona current

AC Drive Board

NUMBER	FUNCTION
VR401	Adjusts base exposure lamp voltage (Factory use)

DF Main Board

NUMBER	FUNCTION
VR1	Adjusts original stop position (Factory use)

2. SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

2.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION

The service program (SP) mode is used to check electrical data and change modes or adjustment values.

2.1.1 Service Program Access Procedure

There are two ways to access an SP mode.

(1) By key operation
(2) By turning on DPS101-2 on the main board

All SP modes except for SP98, and SP99 can be accessed by key operation. When accessing SP98, and SP99, JPS101-C must be short-circuited.

Access Procedure 1 - Key Operation

1. Turn on the main switch.
2. Enter "71" by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key.

   NOTE: The following SP mode can be accessed by entering "7" instead of "71".
   SP mode numbers: 11, 12, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 34, 65, 66, and 93
3. Press and hold the Clear/Stop key until "•1" is displayed in the Copy Counter and then release it.
4. Press the Clear/Stop key again and then press the Interrupt key.

   NOTE: "5" will blink in the Copy Counter to show that the SP mode has been accessed.
5. Enter the desired SP mode number using the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key. The SP mode numbers are given in the Service Program Mode Table.

   NOTE: "•" is displayed instead of "1" in the Copy Counter when the SP mode numbers over "100" are entered. The maximum number is "127".
6. Press the Auto Image Density key to view data.

   NOTE: To cancel an already entered SP mode number, press the Auto Image Density key.
7. To leave SP mode, press the Interrupt key.

Access Procedure 2 - DPS101-2

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Remove the upper rear cover and turn on DPS101-2, then turn on the main switch. 5" will blink in the Copy Counter.
3. Enter the desired SP mode number by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key. SP mode numbers are given in the Service Program Mode Table.
4. Press the Auto Image Density key to view data.
5. To leave SP mode, turn off DPS101-2.

NOTE: To cancel an already entered SP mode, press the Auto Image Density key.

2.1.2 Change Adjustment Values or Modes

1. Follow the steps from 1 to 6 in Access Procedure 1 or the steps from 1 to 4 in access procedure 2.
2. The factory-set or the default setting will be displayed in the Magnification indicator (A077/A078 copiers) or in the Copy Counter (A076 copier).
3. Enter the desired value or mode using the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key and then press the Auto Image Density key. (SP mode data are given in the Service Program Mode Table.)
4. To leave SP mode, press the Interrupt key (Access Procedure 1) or turn off DPS 101-2 (Access Procedure 2).

2.1.3 Memory Clear Procedure

– Clear Counters (SP98) –

NOTE: This SP mode clears the following counters:
- SP88: PM Counter Display
- SP100: Manual Feed Copies
- SP101: 1st Paper Tray Copies
- SP102: 2nd Paper Tray Copies
- SP103: Total Copies
- SP106: DF Originals
- SP110: Total Misfeeds
- SP111: Number of Misfeeds by Location
- SP120: Total Service Calls
- SP121: Optics Section Service Calls
- SP122: Exposure Lamp Service Calls
- SP124: Fusing Section Service Calls
- SP125: DF Communication Service Service Calls

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Turn on DPS101-2 and short-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).
3. Turn on the main switch.
4. Enter "98" by the Decrease Quantity ("–") key and then press the Auto Image Density key to view data.
5. Enter "1" by the Increase Quantity ("+") key and then press the Auto Image Density key.

   NOTE: The data "1" blinks 4 times when the above procedure is completed.
6. Turn off the main switch.
7. Turn off DPS101-2 and open-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).

– Clear All Memory (SP99) –

CAUTION: Memory all clear mode (SP99) clears all the correction data for process control and software counters, and returns all the modes to the default settings. Normally, this mode should not be performed.

This procedure is required only when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged RAM Pack or when replacing the RAM Pack by any reason.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Turn on DPS101-2 and short-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).
3. Turn on the main switch.
4. Enter "99" by the Decrease Quantity ("–") key and then press the Auto Image Density key to view data.
5. Enter "1" by the Increase Quantity ("+") key and then press the Auto Image Density key.

   NOTE: The data "1" blinks 5 times when the above procedure is completed.
6. Clean the used toner tank since the toner end counter has been cleared.

CAUTION: Skipping this step will cause the used toner overflow condition not to be detected properly.

7. Replace the OPC drum with a new one.

CAUTION: Since the drum motor rotation time (SP57) for the drum wear correction has been cleared, the old drum cannot be used. If the old drum is used after all memory is cleared, dirty background may occur.

8. Clean the optics, sensors, and inside of the copier if necessary.
9. Refer to the "FACTORY SETTING" table located on the upper inner cover and enter the data for:
   (1) SP60: Standard Image Grid Voltage Setting
   (2) SP62: Standard ID Sensor Grid Voltage Setting

10. Perform the following SP modes in sequence:
    (1) SP66: Drum Initial Setting
    (2) SP54: Vsg Adjustment
    (3) SP48: Light Intensity Adjustment
    (4) SP56: ADS Voltage Adjustment
    (5) SP42: Registration Adjustment
    (6) SP41: Leading Edge Erase Margin Adjustment
    (7) SP43: Vertical Magnification Adjustment
    (8) SP44: Horizontal Magnification Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only)
    (9) SP47: Focus Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only)

11. Turn off the main switch.

12. Turn off DPS101-2 and open-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).

2.1.4 Others

In the following SP modes, copies can be made by pressing the Start key after pressing the Auto Image Density key:

SP Mode numbers: 5, 6, 8, 37, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 50, and 55.

2.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLE

1. A "❒" after the mode name means that copies can be made in the SP mode. (Refer to NOTE 1 in page 4-15.)
2. A "°" before the mode number means that the mode can be accessed by sales representatives.
3. In the *Function* column, comments (extra information) are in italics.
4. In the *Data* column, the default value is printed in bold letters.

Mode No.		Function	Data
5	Exposure Lamp OFF ❒	Exposure lamp OFF Turn on DPS101-1, then press the Start key to start free run. Press the C/S key to stop free run. Press the Auto Image Density key in Ready mode to turn off this mode. *Use this mode for the scanner movement check. To save toner, remove the development unit.*	
6	Misfeed Detection Off ❒	Copies are made without misfeed detection. Press the Start key to make a copy. Press the Auto Image Density key in Ready mode to turn off this mode. *Use this mode to check whether the paper misfeed was caused by a sensor malfunction. The total counter increments when copies are made in this mode.*	
7	Aging Mode	Factory use.	
8	Input Check ❒	Displays the input data from sensors and switches.	For data, see page 4-17.
9	Output Check	Electrical components turns on.	For data, see page 4-18.
°11	All Indicators ON	Turns on all the indicators on the operation panel. *To turn off the indicators, press the Auto Image Density key.*	
°12	220-230V/240V Conversion	Selects 220-230 or 240 volts. *If the rated voltage is 240V, this data must be changed to "1". **Refer to NOTE 2.***	**0: 220-230V** 1:240V
°15	Auto Reset Time	Selects auto reset time of 1 or 3 minutes, or cancels this mode.	**0: 1 min.** 1: 3 min. 2: None
°16	Count Up/Down	Selects count up or count down.	**0: Up** 1: Down
°17	Increase/ Decrease Quantity Key Function	Changes the function of the Increase/Decrease Quantity keys. Acceleration / Recycle 0: ON / ON (1-99-1) 1: OFF / ON (1-99-1) 2: ON / OFF (1-99) 3: OFF / OFF (1-99)	**0**–3

Service Tables

Mode No.		Function	Data
°18	Reduce/Enlarge Key Function	Specifies whether reduction or enlargement is selected first when the Reduce/Enlarge key is pressed.	**0: Reduction** 1: Enlargement
°19	ADS Priority	Specifies whether the copier defaults to ADS or manual mode when the main switch is turned on.	**0: ADS** 1: Manual
29	Fusing Temperature Control	Selects fusing temperature control mode. *After selecting the control mode and turning the main switch off/on, the fusing temperature control is changed.*	**0: ON/OFF control** 1: Phase control
30	Toner Supply Mode	Selects toner supply system. *See SP31/SP32 for toner supply amount.*	**0: Detect Mode** 1: Fixed Mode
31	Toner Supply Ratio (Detect Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in detect mode.	**0: 15%** 1: 7% 2: 30% 3: 60%
32	Toner Supply Ratio (Fixed Mode)	Determines how much toner is supplied in fixed mode.	**0: 7.0%** 1: 3.5% 2: 10.5% 3: 14.0%
33	ID Sensor Bias	Sets the bias voltage applied to the development roller for the ID Sensor Pattern. *0: Vo* *1: Vo+40V* *2: Vo–20V* *3: Vo–40V*	Toner Density **0: Normal (Vo)** 1: Low 2: High 3: Higher
°34	ADS Level	Selects the image density level in ADS mode. *Data: 1* *Increases grid voltage (–50V). Development bias voltage is not changed.* *Data: 2* *Increases development bias voltage (–40V). Grid voltage is not changed.*	**0: Normal** 1: Darker 2: Lighter
35	ID Detection Interval	ID sensor check is performed every 5 copies or 10 copies. *If low image density occurs in the near end condition, change the data to "1".*	**0: 10 copies** 1: 5 copies
37	Image Bias Adjustment ❒	Adjusts image bias output if the image density at level 4 cannot be adjusted by Light Intensity adjustment (SP48). *0: Vo* *1: Vo+40V* *2: Vo+20V* *3: Vo–20V* *4: Vo–40V*	**0: Normal (Vo)** 1: Darkest 2: Darker 3: Lighter 4: Lightest
39	Exposure Lamp ON	Factory use.	
41	Lead Edge Erase Margin Adjustment ❒	Adjusts the lead edge erase margin. *0.4 mm per step. (max. –3.2 mm to +2.8 mm)*	0–15 **Default = 8**

Mode No.		Function	Data
42	Registration Adjustment ❒	Adjusts registration. *0.4 mm per step. (max. +2.8 mm to –3.2 mm)*	0–15 **Default = 8**
43	Vertical Magnification Adjustment ❒	Adjusts magnification in the paper travel direction. *0.2% per step. (max. –1.6% to +1.4%)*	0–15 **Default = 8**
44	Horizontal Magnification Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only) ❒	Adjusts magnification perpendicular to the direction of paper travel. *0.2% per step. (max. –4% to +6%)*	0–50 **Default = 20**
45	Registration Buckle – 1st Feed ❒	Adjust the amount of paper buckle in registration area. *0.4 mm per step. (Max –3.2 mm to +2.8 mm)*	0–15 **Default = 8**
46	Registration Buckle – 2nd Feed (A078 copier only) ❒		
47	Focus Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only) ❒	Adjusts the 4th/5th mirror position to correct focus. *This mode must be done after horizontal magnification adjustment (SP44).*	0–100 **Default = 40**
48	Light Intensity Adjustment ❒	Adjusts the exposure lamp voltage. *The exposure lamp voltage is adjusted on the production line.* ***Refer to NOTE 3 for A076 copier.***	100–150 **Default = 126**
49	Fusing Temperature Adjustment	Adjusts fusing temperature. *175 to 190°C in 1°C steps.* ***Refer to NOTE 3 for A076 copier.***	175 – 190°C **Default = 185°C**
50	Image Bias Adjustment at ID Level 7 ❒	Adjusts image bias voltage at ID level 7. *0: Vo* *1: Vo+40V* *2: Vo–40V* *3: Vo–80V*	**0: Normal (Vo)** 1: Darker 2: Lighter 3: Lightest
51	Exposure Lamp Data Display	Displays the exposure lamp data with a reference number. *The exposure lamp, and optics cooling fans turn on for 10 seconds when the Auto Image Density key is pressed. Press the C/S key to turn this mode off. Do not repeat more than 5 times to avoid overheating the optics cavity.*	100–150
52	Fusing Temperature Display (❒ A077/A078 copiers only)	Displays the fusing temperature. ***Refer to NOTE 3 for A076 copier.***	

Mode No.		Function	Data
54	Vsg Adjustment	Adjusts Vsg. *Adjust Vsg to 4.0 ± 0.2 V using VR102 on the main board. The main motor, the drum motor, and the ID sensor LED turn on when the Auto Image Density key is pressed.* ***Refer to NOTE 4 for A076 copier.***	
55	Vsg & Vsp Display ❒	Display the Vsg and Vsp readings. The Vsg reading is displayed while the Quantity Decrease "–" key is held down. A076 copier displays the Vsp reading while the Quantity Increase "+" key is held down. To stop this mode, press the C/S key. *The Vsp and Vsg voltage readings are updated every 10 or 5 copies depending on SP35 selection. In free run mode, the Vsg and Vsp readings are updated every copy cycle.* ***Refer to NOTE 4 for A076 copier.***	
56	ADS Reference Voltage Adjustment	Adjusts ADS. *After adjusting the light intensity, place 6 or more sheets of A3 (LDG) white paper on the exposure glass and select this mode.* *Adjust ADS voltage to 2.5 ± 0.1 V using VR101 on the main board.* ***Refer to NOTE 4 for A076 copier.***	
57	Drum Motor Rotation Time	Displays the total time that the drum motor has rotated. *"Minute" is displayed first. Press and hold the Lighter key to display "Hour".*	
58	Toner End Counter	Displays the number of toner end condition. *The counter counts up 200 copies after replacing the toner cartridge.*	
59	Open	No function.	
60	Standard Image Grid Voltage Setting	Factory use. Do not change data. ***Refer to NOTE 6.***	0–8 **Default = 4**
61	Standard ID Sensor Bias Voltage Setting	Factory use. Do not change data.	0–8 **Default = 2**
62	Standard ID Sensor Grid Voltage Setting	Factory use. Do not change data. ***Refer to NOTE 6.***	0–8 **Default = 4**
63	Open	No function.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
64	Toner Density Level Display	Displays the toner density level detected by initial setting (SP65). *Data Vsp/Vsg(%)* *0: 12–15* *1: 0–7* *2: 8–11* *3: 16–21* *4: 22–100*	**0**–4
°65	Developer Initial Setting	Agitates new developer for about 5 minutes. "50" is displayed on the copy counter when the Auto Image Density key is held down. Press the Start key to start the initial setting. ***Initial setting must be done when new developer is installed.*** *The copier automatically returns to normal mode after initial setting is completed.*	
°66	Drum Initial Setting	Used to set new drum condition. ***Initial setting must be done when a new drum is installed.*** *The Drum Motor Rotation Time (SP57) and the OPC counter (SP69) are cleared.*	**0: No** 1: Yes
67	Vr Ratio Display	Displays the present Vr ratio. *L = Vrp/Vsg x 100* *L (%) Grid voltage* *100 to 84 Vo* *83 to 58 Vo–40V* *57 to 41 Vo–80V* *40 to 28 Vo–120V* *27 to 0 Vo–160V* ***Refer to NOTE 3 for A076 copier.***	**0**–100
68	Vr Forced Detection	Detects Vrp and perform Vr correction. *1. Turn off the DPS 101-2 after pressing the Auto Image Density key if it is on.* *2. Make 5 copies.*	**0: No** 1: Yes
69	OPC Counter	Shows the total number of copies made with the drum installed on the machine. ***Refer to NOTE 5.***	
83	Toner End Counter Clear	Clears the toner end counter (SP58). Resets the used toner overflow condition (E70) if it is detected. ***This mode must be performed when the used toner tank is cleaned.***	**0: No** 1: Yes
87	PM Interval Setting	Sets the interval of the PM counter.	**0: No PM** 1: 40K 2: 60K 3: 80K 4: 100K

Service Tables

Mode No.		Function	Data
88	PM Counter Display	Displays contents of the PM counter.	
		Refer to NOTE 5. *When the PM counter is exceeded, the Magnification indicator (A077/A078 copiers) or the Copy Counter (A076 copier) blinks.*	
89	PM Counter Clear	Resets the PM counter.	**0: No** 1: Yes
		Use this mode after performing PM.	
°93	Maximum Copy Quantity	Limits the maximum copy quantity that can be entered.	1–**99**
98	Clear Counters	Clear the following counters: • Copy Counters • SC Counters • Misfeed Counters • PM Counter	**0: No** 1: Yes
		To clear, turn on DPS101-2 and short-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).	
99	Clear All Memory	Clear all counters and returns all modes to the default setting.	**0: No** 1: Yes
		To clear, turn on DPS101-2 and short-circuit JPS101-C (Lower).	
100	Manual Feed Copies	Displays the total number of copies fed from the manual feed table.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
101	1st Paper Tray Copies	Displays the total number of copies fed from the upper paper tray.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
102	2nd Paper Tray Copies (A078 copier only)	Displays the total number of copies fed from the lower paper tray.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
103	Total Copies	Displays the total number of copies.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
106	DF Originals	Displays the total number of originals fed from the DF.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
110	Misfeeds (total)	Displays the total number of paper misfeeds.	
		Refer to NOTE 5.	
111	Number of Misfeeds by Location	Displays the total number of paper misfeeds in each area. Press the Quantity Increase or Decrease ("+" or "–") key to select the desired number.	
		Refer to NOTE 5. *"1" will be selected when the Auto Image Density key is pressed.* *1: Paper Feed* *2: Exit* *3: (Open)* *4: DF*	
120	Total Service Calls	Displays the total number of times the service call indicator has turned on.	

Mode No.		Function	Data
121	Optics Section Service Calls	Displays the total number of "optics section" service calls.	
122	Exposure Lamp Service Calls	Displays the total number of "exposure lamp" service calls.	
123	Open	No function.	
124	Fusing Section Service Calls	Displays the total number of "fusing section" service calls.	
125	DF Timing Pulse Service Calls	Displays the total number of "DF Timing Pulse Error" service calls.	
126	Open	No function.	
127	Open	No function.	

NOTE 1: 1) After the following SP mode numbers are entered, the copier goes automatically into copy mode when the Auto Image Density key is pressed:
SP mode numbers: 5, 6, 52, and 55

2) After the following SP mode numbers are entered and the Auto Image Density key is pressed. Select the desired input numbers or SP mode data and press the Auto Image Density key.
SP mode numbers: 8, 37, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, and 50

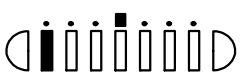
NOTE 2: When the data in SP mode 12 is changed from "0" to "1", CN93 and CN92 must be switched and the CN421 must be repositioned.

NOTE 3: A076 copier displays the SP mode data in the Copy Counter. Since the Copy Counter has only 2 digits, "•" is displayed instead of "1" in the Copy Counter when the data exceeds "99".

NOTE 4: Make copies or perform free run to display the SP mode data. A076 copier displays the SP mode data in the Copy Counter. Since the Copy Counter has only 2 digits, the first digit is displayed in the Manual Image Density indicator as shown below (the decimal place is displayed in the Copy Counter):

: "0"

: "4"


: "1"

: "5"

: "2"

For example:

: "3.83"

Copy Counter

: "3"

Service Tables

NOTE 5: – A076 copier –
The A076 copier displays the SP mode data in the Copy Counter. The first two digits are displayed first. Press the Lighter key once to display the next two digits and press the Lighter key one more time to display the last two digits (six digits in total).
– A077/A078 copiers –
The first three digits are displayed in the Magnification Indicator. Press and hold the Lighter key to display the last three digits (six digits in total).

NOTE 6: Data will vary depending on factory setting. Refer to "FACTORY SETTING" table located on the upper inner cover.

2.3 SP MODE 8 INPUT CHECK

– How to check sensor/switch data –

1. Enter "8" by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key, then press the Auto Image Density key.
2. Enter the desired number by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key. The numbers are given in the following table.
3. Press the Auto Image Density key again.
4. Enter the number of copies and press the Start key.

NOTE: – A077/A078 copiers –
The data ("0" or "1") is displayed in the Magnification Indicator.
– A076 copier –
The data ("None" or "•") is displayed in the Copy Counter.

Number	Sensor/Switch/Signal	Data	
		"0" (A077/A078 copiers) or "None" (A076 copier)	"1" (A077/A078 copiers) or "•" (A076 copier)
1	Registration Sensor	Paper not detected (HIGH)	Paper detected (LOW)
2	Exit Sensor		
3	1st Paper Tray Switch	Paper tray opened (HIGH)	Paper tray closed (LOW)
4	2nd Paper Tray Switch (A078 copier only)		
7	Relay Sensor	Paper not detected (HIGH)	Paper detected (LOW)
8	Product Identification	A077/A078 copiers	A076 copier
9	Drum Temperature	≥ 20°C	< 20°C
13	Scanner HP Sensor	Sensor actuated (HIGH)	Sensor not actuated (LOW)
14	Lens HP Sensor (A078 copier only)		
15	4th/5th Mirror HP Sensor (A078 copier only)		

2.4 SP MODE 9 OUTPUT CHECK

– How to turn electrical components on/off –

1. Enter "9" by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key, then press the Auto Image Density key.
2. Enter the desired number by the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key. The numbers are given in the following table.
3. Press the Start key to turn on the electrical component.
4. Press the Clear/Stop key to turn off the electrical component.

Number	Electrical Component
1	Main Motor + PTL + Quenching Lamp + Drum Motor
2	Charge Corona + Standard Image Grid
3	Charge Corona + Standard ID Sensor Grid
4	Charge Corona + Standard Vrp Grid
5	Transfer Corona
6	Separation Corona
8	Erase Lamp
9	ID Sensor LED
10	Development Clutch Solenoid
11	Toner Supply Clutch + Main Motor (Development Clutch Solenoid OFF) Note: Press and hold the Darker key to turn the toner supply clutch on and the development clutch solenoid off.
12	Registration Clutch
13	1st Paper Feed Clutch
14	2nd Paper Feed Clutch (A078 copier only)
15	Relay Roller Clutch
19	Optics Cooling Fan
20	Exposure Lamp + Optics Cooling Fan
22	Charge Corona + Image Grid with correction + Transfer Corona + Separation Corona
23	Charge Corona + ID Sensor Grid with correction + Transfer Corona + Separation Corona
24	Charge Corona + Vrp Grid with correction + Transfer Corona + Separation Corona
25	Charge Corona + Image Grid with correction
26	Charge Corona + ID Sensor Grid with correction
27	Charge Corona + Vrp Grid with correction
30–37	Development Bias Voltage in 40 volts steps starting at –120 volts
38	Development Bias Voltage = –500 volts
40–48	Grid Voltage in 60 volts steps starting at –400 volts

2.5 SERVICE CALL AND USER CODE TABLE

Service Call Code

E-code	Contents	SP Mode No. (SC Counter)
11	**Exposure Lamp Error** The feed back signal becomes higher than 4.2 volts (r.m.s) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is on, or it becomes higher than 1.0 volt (r.m.s) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is off.	SP122 (Exposure Lamp)
12	**Exposure Lamp Error** The feed back signal falls below 0.5 volt (r.m.s) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is on, or the exposure lamp stays on for longer than 10 seconds.	
13	**Zero Cross Signal Error** The CPU does not receive the zero cross signal within 0.56 second.	–
21	**Scanner Home Position Error** The scanner home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 9 seconds after the main switch is turned on.	SP121 (Optics)
22	**Scanner Home Position Error** The scanner home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 1.0 second after the scanner starts.	
28	**Lens Home Position Error** (A077/A078 copiers only) The lens home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 6.0 seconds after the lens move to the home position.	
29	**Lens Home Position Error** (A077/A078 copiers only) The lens home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 3.5 seconds after the lens leaves the home position.	
2A	**4th/5th Mirror Home Position Error** (A077/A078 copiers only) The 4th/5th mirror home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 2.5 seconds after the 4th/5th mirror assembly moves to the home position.	
2B	**4th/5th Mirror Home Position Error** (A077/A078 copiers only) The 4th/5th mirror home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 2.5 seconds after the 4th/5th mirror assembly leaves the home position.	

E-code	Contents	SP Mode No. (SC Counter)
52	**Fusing Warm-up Error** The temperature detected by the thermistor does not reach 150°C within 30 seconds after the main switch is turned on.	SP124 (Fusing Section) **Refer to NOTE.**
53	**Fusing Overheat** The temperature detected by the thermistor becomes higher than 240°C.	
55	**Fusing Thermistor Open** The temperature detected by the thermistor does not reach 2°C within 20 seconds after the main switch is turned on.	
70	**Used Toner Overflow** When the used toner overflow condition is detected, E70 blinks. An additional 250 copies can be made before the Start indicator turns red and copying is inhibited.	–
96	**DF Timing Pulse Error** The DF CPU does not receive a DF timing pulse within 100 milliseconds.	SP125 (DF Timing Pulse)

NOTE: When the service call (E52, 53, 55) conditions occur, for safety reason they cannot be cleared by turning off and on the main switch. The following procedure must be performed to clear these service call conditions:

1. Turn on the main switch.
2. Turn DPS 101-1 on and off.
3. Turn the main switch off and on.

User Code

U-code	Contents
2	Key Counter Not Set

3. SERVICE REMARKS

3.1 GENERAL CAUTION

To prevent physical injury, keep hands away from the mechanical drive components in the following case:

If the Start key is pressed before the copier finishes the warm-up cycle, (Start indicator starts blinking) the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up cycle is completed.

3.2 DRUM

The organic photoconductor drum is comparatively more sensitive to light and ammonia gas than a selenium drum.

1. Never expose the drum to direct sunlight.
2. Never expose the drum to direct light of more than 1,000 Lux for more than a minute.
3. Never touch the drum surface with bare hands. When the drum surface is touched with a finger or becomes dirty, wipe with a dry cloth or clean with wet cotton. Wipe with a dry cloth after cleaning with wet cotton.
4. Never use alcohol to clean the drum; alcohol dissolves the drum surface.
5. Store the drum in a cool, dry place away from heat.
6. Take care not to scratch the drum as the drum layer is thin and is easily damaged.
7. Never expose the drum to corrosive gases such as ammonia gas.
8. Always keep the drum in the protective sheet when inserting or pulling the drum unit out of the copier to avoid exposing it to bright light or direct sunlight. This will protect the drum from light fatigue.
9. Before pulling out the drum unit, place a sheet of paper under the drum to catch any dropped toner.
10. Drum initial setting (SP66) must be performed when a new drum is installed.

    NOTE: This is not necessary at installation of a new machine as the drum initial setting is performed at the factory.
11. Dispose of used drums according to local regulations.
12. Do not adjust VR801 on the drum motor board.

3.3 CHARGE CORONA

1. Clean the corona wire by sliding the corona unit in and out. (The cleaner pads come into contact with the corona wire when the corona unit is slid all the way out.) The wire and casing can also be cleaned with water or dry cloth. Do not use sandpaper or a solvent.
2. Do not touch the corona wire and the grid plate with oily hands. Oil stains may cause uneven image density on copies.
3. Make sure that the corona wire is correctly positioned between the cleaner pads and that there is no foreign material (iron filings, etc.) on the casing.
4. When adjusting the charge corona current, always make sure that the axis of the drum shoe is aligned with the middle of the corona wires.
5. Clean the grid plate with a blower brush (not with a cloth).
6. The corona height should only be adjusted in the following two cases:
   a) When the front end block is replaced
   b) When the drum charge current is uneven

3.4 OPTICS

1. The following parts are very difficult to adjust. Do not adjust them.
   a) 4th/5th Mirror Home Position Sensor
   b) Lens Home Position Sensor
   c) Lens and 4th/5th Mirror Guide Rails
2. Before removing a sensor bracket to replace a sensor, mark the position of the bracket. Check the copy image (magnification and focus) to determine the exact location of the sensor.
3. Clean the following parts with a silicone cloth:

   Lens and 4th/5th Mirror Guide Rails
   Scanner Guide Plates
4. Clean the exposure glass with glass cleaner and a dry cloth to reduce the amount of static electricity on the glass surface.
5. Use water or a silicone cloth to clean the mirrors.
6. After adjusting the light intensity (SP48), adjust the ADS voltage (SP56).
7. Do not adjust VR401 on the AC drive board.

3.5 DEVELOPMENT

1. Be careful not to nick or scratch the development roller.
2. Place the development unit on a sheet of paper after removing it from the copier.
3. Never loosen two screws securing the bias terminal block. The position of the terminal block is set with a special tool and instrument at factory to ensure the proper gap between the drum and the development roller.
4. Never loosen three screws securing the doctor plate and four screws securing the doctor plate mounting bracket. The position of the doctor plate is set with a special tool and instrument at factory to ensure the proper gap between the doctor blade and the development roller.
5. Clean the drive gears after removing used developer.
6. Developer initial setting (SP65) is necessary when the developer is replaced.
7. Dispose of used developer according to local regulations.

3.6 TONER SUPPLY

1. Clean the image density sensor with a blower brush.
2. Do not touch the sensor pattern with bare hands.
3. Image density sensor adjustment is required in the following cases:
   a) When the image density sensor is replaced
   b) When the main board is replaced
   c) When the drum has been replaced and Vsg is out of specification
   d) When there have been problems with toner supply and Vsg is out of specification

3.7 TRANSFER AND SEPARATION

1. Clean the corona wires and casing with water or dry cloth.
2. When adjusting the corona current, always make sure that the axis of the drum shoe is aligned with the corona wire.

3.8 CLEANING UNIT

1. Be careful not to damage the edge of the cleaning blade.
2. Do not touch the cleaning brush with bare hands.
3. When inserting the cleaning unit into the copier, be sure that the cleaning unit rail is properly engaged with the unit guide rail on the copier.
4. Empty the used toner tank every service call and clear the toner end counter (SP58) by SP83 (toner end counter clear). Do not perform toner end counter clear (SP83) without emptying the used toner tank.
5. Dispose of used toner according to local regulations.

3.9 FUSING UNIT

1. Be careful not to damage the edges of the hot roller strippers or their tension springs.
2. Do not touch the fusing lamp with bare hands.
3. Make sure that the fusing lamp does not touch the hot roller.

3.10 PAPER FEED

1. Do not touch the pick-up, feed, and torque rollers with oily hands.
2. A worn out registration roller causes paper to crease. It should be replaced.

3.11 DOCUMENT FEEDER

1. When installing or removing the document feeder, make sure that the document feeder is in the open position.
2. The red mark on the edge of the exposure glass faces up. This side is smoother and it generates less static electricity when the DF is used.
3. A build-up of static electricity on the exposure glass can cause originals to misfeed. Apply silicon oil to the glass to reduce the amount of friction.

3.12 OTHERS

1. If the RAM on the old main board is still usable, remove and place it on the new main board. Then, install the new main board in the copier.

2. After installing the new main board with the new RAM, clear the RAM memory using SP99. (Do not clear RAM memory if you have placed the old RAM on the new main board.) Then, perform the following procedure:
   (1) Clean the used toner tank since the toner end counter has been cleared.

   CAUTION: Skipping this step will cause the used toner overflow condition not to be detected properly.

   (2) Replace the OPC drum with a new one.

   CAUTION: Since the drum motor rotation time (SP57) for the drum wear correction has been cleared, the old drum cannot be used. If the old drum is used after all memory is cleared, dirty background may occur.

   (3) Clean the optics, sensors, and inside of the copier if necessary.
   (4) Refer to the "FACTORY SETTING" table and enter the data for:
      (a) SP60: Standard Image Grid Voltage Setting
      (b) SP62: Standard ID Sensor Grid Voltage Setting
   (5) Perform the following SP modes in sequence:
      (a) SP66: Drum Initial Setting
      (b) SP54: Vsg Adjustment
      (c) SP48: Light Intensity Adjustment
      (d) SP56: ADS Voltage Adjustment
      (e) SP42: Registration Adjustment
      (f) SP41: Leading Edge Erase Margin Adjustment
      (g) SP43: Vertical Magnification Adjustment
      (h) SP44: Horizontal Magnification Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only)
      (i) SP47: Focus Adjustment (A077/A078 copiers only)
3. When replacing a sensor, do not overtighten the screws. This may damage the sensor.
4. If a customer reports that red image areas on the original do not appear on the copy, instruct the customer to select the desired image density by the Manual Image Density key.
5. Tighten securely the screws used for grounding the following PCBs when reinstalling them.
   - AC Drive Board
   - DC Power Supply Board
   - TC/SC Power Pack
   - CC/Grid/Bias Power Pack
6. The RAM pack must be handled as follows:

WARNING: The RAM pack has a lithium battery which can explode if handled incorrectly, replace only with same RAM pack. Do not recharge, or burn this battery. Used RAM pack must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

4. SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A0069105	Drum Shoe Shaft	1
A0069103	Scanner Wire Clamp (Omega Clamp)	1
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pcs)	1 set
A0089502	Grease G-40M	1
52039501	Grease (Shinetsu Silicone G-501)	1
54429106	Drum Shoe	1
54479104	Shoe Adapter	1
54209507	Digital Multimeter	1
54479078	Heat Resistance Grease (MT-78)	1
52149500	Test Chart OS-A4 (10 pcs/set)	
52149501	Test Chart OS-A4 (100 pcs/set)	
A0779505	Drum Shoe Shaft Adapter	1

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

After performing preventive maintenance, perform the following procedure:

1. Adjust the exposure lamp intensity (SP48). (See Light Intensity Adjustment.)
2. Select SP56 and adjust the ADS voltage to +2.5 ± 0.1 volts by VR101.
3. Select SP54 and adjust Vsg to +4.0 ± 0.2 volts by VR102.
4. Make a sample copy.

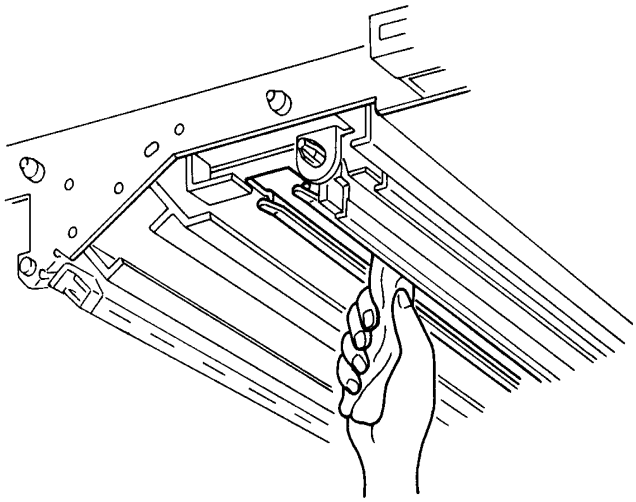
NOTE: 1) Drum Initial Setting (SP66) must be done after the old drum is replaced.
2) Developer Initial Setting (SP65) must be done after the old developer is replaced.
3) Toner End Counter Clear (SP83) must be done after the used toner tank is cleared.

5.1 PM TABLE

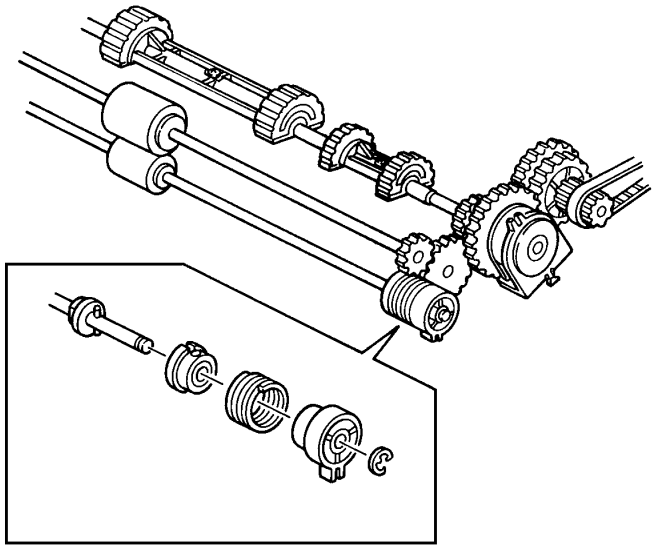
L = Lubricate R = Replace C = Clean I = Inspection

	EM	80K	160K	NOTES
OPTICS				
Mirrors, Lens, Reflectors, Toner Shield Glass	C	C	C	Silicone cloth, cotton pad with water, or blower brush **Refer to NOTE 1 to clean 6th mirror.**
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	Alcohol or water
Exposure Lamp		I	I	Replace if necessary.
Scanner Guide Rail		C	C	Dry cloth
Magnification Guide Rail		C	C	Dry cloth
Platen Cover Sheet	C	R	R	Alcohol or water (Replace if necessary.)
Optics Cooling Fan Filter		C	C	
AROUND DRUM				
ID Sensor	C	C	C	Blower brush
Pick-off Pawls	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Quenching Lamp	C	C	C	Dry cloth, discharge any static before installation.
Pre-Transfer Lamp	C	C	C	Dry cloth, discharge any static before installation.
Erase Lamp	C	C	C	Dry cloth
End Blocks and Casing	C	C	C	Water or dry cloth
Transfer Guide Plate	C	C	C	Dry cloth
Corona Wires	C	R	R	Water or dry cloth
Wire Cleaner		R	R	
Grid Plate		C	R	Blower brush
CLEANING UNIT				
Used Toner Tank	C	C	C	Empty used toner.
Cleaning Seal		C	C	Replace if necessary.
Cleaning Blade			R	
Cleaning Brush			R	
DEVELOPMENT UNIT				
Developer		R	R	Replace if necessary.
Entrance Seal		C	C	
Drive Gears		C	C	

	EM	80K	160K	NOTES
PAPER FEED				
Registration Roller		C	C	Water
Relay Roller		C	C	Water
Registration Sensor		C	C	Blower brush
Paper Guide Plate		C	C	Dry cloth
Torque Roller Slip Clutch			L	Mobil Temp 78 **Refer to NOTE 2.**
Paper Feed Roller	C	C	R	Water
Pick-up Roller	C	C	R	Water
Torque Roller	C	C	R	Water
Paper Tray Bottom Plate Pad		C	R	Water
FUSING UNIT				
Hot Roller			R	
Pressure Roller			R	
Stripper Pawls		C	C	Suitable solvent
Fusing Entrance And Exit Guides		C	C	Suitable solvent
Fusing Thermistor		I	I	Suitable solvent (Clean if necessary.)
OTHERS				
Exit Roller		C	C	Water
Exit Sensor		C	C	Blower brush
Ozone Filter		R	R	
DOCUMENT FEEDER		PM intervals: number of originals fed (SP106)		
Transport Belt	C	C	C	Belt cleaner
Friction Belt	C	C	R	Water
Pick-up Roller	C	C	C	Water
Feed Roller	C	C	C	Water



NOTE 1: Clean the 6th mirror with silicone cloth as shown.



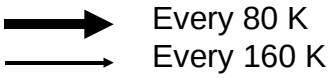
NOTE 2: Clean and lubricate the torque roller slip clutch at every 160 K copies.

5.2 EXPLANATION OF REGULAR PM

Item		Explanation
Optics Unit	Mirrors, Lens, Reflector, Exposure Glass, Platen Cover	Stains on any part of the optics unit result in a dirty background, black lines, black spots, or areas of decreased sharpness on the copy image. Periodic cleaning is required. The exposure glass and the platen cover must also be cleaned. If stains on the platen cover cannot be removed, it must be replaced.
	Exposure Lamp	Deterioration of the exposure lamp affects the copy image. Inspect the lamp at regular intervals and replace if discolored.
Paper Feed, and Registration	Paper Feed Roller, Pick-up Roller, Torque Roller	If paper powder or dust adheres to the paper feed rollers and/or rollers are worn out, paper may not feed correctly and/or skewing may result. Cleaning or replacement is required at regular intervals.
	Registration Roller	A dirty registration roller can cause paper to register incorrectly, skew, or misfeed. Cleaning is required at regular intervals.
Transport	Transfer Guide Plate	If the transfer guide plate is dirty, the back sides of the copy may become dirty. Clean the plate at regular intervals.
Around Drum	Charge Wires	Dirty charge wires may cause uneven image density. They should be cleaned or replaced at regular intervals.
	End Blocks	Toner tends to accumulate on the corona end blocks, and this can result in poor copy quality or even a high voltage leak. Clean end blocks at regular intervals.
	QL	If toner accumulates on the QL, a dirty background or a repeating negative image may result. Clean the QL at regular intervals.
	PTL	If paper dust or toner accumulates on the PTL, its efficiency may be reduced. This can cause toner to be reattracted to the drum during transfer, reducing image density. Clean the PTL at regular intervals.
	ID Sensor	If paper dust or toner accumulates on the ID sensor, the toner density cannot be controlled correctly. This results in light copy or overtorning. Clean this sensor at regular intervals.
	Erase Lamp	If toner accumulates on the erase lamp, a dirty background may occur that becomes progressively worse in long copy runs. Clean this lamp at regular intervals.
Cleaning Unit	Cleaning Blade	A dirty or worn out cleaning blade will cause black lines on copies and/or scratches on the drum. The blade must be replaced or cleaned at regular intervals.
	Cleaning Brush	A worn out cleaning brush will not clean effectively, resulting in a dirty background and damage to the cleaning blade. Replace at regular intervals.

Item		Explanation
Fusing Unit	Thermistor	If toner accumulates on the thermistor, fusing temperature control may not be accurate. Inspect the thermistor at regular intervals.
	Stripper Pawls	Toner or dust adhering to the stripper pawls can cause a paper jam. Clean or replace the pawls at regular intervals.
	Fusing Entrance and Exit Guides	Toner piling up on the guide plate will cause a dirty background on the copy. Clean the guide plate at regular intervals.
DF	Transport Belt	A dirty transport belt can leave stains on copies. Clean or replace the belt at regular intervals.
	Pick-up Roller, Separation Roller, Separation Belt	When dirty, these rollers and this belt can leave stains on the copy paper. Clean or replace these parts at regular intervals.

5.3 REGULAR PM PROCEDURE



1. Make a Copy

Make a copy of OS-A4 test chart at manual image density level 4.

2. Optics (every 80 K)

1. Clean the mirrors, lens, reflectors and toner shield glass by using silicone cloth, cotton pad with water, or blower brush.
2. Clean the exposure glass with alcohol or water.
3. Inspect the exposure lamp.
4. Clean the scanner guide rail with dry cloth.
5. Clean the magnification guide rail with dry cloth.
6. Replace the platen cover sheet.
7. Clean the optics cooling fan filter.

3. Around Drum (every 80 K)

Note: After remove the drum, wrap the drum in clean sheets of paper to protect it.

1. Clean the ID sensor with blower brush.
2. Clean the pick-off pawls.
3. Clean the quenching lamp, pre-transfer lamp and erase lamp unit with dry cloth, discharge any static before installation.
4. Clean the end blocks, casing and transfer guide plate with water or dry cloth.
5. Replace the corona wires and wire cleaner.
6. Clean the grid plate with blower brush.

Replace the grid plate (every 160 K)

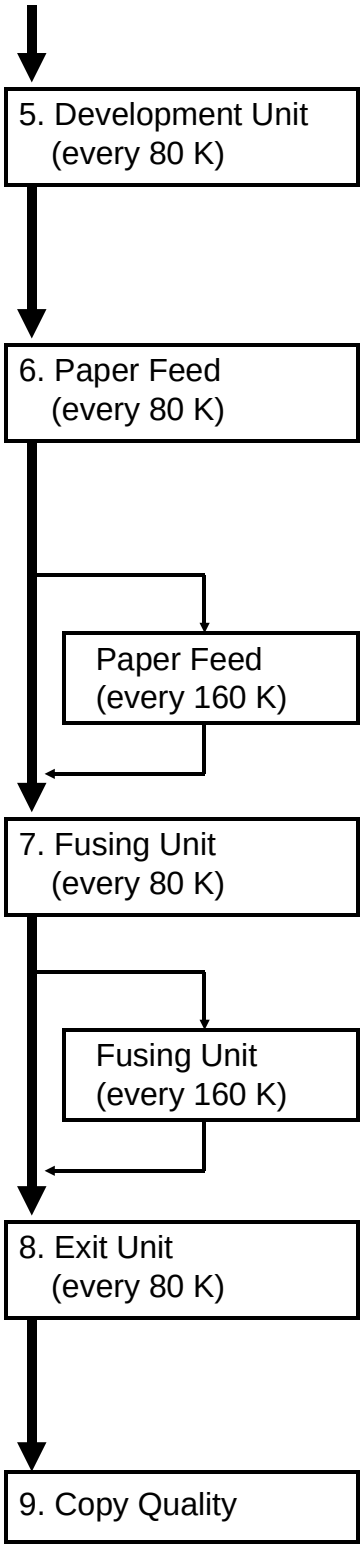
4. Cleaning Unit (every 80 K)

1. Empty used toner tank.
2. Clean the cleaning seal.

Cleaning unit (every 160 K)

1. Replace the cleaning blade and brush.

Service Tables



1. Remove the old developer.
2. Clean the entrance seal.
3. Clean the drive gears on the development unit.
4. Install the new developer.

1. Clean the registration roller, relay roller and registration sensor.
2. Clean the paper guide plate.
3. Lubricate the slip clutch for torque roller.
4. Clean the paper feed roller, pick-up roller, torque roller, and paper tray bottom plate pad.

1. Replace the paper feed roller, pick-up roller, torque roller, and paper tray bottom plate pad.

1. Clean the entrance and exit guide.
2. Inspect the thermistor.
3. Clean the stripper pawls.

1. Clean the thermistor.
2. Replace the hot roller, pressure roller.

1. Clean the exit roller and exit sensor.
2. Replace the ozone filter.

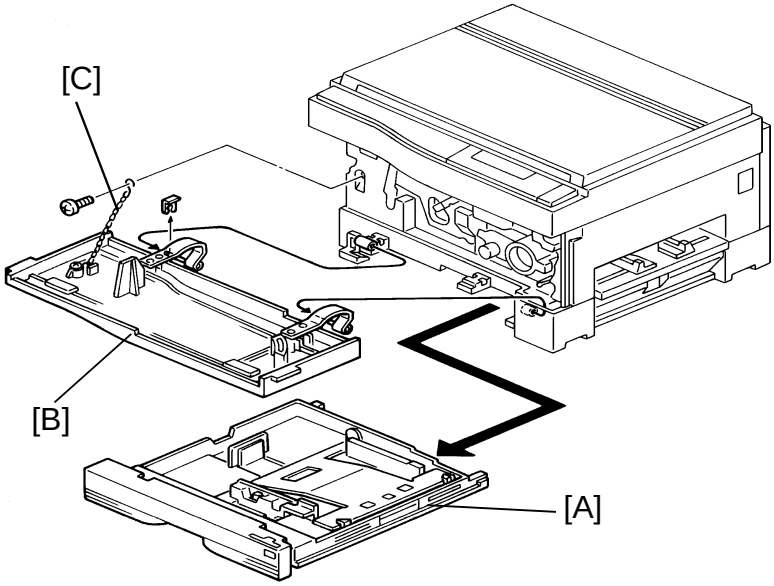
1. adjust the exposure lamp intensity by SP48.
2. Adjust the ADS voltage by SP56.
3. Adjust the Vsg by SP55.
4. Reset the toner end counter (SP58) by SP83.

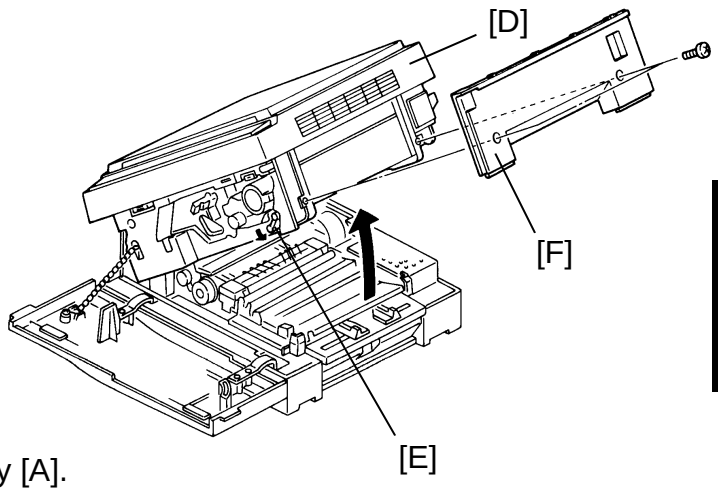
SECTION 5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1. EXTERIOR AND INNER COVERS

1.1 EXTERIOR COVER REMOVAL



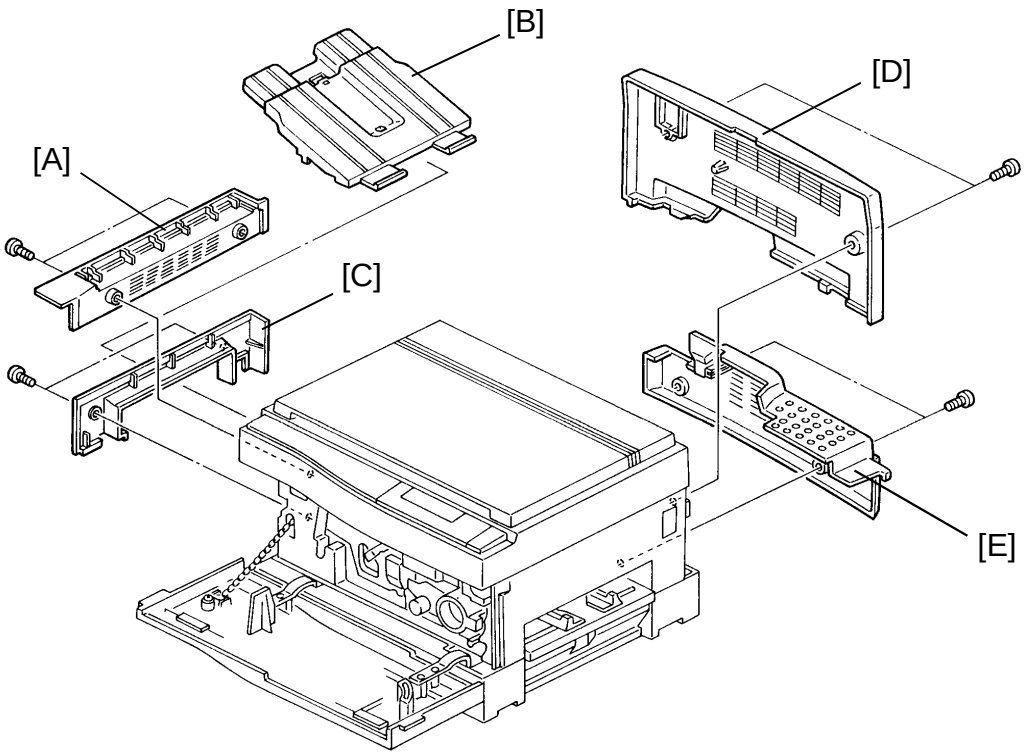


1.1.1 Front Cover

1. Pull out the 1st paper tray [A].
2. Open the front cover [B].
3. Remove the chain [C] from the lower inner cover (1 screw).
4. Remove the front cover (1 snap ring).

1.1.2 Right Cover

1. Open the front cover.
2. Open the upper unit [D] by pushing the release lever [E].
3. Remove the right cover [F] (2 screws).



1.1.3 Upper Left Cover

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper left cover [A] (2 screws).

1.1.4 Lower Left Cover

1. Open the front cover.
2. Take out the copy tray [B].
3. Remove the lower left cover [C] (2 screws).

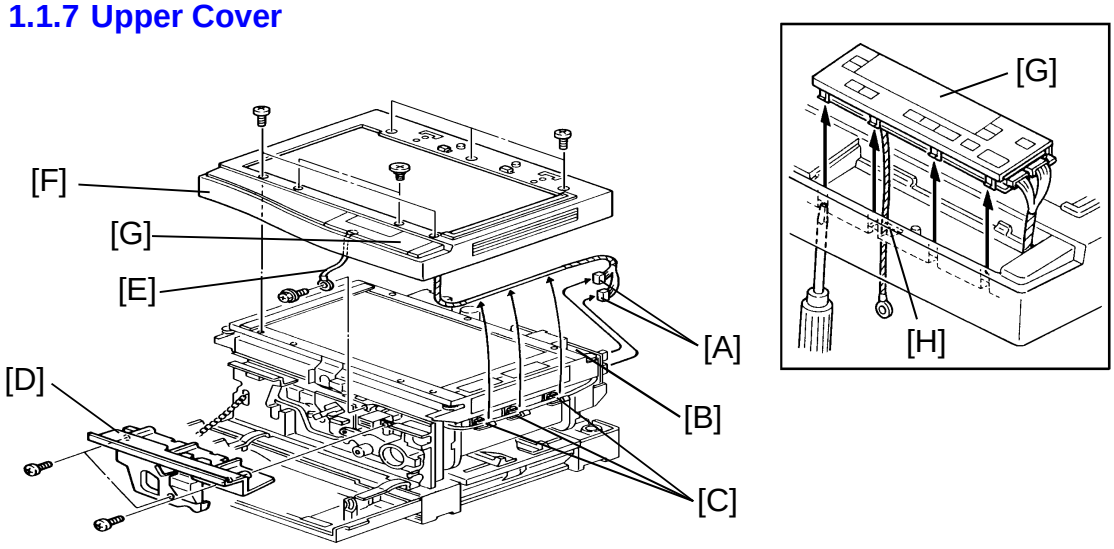
1.1.5 Upper Rear Cover

1. Remove the upper rear cover [D] (2 screws).

1.1.6 Lower Rear Cover

1. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
2. Remove the lower rear cover [E] (2 screws).

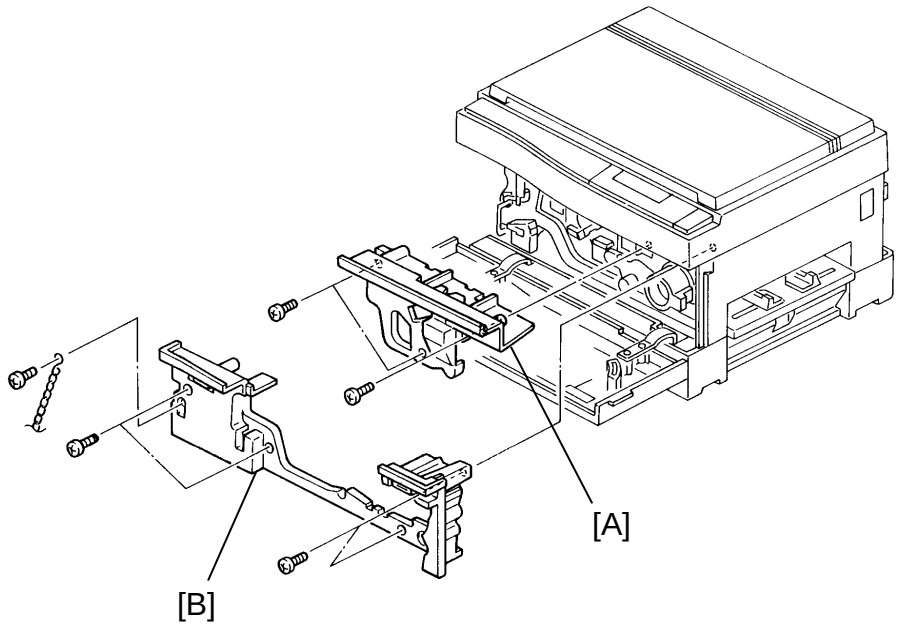
1.1.7 Upper Cover



1. Remove the platen cover or DF.
2. Remove the left side scale (2 screws).
3. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
4. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
5. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
6. Remove the right cover (2 screws).
7. Close the upper unit.
8. Disconnect two connectors [A] from the main board [B] (CN123 and CN124) and remove the operation panel harness from the three wire clamps [C].
9. Open the front cover.
10. Remove the upper inner cover [D] (3 screws).
11. Remove the operation panel wire [E] (1 screw).
12. Remove the upper cover [F] with operation panel [G] (7 screws).
13. Remove the operation panel from the upper cover using a slotted screwdriver as shown (4 hooks).

NOTE: 1. Before reinstalling the operation panel to the upper cover, pass the operation panel wire through the hole [H].
2. When reinstalling the operation panel, at first insert the rear side of the operation panel in the upper cover, and then push the front side of the operation panel.

1.2 INNER COVER REMOVAL



1.2.1 Upper Inner Cover

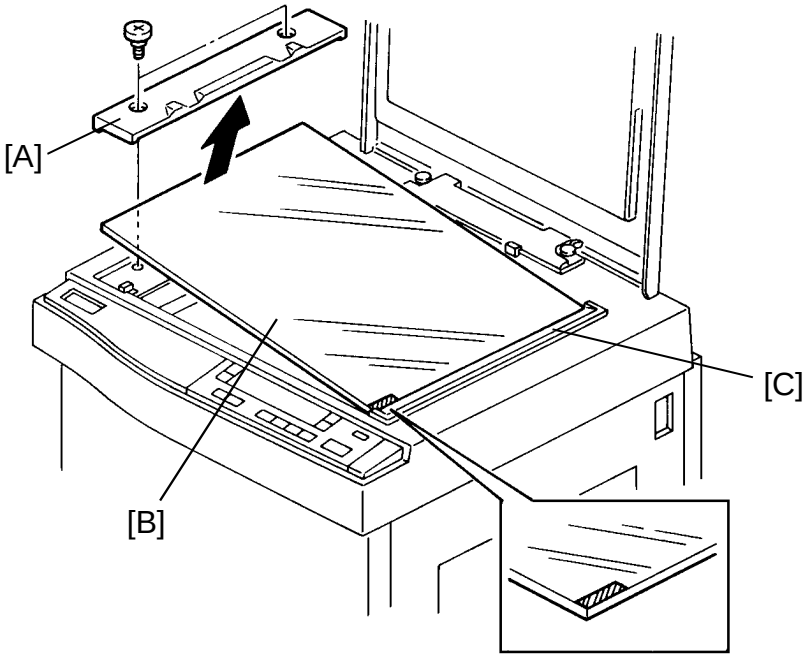
1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover [A] (3 screws).

1.2.2 Lower Inner Cover

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the lower inner cover [B] (5 screws).

2. OPTICS

2.1 EXPOSURE GLASS REMOVAL



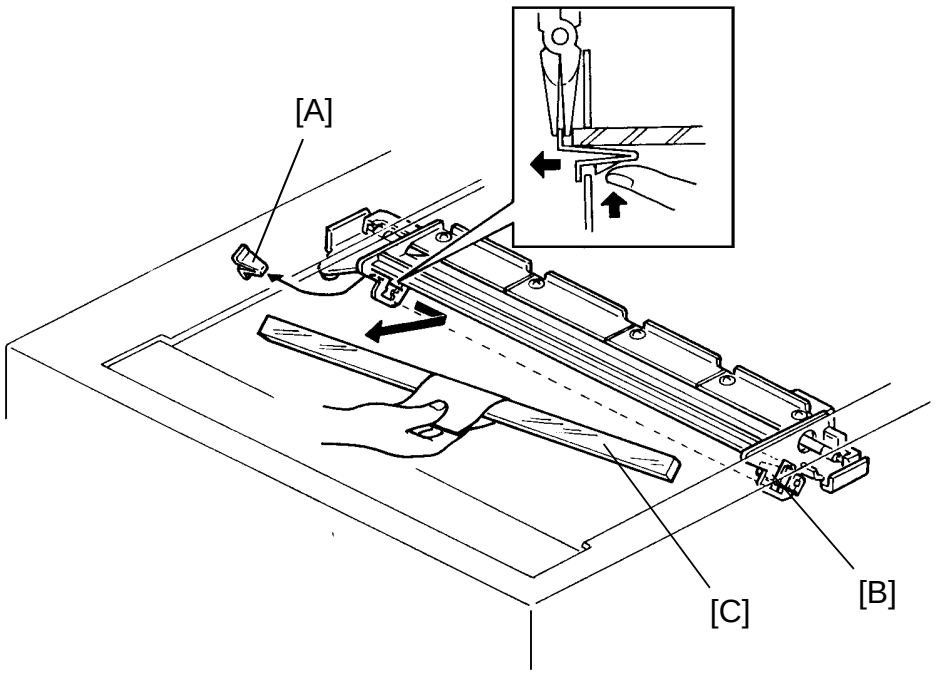
1. Take off the left scale [A] (2 shoulder screws).
2. Grasp the left edge of the exposure glass [B] and lift up slightly. Slide the other edge out from under the right glass holder [C]. Remove the exposure glass.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the exposure glass, make sure of the following:

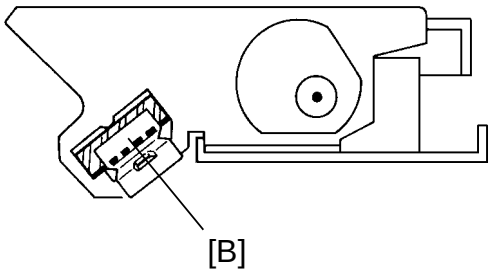
   a) The left edge of the glass is flush with the tab to the left of the scale plate, and the right glass holder firmly secures the exposure glass.

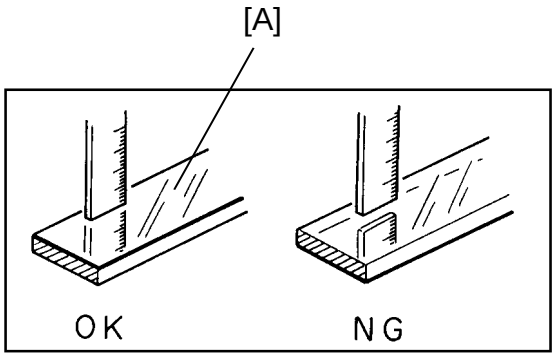
   b) The red mark is positioned on the right hand side facing upwards. This side is smoother and generates less static electricity when the DF is used.

2.2 1ST MIRROR REMOVAL



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Move the first scanner to the cutout position (150 mm from the left scale).
4. Move the 1st scanner to the front side. Then, while holding the scanner, press up on the rear spring plate [A] with finger and remove the plate with a pair of pliers. Leave the front spring plate [B] in position in the rear side plate cutout.
5. Carefully slide the 1st mirror [C] toward the front of the machine and lift the mirror out of the machine rear side first.





– To install –

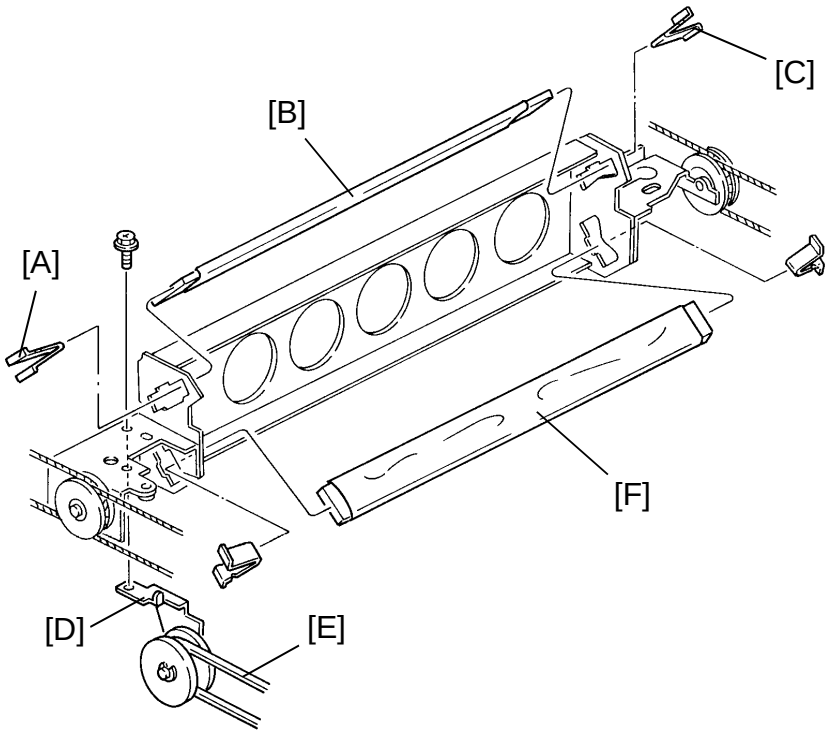
1. Insert the 1st mirror into the rear side plate cutout. Then insert the front side of the mirror into the front spring plate.

   NOTE: Make sure when installing the mirror that the reflecting surface [A] is on the upper side as shown.

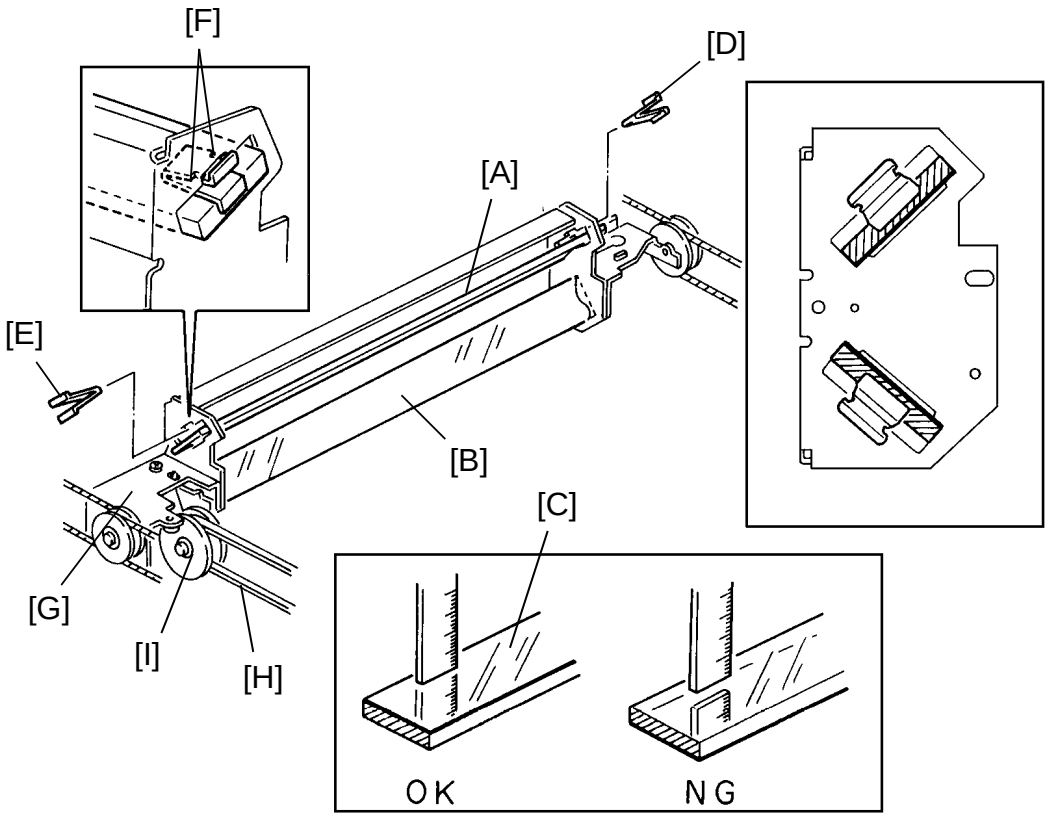
2. Insert the rear spring plate between the mirror and the rear side plate cutout.

   NOTE: Make sure that spring plate [B] must be positioned correctly as shown.

2.3 2ND AND 3RD MIRROR REMOVAL



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See exposure glass removal.)
3. Slide the 1st scanner 2/3 of the way to the right.
4. Remove the front spring plate [A] of the 2nd mirror [B].
5. Carefully shift the 2nd mirror toward the front of the machine to remove the rear spring plate [C].
6. Lift the 2nd mirror out of the machine.
7. Remove the pulley bracket [D] of the exposure lamp harness [E] (1 screw).
8. Remove the 3rd mirror [F] in the same way of the 2nd mirror.



– To reinstall –

1. Position the 2nd mirror [A]/3rd mirror [B] in the front and rear side plate cutouts.

   NOTE: Make sure that the reflecting surface [C] faces the lens.

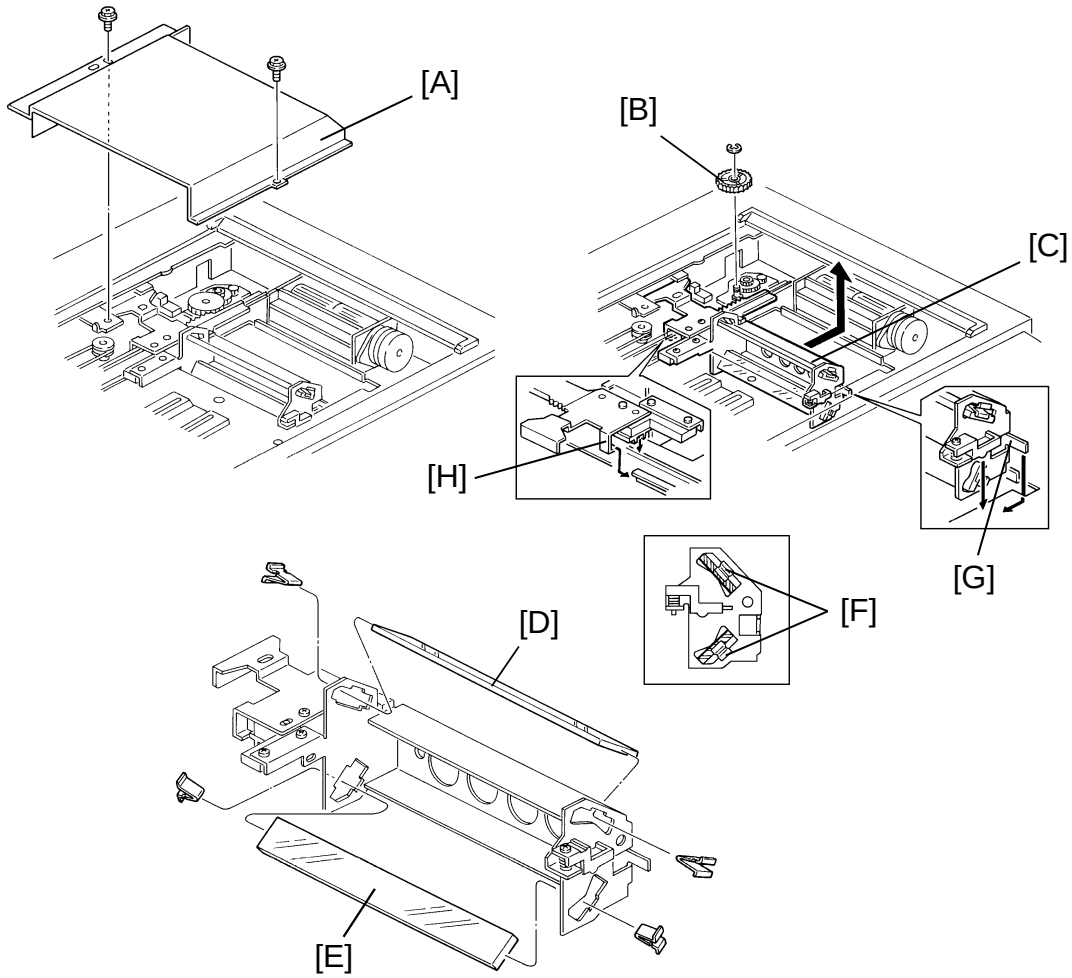
2. Set the rear spring plate [D] in the rear side plate cutout while holding the mirror and set the front spring plate [E] in the front side plate cutout.

   NOTE: a) Make sure that the cutout [F] of the spring plate is positioned as shown.

   b) Do not touch the reflecting surface with bare hands.

   c) When reinstalling the pulley bracket [G] while winding the exposure lamp harness [H] around the pulley [I], do not bend are break off the exposure lamp harness.

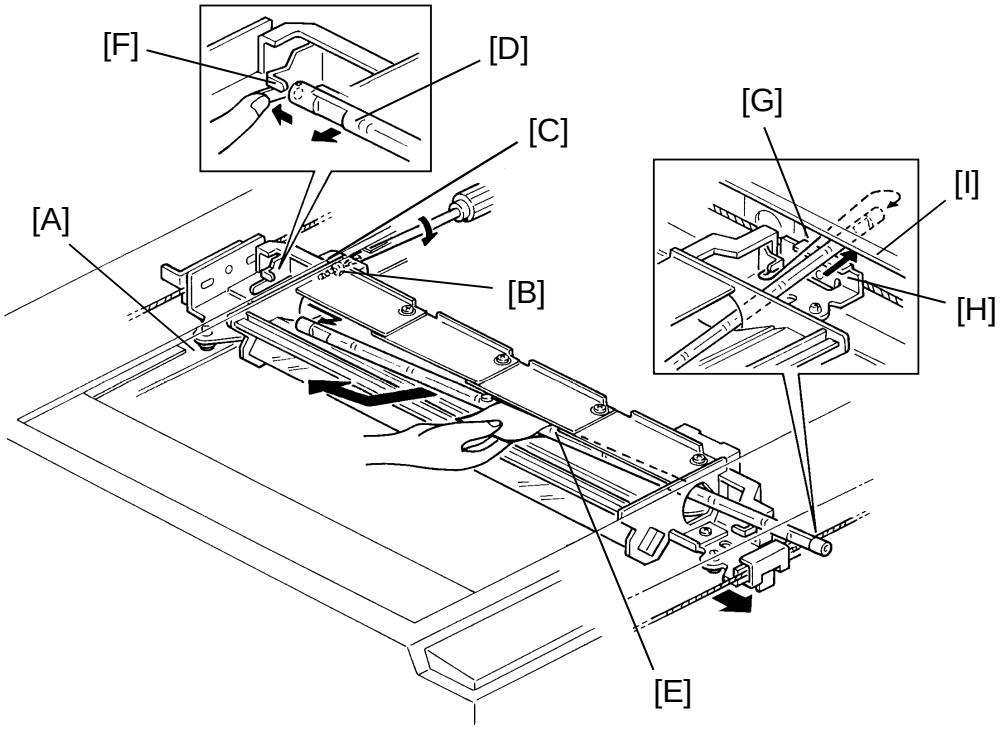
2.4 4TH AND 5TH MIRROR REPLACEMENT



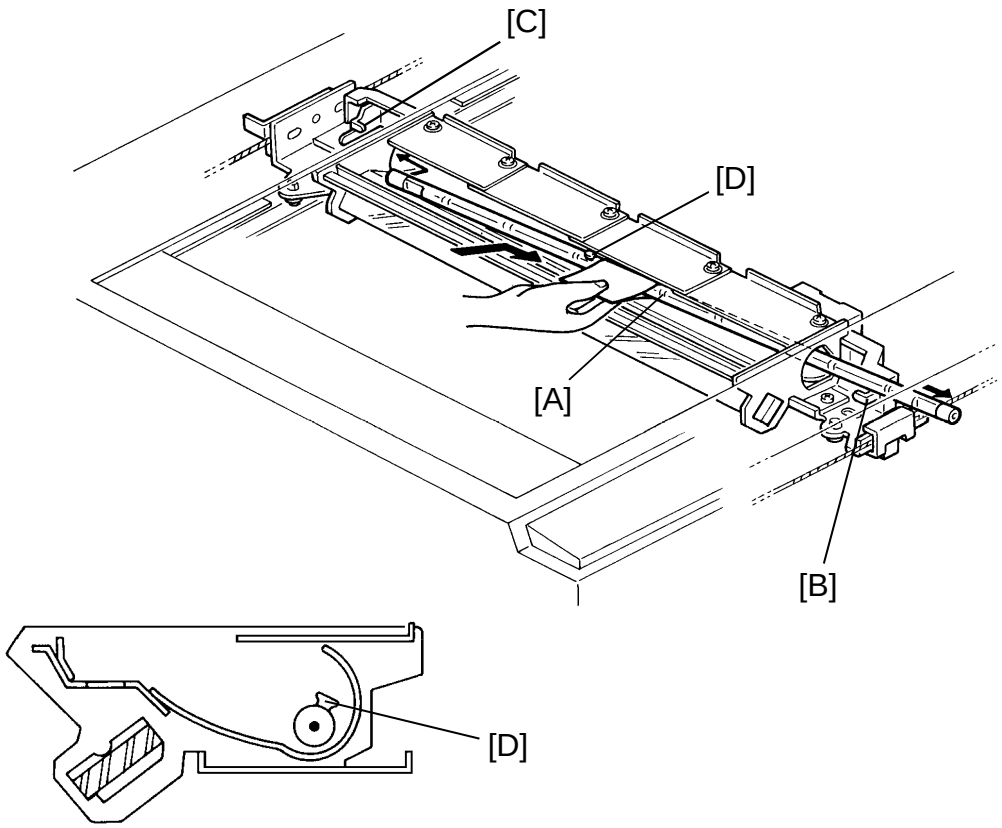
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Remove the lens cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the 4th and 5th mirror assembly drive gear [B] (1 E-ring).
5. Slide the mirror assembly [C] all the way to the right and remove it.
6. Replace the fourth [D] and fifth [E] mirrors. (The procedure for removing the mirrors from their brackets is the same as with the second and third mirrors.)

   NOTE: a) make sure that the reflecting surface faces lens.
   b) Position the spring plates [F] as shown.
   c) When reinstalling the 4th and 5th mirror assembly, make sure that the hooks [G and H] are properly positioned as shown.

2.5 EXPOSURE LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the copier.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Move the first scanner to the cutout position at the rear frame [A] and move the first scanner toward front side as shown.
4. Loosen a screw [B] of the rear lamp terminal bracket [C].
5. Take off the rear side [D] of the exposure lamp [E] from the rear lamp terminal [F] while pressing the rear terminal.
6. Slide the exposure lamp toward the front side and pass the front side of the exposure lamp through the space [G] between the front scanner clamp [H] and front copier frame [I] while lifting the rear side of the exposure lamp.
7. Take out the exposure lamp.



8. Install a new lamp [A]. Use a strip of paper as shown to hold the lamp. Set the front terminal [B] first.

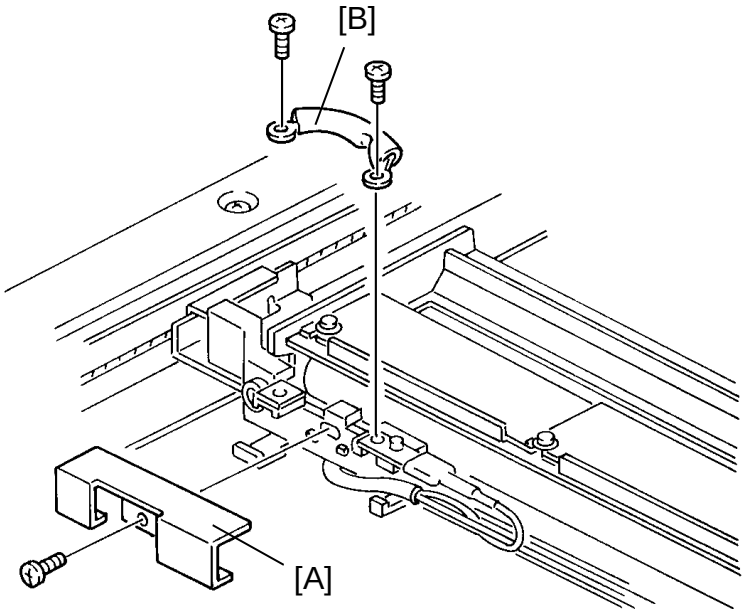
NOTE: a) Make sure that the exposure lamp is properly positioned at the front and rear [C] terminals.

b) Make sure that the blister [D] on the lamp is positioned upward as shown.

c) Return the first scanner to the original position and make sure that the first scanner moves smoothly.

d) Check the light intensity (SP48) and ADS adjustment (SP56). (See Light Intensity Adjustment and ADS Adjustment.)

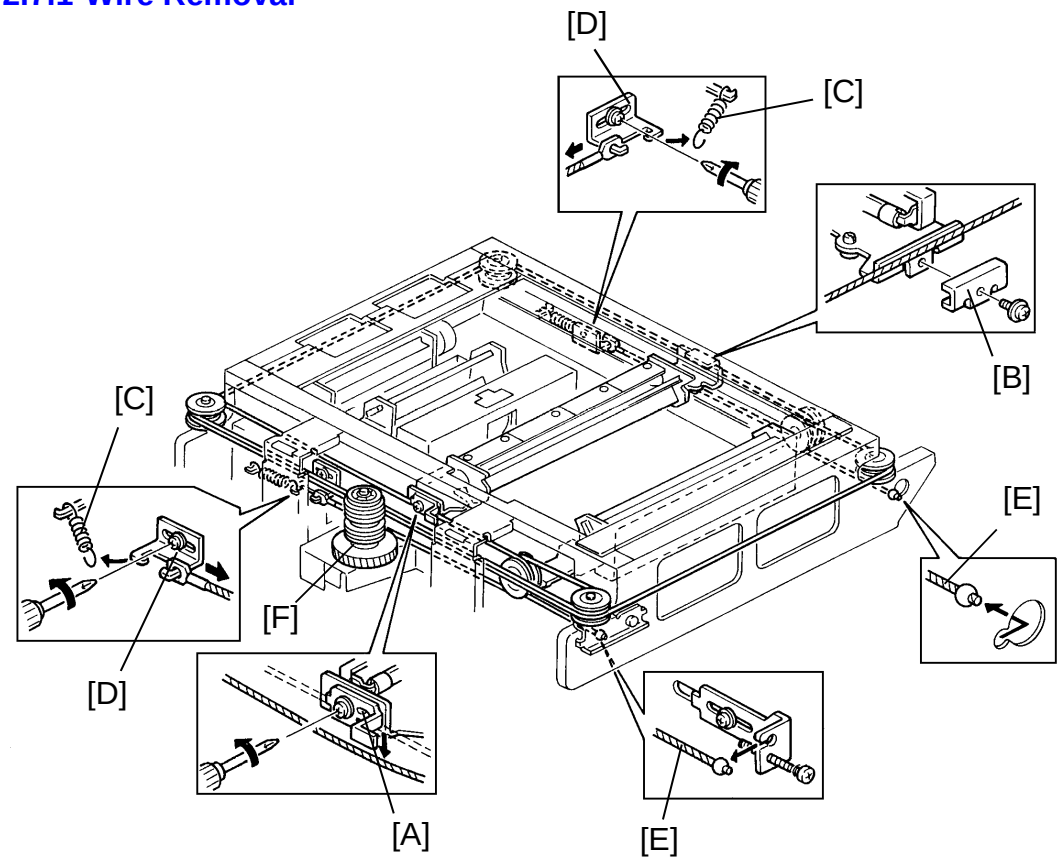
2.6 THERMOFUSE REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the copier.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Remove the thermofuse bracket [A] (1 screw).
4. Remove the thermofuse [B] (2 screws).

2.7 SCANNER DRIVE WIRE REPLACEMENT

2.7.1 Wire Removal

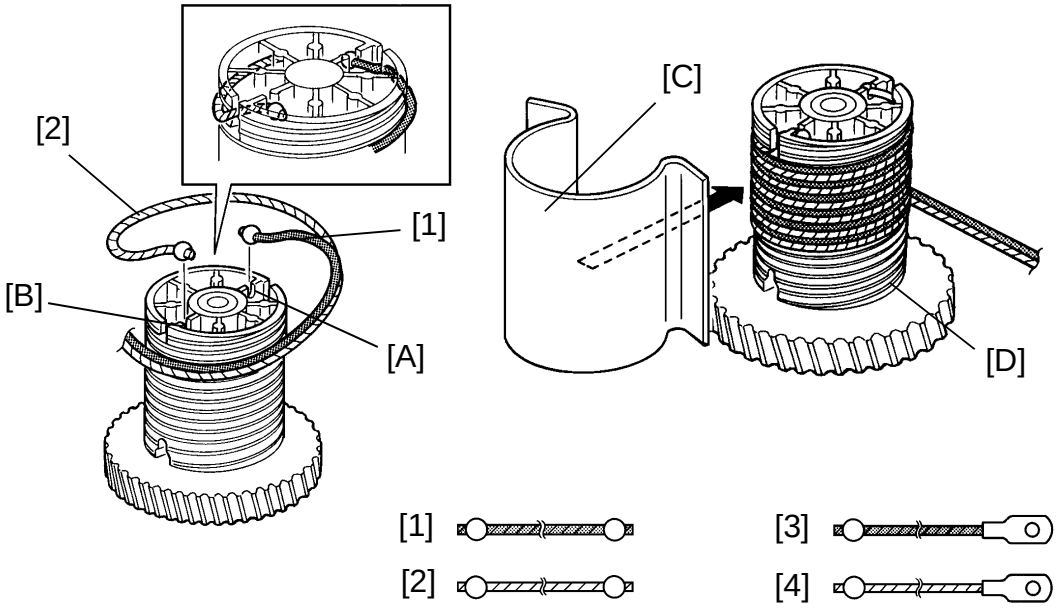


1. Remove the following covers and parts.

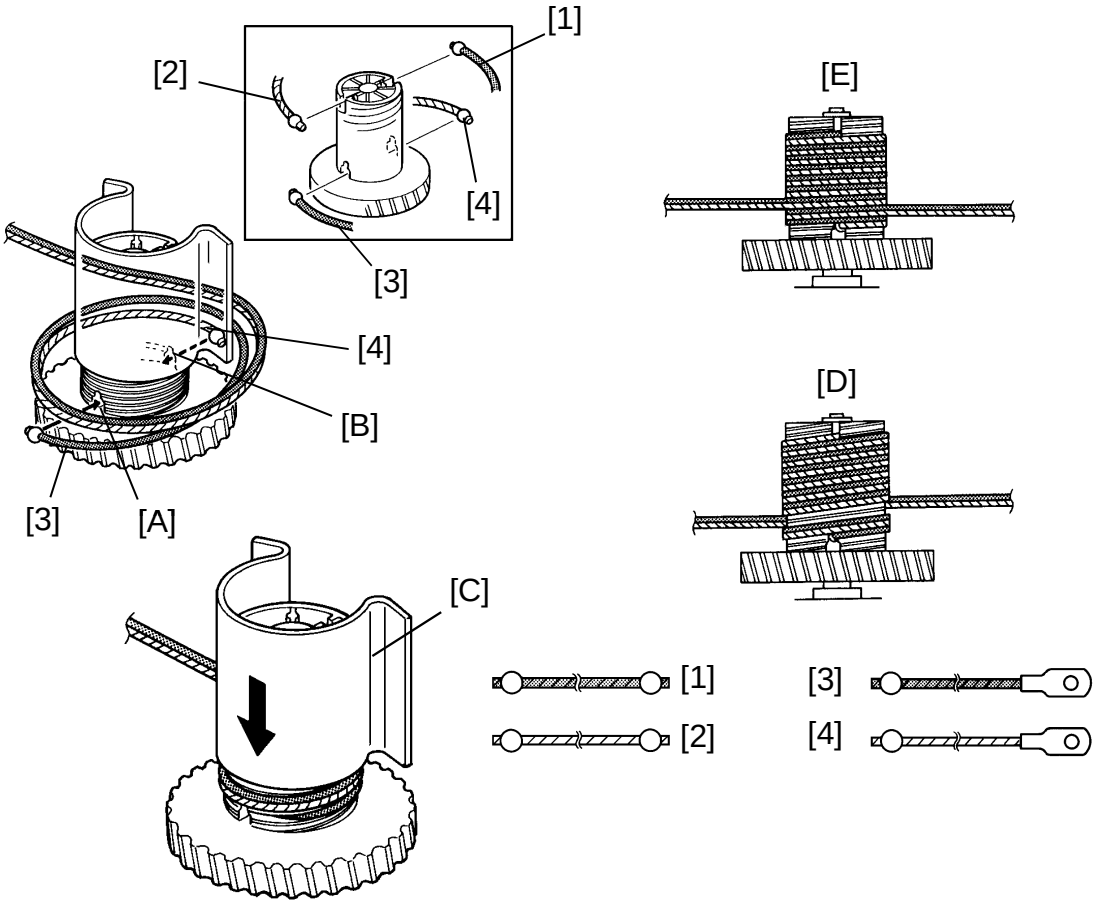
Platen cover (if installed)	Document feeder (if installed)
Upper rear cover	Upper cover
Operation panel	Exposure glass

2. Loosen the screws securing rear first scanner wire clamp [A].
3. Remove the front first scanner wire clamp [B].
4. Remove the front and rear wire tightened springs [C].
5. Loosen the screws securing the front and rear wire fixing plates [D].
6. Remove scanner wires [E] from the left side plate.
7. Remove scanner wires (four wires) from the drive pulley [F].
8. Remove the drive pulley (1 E-ring).

2.7.2 Wire Installation



1. Put the bead at the end of the dark silver wire [1] in slot [A].
2. Put the bead of the light silver wire [2] in slot [B].
3. Wind the dark silver wire [1] clockwise halfway around the pulley. Wind the light silver wire [2] clockwise one complete turn around the pulley.
4. Wind the dark and light silver wires together five and a half times around the pulley. Make sure that the dark silver wire is wound six times and the light silver wire is wound six and a half times in total.
5. Set the omega clamp [C] over the wires on the drive pulley [D] as shown.



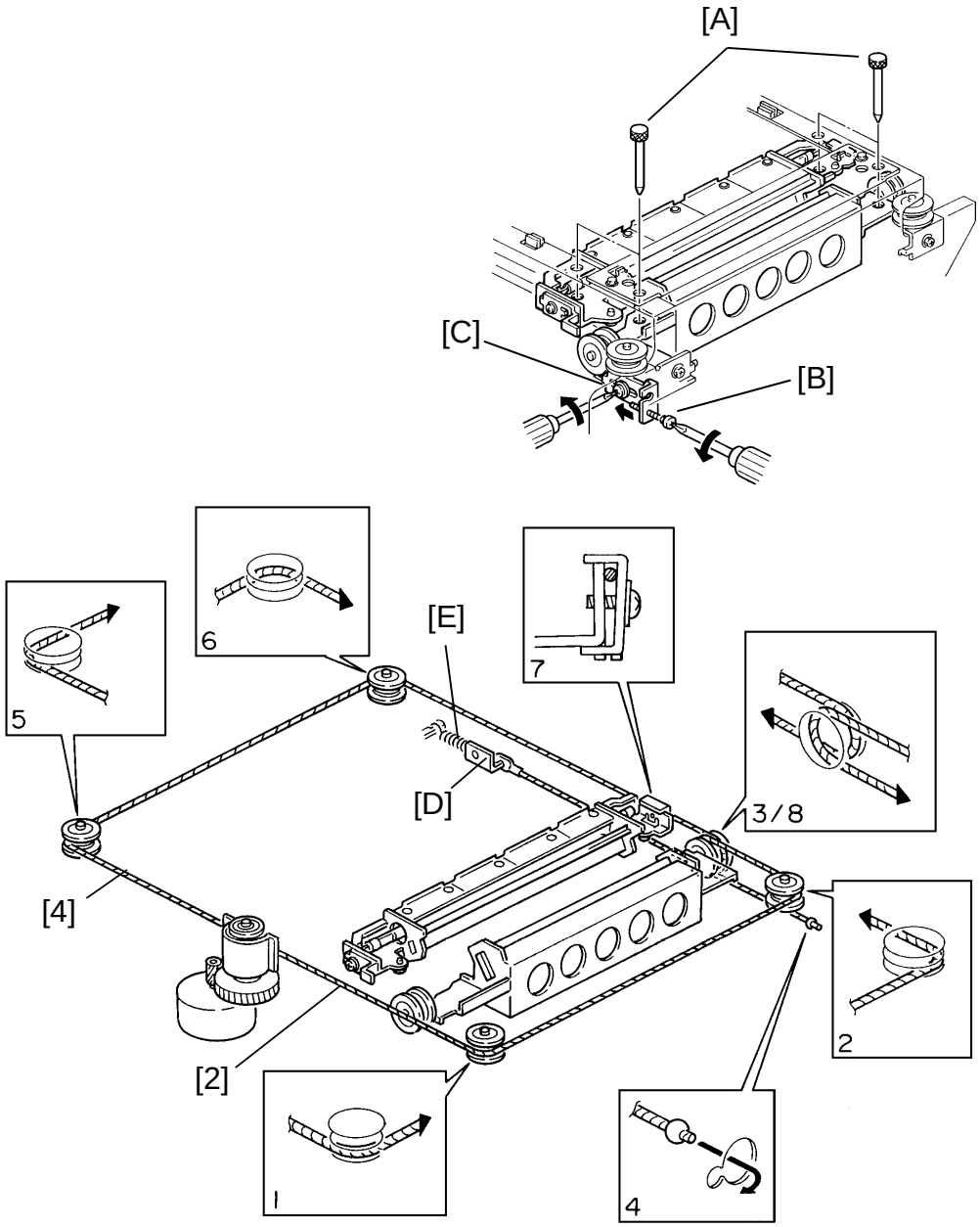
6. Put the bead of the dark silver wire [3] in slot [A] on the light silver wire [2] side.
7. Put the bead of the light silver wire [4] in the other slot [B] on the dark silver wire [1] side.
8. Wind the dark silver wire [3] clockwise one and a half times around the pulley. Wind the light silver wire [4] once clockwise around the pulley.
9. Slide the omega clamp [C] down to secure all the wires as shown.

   NOTE: a) The dark and light silver wires alternate on the pulley with the dark silver wire uppermost.

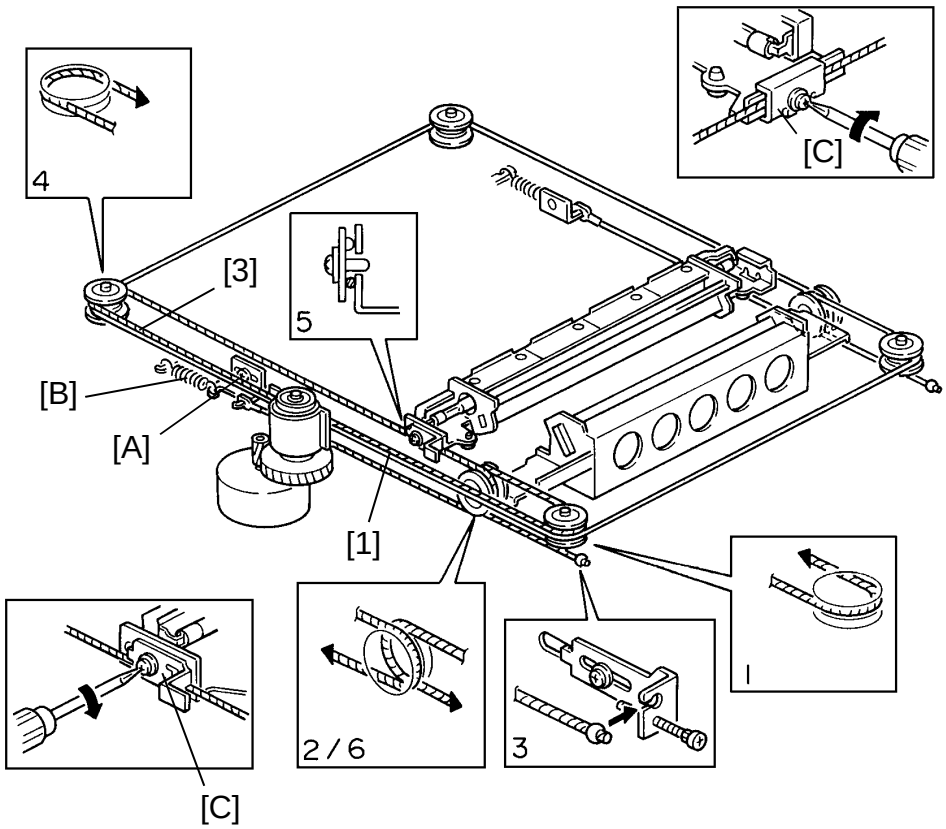
   b) Wires are not wound around the two grooves shown in the illustration (rear view [D]).

   c) Wires are wound around all the grooves shown in the illustration (front view [E]).

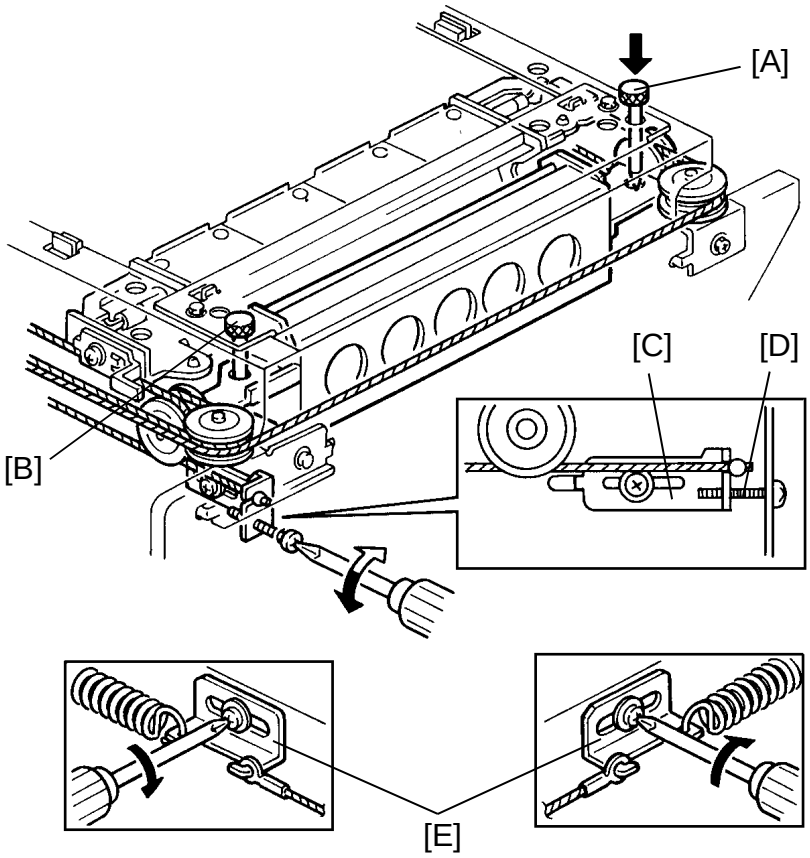
10. Set the pulley on the drive shaft (1 E-ring).



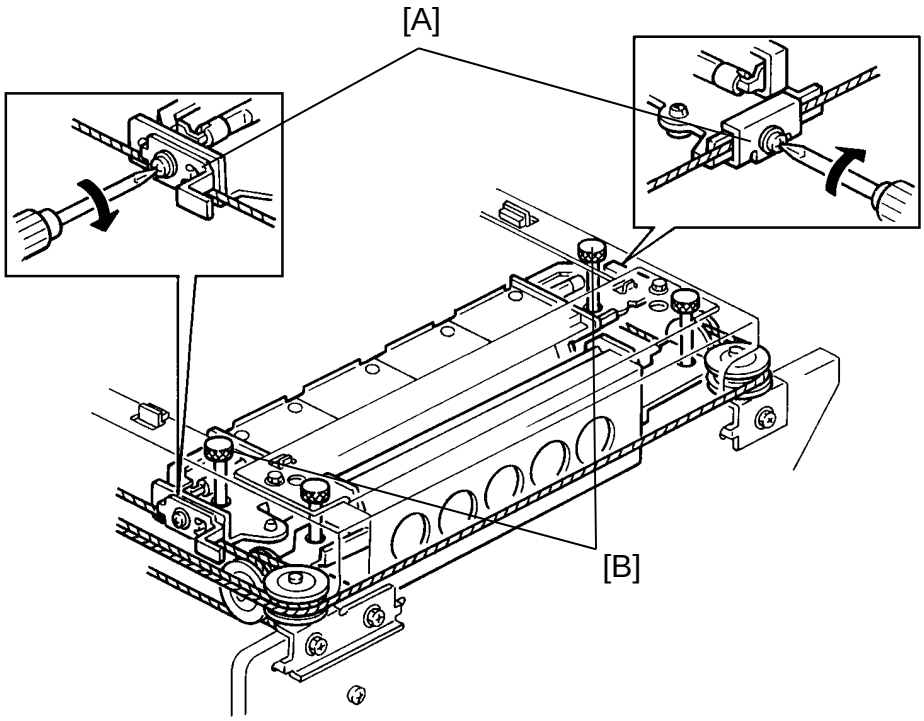
11. Manually move the first and second scanners to home position.
12. Insert the four positioning pins [A] in the holes on the scanner guide rails to secure the first and second scanners.
13. Loosen the wire tension bracket fixing screw [B] and the wire tension adjusting screws [C].
14. Loosen the screw securing the front fixing plate [D]. Place wires ([2] and [4]) on the pulleys as shown.
15. Hook the light silver wire [4] onto the front fixing plate and hook the wire tension spring [E] onto the front fixing plate and the frame projection.



16. Place dark silver wires ([1] and [3]) around the pulleys as shown.
17. Attach wire [3] to the rear wire fixing plate [A], then hook one end of tension spring [B] to the fixing plate and the other end to the frame projection.
18. Reinstall and tighten the first scanner clamps [C] (front and rear) and remove the four positioning pins and the omega clamp.
19. Perform free run (turn DIP switch 101-1 ON) for 10 minutes and make sure that the scanners operate smoothly.



20. Adjust the tension in the second scanner wire.
    (1) Insert positioning pin [A] in the hole at the front end of the second scanner.
    (2) Loosely insert positioning pin [B] in the hole at the rear end of the second scanner.
    (3) Loosen the two screws securing the wire tension bracket [C], then turn the 2nd scanner positioning screw [D] clockwise until the rear positioning pin drops and locks in position.
    (4) Tighten the two screws securing the wire tension bracket [C].
    (5) Make sure the positioning pin [B] slides in and out smoothly. If not, repeat step (3).
    (6) Tighten the screws securing the front and rear wire fixing plates [E].

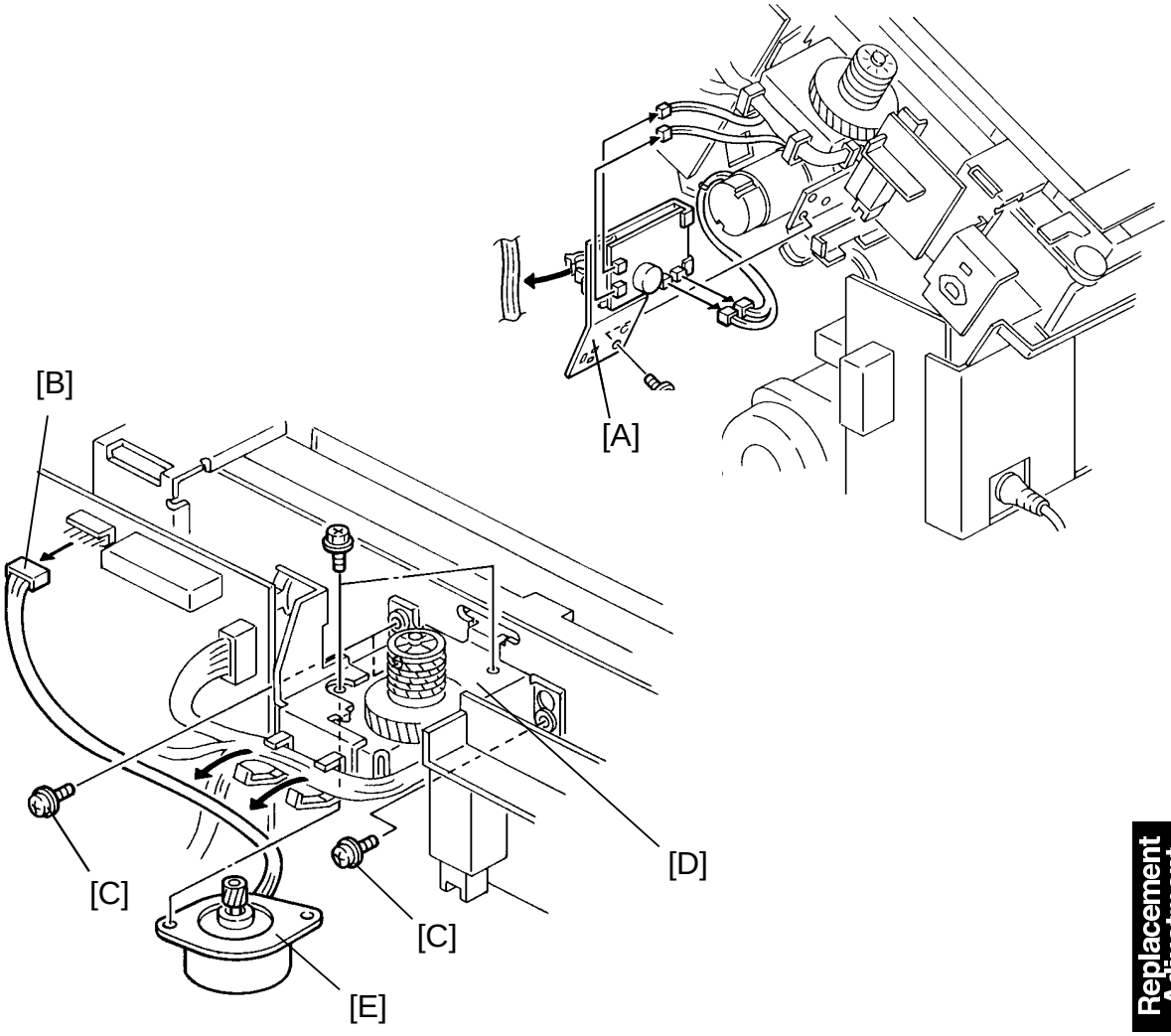


21. Adjust the first scanner wire clamps.
    (1) Loosen the front and rear first scanner wire clamps [A].
    (2) Insert the front and rear positioning pins [B] (2 pcs).
    (3) Tighten the wire clamps.

22. Reassemble.

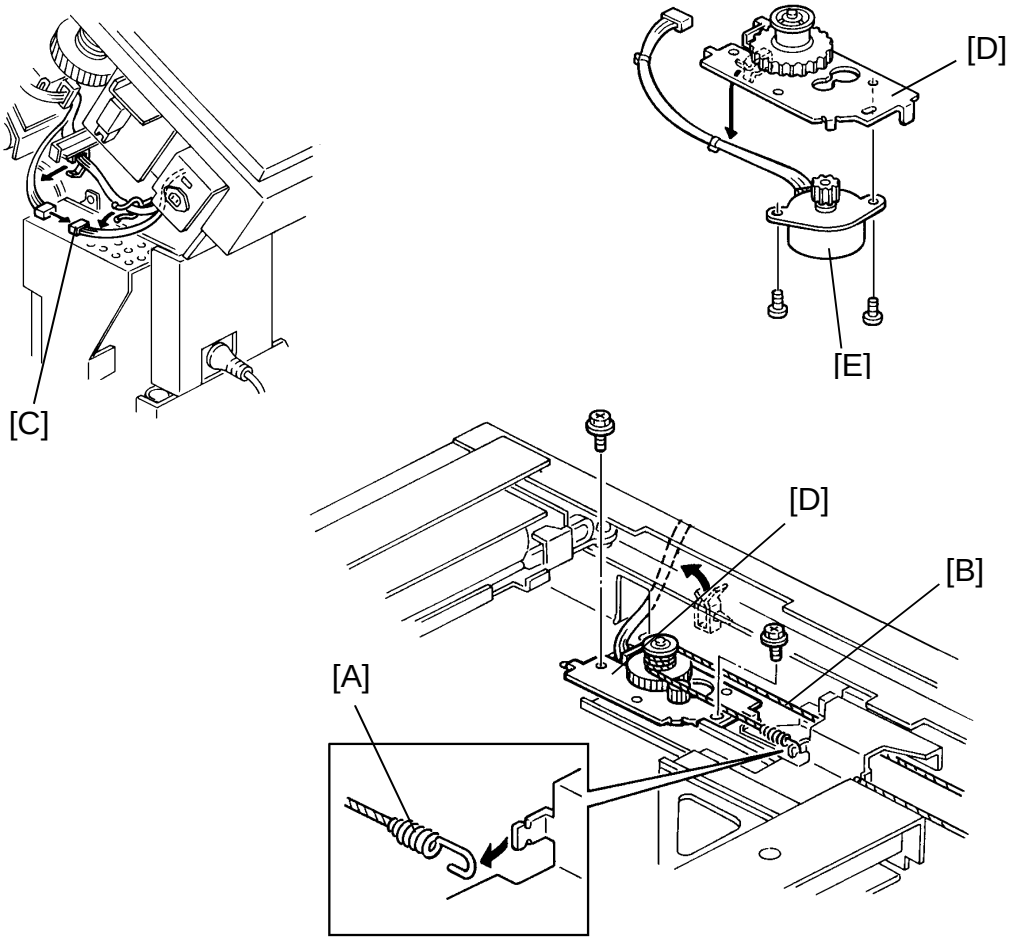
    NOTE: Always adjust the first scanner wire clamps after adjusting the tension in the second scanner wire.

2.8 SCANNER MOTOR REPLACEMENT

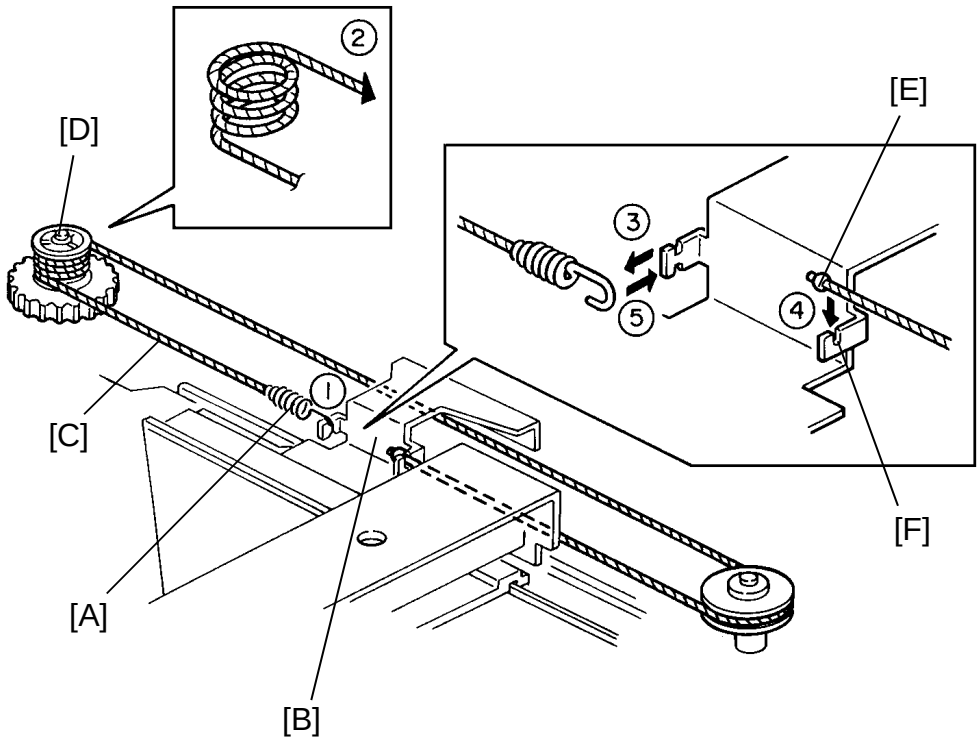


1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the platen cover or DF.
3. Remove the upper rear cover and the upper cover.
4. Open the upper unit by pressing the release lever.
5. Remove the drum motor board bracket [A] (1 screw, 4 connectors and 1 harness clamp).
6. Close the upper unit.
7. Remove the 6P connector [B] from the main board (CN 105) and remove the scanner motor harness from the harness clamps.
8. Remove three screws [C] of the scanner motor bracket [D] and replace the scanner motor [E] (2 screws).

2.9 LENS DRIVE MOTOR REPLACEMENT (A077/A078 Copiers only)



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass and the lens cover.
3. Remove the tension spring [A] and the lens drive wire [B].
4. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
5. Open the front cover.
6. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
7. Remove the lens motor 6P connector [C].
8. Close the upper unit.
9. Remove the lens motor bracket [D] (2 screws).
10. Remove the motor [E] from the bracket (2 screws), and replace the motor.
11. Reassemble.

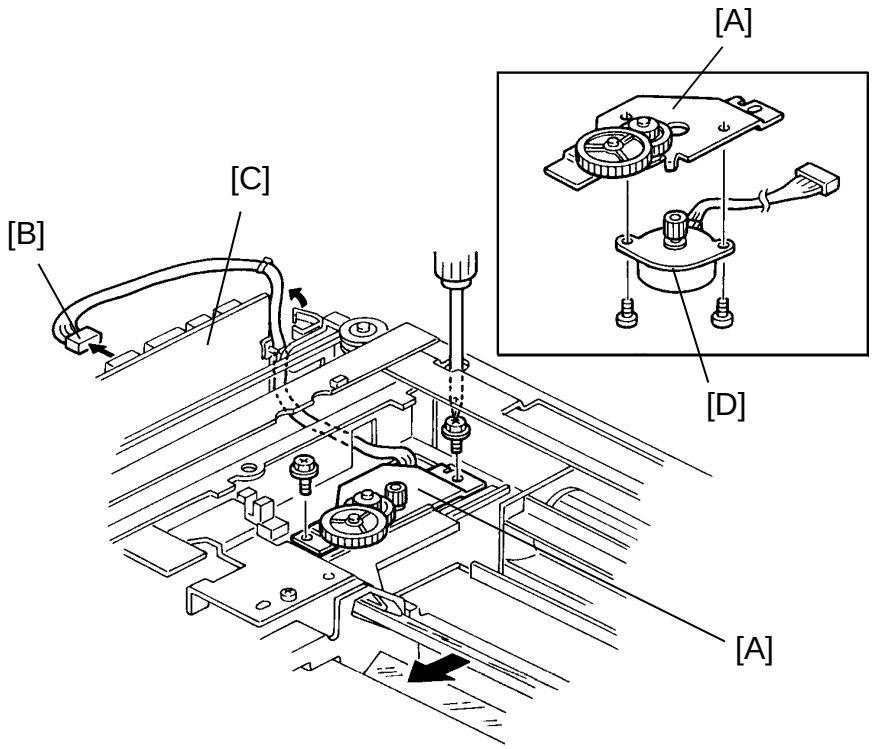


- Lens Drive Wire Installation -

1. Hook the spring [A] to the sensor actuator bracket [B].
2. Wind the lens drive wire [C] three and half times around the pulley [D].
3. Unhook the spring and place the bead [E] at the other end of the wire in slot [F] on the sensor actuator bracket.
4. Reattach the spring to the bracket.

   NOTE: Rotate the lens drive pulley and make sure that the lens drive wire moves smoothly.

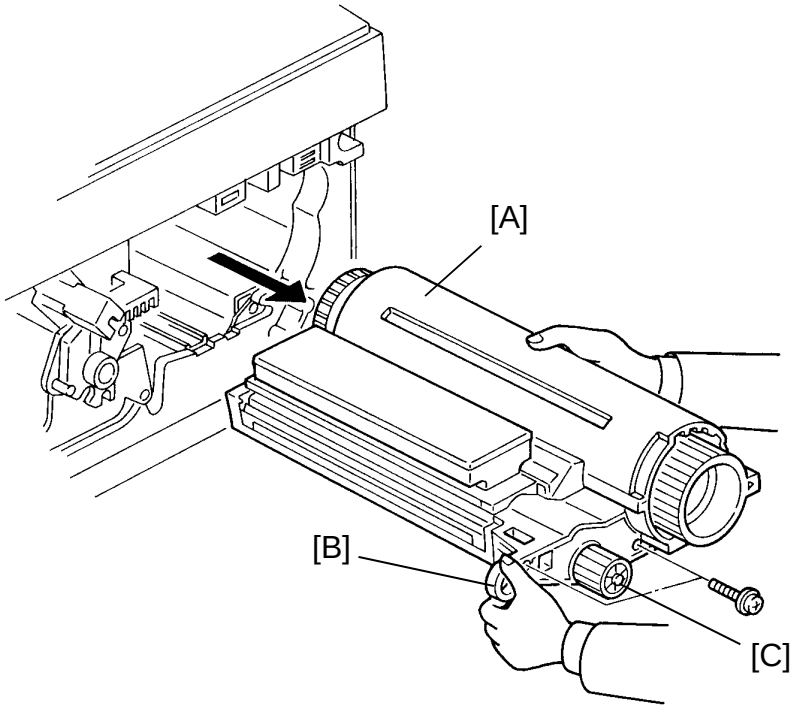
2.10 4TH/5TH MIRROR MOTOR REPLACEMENT (A077/A078 Copiers Only)



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the exposure glass, upper cover (with the operation panel), lens cover, and upper rear cover.
3. Move the 4th/5th mirror assembly to the left (viewed from the front).
4. Remove the motor bracket [A] (2 screws).
5. Remove the motor 6P connector [B] from the main board [C] (CN 104).
6. Separate the 4th/5th mirror motor [D] from the bracket (2 screws) and replace it.
7. Reassemble

3. DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY

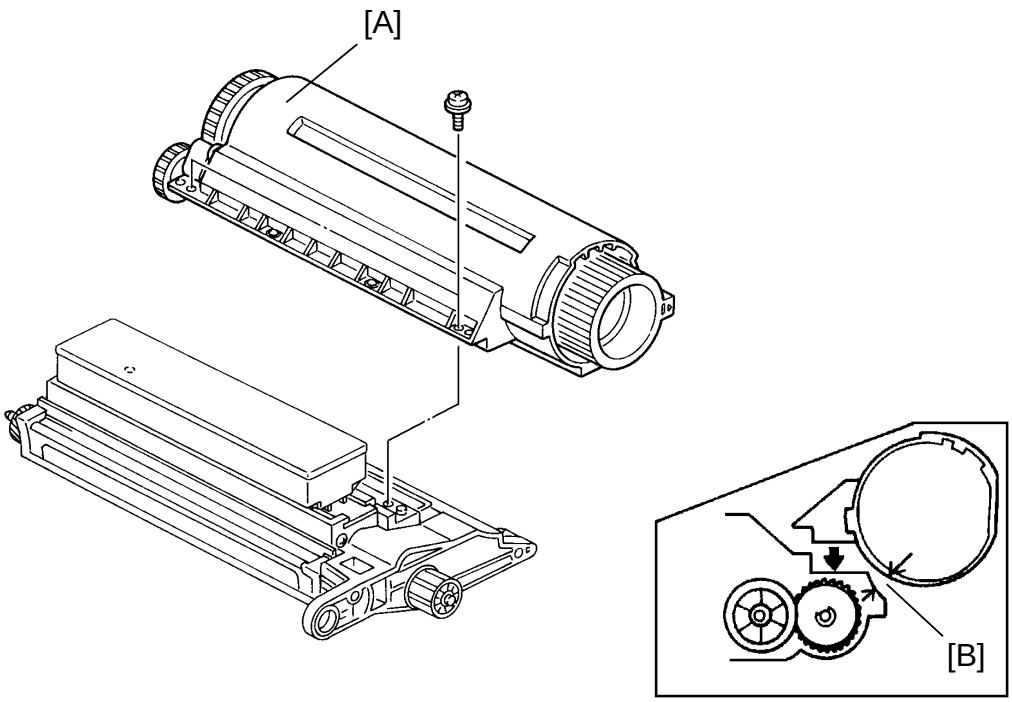
3.1 DEVELOPMENT UNIT REMOVAL



1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover. (See Upper Inner Cover Removal.)
3. Take out the development unit [A] while pulling the left side of the development cover [B] (2 screws).

   NOTE: Do not hold the development knob [C].

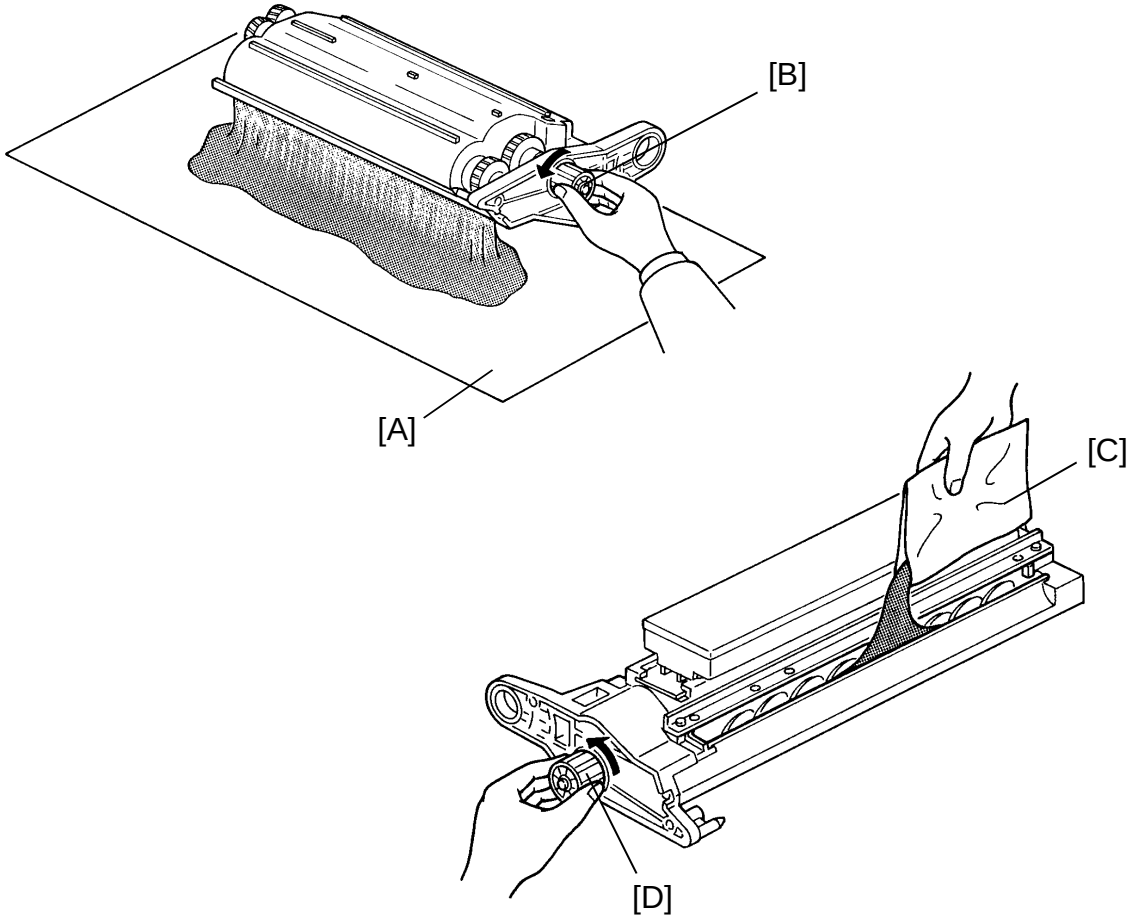
3.2 TONER SUPPLY UNIT REMOVAL



1. Take out the development unit. (See Development Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the toner supply unit [A] (2 screws).

   NOTE: Make sure that there is no gap [B] between the toner supply unit and the development unit. (See Illustration.)

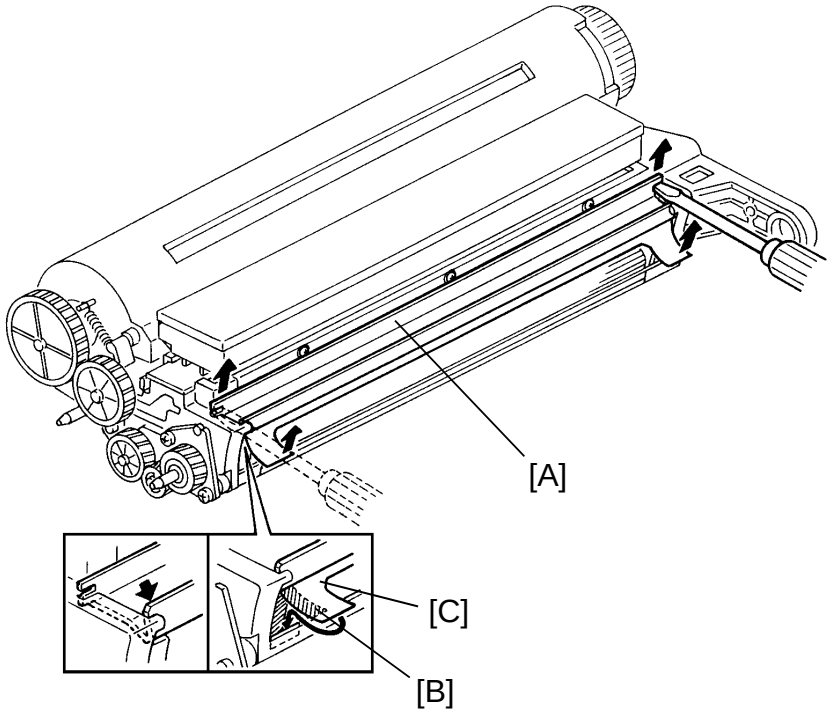
3.3 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT



1. Take out the development unit (2 screws).
2. Set the development unit on a large sheet of paper [A].
3. Remove the toner supply unit (2 screws). (See Toner Supply Unit Removal.)
4. Turn the paddle roller knob [B] counterclockwise to empty developer onto the paper.

   NOTE: Dispose of the used toner according to local regulations.
5. Make sure that no developer remains on the development roller or in the development unit.
6. Pour one pack of developer [C] into the development unit while turning the paddle roller knob [D].
7. Reinstall the toner supply unit and set the development unit in the machine.
8. Perform initial setting for new developer using SP65.

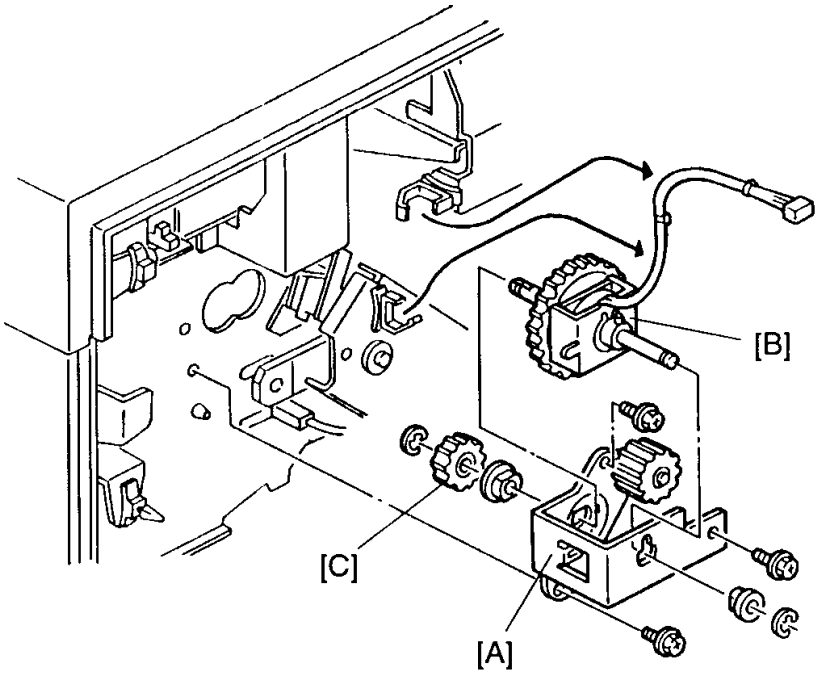
3.4 INLET SEAL REMOVAL



1. Take out the development unit.
2. Remove the inlet seal plate [A] by working a small slotted screwdriver as shown.

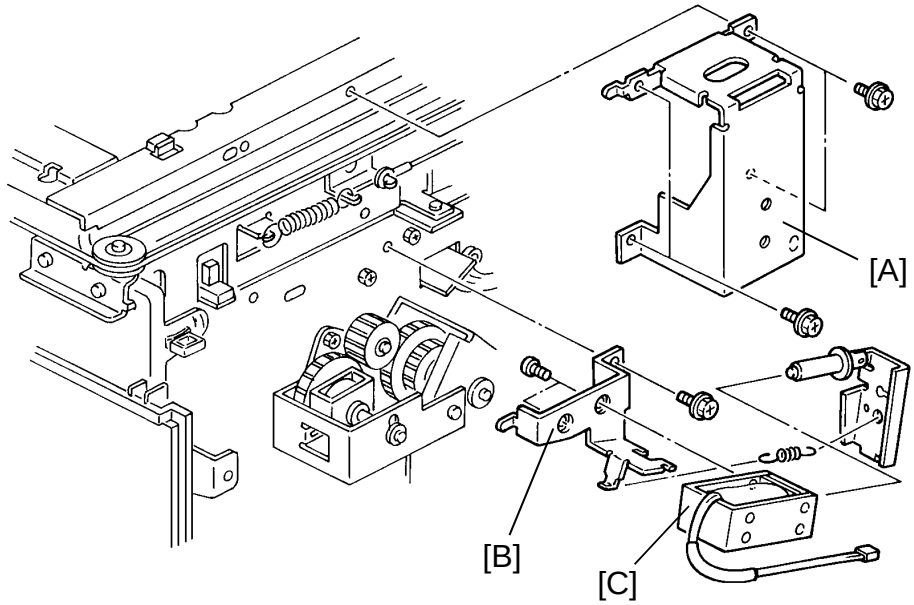
   NOTE: To install a new inlet seal plate, remove the covering from the 2-sided tape [B] and affix the inlet seal [C] to the development unit lower casing. Tuck both ends of the seal inside the lower casing as shown.

3.5 TONER SUPPLY CLUTCH REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper rear cover and main board (all connectors and 3 locking supports).
3. Remove the toner supply clutch bracket [A] (3 screws).
4. Remove the clutch [B] from the clutch bracket (2 E-rings, 2 bushing, and 1 gear [C]).

3.6 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH SOLENOID REPLACEMENT

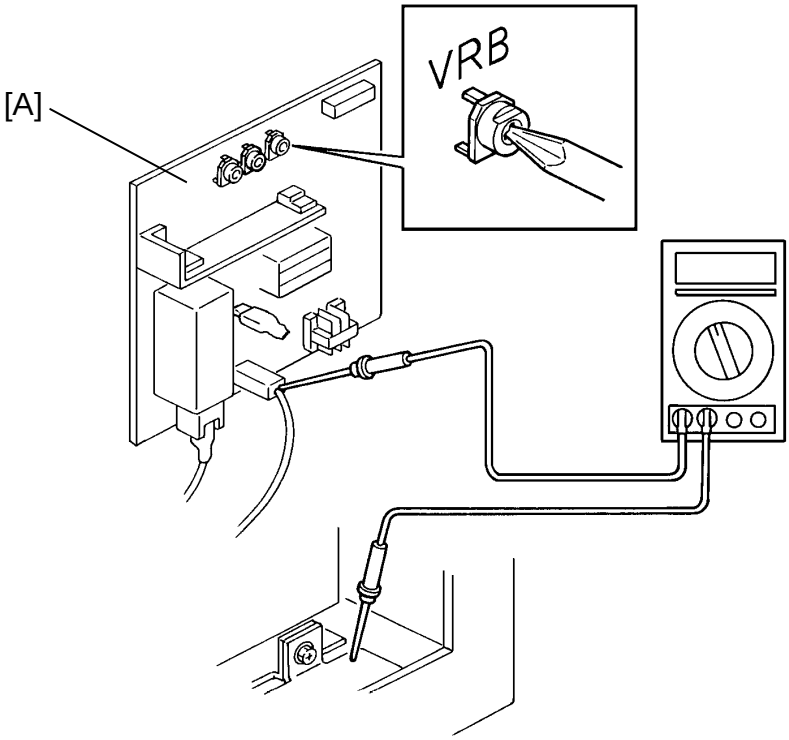


1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the following covers and parts.

   Platen cover (if installed) Document feeder (if installed)
   Upper rear cover Upper cover
   Operation panel
   Main board (all connectors and 3 locking supports)
3. Remove the DF mounting bracket [A] (4 screws).
4. Remove the clutch solenoid bracket [B] (1 screw).
5. Replace the solenoid [C] (2 screws).

   NOTE: Reinstall the solenoid on the bracket [B] so that the harness is positioned on the upper side as shown.

3.7 DEVELOPMENT BIAS VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT (SP9-38)



ADJUSTMENT STANDARD	Adjusting VR	
DC –500 ± 10 V	VRB	SP9-38

NOTE: VRB on the spare parts CC/Grid/Bias power pack is pre-adjusted. Usually it is not necessary to adjust VRB when the CC/Grid/Bias power pack is replaced.

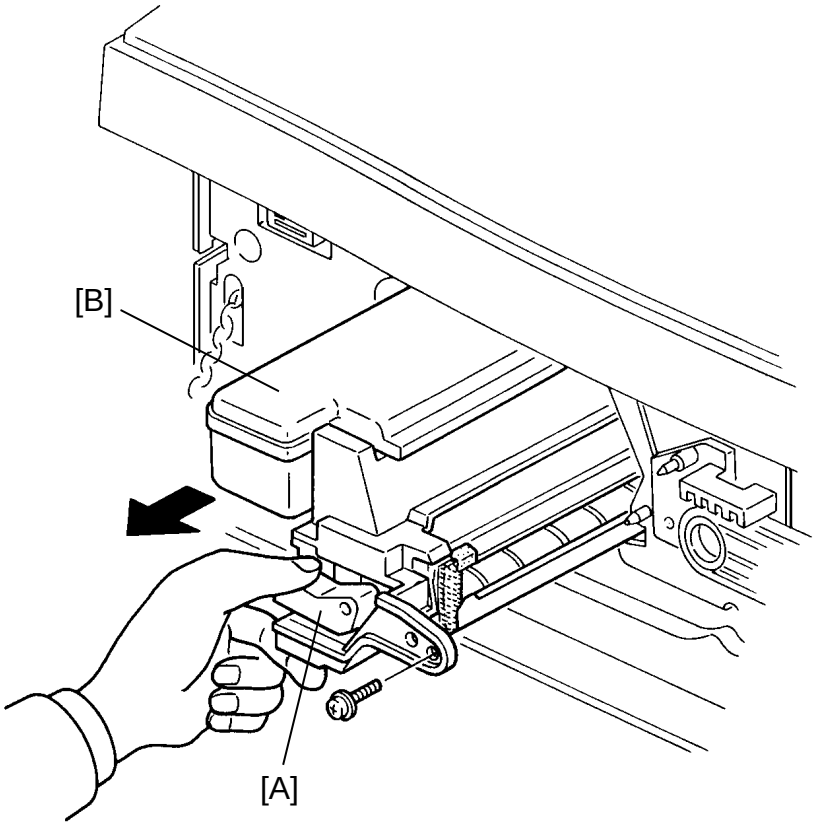
1. Set the multimeter range to dc 1500 V and connect the multimeter leads as shown.

   NOTE: Keep the multimeter leads away from the main board.

2. Turn on the main switch, front cover safety switch, and grid using SP9-38.
3. Adjust the grid voltage to –500 ± 10 V by turning VRB on the CC/Grid/Bias power pack [A].
4. Press the Clear/Stop key and turn off the main switch.

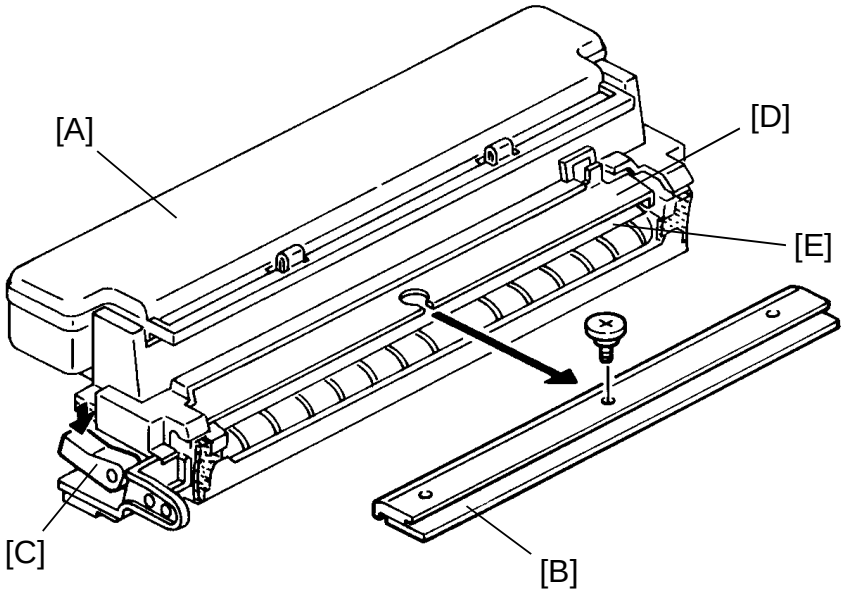
4. CLEANING

4.1 CLEANING UNIT REMOVAL



1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. While holding down the cleaning blade release lever [A], remove the cleaning unit [B] (1 screw).

4.2 CLEANING BLADE REPLACEMENT

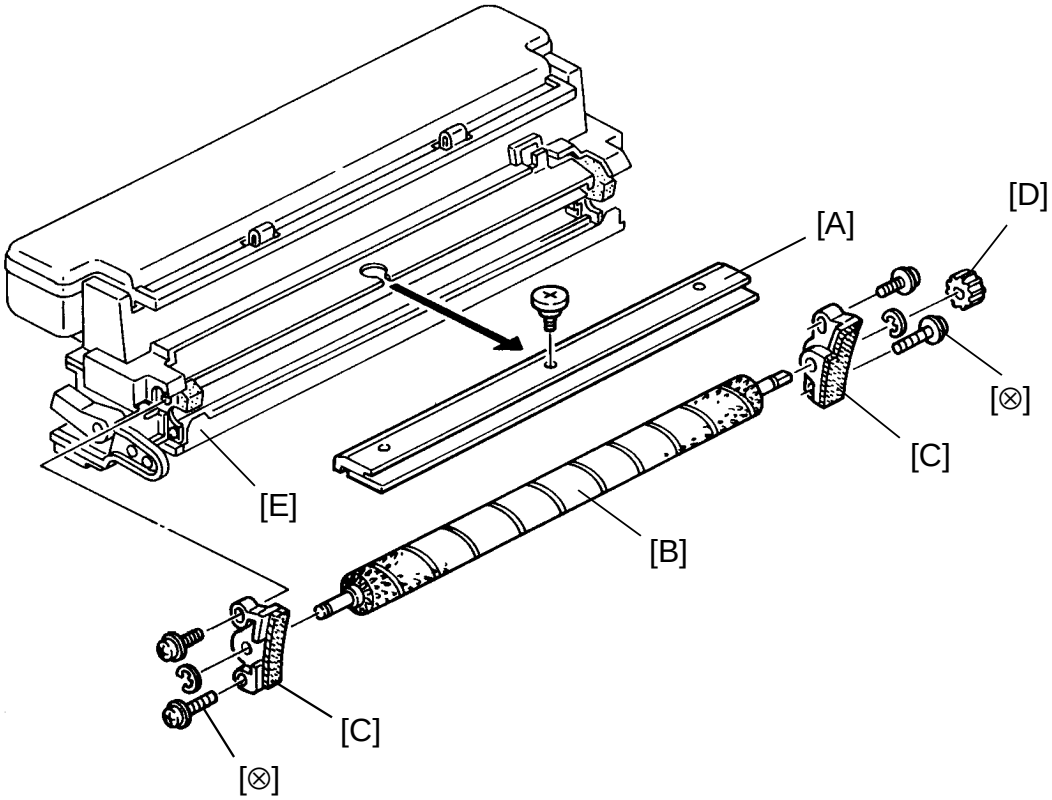


1. Remove the cleaning unit [A]. (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the cleaning blade [B] (1 shoulder screw).
3. While holding down the cleaning blade release lever [C], install the new cleaning blade between the blade bracket [D] and the blade scraper [E] (1 shoulder screw).

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the edge of a new cleaning blade, as it is damaged easily.

   b) After installing a new cleaning blade, make sure it swivels.

4.3 CLEANING BRUSH REPLACEMENT



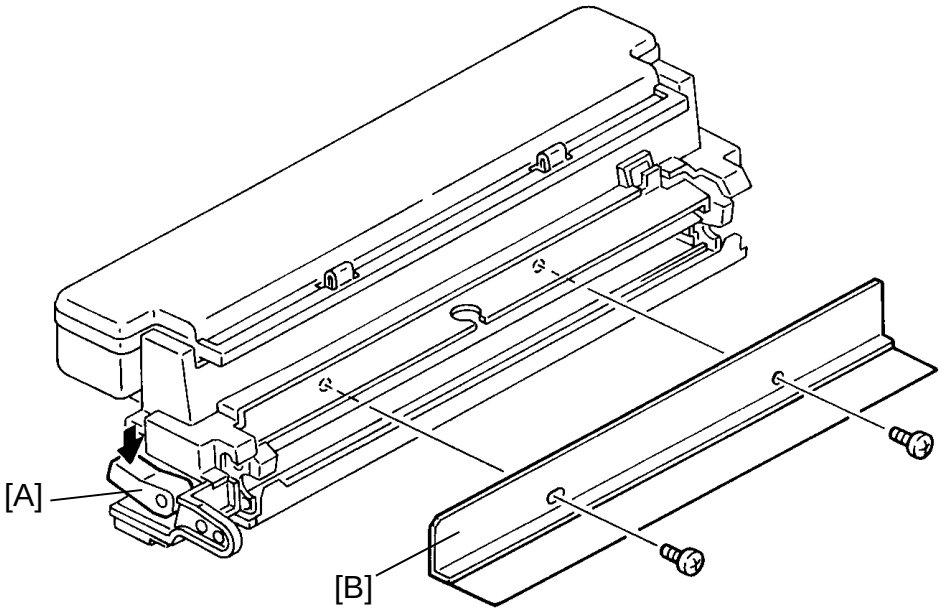
1. Remove the cleaning unit. (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the cleaning blade [A]. (See Cleaning Blade Replacement.)
3. Remove the cleaning brush bracket screws (4); then, remove the cleaning brush [B] together with the cleaning side brackets [C] and gear [D].
4. Remove the side brackets, the gear and the two E-rings, and replace the cleaning brush.

   NOTE: a) Do not touch the cleaning brush surface. Handle only the shaft-ends.

   b) Do not bend or damage the entrance seal [E].

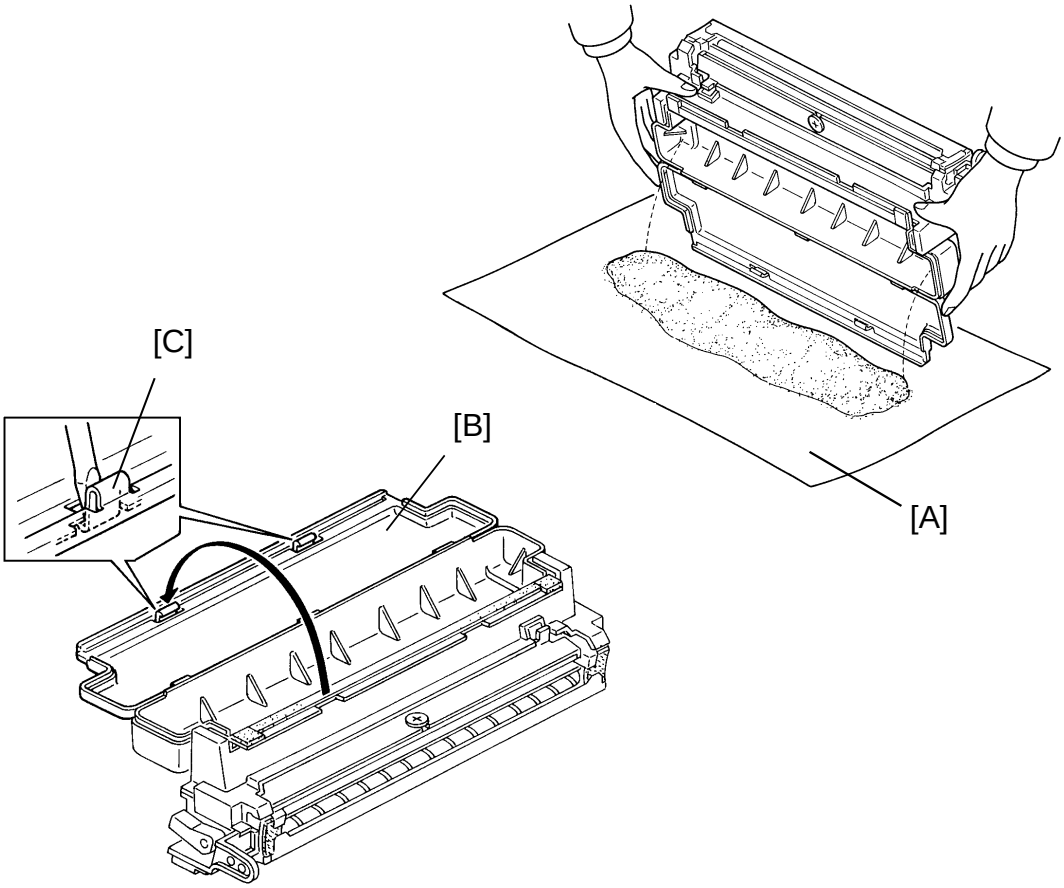
   c) These screws [⊗] are self-tapping screws. Do not tighten them too much as this will strip the resin threads.

4.4 BLADE SCRAPER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the cleaning unit. (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the cleaning blade and brush. (See Cleaning Blade and Brush Replacement.)
3. While holding down the cleaning blade release lever [A], remove the blade scraper [B] (2 screws).

4.5 USED TONER COLLECTION



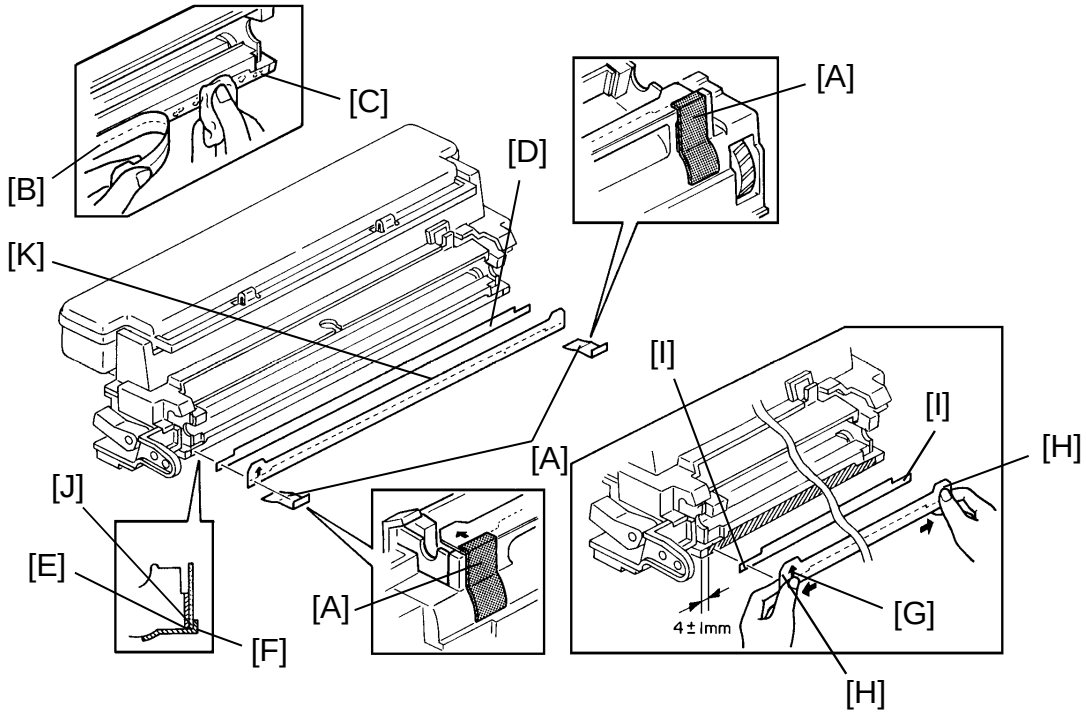
CAUTION: After disposing of the toner in the used toner tank, SP83 must be done to clear the memory counter (SP58).

1. Remove the cleaning unit. (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
2. Set the cleaning unit on a large sheet of paper [A].
3. Open the toner collection cover [B] while removing the hooks [C].

   NOTE: Do not peel off the tape on the toner collection cover.
4. Pour the used toner slowly onto the paper sheet so that the toner does not scatter.
5. Place the paper sheet with the used toner into a plastic bag.

   NOTE: Dispose according to local regulations.
6. Reinstall the cleaning unit.
7. Perform the SP83 to clear the memory counter.

4.6 ENTRANCE SEAL REPLACEMENT



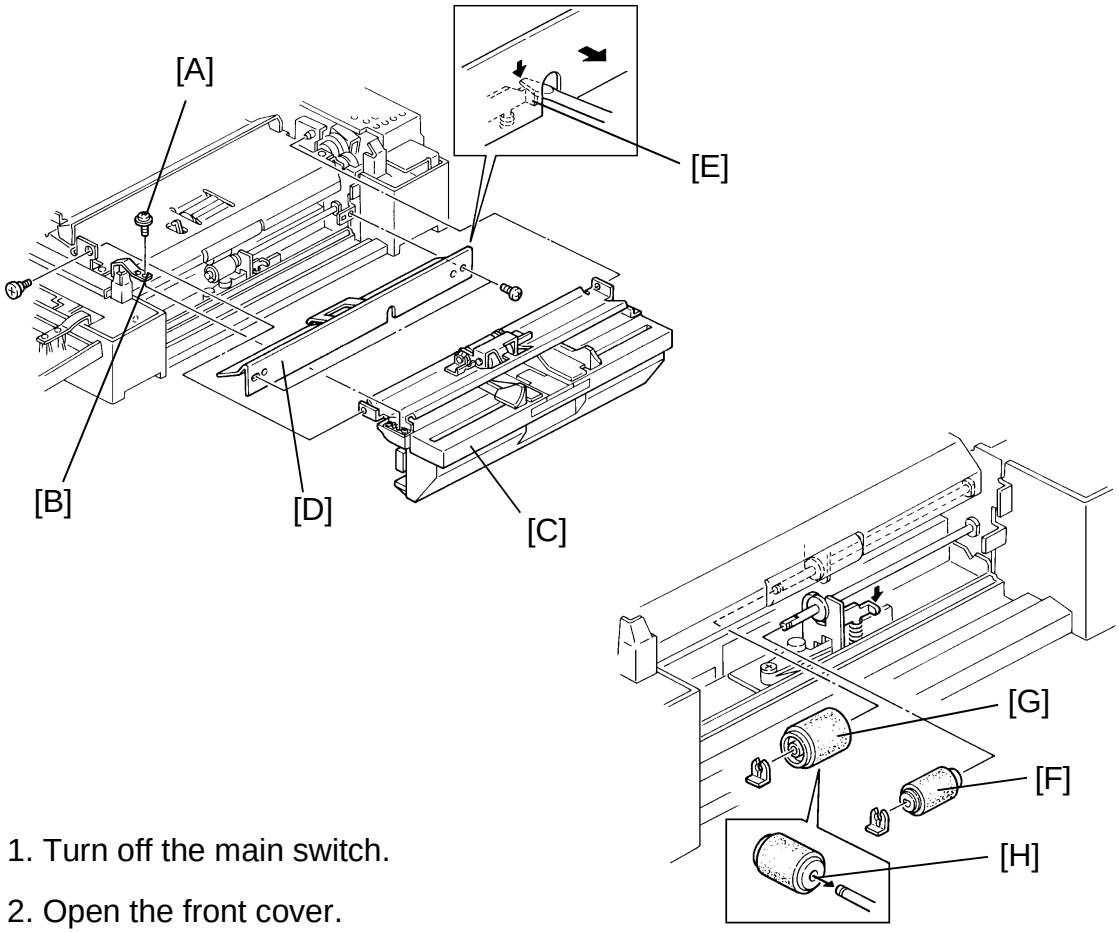
1. Remove the cleaning unit, and take off the cleaning blade and cleaning brush.
2. Remove the used toner. (See Used Toner Collection.)
3. Clean the cleaning unit with a vacuum cleaner.
4. Remove the two seals [A] and the entrance seal [B] together with the strip of 2-sided tape securing it to the lower casing [C].
5. Clean the lower casing with alcohol; make sure that no tape remains on the casing surface.
6. Place a new strip of 2-sided tape [D] on the lower casing surface. The lower edge [E] of the tape must be flush with the edge [F] of the projection as shown in the illustration.
7. Place the new entrance seal on the 2-sided tape (blue slow mark [G] is front side). Extend the seal so that both edges [H] align with the edges [I] of the tape.

   NOTE: a) The lower edge [J] of the entrance seal must be aligned with the edge [F] of the projection on the lower casing.

   b) Make sure that there are no waves in the upper edge [K] of the entrance seal.
8. Place the two seals [A] on both sides of the entrance seal as shown.

5. 1ST PAPER FEED

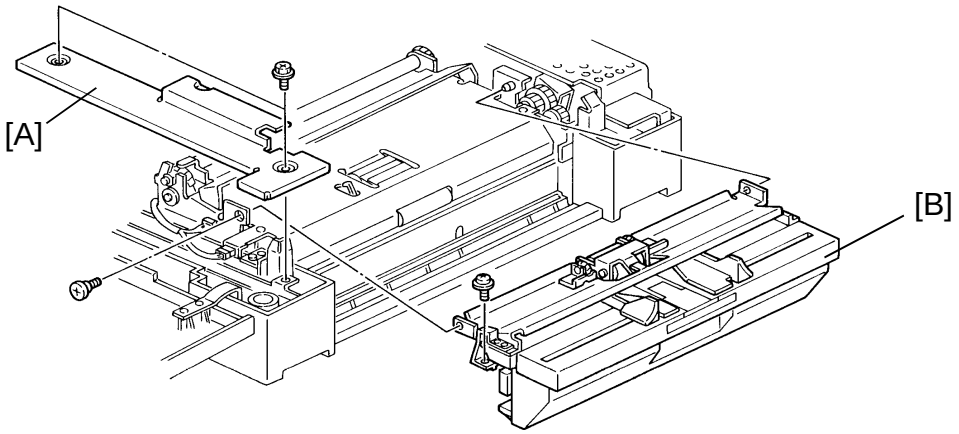
5.1 1ST PAPER FEED ROLLER AND TORQUE ROLLER REPLACEMENT

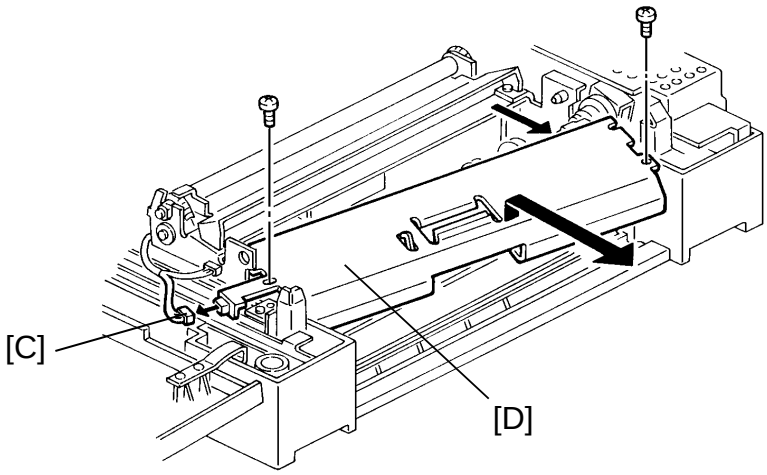


1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
4. Remove screw [A] of the manual feed table band [B].
5. Remove the manual feed table [C] (1 shoulder screw).
6. Remove the feed guide plate [D] while pushing the release lever [E] down as shown (2 screws).
7. Remove the torque roller [F] while pushing the release lever down (1 snap ring).
8. Remove the paper feed roller [G] (1 snap ring).

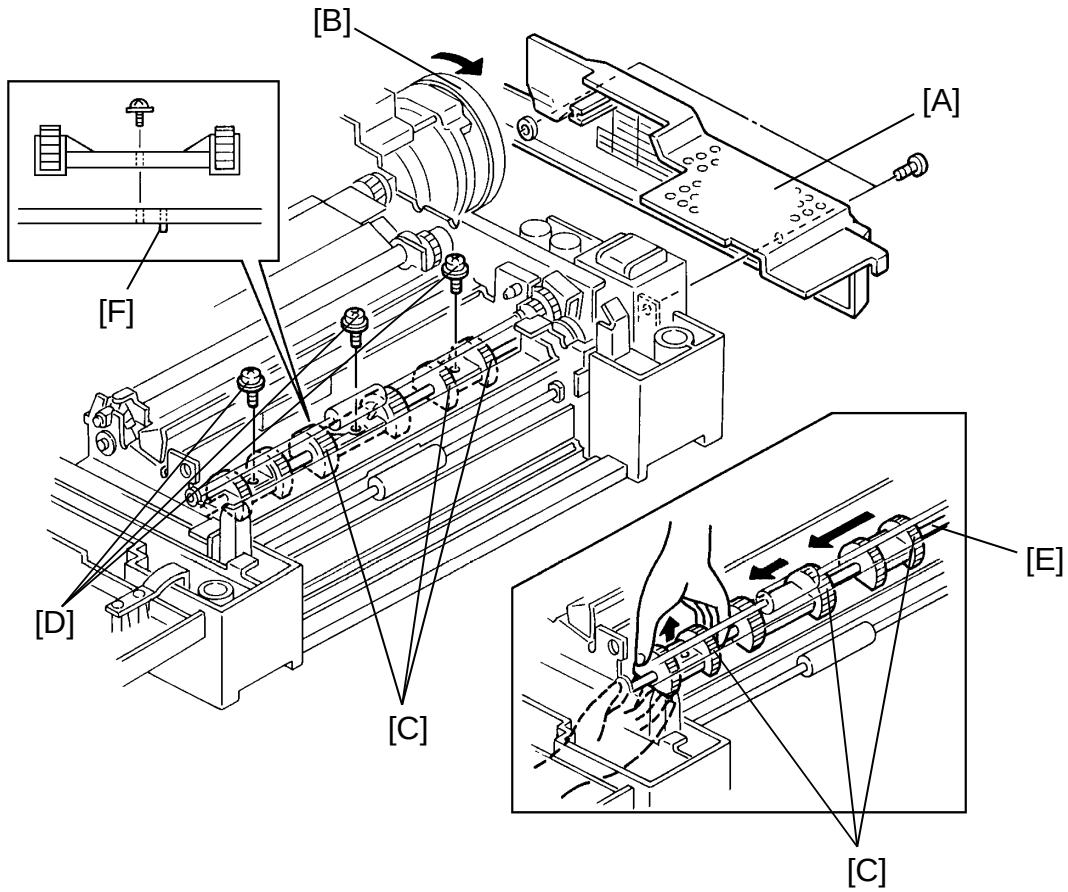
   NOTE: When reinstalling the paper feed roller, make sure that the flat surface [H] of the paper feed roller is positioned to the rear side as shown.

5.2 1ST PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT





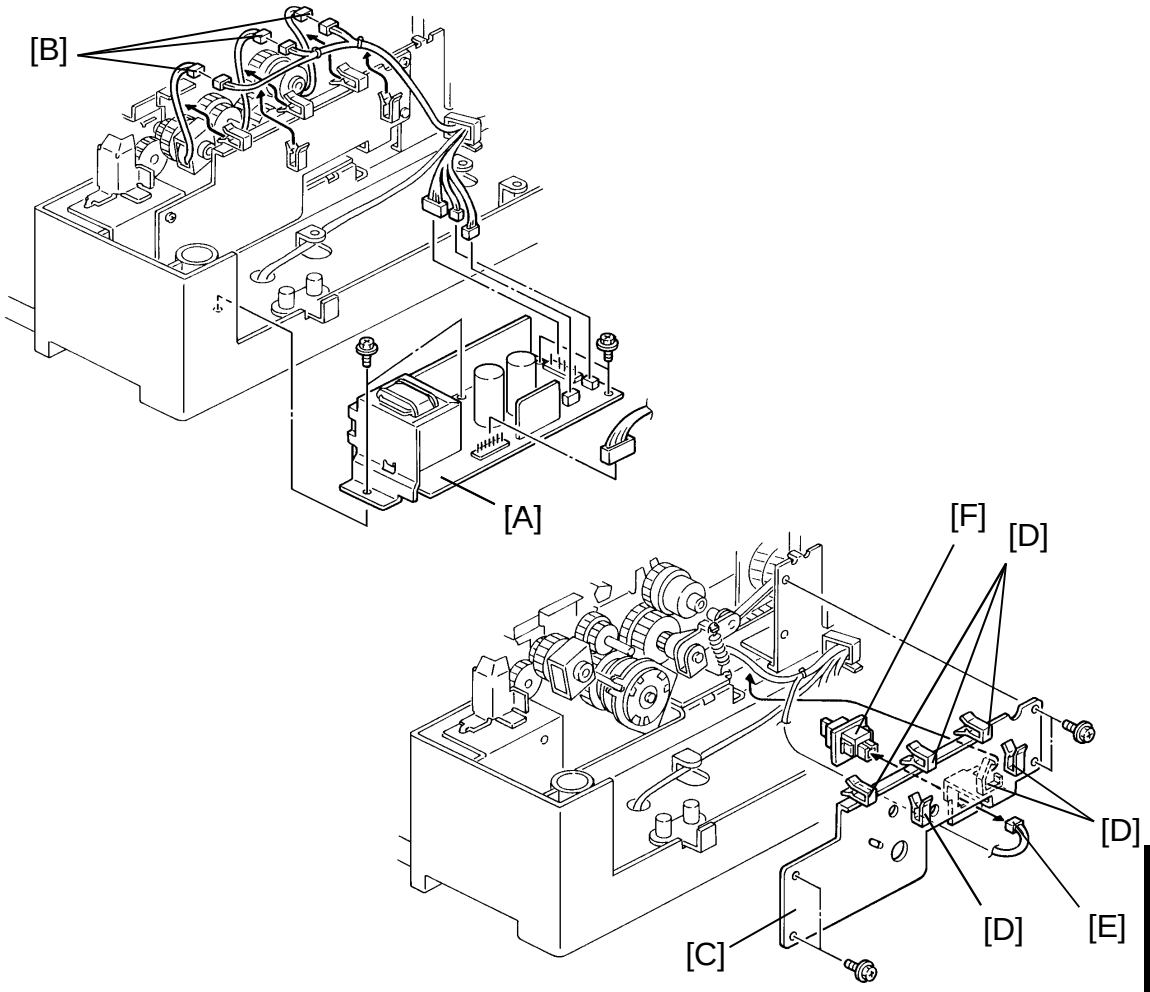
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the 1st paper tray.
3. Open the front cover.
4. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
5. Remove the harness cover [A] (2 screws).
6. Remove the manual feed table [B] (1 screw and 1 shoulder screw).
7. Remove the relay sensor connector [C].
8. Remove the relay roller guide plate [D] as shown (2 screws).



9. Remove the lower rear cover [A] (2 screws).
10. While turning the main motor [B] clockwise (from front view), turn the pick-up rollers [C] until the position which can remove the screws [D] of the pick-up rollers.
11. Remove three screws of the pick-up rollers (each 1 screw).
12. Remove the pick-up rollers from the shaft [E] while pushing them up with your hands as shown.

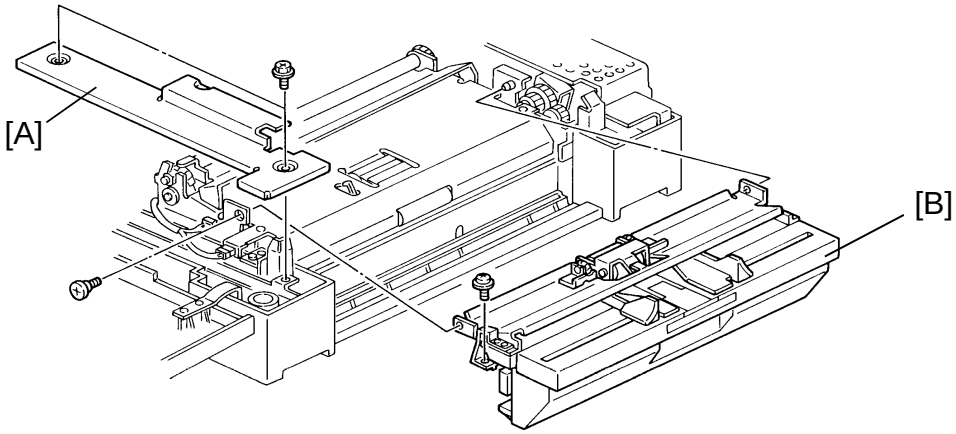
    NOTE: When reinstalling the pick-up rollers, make sure that the pick-up rollers are positioned on the opposite side of the spring pin [F] as shown. Otherwise, the six pick-up rollers will be positioned incorrectly.

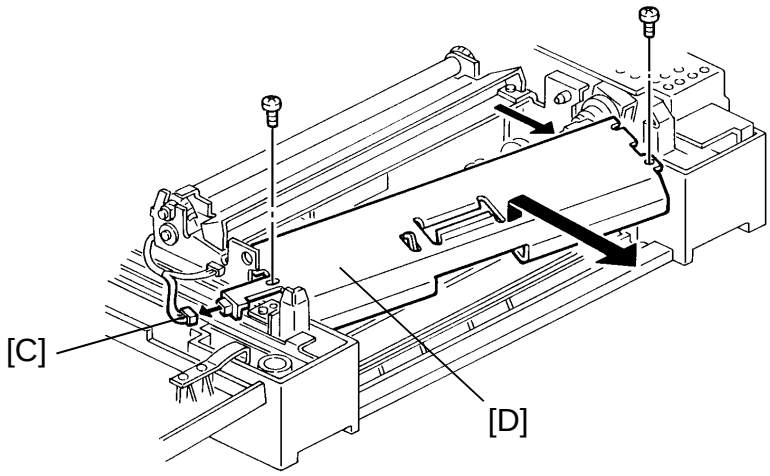
5.3 1ST PAPER TRAY SWITCH REPLACEMENT



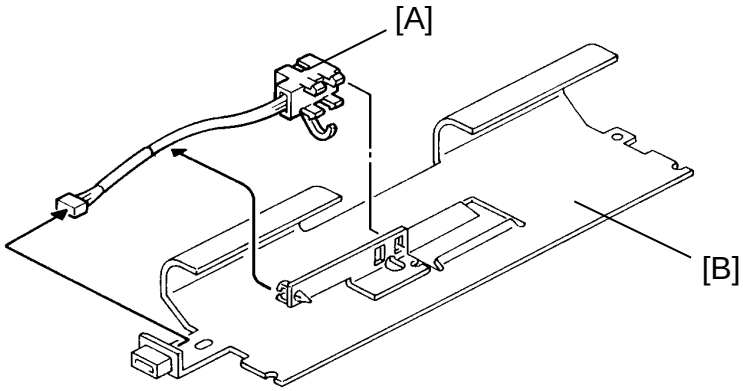
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the 1st paper tray.
3. Open the front cover.
4. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
5. Remove the lower rear cover (2 screws).
6. Remove the DC power supply unit [A] (4 screws and all connectors).
7. Remove three clutch connectors [B].
8. Remove the rear side plate [C] (4 screws, 6 wire clamps [D] and 1 connector [E]).
9. Remove the paper tray switch [F] from the rear side plate.

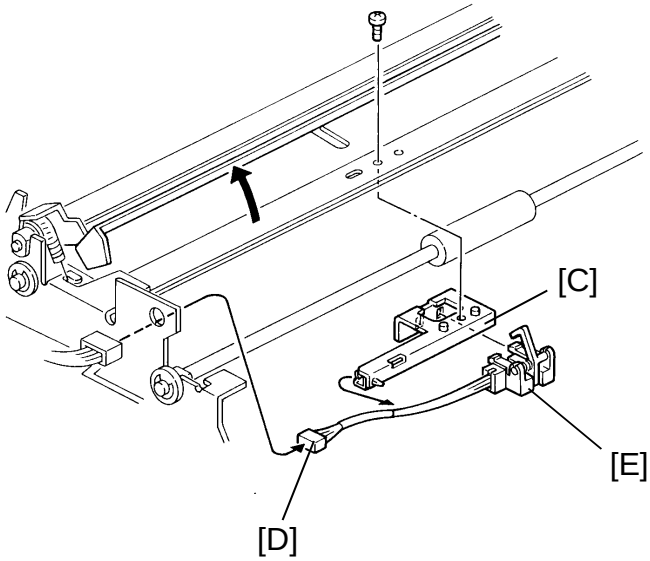
5.4 RELAY SENSOR AND REGISTRATION SENSOR REPLACEMENT





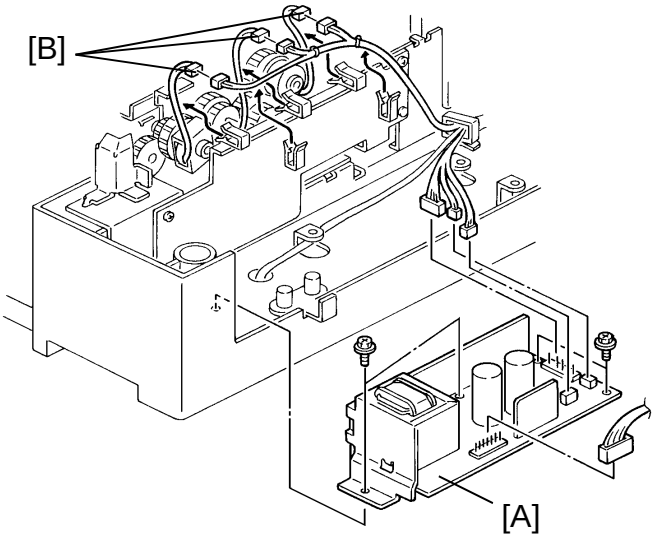
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
4. Remove the harness cover [A] (2 screws).
5. Remove the manual feed table [B] (1 screw and 1 shoulder screw).
6. Remove the relay sensor connector [C].
7. Remove relay roller guide plate [D] as shown (2 screws).

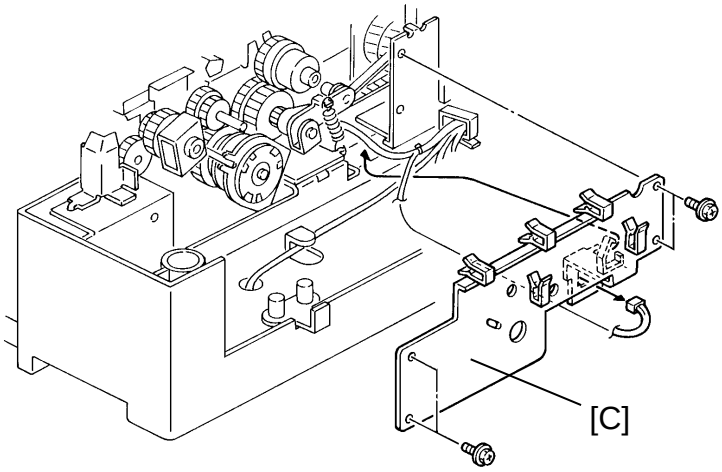




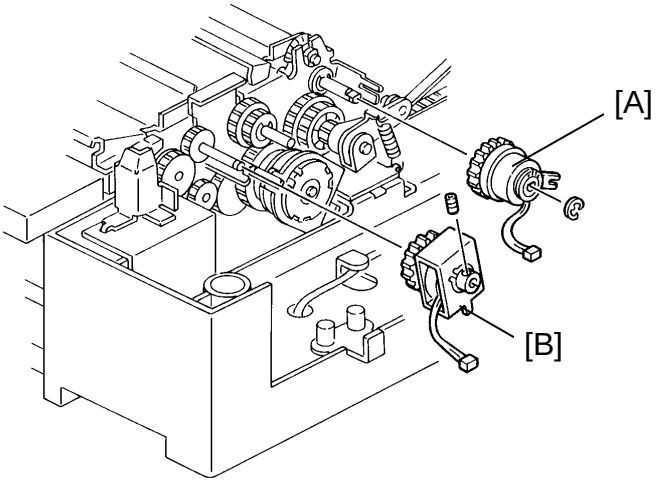
8. Remove the relay sensor [A] from the guide plate [B] as shown.
9. Remove the registration sensor bracket [C] (1 screw and 1 connector [D]).
10. Remove the registration sensor [E] from the bracket as shown.

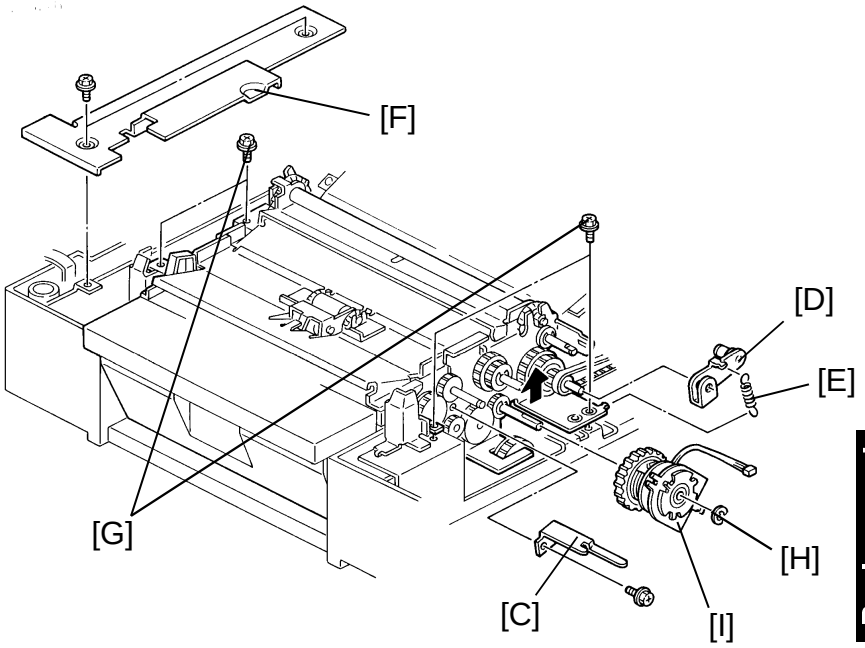
5.5 RELAY ROLLER CLUTCH, 1ST PAPER FEED CLUTCH AND REGISTRATION CLUTCH REPLACEMENT





1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
4. Remove the lower rear cover (2 screws).
5. Remove the DC power supply unit [A] (4 screws and all connectors).
6. Remove three clutch connectors [B].
7. Remove the rear side plate [C] (4 screws, 6 wire clamps and 1 connector).



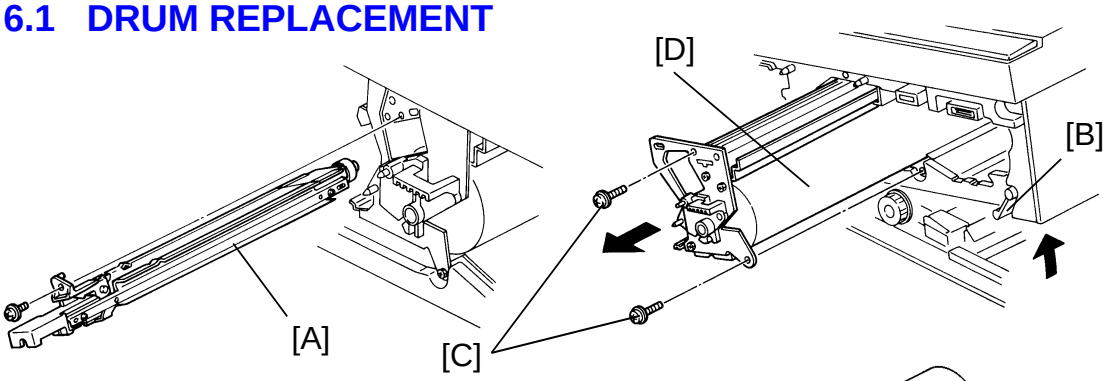


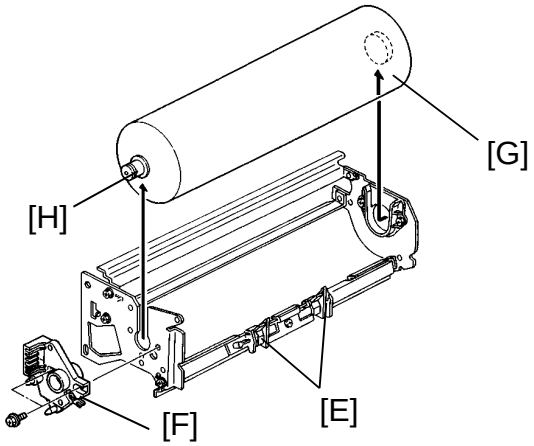
8. Remove the registration clutch [A] (1 E-ring).
9. Remove the relay roller clutch [B] (1 allen screw).
10. Remove the clutch stopper [C] (1 screw).
11. Remove the timing belt tightener [D] (1 spring [E]).
12. Remove the harness cover [F] (2 screws).
13. Remove three screws [G] securing the 1st paper feed unit.
14. Remove an E-ring [H] securing the paper feed clutch [I].
15. Remove the paper feed clutch while lifting the 1st paper feed unit.

NOTE: When reinstalling the clutches, make sure that the clutch stopper locks the clutch.

6. AROUND THE DRUM

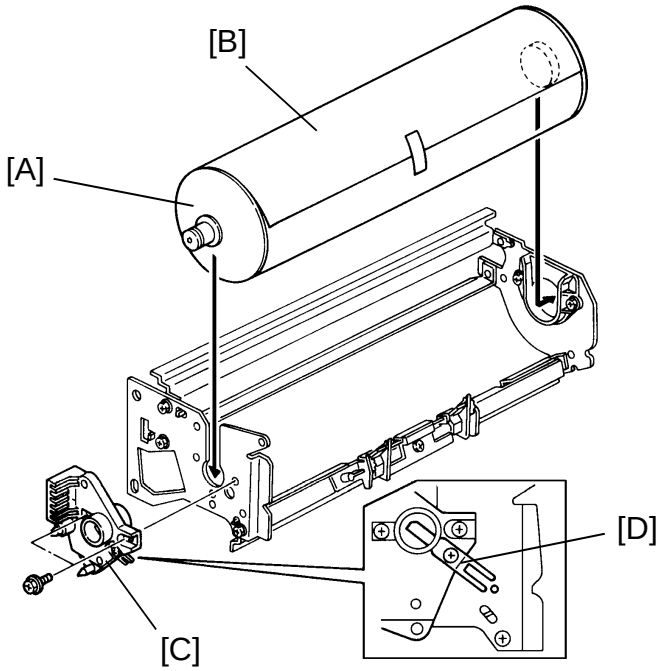
6.1 DRUM REPLACEMENT





1. Open the front cover
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the following units:
   - Development unit (See Development Unit Removal.)
   - Cleaning unit (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
   - Charge corona unit [A] and wire cleaner (1 screw)
4. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever [B].
5. Remove two fixing screws [C] securing the drum stay and pull out the drum unit [D] gently along the rail.
6. Place the drum unit on a sheet of paper so that the leading edge of the pick-off pawls [E] are upward as shown.
7. Remove the front drum holder [F] (2 screws).
8. Remove the drum [G] by holding the drum unit rail and pulling out and up on the drum knob [H].

   NOTE: When removing the drum, take care not to strike it against any objects.



9. Set the new OPC drum [A] with the protective sheet [B] in the unit.

   NOTE: a) When setting the drum in the unit, be careful not to strike it against the rail.

   b) Do not remove the protective sheet from the new drum.

10. Reinstall the front drum holder [C] (2 screws).

    NOTE: Do not bend the grounding plate [D]. Make sure that the grounding plate is in contact with the drum unit frame to ground the drum. If it is not in contact, solid black copies may occur.

11. Set the drum unit in the machine and remove the drum protective sheet.

12. Reinstall the other units around the drum unit.

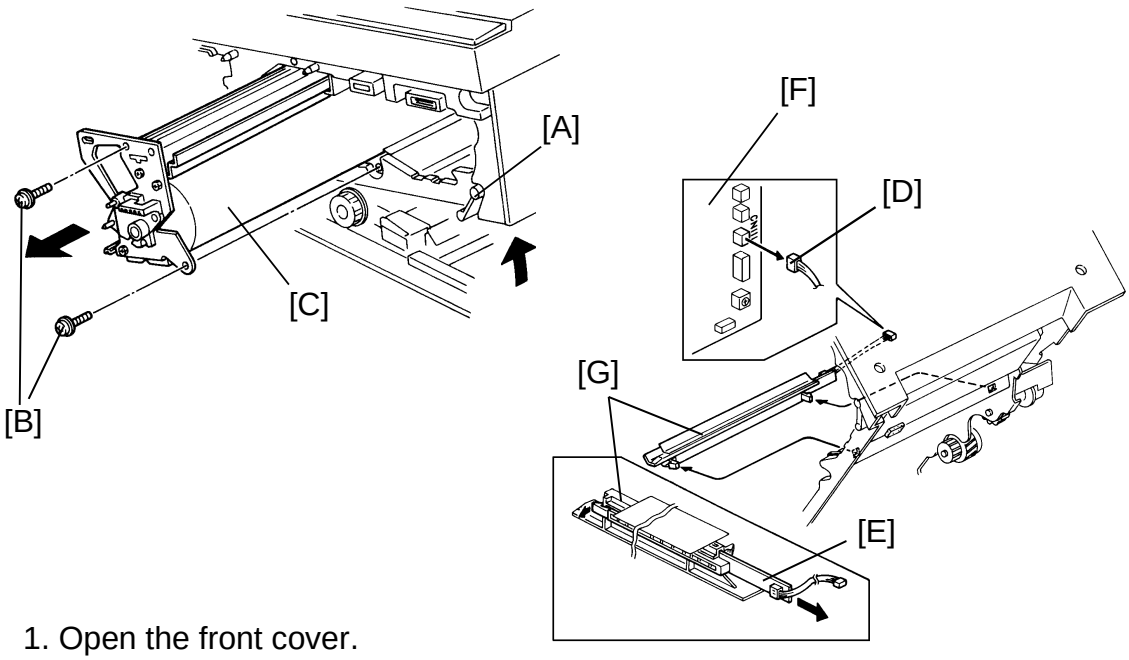
13. Reset the drum counter using SP66.

    NOTE: The drum counter must be reset by SP66 whenever an OPC drum is replaced.

14. Perform the ID sensor (Vsg) adjustment using SP54. (See ID Sensor Adjustment.)

15. Perform the light intensity adjustment (SP48) and ADS adjustment (SP56). (See Light Intensity Adjustment and ADS Adjustment.)

6.2 PRE-TRANSFER LAMP REPLACEMENT

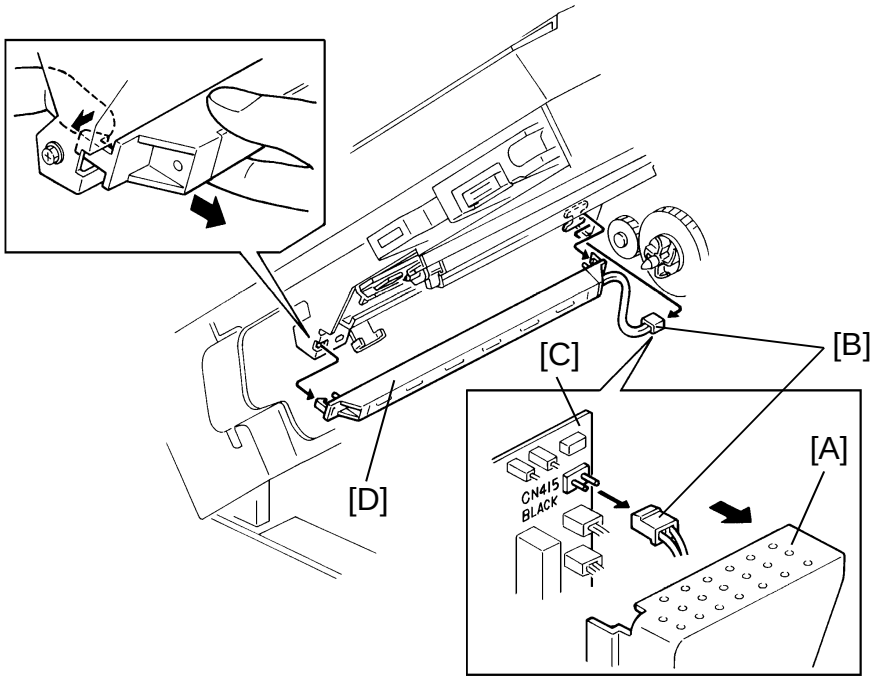


1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
4. Remove the following units:
   - Development unit (See Development Unit Removal.)
   - Cleaning unit (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
   - Charge corona unit and wire cleaner (1 screw)
5. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever [A].
6. Remove two fixing screws [B] securing the drum stay and pull out the drum unit [C] gently along the rail.

   NOTE: Cover the drum with some papers to prevent the drum from being exposed to light.
7. Remove the 2P connector [D] of the pre-transfer lamp [E] from the CN111 on the main board [F] (2 wire clamps).
8. Remove the PTL guide [G] with pre-transfer lamp from the copier (2 hooks).
9. Remove the pre-transfer lamp from the guide as shown.

   NOTE: Do not use alcohol to clean the pre-transfer lamp. This damages the resin in the LED cover.

6.3 QUENCHING LAMP REPLACEMENT

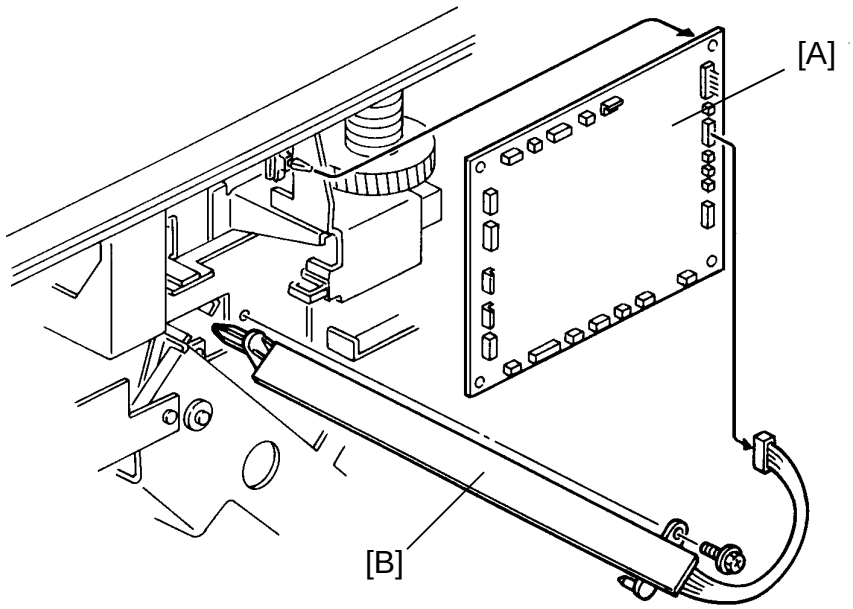


1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the following parts:
   - Upper inner cover
   - Development unit
   - Cleaning unit
   - Charge corona unit
   - Upper rear cover
3. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
4. Remove the drum unit (2 screws).

   NOTE: Cover the drum with some papers to prevent the drum from being exposed to light.
5. Remove the ac drive board cover [A] (2 screws).
6. Disconnect the connector [B] (CN415) from the ac drive board [C] (2 wire clamps).
7. Remove the quenching lamp [D] from the copier frame as shown.

   NOTE: Do not use alcohol to clean the quenching lamp. This damages the resin in the LED cover.

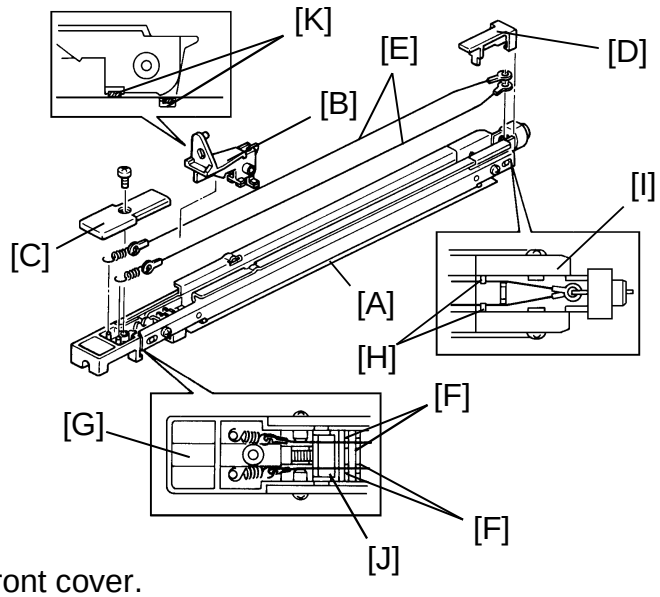
6.4 ERASE LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
2. Remove the main board [A] (all Connectors and 3 locking supports).
3. Remove the erase lamp [B] (1 screw).

NOTE: Do not use alcohol to clean the erase lamp. This damages the resin in the LED cover.

6.5 CHARGE CORONA WIRE REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the charge corona unit [A] together with the wire cleaner [B] (1 screw).
4. Remove the wire cleaner from the charge corona unit.
5. Remove the front endblock cover [C] (1 screw) and the rear endblock cover [D].
6. Unhook the spring from the corona wires [E] and replace the wires.

NOTE: a) The new corona wires must be in the grooves [F] of the front endblock [G] and must be underneath the projection [H] of the rear endblock [I] as shown.

b) The height adjuster [J] must be positioned underneath the corona wires.

c) Do not handle the new corona wires with bare hands. Oil on the wire may cause uneven charge on the drum.

d) Do not rub the corona wires with rough material (sandpaper, etc.) as this will damage the corona wires.

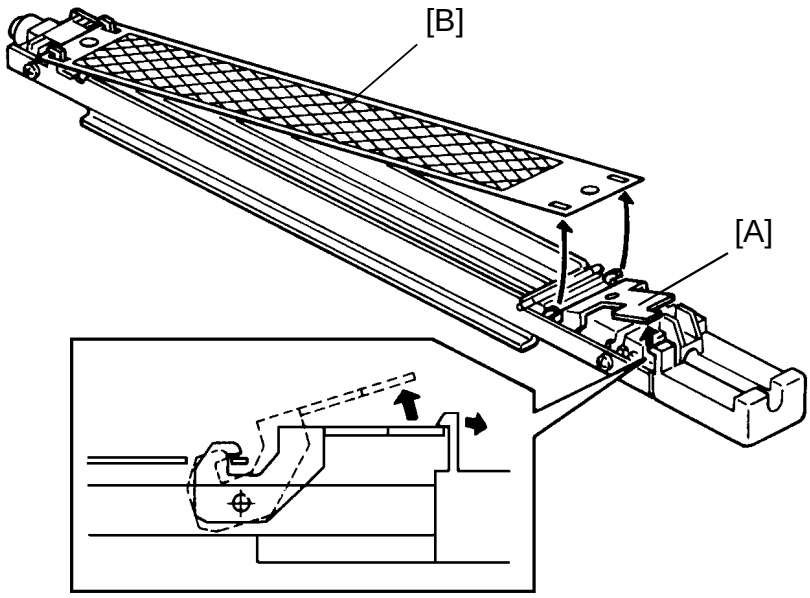
e) When removing the endblock covers, be careful not to break off the side hooks.

f) Do not use any solvents to clean the wires as this will cause uneven charge on the drum.

g) Do not damage the grid plate when replacing the corona wires.

h) When installing the charge corona unit, make sure that the wires are positioned between the cleaner pads [K].

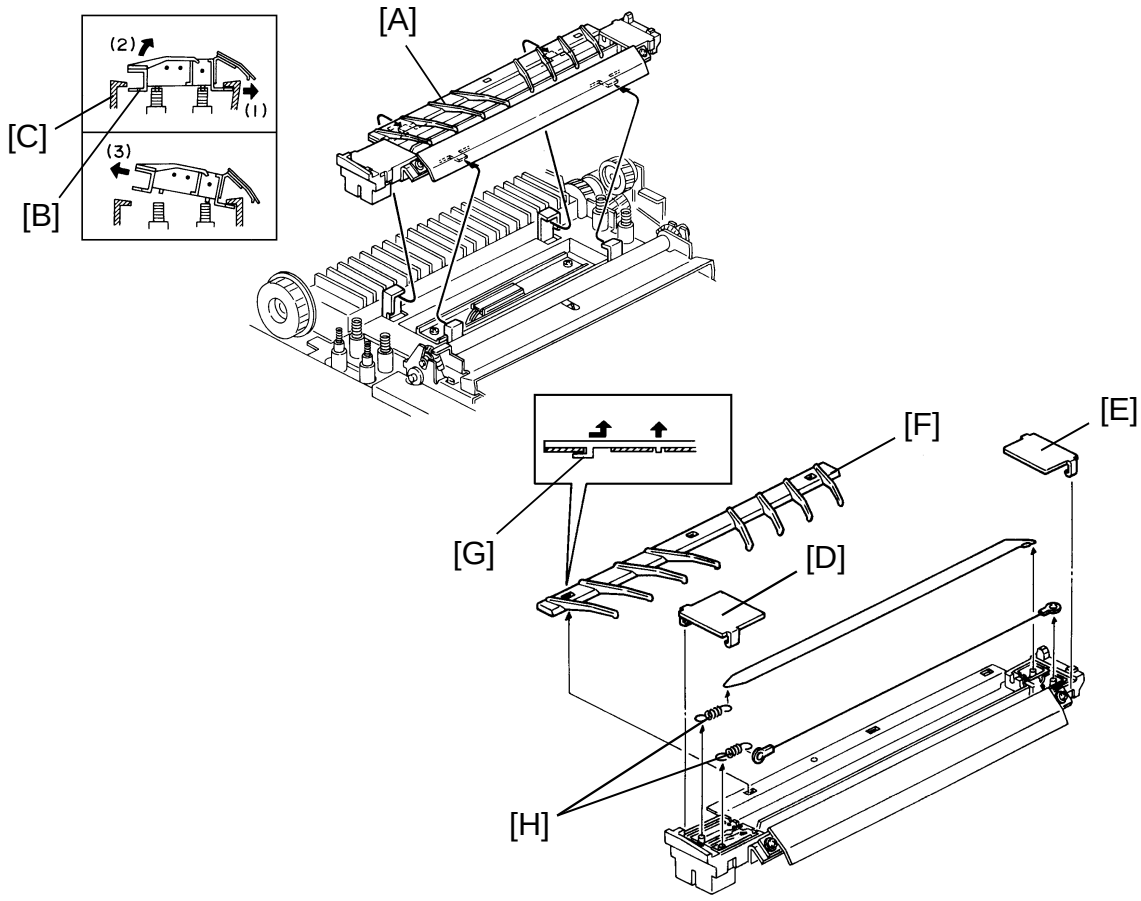
6.6 CHARGE CORONA GRID PLATE REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the charge corona unit together with wire cleaner (1 screw).
4. Unhook the grid plate anchor [A].
5. Remove the grid plate [B] as shown.

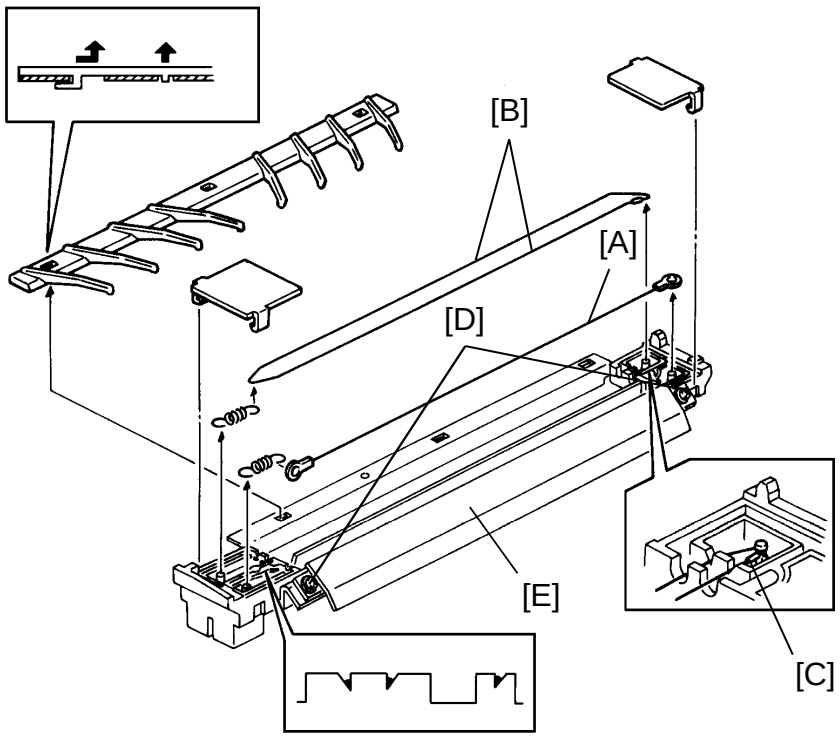
NOTE: a) Oils and chemicals from your hands will deteriorate the grid plate.
b) Do not bend the grid plate. This can result in an uneven charge.
c) When installing the charge corona unit, make sure that the corona wires are positioned between the cleaner pads.

6.7 TRANSFER/SEPARATION CORONA WIRE REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front cover.
2. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
3. Pull the transfer/separation (TC/SC) corona unit [A] toward the registration roller side (1) and release the left positioning tabs [B] of the TC/SC unit from the left holders [C] of the transport unit (2). Then, take out the TC/SC unit (3) as shown.
4. Remove the following parts:
   - TC/SC unit front endblock cover [D]
   - TC/SC unit rear endblock cover [E]
   - TC/SC unit paper guide [F]

   NOTE: When reinstalling the TC/SC unit paper guide, verify that all three tabs [G] are properly latched in place.
5. Unhook the springs [H] from the wires.



6. Replace the transfer corona wire [A] and the separation corona wire [B].

NOTE: a) When installing the separation corona wire, make sure that the wire junction [C] is positioned inside the rear endblock.

b) The transfer and separation corona wires must be in the grooves of the front and rear endblock as shown.

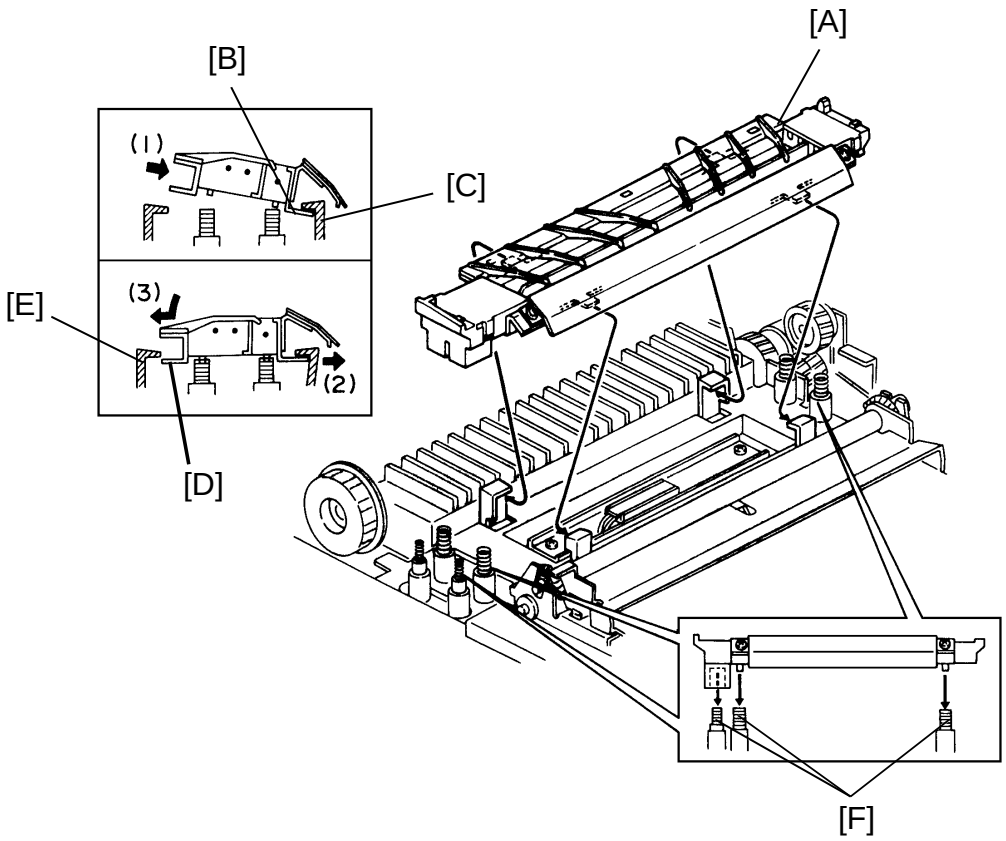
c) Do not handle new corona wire with bare hands. Oil on the wire may cause an uneven charge on the drum.

d) Rubbing the corona wires with a rough material (sandpaper, etc.) will damage the corona wires.

e) When removing the endblock covers, be careful not to break off the side hooks.

f) Do not use any solvents to clean the wires as this will cause uneven charge on the drum.

g) Do not loosen the screws [D] of the transfer entrance guide [E]. This is because that the transfer entrance guide is positioned with a special tool at the factory.



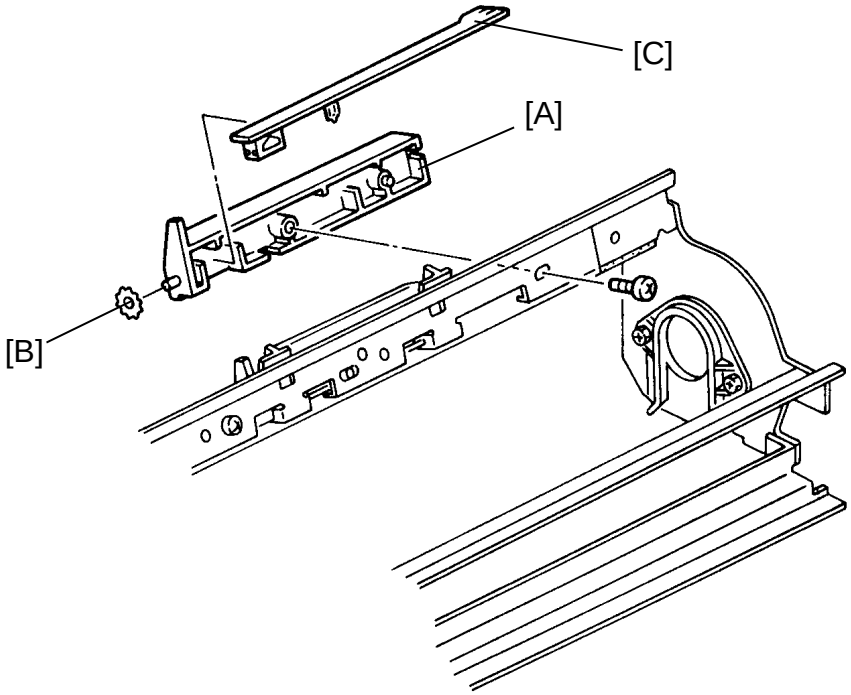
7. Reinstall the TC/SC corona unit [A].

NOTE: a) When reinstalling the TC/SC corona unit, firstly set the right positioning tabs [B] of the TC/SC corona unit into the right holders [C] of the transport unit, then set the left positioning tabs [D] into the left holders [E] by pulling the TC/SC corona unit toward to the registration roller side.

b) Make sure that the four positioning tabs of the TC/SC corona unit fit into the holders of the transport unit as shown.

c) Make sure that six springs [F] are correctly positioned underneath the TC/SC corona unit as shown.

6.8 ID SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the drum unit, then remove the drum from the unit.
   (See Drum Replacement.)

   NOTE: Cover the drum with paper to prevent the drum from being exposed to light.

2. Remove the ID sensor holder [A] (1 screw).

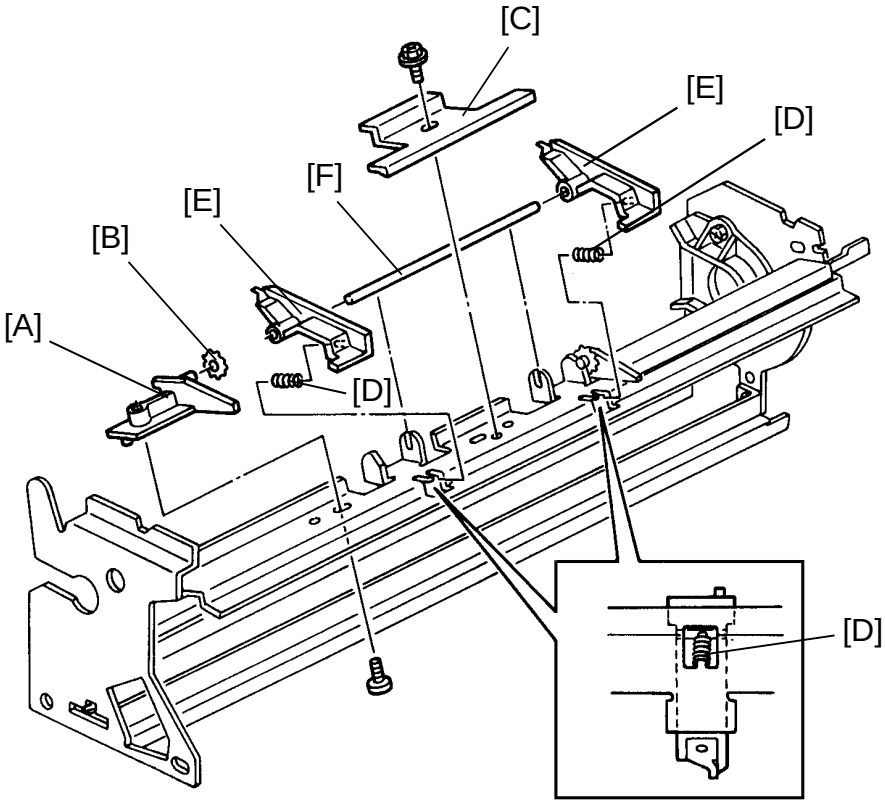
   NOTE: Do not lose the spur [B] on the ID sensor holder.

3. Replace the ID sensor board [C].

4. Reinstall the drum unit.

5. Perform the ID sensor (Vsg) adjustment (SP54).
   (See ID Sensor Adjustment.)

6.9 PICK-OFF PAWL REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the drum unit, then separate the drum from the unit. (See the Drum Replacement.)

   NOTE: Cover the drum with paper after removing it from the drum unit. This prevents the drum from being exposed to light.

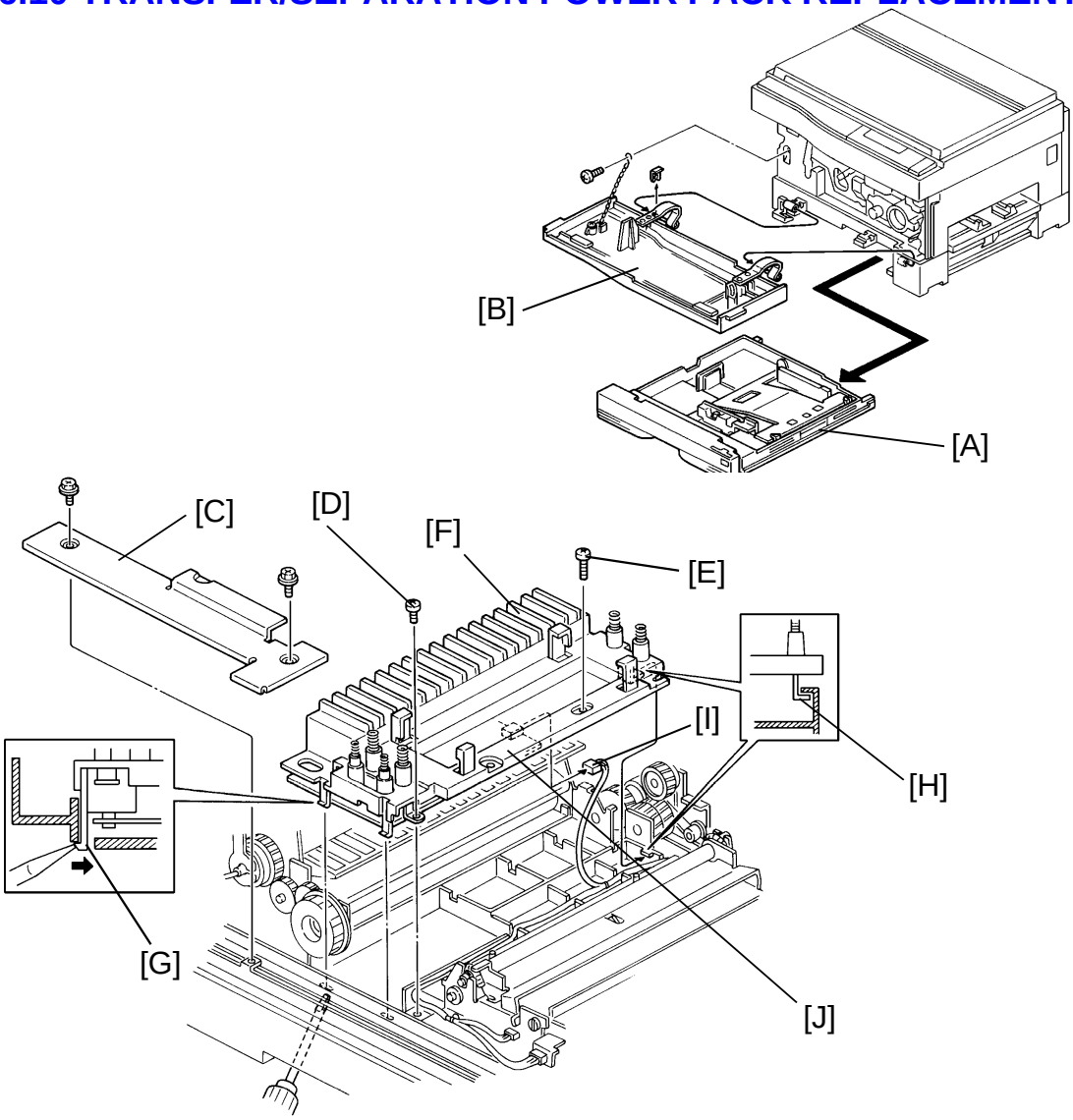
2. Remove the pick-off pawl guide [A] with the spar [B] (1 screw).

3. Remove the pick-off pawl bracket [C] (1 screw).

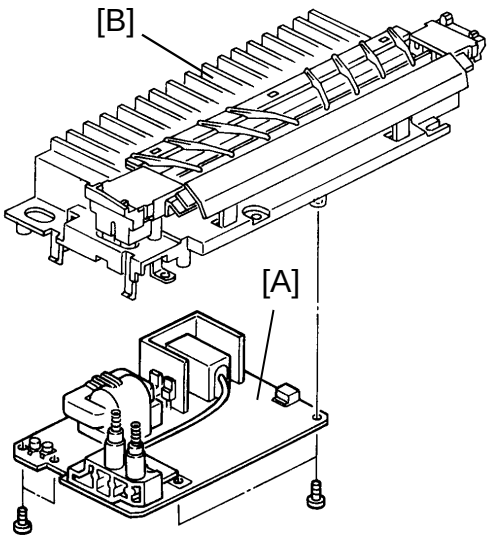
4. Remove the springs [D], then remove the pick-off pawls [E] from the shaft [F].

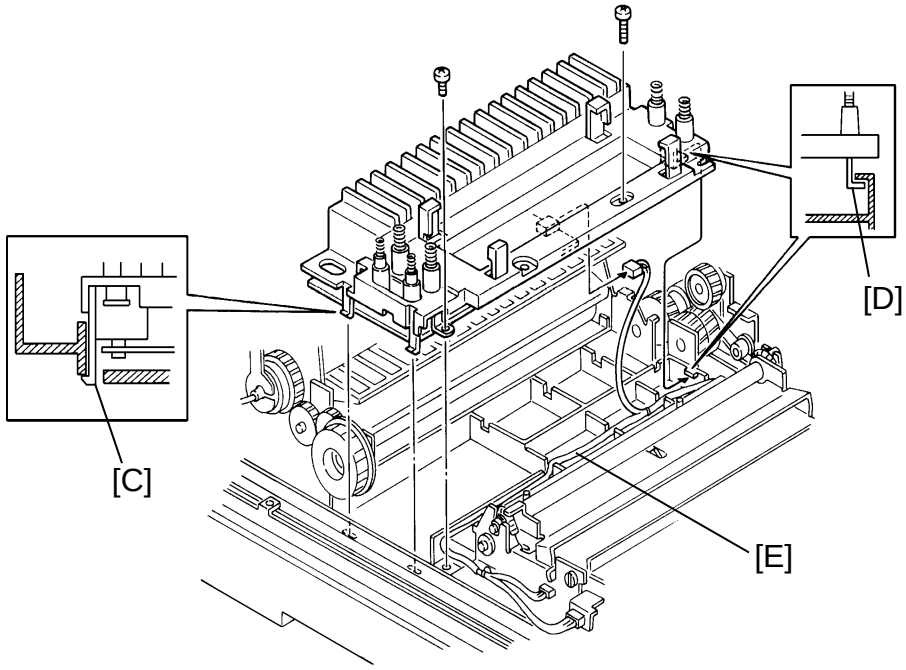
   NOTE: When replacing the new pick-off pawls, make sure that the springs are positioned correctly as shown in the illustration.

6.10 TRANSFER/SEPARATION POWER PACK REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the 1st paper tray [A].
2. Remove the front cover [B] (1 screw, 1 snap ring).
3. Remove the drum unit. (See Drum Replacement.)
4. Remove the transfer/separation corona unit. (See Transfer/Separation Corona Wire Replacement.)
5. Remove the harness cover [C] (2 screws).
6. Remove 2 screws (1 grounding screw [D], 1 screw [E]).
7. Lift the transport unit [F] by removing the front [G] and rear [H] hooks and remove the 4P connector [I] from the transfer/separation (T/S) power pack [J]. Then, take out the transport unit.





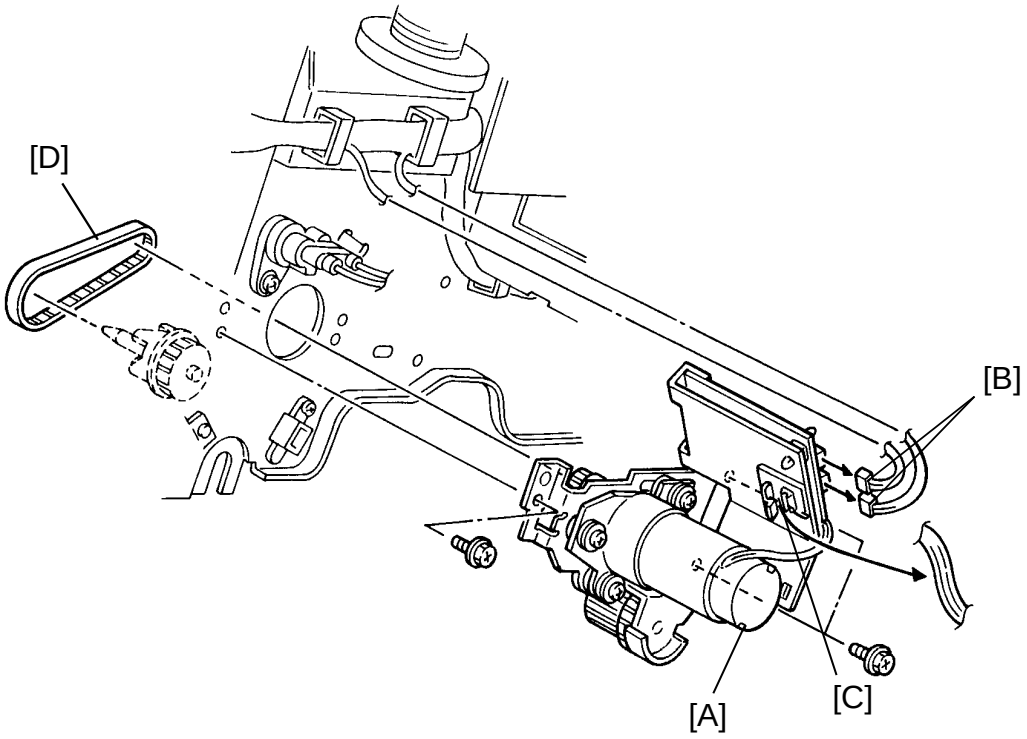
8. Remove the T/S power pack [A] from the transport unit [B] (4 screws).

   NOTE: a) When reinstalling the transport unit to the copier, make sure the front [C] and rear [D] hooks are positioned correctly as shown.

   b) When reinstalling the transport unit, make sure that the relay harness [E] does not catch in the transport unit and is positioned correctly as shown.

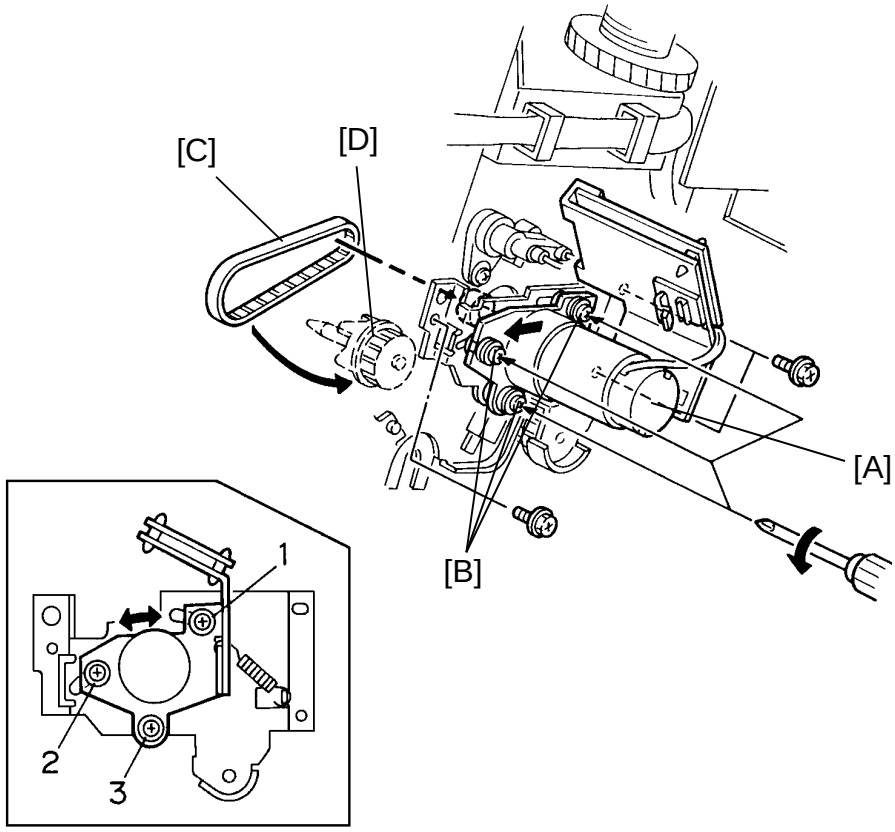
9. Adjust the transfer and separation corona currents. (See Transfer Corona Current Adjustment and Separation Corona Current Adjustment.)

6.11 DRUM MOTOR UNIT REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove the following covers and units.
    - Upper inner cover
    - Development unit
    - Cleaning unit
    - Charge corona unit and wire cleaner (1 screw)
    - Upper rear cover
4. Hold down top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
5. Pull out the drum unit (2 screws).

    NOTE: Cover the drum with some papers to prevent the drum from being exposed to light.
6. Remove the drum motor unit [A] (3 screws, 2 connectors [B], 1 harness clamp [C] and 1 timing belt [D]).



– Drum Motor Unit Installation –

1. Reinstall the drum motor unit [A] (3 screws).
2. Loosen three screws [B] of the drum motor.

   NOTE: Make sure that the drum motor moves as shown.
3. Reinstall the timing belt [C] to the motor pulley and drum pulley [D].
4. Tighten three screws of the drum motor in order as shown in the illustration.
5. Reassemble.

6.12 CORONA CURRENT ADJUSTMENT

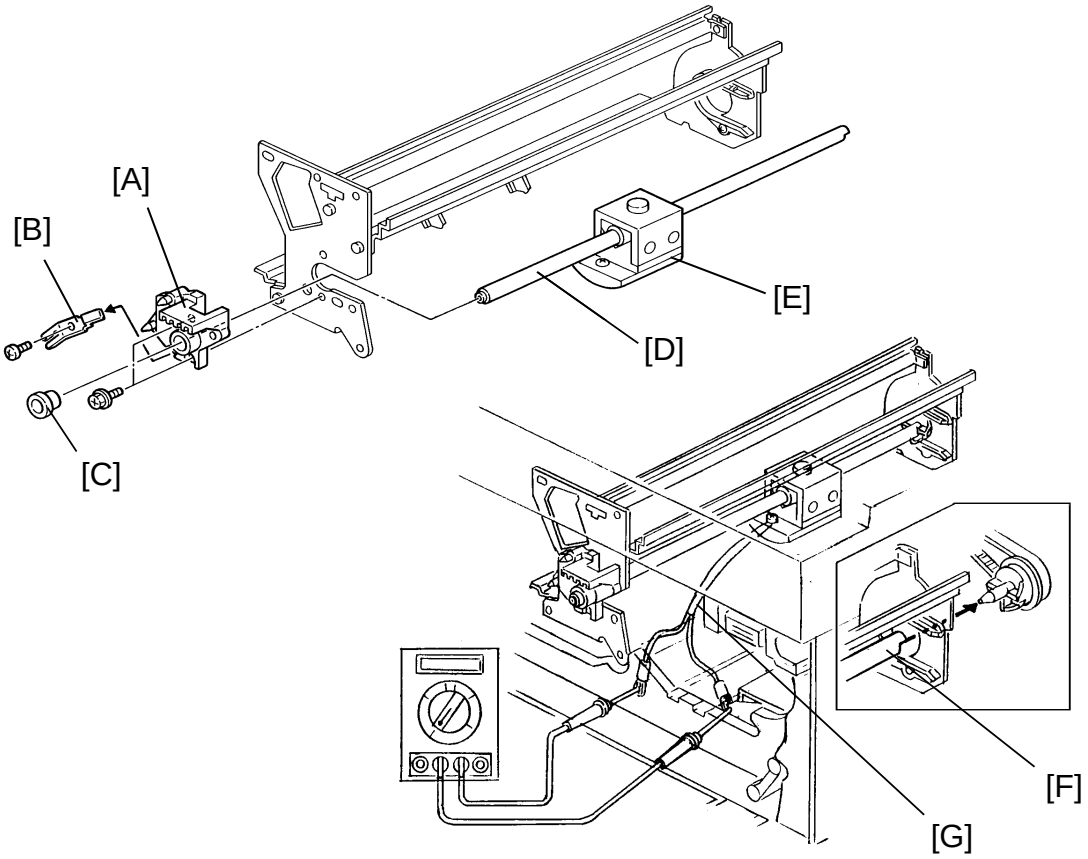
NOTE: The corona current varies with environmental conditions such as humidity and atmospheric pressure. The corona current is adjusted at the factory and is suitable under a wide range of environmental conditions. Corona current adjustment is necessary whenever the power packs are replaced; adjustment may also be necessary to correct problems with paper separation, toner transfer, or image density.

CAUTION: – Make sure that SP9 is cleared before you change the range on the digital multimeter. If not, the multimeter may be damaged.
– High voltage is applied to the corona wires. Be careful.

– Preparation –

1. Turn off the main switch and remove the following parts:
   - Upper Inner Cover
   - Development Unit
   - Cleaning Unit
   - Charge Corona Unit
   - TC/SC Corona Unit
   - Drum Unit

   NOTE: Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
2. Clean or replace each corona wire and clean the corona units with water or alcohol.
3. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).

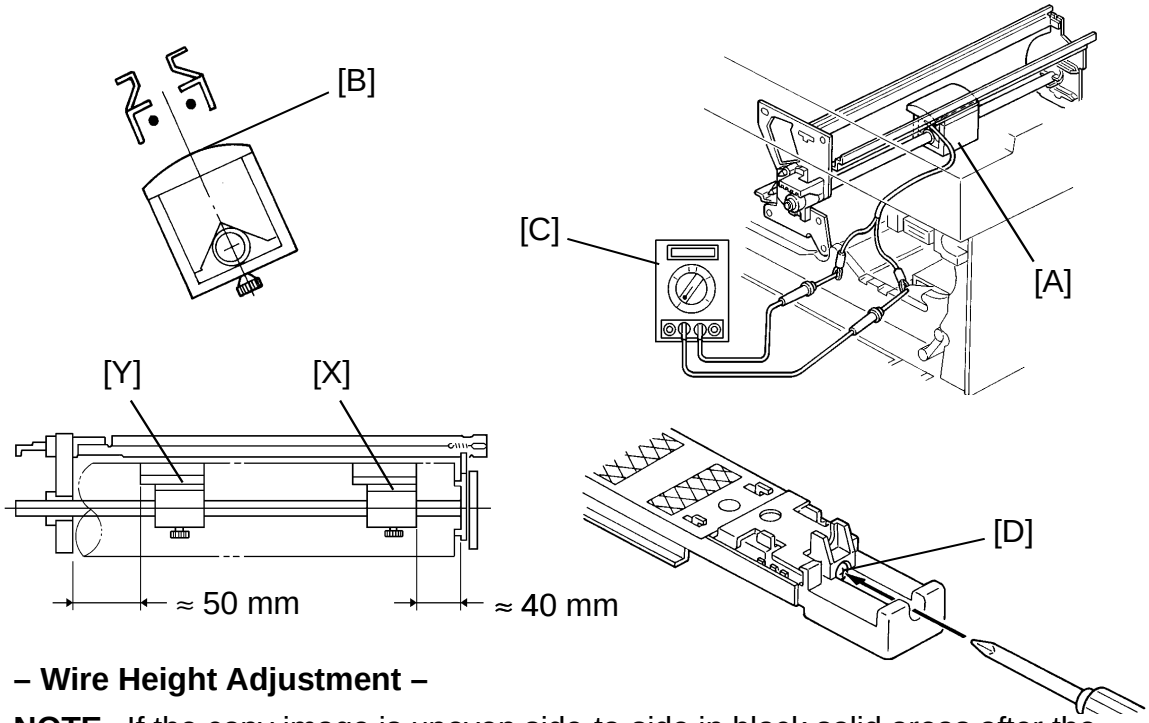


NOTE: Do steps 4 – 10 before adjusting the transfer corona current, separation corona current or charge wires height:

4. Remove the drum from the drum unit. Cover the drum with paper. (See Drum Replacement.)
5. Remove the drum holder [A] (2 screws) and the grounding plate [B] (1 screw).
6. Install the drum shoe shaft adapter [C] to the drum holder.
7. Set the drum shaft [D] and drum shoe [E] on the drum unit as shown.

   NOTE: Be careful not to injure your hand on the edge of the pick-off pawls.
8. Reinstall the drum unit with the shaft rear end [F] positioned as shown in the illustration. Pass the harness [G] down into the development unit opening.
9. Secure the drum unit (2 screws).
10. Connect the negative harness lead to the copier frame, then connect both multimeter leads as shown to the harness leads.

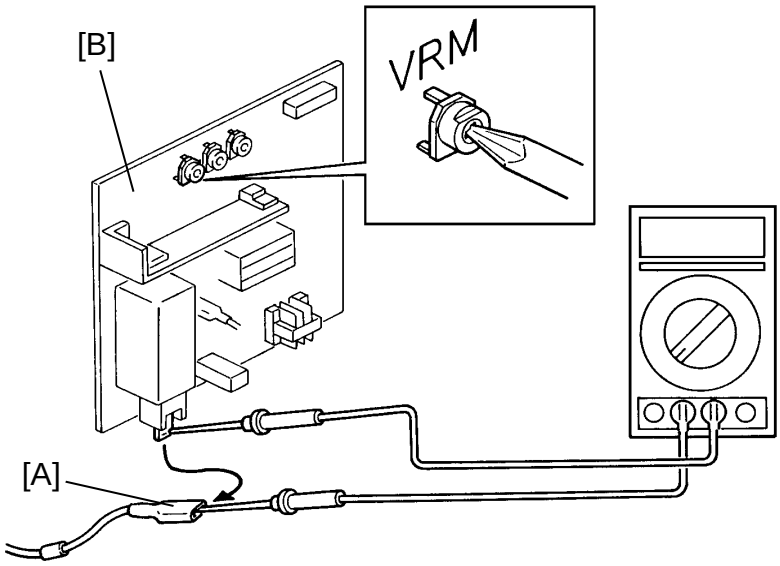
6.12.1 Charge Corona Current Adjustment (SP9-2)



– Wire Height Adjustment –

NOTE: If the copy image is uneven side-to-side in black solid areas after the front end block of the charge corona unit is replaced, check and adjust the wires height as follows:

1. Set the drum shaft and drum shoe on the drum unit and install the drum unit in the machine. (See Drum Current Adjustment Preparation.)
2. Slide the the drum shoe [A] to the rear limit [X] as shown.
3. Position the drum shoe so that the axis of the current sensing plate [B] is aligned with the charge corona wires as shown.
4. Reinstall the charge corona unit on the drum unit.
5. Select the dc 200 μA range on the digital multimeter [C].
6. Turn on the main switch and front cover safety switch.
7. Turn on the charge corona using SP9-2.
8. Note the reading. (Wait at least 30 seconds for the current to stabilize.)
9. Press the Clear/Stop key to turn off the charge corona, then move the drum shoe to the front limit [Y] as shown and repeat steps 2 to 8.
10. Adjust the front corona wires height by turning the adjusting screw [D] if the two readings are different.
11. Repeat steps 2 to 10 until the difference between the front and rear readings is no more than 4%.



– Charge Corona Current Adjustment –

ADJUSTMENT STANDARD	Adjusting VR	
DC – 400 ± 3 μA	VRM	SP9-2

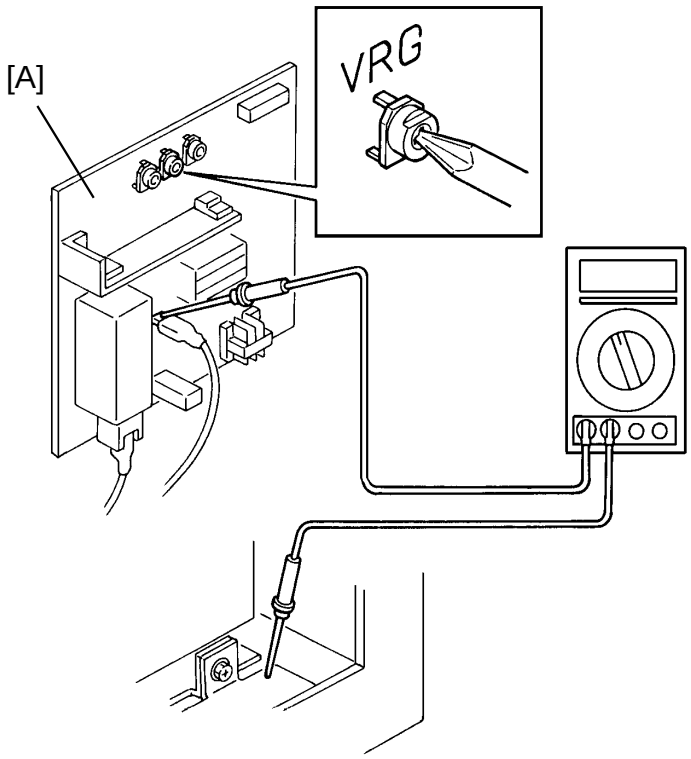
NOTE: 1) VRM on the spare parts CC/Grid/Bias power pack is pre-adjusted. Usually it is not necessary to adjust VRM when the CC/Grid/Bias power pack is replaced.

2) Keep the high voltage wire terminal [A] away from the copier frame. Otherwise, electrical leakage may interfere with current measurement.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Disconnect the charge corona terminal [A] from the CC/Grid/Bias power pack [B].
3. Select the dc 2mA range on the digital multimeter.
4. Connect the multimeter leads as shown, then measure the charge corona current.

   NOTE: Keep the multimeter leads away from the main board.
5. Turn on the main switch, front cover safety switch and the charge corona using SP9-2.
6. Adjust the charge corona current to –400 ± 3 μA by turning VRM on the CC/Grid/Bias power pack.
7. Press the Clear/Stop key and turn off the main switch.

6.12.2 Grid Voltage Adjustment (SP9-48)



ADJUSTMENT STANDARD	Adjusting VR	
DC –880 ± 10 V	VRG	SP9-48

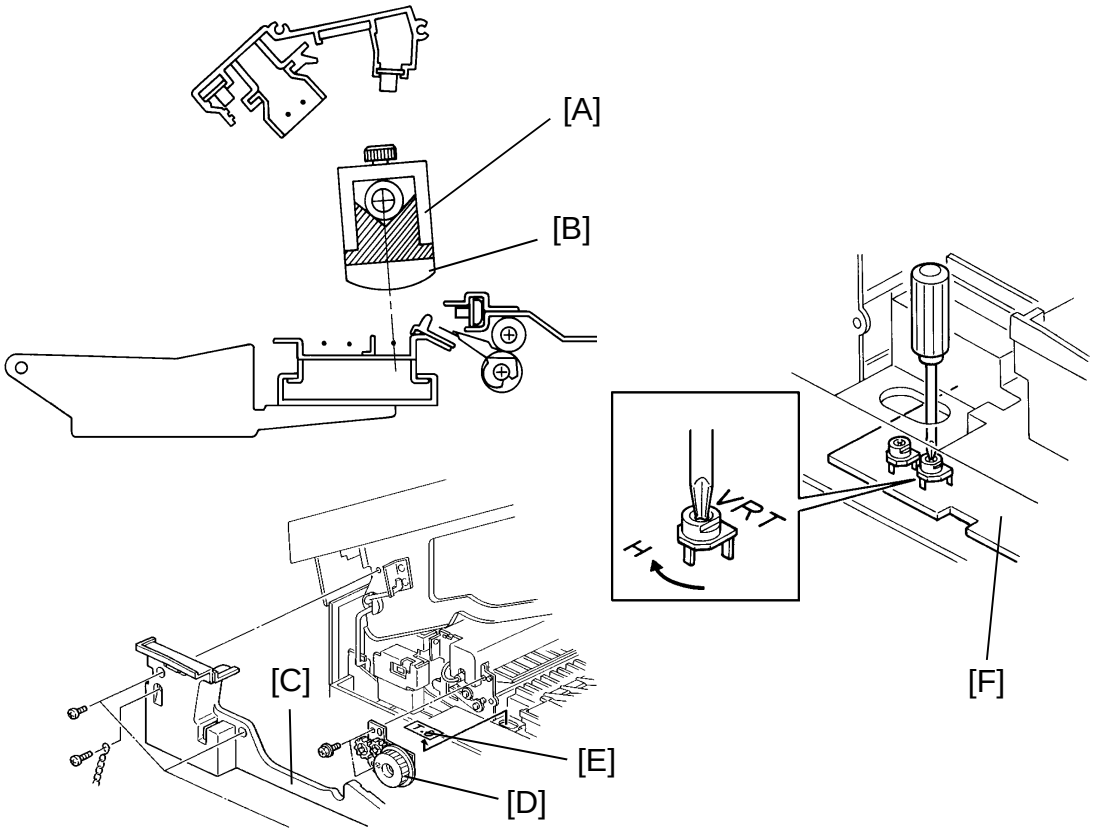
NOTE: VRG on the spare parts CC/Grid/Bias power pack is pre-adjusted. Usually it is not necessary to adjust VRG when the CC/Grid/Bias power pack is replaced.

1. Set the multimeter range to dc 1500 V and connect the multimeter leads as shown.

   NOTE: Keep the multimeter leads away from the main board.

2. Turn on the main switch, front cover safety switch, and grid using SP9-48.
3. Adjust the grid voltage to –880 ± 10 V by turning VRG on the CC/Grid/Bias power pack [A].
4. Press the Clear/Stop key and turn off the main switch.

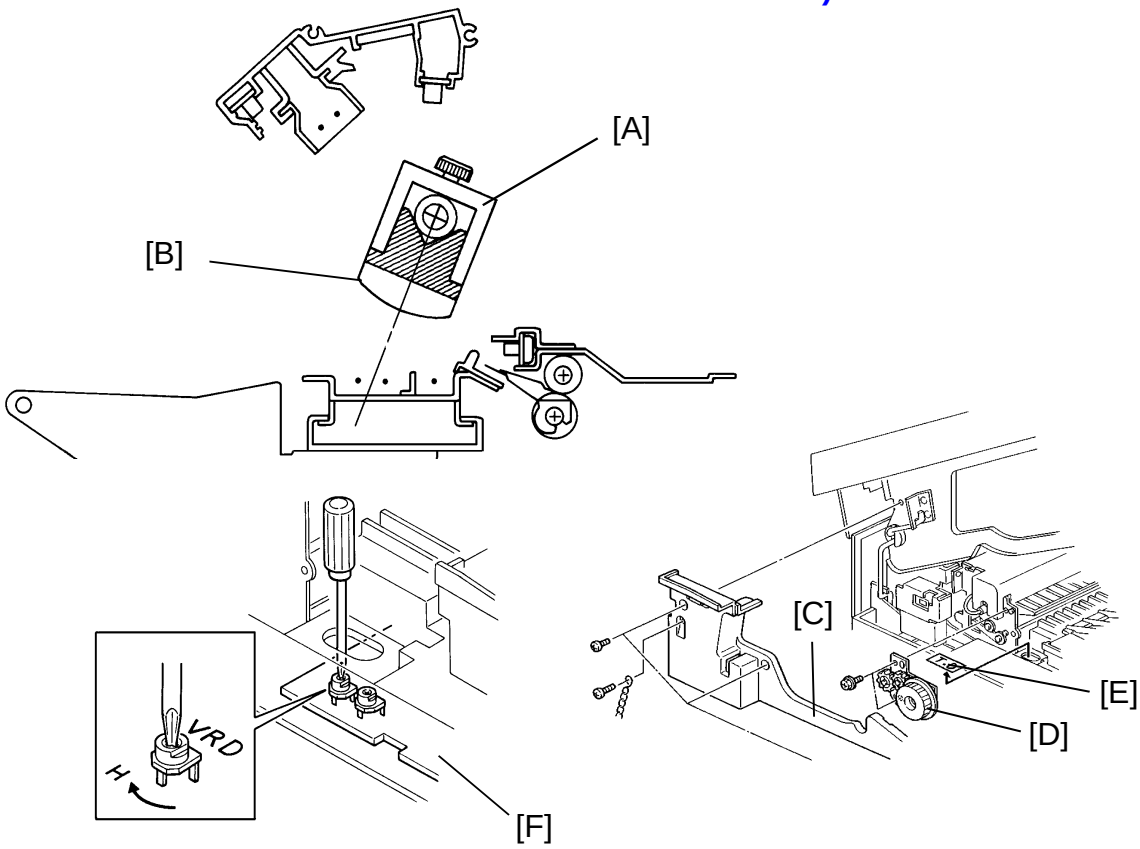
6.12.3 Transfer Corona Current Adjustment (SP9-5)



ADJUSTMENT STANDARD	Adjusting VR	
DC –20.0 ± 0.5 µA	VRT	SP9-5

1. Reinstall the TC/SC corona unit and position the drum shoe [A] on the center of the shaft so that the axis of the current sensing plate [B] is aligned with the transfer corona wire as shown.
2. Remove the lower inner cover [C] (5 screws) and the fusing knob bracket [D] (2 screws).
3. Remove the seal [E] from the transport unit.
4. Select the dc 200 µA range on the digital multimeter.
5. Turn on the main switch, front cover safety switch, and transfer corona using SP9-5.
6. Adjust the transfer corona current to dc –20.0 ± 0.5 µA using VRT on the TC/SC power pack [F].
7. Press the Clear/Stop key and turn off the main switch.

6.12.4 Separation Corona Current Adjustment (SP9-6)



ADJUSTMENT STANDARD	Adjusting VR	
AC 49 ± 1.0 µA	VRD	SP9-6

1. Reinstall the TC/SC corona unit and position the drum shoe [A] on the center of the shaft so that the axis of the current sensing plate [B] is aligned with the separation corona wire as shown.

   NOTE: Make sure that the drum shoe does not touch the pick-off pawls.

2. Remove the lower inner cover [C] (5 screws) and the fusing knob bracket [D] (2 screws).

3. Remove the seal [E] from the transport unit.

4 Select the ac 200 µA range on the digital multimeter.

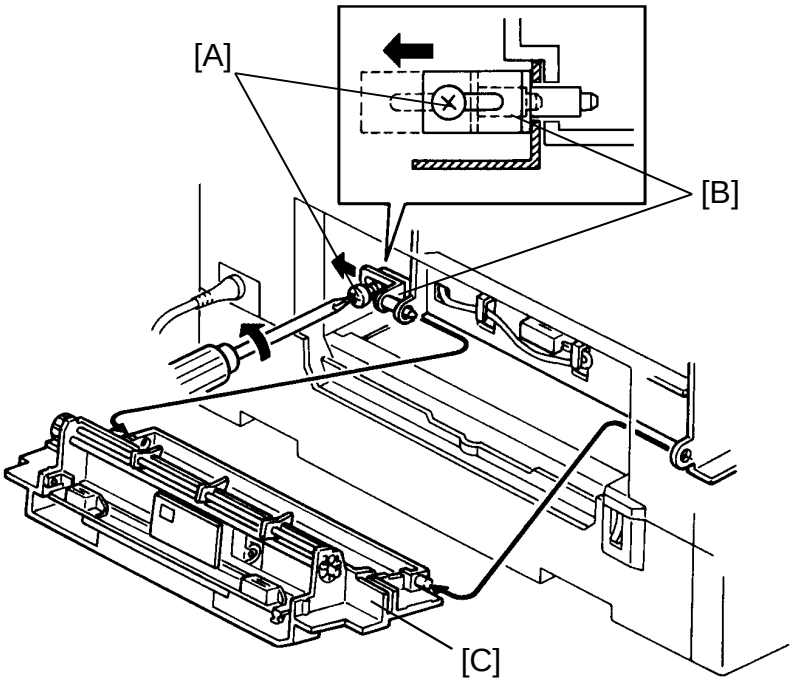
5. Turn on the main switch, the front cover safety switch, and the separation corona using SP9-6.

6. Adjust the separation corona current to ac 49 ± 1.0 µA using VRD on the TC/SC power pack [F].

7. Press the Clear/Stop key and turn off the main switch.

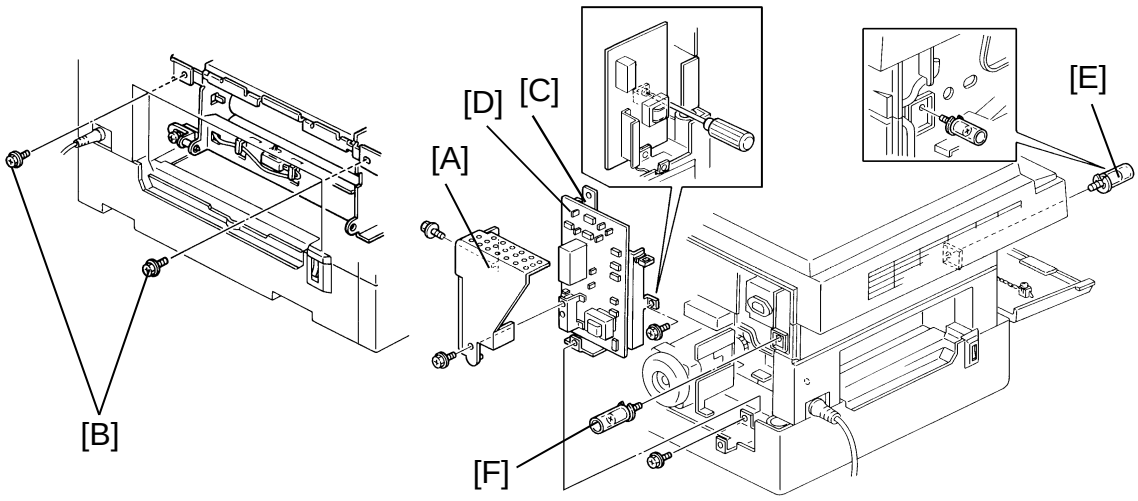
7. FUSING

7.1 EXIT UNIT REMOVAL



1. Remove the copy tray.
2. Loosen the screw [A] of the rear holder [B].
3. Slide the rear holder toward to the rear side and remove the exit unit [C].

7.2 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL

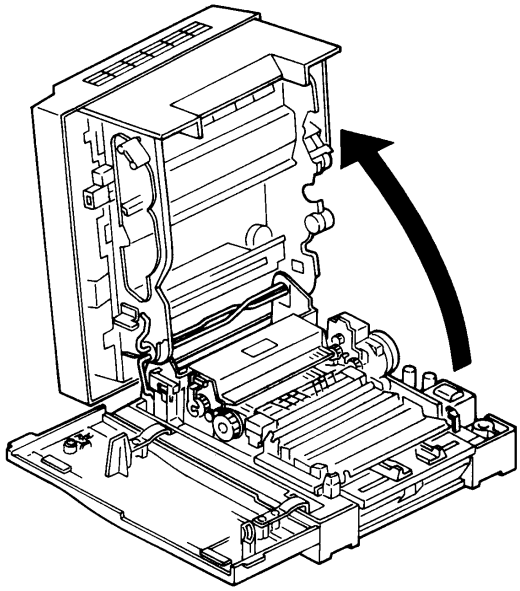


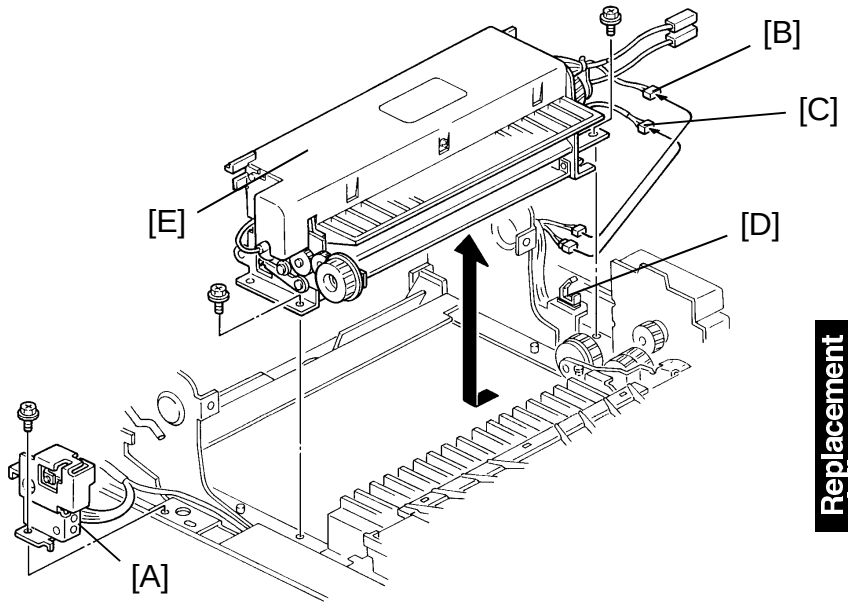
1. Make sure that the main switch is turned off and the power supply cord is unplugged.
2. Remove exit unit. (See Exit Unit Removal.)
3. Remove the platen cover or DF.
4. Open the front cover.
5. Remove the following covers and units.

   Upper inner cover
   Development unit
   Charge corona unit and wire cleaner
   Lower left cover
   Lower rear cover
   AC drive board cover [A] (2 screws)
   Lower inner cover
   Cleaning unit
   Upper left cover
   Upper rear cover

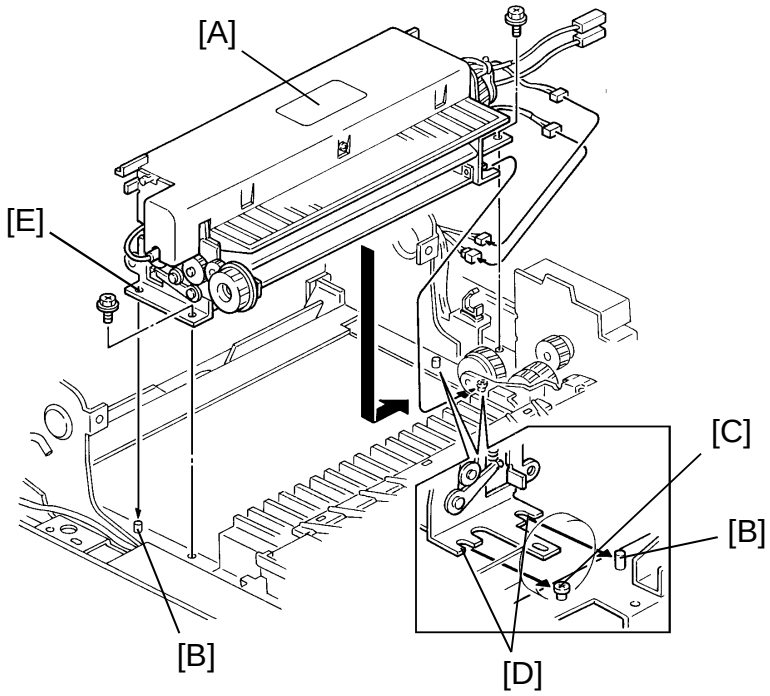
6. Remove the two fixing screws [B] securing the fusing unit.
7. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
8. Pull out the drum unit (2 screws).

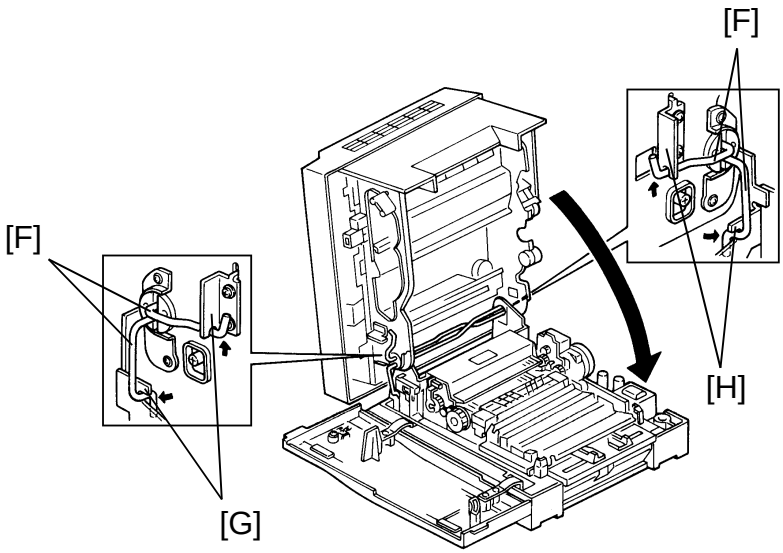
   NOTE: Cover the drum with some papers to prevent the drum from being exposed to light.
9. Close the upper unit.
10. Remove the ac drive board bracket [C] with the ac drive board [D] (2 screws and all ac harness connectors).
11. Remove the front [E] and rear [F] stopper screws.





12. Open the upper unit gently while holding it until the upper unit stops at 90° position as shown.
13. Remove the front safety switch bracket [A] (1 screw).
14. Remove the two fusing connectors (3P [B] and 4P [C]) and remove the harness from the wire clamp [D].
15. Remove the fusing unit [E] as shown (2 screws).



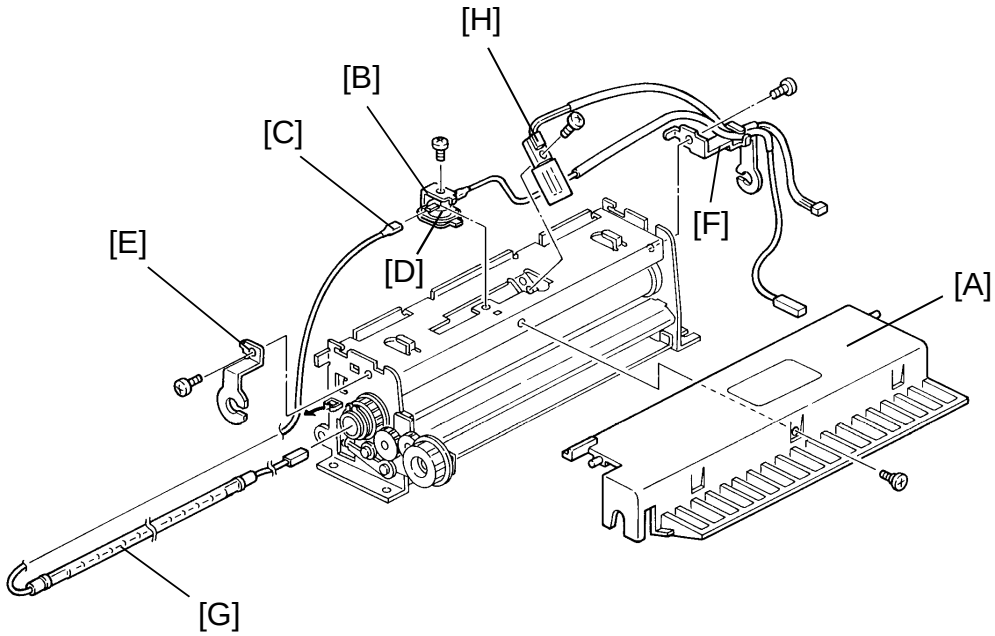


16. Reassemble.

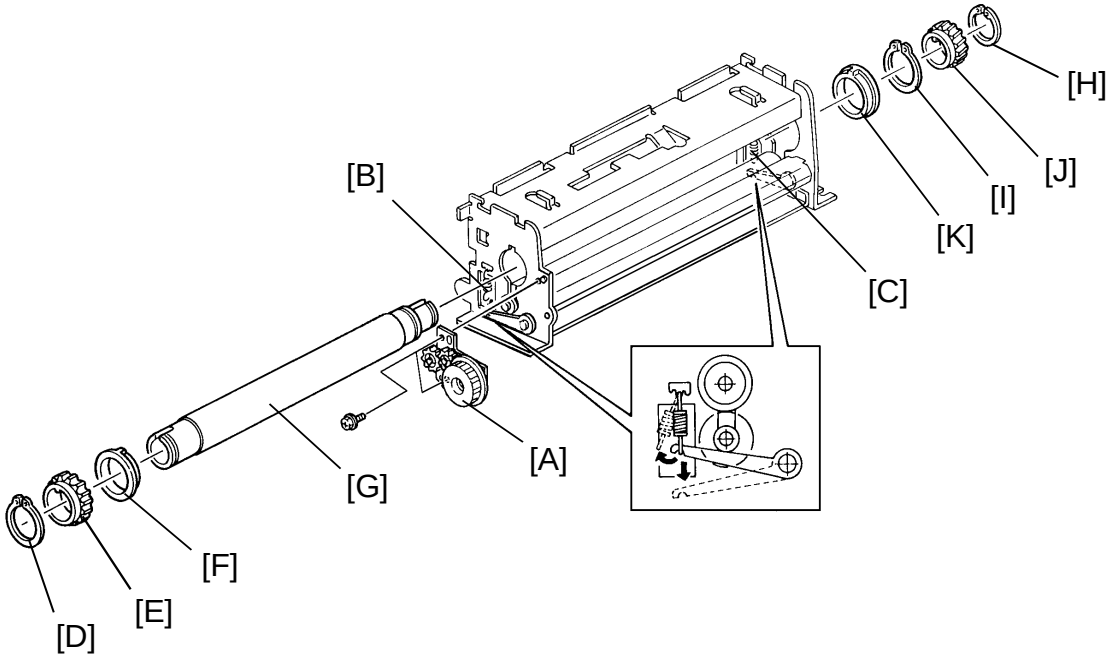
NOTE: 1) When reinstalling the fusing unit [A], make sure that two positioning pins [B] and the positioning screw [C] fit through two cutouts [D] and a hole [E] of the fusing frame.

2) When closing the upper unit, make sure that the torsion bars [F] are positioned on the front [G] and rear [H] brackets as shown.

7.3 HOT ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the exit unit. (See Exit Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the fusing unit. (See Fusing Unit Removal.)
3. Remove the fusing cover [A] (1 screw).
4. Remove the thermoswitch bracket [B] (1 screw).
5. Disconnect the connector [C] of the fusing lamp from the thermoswitch [D].
6. Remove the front [E] and rear [F] support brackets of the fusing lamp (1 screw each).
7. Pull the fusing lamp [G] out the front end of the hot roller.
8. Remove the thermistor [H] (1 screw).



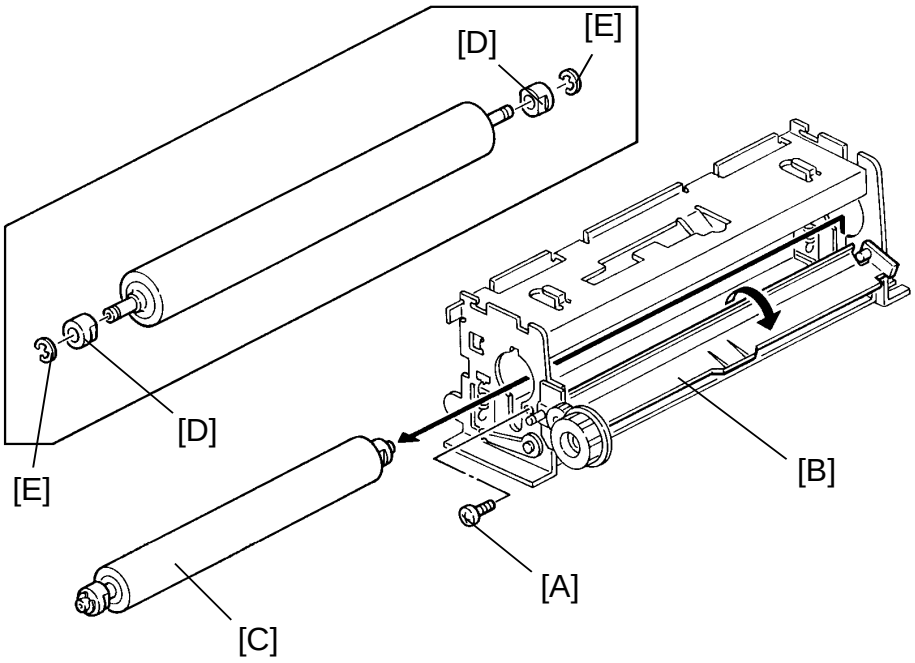
9. Remove the fusing knob bracket [A] at the front side (2 screws).
10. Remove the front [B] and rear [C] pressure springs.
11. Remove 1 C-ring [H], 1 gear [K] and 1 bearing [F] (Front side).
12. Slide the hot roller [G] to the front side.
13. Replace the hot roller (2 C-rings [H, I], 1 gear [J], 1 bearing [K]).
14. Install the new hot roller.

NOTE: a) Peel off 3 cm (1 inch) from both ends of the protective sheet before installing a new hot roller.

b) Before setting the pressure springs, remove the rest of the protective sheet.

c) Before reinstalling the pressure springs, refer to the Fusing Pressure Adjustment Section.

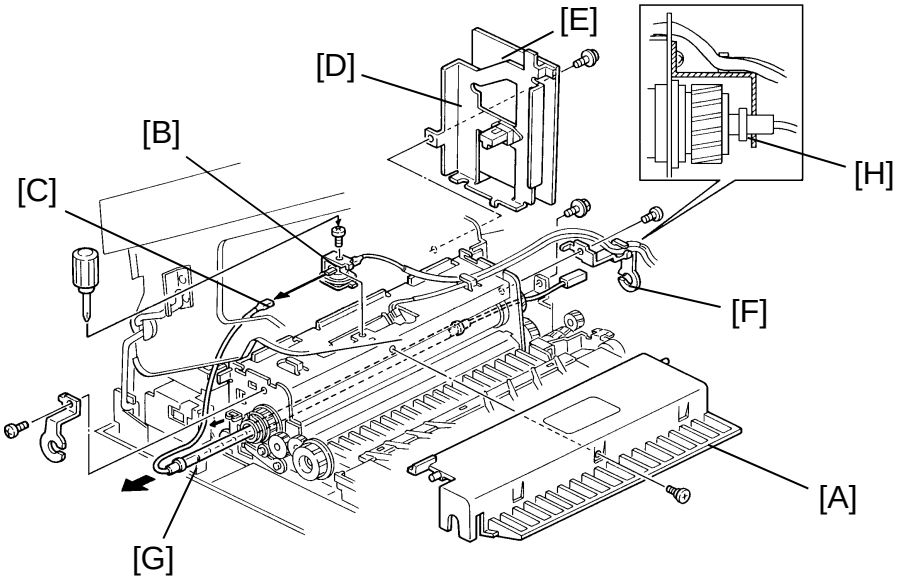
7.4 PRESSURE ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the hot roller. (See Hot Roller Replacement.)
2. Remove screw [A] securing the fusing entrance guide [B].
3. Turn the entrance guide clockwise as shown.
4. Remove the pressure roller [C].
5. Remove the bearings [D] and E-rings [E] from the pressure roller.

NOTE: Before installing the pressure springs, refer to the Fusing Pressure Adjustment Section.

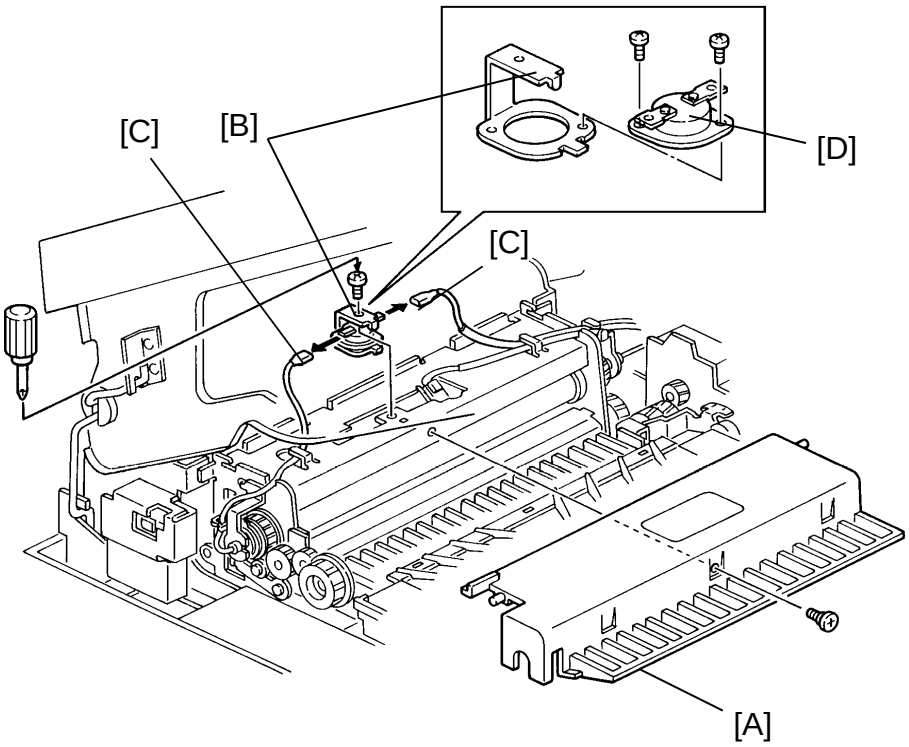
7.5 FUSING LAMP REPLACEMENT



1. Make sure that the main switch is turned off and the power supply cord is unplugged.
2. Open the front cover and remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
3. Remove the cleaning unit. (See Cleaning Unit Removal.)
4. Open the upper unit by pushing release lever.
5. Remove the lower inner cover (5 screws).
6. Remove the fusing cover [A] (1 screw).
7. Remove the thermoswitch bracket [B] (1 screw).
8. Disconnect the connector [C] of the fusing lamp from the thermoswitch.
9. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws) and lower rear cover (2 screws).
10. Remove the ac drive board cover (2 screws).
11. Remove the ac drive board bracket [D] with the ac drive board [E] (2 screws and all ac harness connectors).
12. Remove the rear support bracket [F] (1 screw).
13. Pull the fusing lamp [G] out the front end of the hot roller.

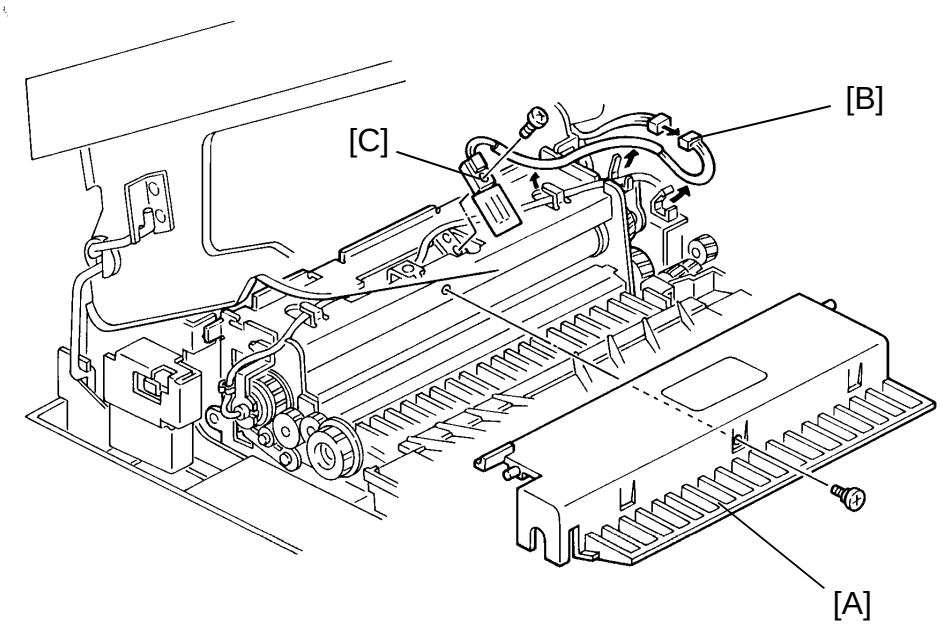
NOTE: a) Do not touch the fusing lamp with bare hands.
b) Slide the new fusing lamp into the hot roller through the opening at the front of the roller.
c) Make sure that the fusing lamp insulators [H] (front and rear) are properly set in the holders as shown.

7.6 FUSING THERMOSWITCH REPLACEMENT



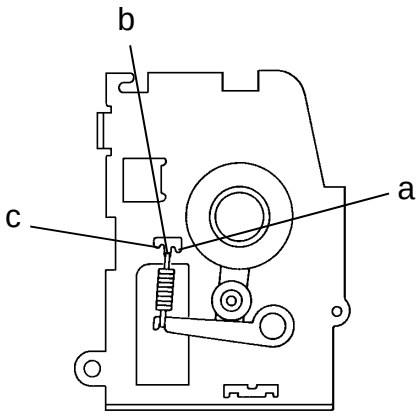
1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power supply cord.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
4. Remove the drum unit. (See Drum Replacement.)
5. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
6. Remove the fusing cover [A] (1 screw).
7. Remove the thermoswitch bracket [B] (1 screw).
8. Disconnect two thermoswitch connectors [C].
9. Remove the thermoswitch [D] from the bracket (2 screws).

7.7 FUSING THERMISTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power supply cord.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
4. Remove the drum unit. (See Drum Replacement.)
5. Hold down the top of upper unit and open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
6. Remove the fusing cover [A] (1 screw).
7. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
8. Remove lower rear cover (2 screws).
9. Remove the ac drive board cover (2 screws).
10. Remove ac drive board bracket with ac drive board (2 screws and all ac harness connector).
11. Disconnect the thermistor connector [B] (3 harness clamps).
12. Remove the thermistor [C] (1 screw).

7.8 FUSING PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power supply cord.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove the upper inner cover (3 screws).
4. Open the upper unit by pushing the release lever.
5. Remove the lower inner cover (5 screws).
6. Remove the front safety switch bracket (1 screw).
7. Remove the upper rear cover (2 screws).
8. Remove the lower rear cover (2 screws).
9. Remove the ac drive board cover (2 screws).
10. Remove the ac drive board bracket with the ac drive board (2 screws and all ac harness connectors).
11. Adjust the fusing pressure spring position as follows:

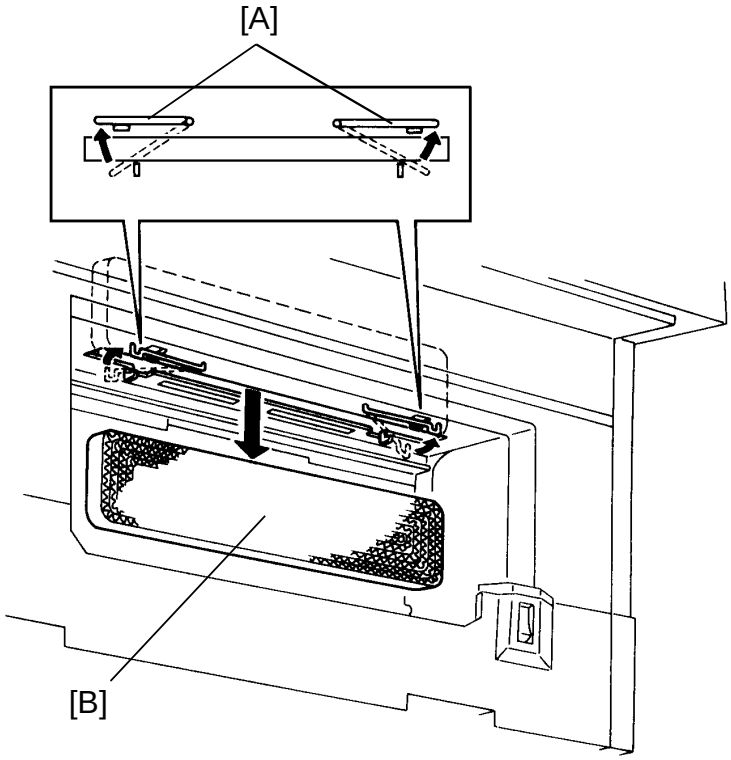
<Fusing Pressure adjustment combinations>

Spring position setting	
a	Stronger
b	Factory setting
c	Strongest

The fusing pressure can be set at three different levels. Adjust the pressure spring position if poor fusing occurs.

8. OTHERS

8.1 OZONE FILTER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the copy tray.
2. Remove the exit unit (1 screw).
3. Unhook the front and rear support levers [A].
4. Replace the ozone filter [B].

9. COPY QUALITY ADJUSTMENT

– General Information –

Image density is affected by the following factors:

(1) Light Intensity
(2) Bias Voltage
(3) Toner Density
(4) Grid Voltage
(5) Charge Corona Current

The items listed above must be kept in balance to maintain correct image density.

In the field, image density should be adjusted first by changing the exposure lamp voltage. If results are unsatisfactory, the bias voltage can be changed. Also, if requested from the customer, the overall image density can be changed by changing the toner density. Normally, this should be kept at the normal position (factory setting).

The grid voltage and charge corona current are carefully adjusted at the factory. Any adjustment out of the adjustment standard will result in over toning, toner scattering, dirty background, or light image density problems. The grid voltage and charge corona current adjustment should be done only when replacing the CC/Grid/Bias power pack or to correct certain problems with image density after checking all other possible causes.

9.1 LIGHT INTENSITY ADJUSTMENT

When:	1. Every Call 2. When replacing the following parts Exposure Lamp AC Drive Board Main Board Drum Auto Image Density Sensor
Purpose:	To maintain the correct light intensity.
Adjustment Standard:	Level 2 (E0.2) of the gray scale on the OS-A4 chart should be slightly visible on the copy when the 4th manual image density level is selected.
Perform:	SP48
How:	Change the exposure lamp voltage by SP48.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Clean the following parts:

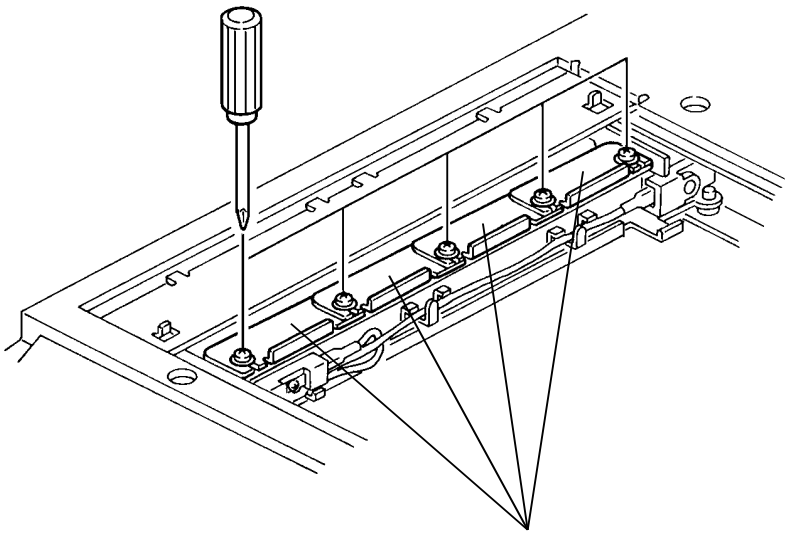
Item No.	Section	Method
(1)	Optics (mirrors, lens, reflectors, shield glass, exposure glass)	Damp cotton, silicone cloth, and blower brush
(2)	ID sensor	Blower brush
(3)	Corona wires (charge, transfer, and separation) and casing.	Water or dry cloth
(4)	QL, PTL, Erase Lamp	Dry cloth

3. Place the OS-A4 test chart on the exposure glass and make a full size copy at manual image density level 4 (center).

   NOTE: Make sure that the data in SP37 is set to "0" (standard value).
4. Confirm that level 2 (E0.2) of the gray scale is slightly visible on the copy. If the image density is not correct, proceed to the following steps.
5. Enter the lamp voltage setting mode (SP48).
6. Change the data with the Increase or Decrease Quantity ("+" or "–") key as follows:
   If the image density is too dark: Increase the data number
   If the image density is too light: Decrease the data number
7. Confirm that the image density is within the adjustment standard.
8. Perform the ADS adjustment. (See ADS Adjustment.)

9.2 SIDE-TO-SIDE EXPOSURE ADJUSTMENT

When:	The exposure is uneven side-to-side.
Purpose:	To maintain even exposure.
Adjustment Standard:	The side-to-side variation of the gray scales on the test chart should be less than one level.
Perform:	Move the exposure adjustment plates.
How:	Change the position of the adjustment plates to make the light intensity from the exposure lamp even across its length.



[A]

CAUTION: Do not adjust the charge corona wire height to correct for uneven image density on the copy.
When adjusting the wire height, use the drum shoe. (See Charge Corona Current Adjustment.)

1. Clean the optics components and the charge corona wires.
2. Place the OS-A4 test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy.
3. If the side-to-side variations of the gray scales are not within the adjustment standard, turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
4. Position the adjusting plates [A] so that the copy image meets the adjustment standard.

9.3 IMAGE BIAS ADJUSTMENT

When:	1. The image is blurred even though the image density in black solid areas is acceptable. 2. Dirty background. The problem is not caused by excess toner and cannot be solved by adjusting the light intensity.
Purpose:	To improve the copy image.
Perform:	SP37
How:	Change the development bias voltage for image density control by SP37.

Data (SP37)	0	1	2	3	4
Change of bias voltage (volts)	±0	+40	+20	– 20	– 40
Image Density	Normal	Darkest	Darker	Lighter	Lightest

1. Make a copy after adjusting the light intensity.
2. If the image is blurred:
   Decrease bias voltage by one step and readjust light intensity.

   If the background is dirty:
   Increase bias voltage by one step and readjust light intensity.

9.4 TONER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT

When:	Customer wants to change the overall image density of the copies.
Purpose:	To change toner concentration inside development unit.
Perform:	SP33
How:	Change the development bias voltage for toner density detection by SP33.

9.5 FIXED TONER SUPPLY MODE SELECTION

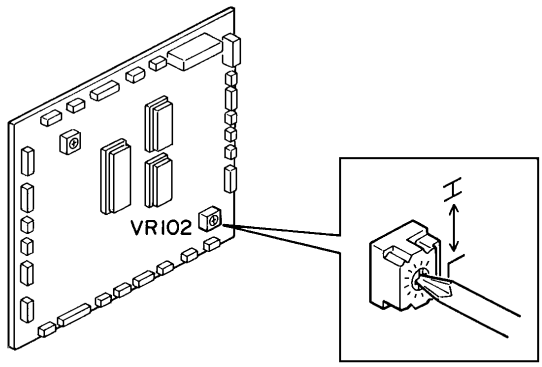
When:	A problem with the ID sensing system cannot be corrected during a service call. (Detect supply mode does not function.)
Purpose:	To switch the toner supply system from Detect mode to Fixed mode.
Perform:	SP30
How:	Turn on the toner supply clutch for a fixed time in each copy cycle by SP30.

9.6 TONER SUPPLY RATIO SELECTION

When:	The factory setting for toner supply amount is not appropriate for the type of original in use.
Purpose:	To adjust the toner supply amount.
Adjustment Standard:	Detect Mode : 15% (Factory Setting) Fixed Mode : 7% (Factory Setting)
Perform:	Detect Mode : SP31 Fixed Mode : SP32
How:	Change the toner supply clutch on period by SP31 or 32.

9.7 ID SENSOR (Vsg) ADJUSTMENT

When:	1. Check Vsg at every call, and adjust Vsg if it is out of adjustment standard. 2. At replacement of the following parts: • ID sensor • Main board • Drum 3. A toner supply problem occurs.
Purpose:	To make sure that ID sensor works correctly.
Adjustment Standard:	Vsg = 4.0 ± 0.2 volts
Perform:	SP54
How:	Change the light intensity of the ID sensor LED by VR102. The Vsg voltage is displayed in the operation panel.



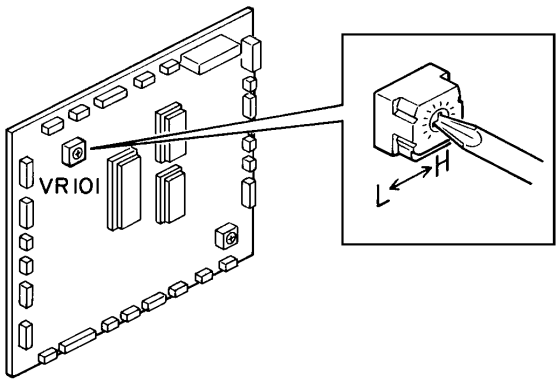
1. Turn off the main switch and clean the following parts:

Item No.	Section	Method
(1)	Optics (mirrors, lens, reflectors, shield glass, exposure glass)	Damp cotton, silicone cloth, and blower brush
(2)	ID sensor	Blower brush
(3)	Corona wires (charge, transfer, and separation) and casing	Alcohol or water
(4)	QL, PTL, Erase Lamp	Dry cloth

2. Reinstall all the parts.
3. Check Vsg using SP54. Adjust Vsg by turning VR102 (main board) if Vsg is out of adjustment standard.

9.8 ADS (Auto Image Density Sensor) ADJUSTMENT

When:	1. After light intensity adjustment 2. ADS voltage is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain correct ADS mode operation.
Adjustment Standard:	ADS Reference Voltage = 2.5 ± 0.1 volts
Perform:	SP56
How:	Change the ADS reference voltage by VR101. The voltage reading is displayed in the operation panel.

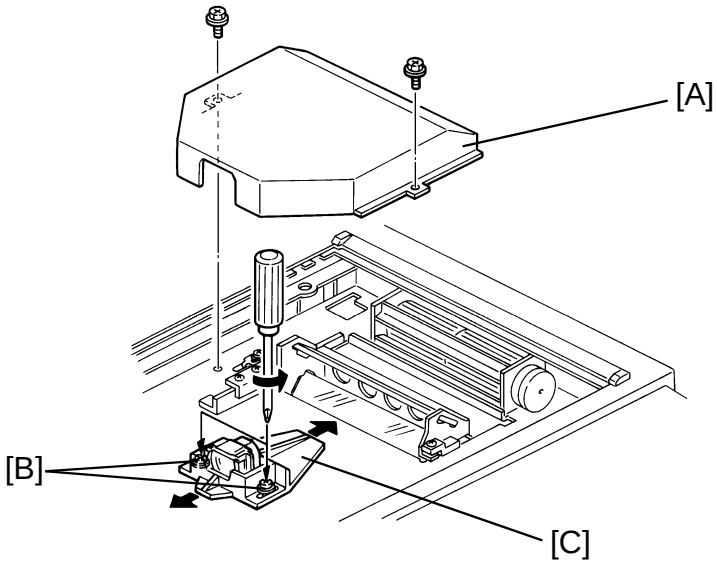


1. Clean the optics (mirrors, lens, reflectors, shield glass, and exposure glass).
2. Place five sheets of A3 (11" x 17") paper on the exposure glass.
3. Select SP56 and press the Start key.
4. If the voltage is not within the adjustment standard, adjust it by turning VR101 on the main board.

9.9 HORIZONTAL MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT

When:	The horizontal magnification is not within the adjustment standard. After loosening the first scanner wire clamps.
Purpose:	To maintain proper horizontal magnification.
Adjustment Standard:	Less than ± 0.8% difference between original and copy.
Perform:	1. Loosen a screw and move the lens position ... A076 copier 2. SP44 (0.2%/step, 51 steps) ... A077/A078 copiers
How:	Adjust the lens home position changing the distance between the original and the drum.

– A076 copier –



1. Place a 150 mm scale parallel to the left scale on the exposure glass.
2. Make three copies to check the horizontal magnification.
3. Confirm that the scanner wire clamps are positioned correctly using the scanner positioning pins. (See Scanner Wire Installation.)
4. Remove the lens cover [A] (2 screws).
5. Loosen a screw [B] and move the lens [C] to adjust the magnification.

– A077/A078 copiers –

1. Change the data of SP44 to 20 (default value).
2. Confirm that the scanner wire clamps are positioned correctly using the scanner positioning pins. (See Scanner Wire Installation.)
3. Place a 150 mm scale parallel to the left scale on the exposure glass.
4. Adjust the horizontal magnification using SP44. Make three copies to check the magnification.

9.10 VERTICAL MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT

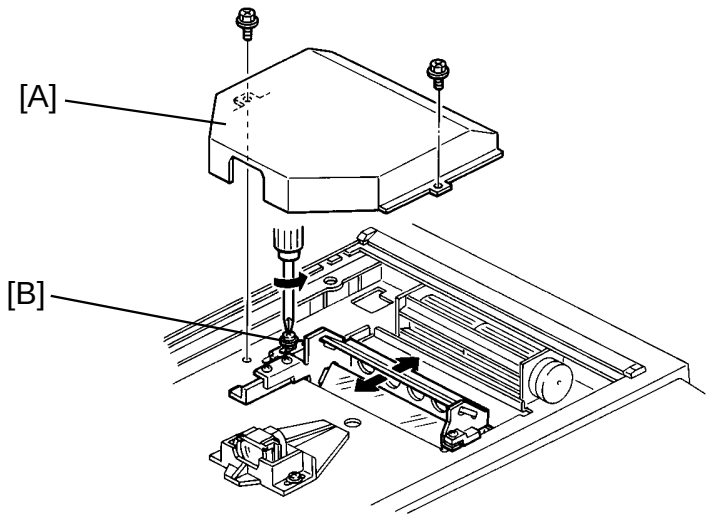
When:	The vertical magnification is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper vertical magnification.
Adjustment Standard:	Less than ± 0.8% difference between original and copy.
Perform:	SP43 (0.2%/step, 16 steps)
How:	Change the scanner speed by SP43.

1. Place a 150 mm scale perpendicular to the left scale on the exposure glass.
2. Adjust the vertical magnification using SP43. Make three copies to check the magnification.

9.11 FOCUS ADJUSTMENT

When:	The copy image is out of focus. After adjusting the horizontal magnification.
Purpose:	To maintain proper focus.
Adjustment Standard:	Copy image in focus.
Perform:	1. Loosen a screw and move the 4th/5th mirror assembly position ... A076 copier 2. SP47 (101 steps) ... A077/A078 copiers
How:	Adjust the 4th/5th mirror assembly home position, changing the the distance between the original and the drum surface.

– A076 copier –



1. Make three copies with the test chart to check the focus.
2. Turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Remove the lens cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Loosen a screw [B] and move the 4th/5th mirror assembly to adjust the focus.

– A077/A078 copiers –

1. Make three copies with the test chart.
2. Adjust the focus using SP47. Check the text on the copies.

9.12 LEADING EDGE ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT

When:	The leading edge erase margin is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain the correct leading erase margin.
Adjustment Standard:	2.5 ± 1.5 mm (0.1 ± 0.06")
Perform:	SP41 (0.4mm/step, 16 steps)
How:	Change the erase lamp on period by SP41.

1. Place a 150 mm scale perpendicular to the left scale on the exposure glass.
2. Adjust the leading edge erase margin using SP41. Make three copies and check the erase margin.

9.13 REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT

When:	Registration is not within the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain proper registration.
Adjustment Standard:	0 ± 2 mm (0 ± 0.08")
Perform:	SP42 (0.5mm/step, 16 steps)
How:	Change the registration roller start timing by SP42.

1. Place a 150 mm scale perpendicular to the left scale on the exposure glass.
2. Adjust the registration using SP42. Make three copies and check the registration.

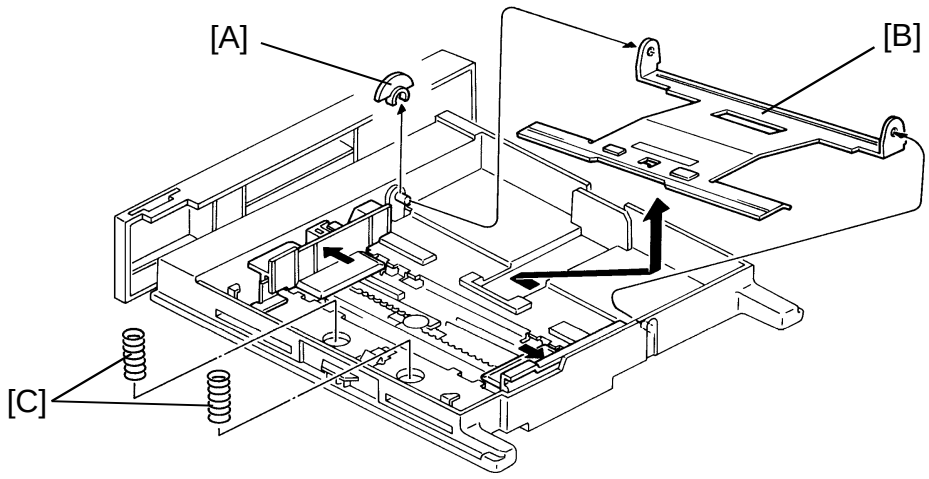
9.14 SIDE-TO-SIDE REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT

When:	Side-to-side registration is out of the adjustment standard.
Purpose:	To maintain the proper side-to-side registration
Adjustment Standard:	0 ± 2 mm (0 ± 0.08")
Perform:	1. Change the lens position. 2. Change the side fence position in the paper tray.
How:	Shift the copy image by changing the lens position or the side fence position side-to-side.

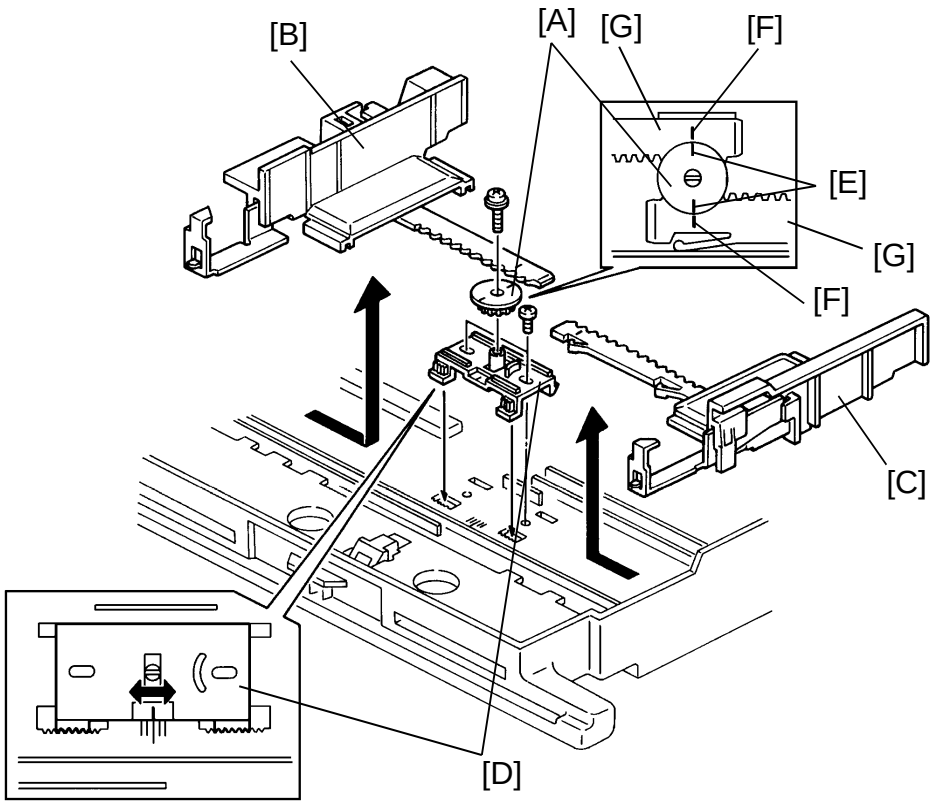
NOTE: a) When side-to-side registration is out of the adjustment standard only for the paper tray, adjust the side fence position in the paper tray.

b) When side-to-side registration is out of the adjustment standard for both the paper tray and manual feed table, adjust the lens position. Check the adjustment by making a copy from the manual feed table. Then, make a copy from the paper tray and adjust the side fence position in the paper tray if necessary.

– Side Fence Adjustment (Paper Tray) –



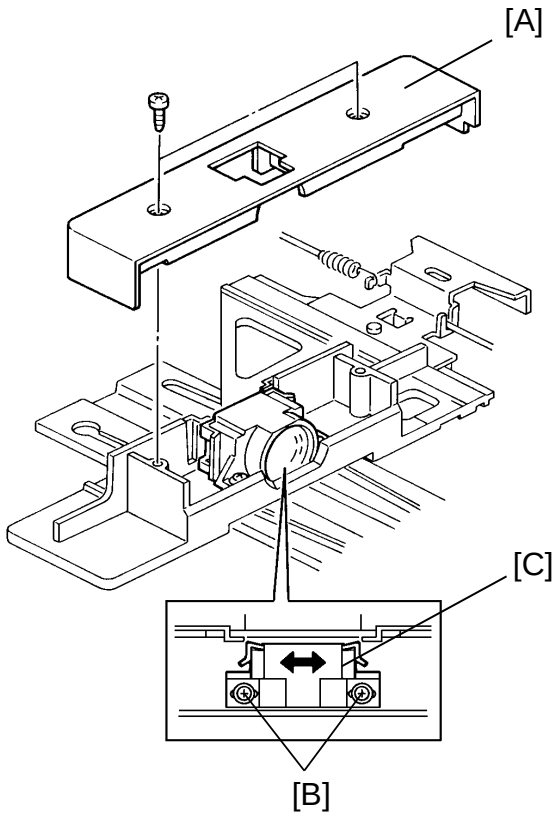
1. Pull the paper tray out.
2. Move the side fences to the widest position.
3. Remove the bottom plate spacer [A].
4. Slide the bottom plate [B] to the front side and remove it.
5. Remove two springs [C].



6. Remove the gear [A] (1 screw).
7. Remove the front [B] and rear [C] side fences.
8. Remove the registration adjustment plate [D] (2 screws) and set it to the desired position.

   NOTE: When reinstalling the gear [A], the lines [E] on the gear fit the lines [F] of the side fence gears [G].

– Lens Position Adjustment –

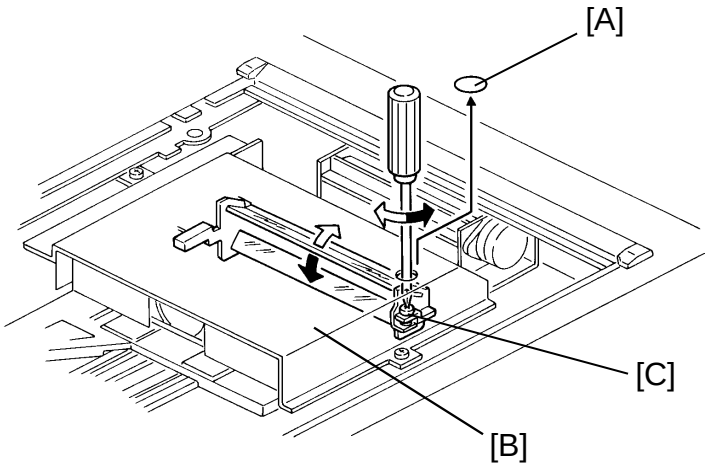


1. Turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
2. Remove the lens cover (2 screws) and lens housing cover (A077/A078 copiers only) [A] (2 screws).
3. Loosen two screws [B] and shift the lens [C] to adjust the side-to-side registration.

9.15 4TH/5TH MIRROR HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

When:	Parallelogram (skewed) image appears.
Purpose:	To maintain the proper copy image.
Perform:	Turn 4th/5th mirror height adjustment screw.
How:	Change the 4th/5th mirror height by turning the adjustment screw.

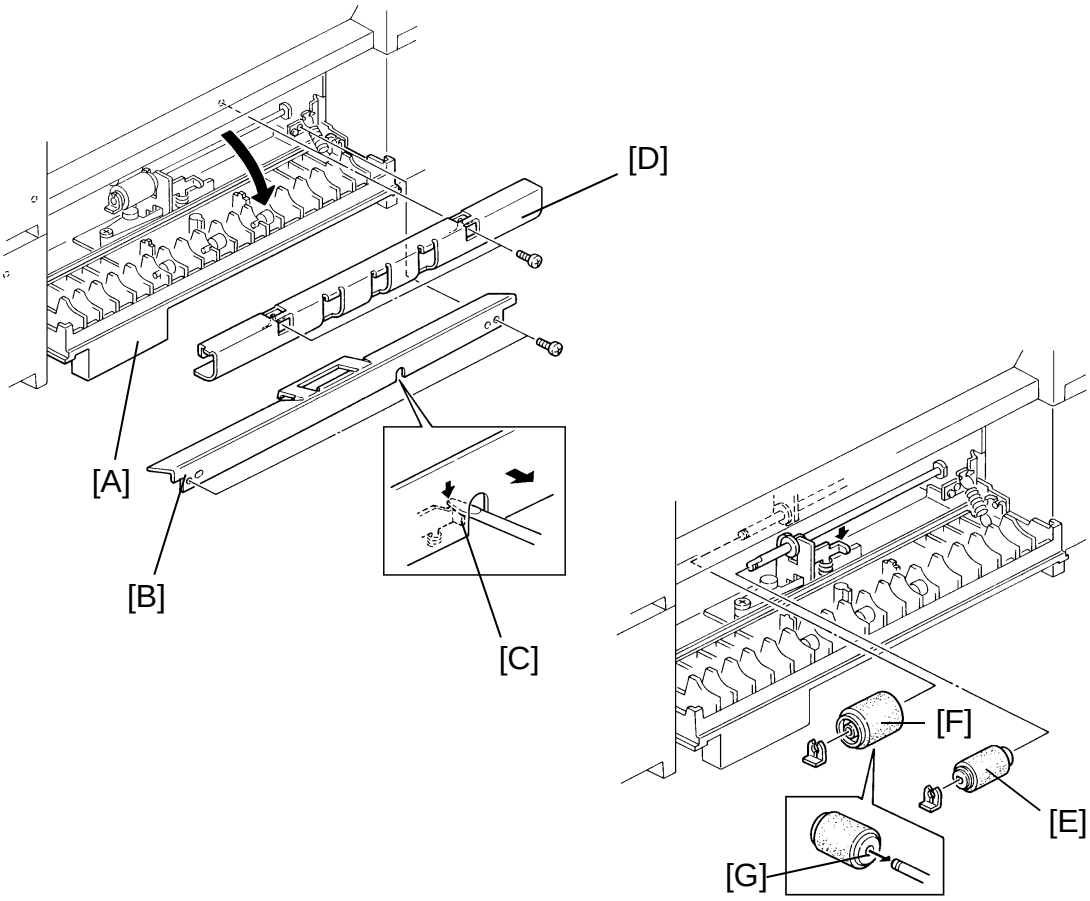
CAUTION: Never perform this adjustment until you have positively verified that the source of the skewing is optical and not in the paper path.



1. Turn off the main switch and remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
2. Remove the seal [A] from the lens cover [B].
3. Adjust the 4th/5th mirror height by turning the screw [C]. Refer to the arrows in the illustration.

10. 2ND PAPER FEED (A078 Copier Only)

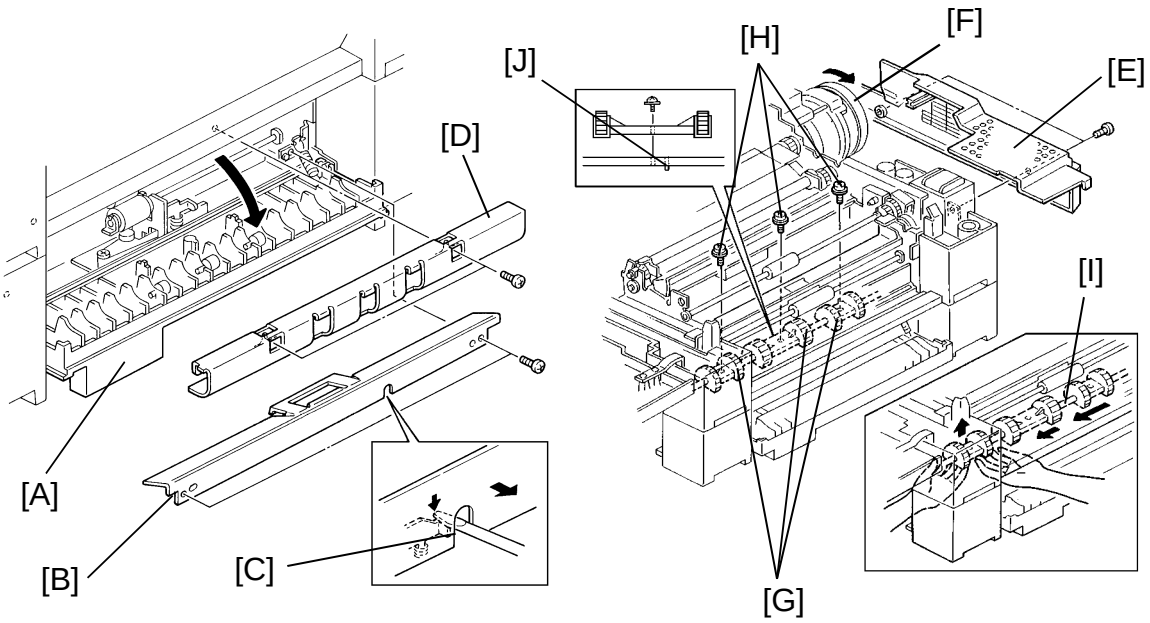
10.1 2ND PAPER FEED ROLLER AND TORQUE ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the 2nd paper feed cover [A].
3. Remove the feed guide plate [B] while pressing the release lever [C] down as shown (2 screws).
4. Remove the relay roller guide plate [D] (2 screws).
5. Remove the torque roller [E] while pressing the release lever down (1 snap ring).
6. Remove the paper feed roller [F] (1 snap ring).

   NOTE: When reinstalling the paper feed roller, make sure that the flat surface [G] of the paper feed roller must be positioned at rear side as shown.

10.2 2ND PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT

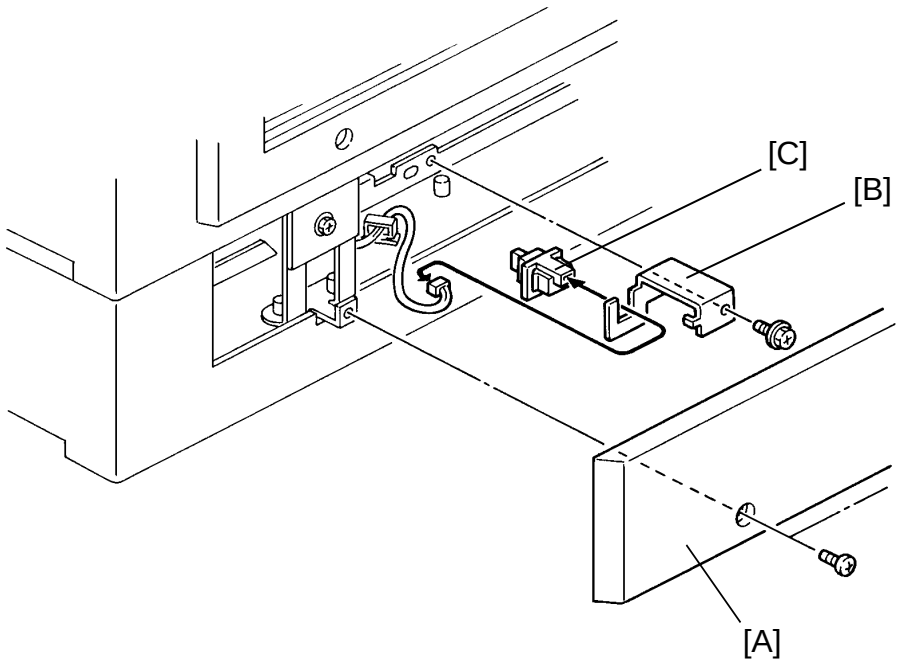


1. Remove the pick-up rollers of the 1st paper feed. (See 1st Pick-up Roller Replacement.)
2. Remove the 2nd paper tray.
3. Open the 2nd feed cover [A].
4. Remove the feed guide plate [B] while pressing the release lever [C] down as shown.
5. Remove the relay roller guide plate [D] (2 screws).
6. Remove the lower rear cover [E] (2 screws).
7. While turning the main motor [F] clockwise (from front view), turn the pick-up rollers [G] until the position which can remove the screws [H] of the pick-up rollers.
8. Remove three screws of the pick-up rollers (each 1 screw).
9. Remove the pick-up rollers from the shaft [I] while pushing them up with your hands as shown.

NOTE: 1) When securing the screws to the pick-up rollers, use the magnetized driver.

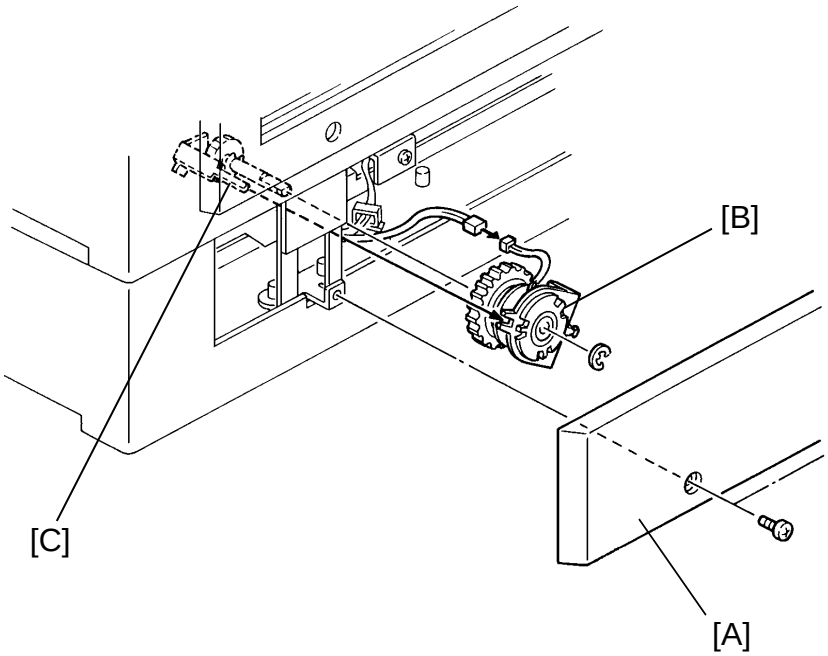
2) When reinstalling the pick-up rollers, make sure that the pick-up rollers are positioned on the other side of the spring pin [J] as shown. Otherwise, the six pick-up rollers are positioned at the same direction.

10.3 2ND PAPER TRAY SWITCH REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the 2nd paper tray.
3. Remove the 2nd feed rear cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the tray switch bracket [B] (1 screw and 1 connector).
5. Remove the 2nd paper tray switch [C] from the bracket.

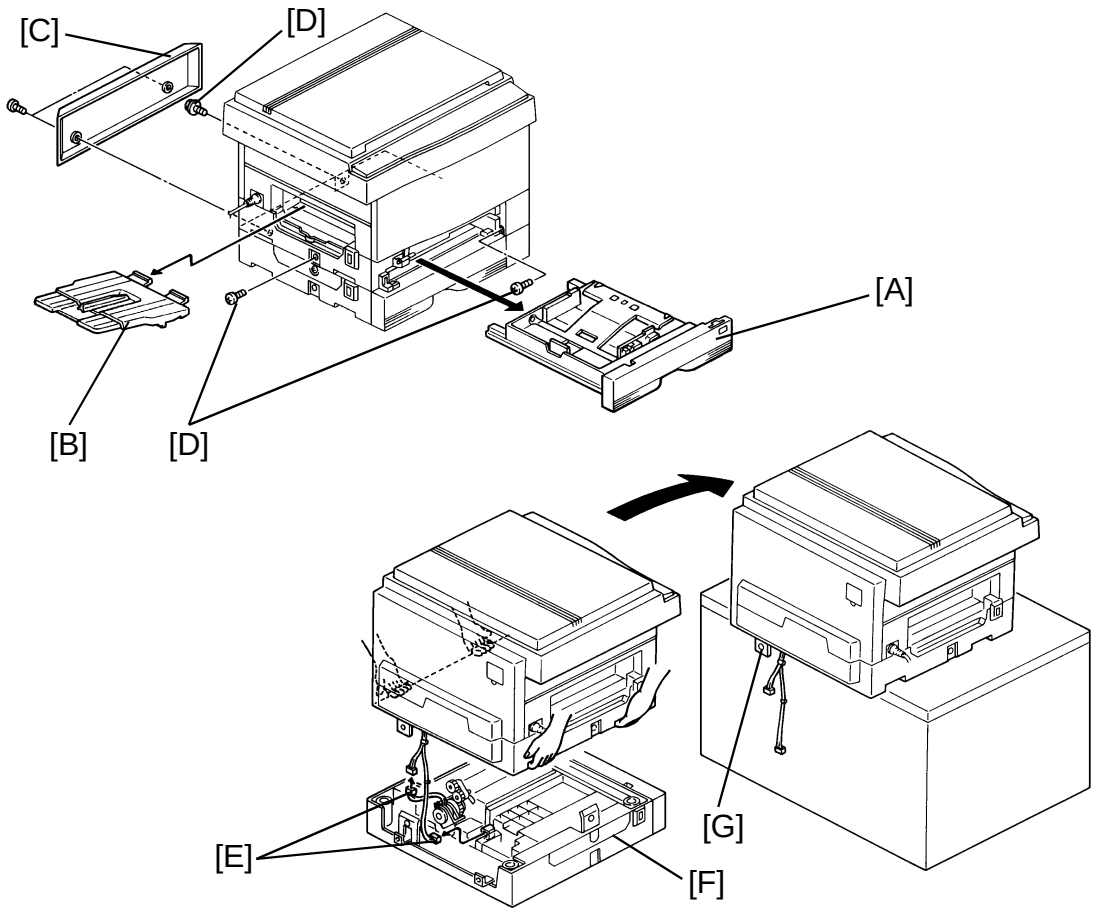
10.4 2ND PAPER FEED CLUTCH REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the 2nd feed rear cover [A] (2 screws).
3. Remove the 2nd paper feed clutch [B] (1 E-ring and 1 connector).

NOTE: When reinstalling the clutch, make sure that the clutch stopper [C] locks the clutch.

10.5 2ND PAPER FEED STATION REMOVAL



NOTE: This procedure must be performed by two field technicians.

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power supply cord.
2. Pull out the 1st paper tray [A].
3. Remove the copy tray [B].
4. Remove the 2nd feed rear cover [C] (2 screws).
5. Remove three screws [D] securing the 2nd paper feed station.
6. Disconnect two connectors [E].
7. Remove the main copier from the 2nd paper feed station [F] and place the main copier on a table as shown, making sure that the connecting plate [G] does not bear the weight of the machine.

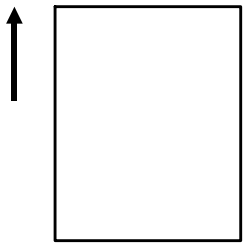
WARNING: When reinstalling the main copier on the 2nd paper feed station, be careful not to injure your hands.

SECTION 6

TROUBLESHOOTING

1. COPY QUALITY

1.1 BLANK COPY (WHITE COPY)



- Symptom -

White or almost white copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Charge is not applied.
   - CC/Grid/bias power pack (charge or grid) failure
   - Poor contact of power pack lead wires
   - Broken charge corona wire
   - Leak in insulator or endblock

2. Copy image is not transferred to the paper.
   - TC/SC power pack (transfer) failure
   - Poor contact of power pack lead wires
   - Poor contact of transfer corona wire
   - Leak in insulator or endblocks

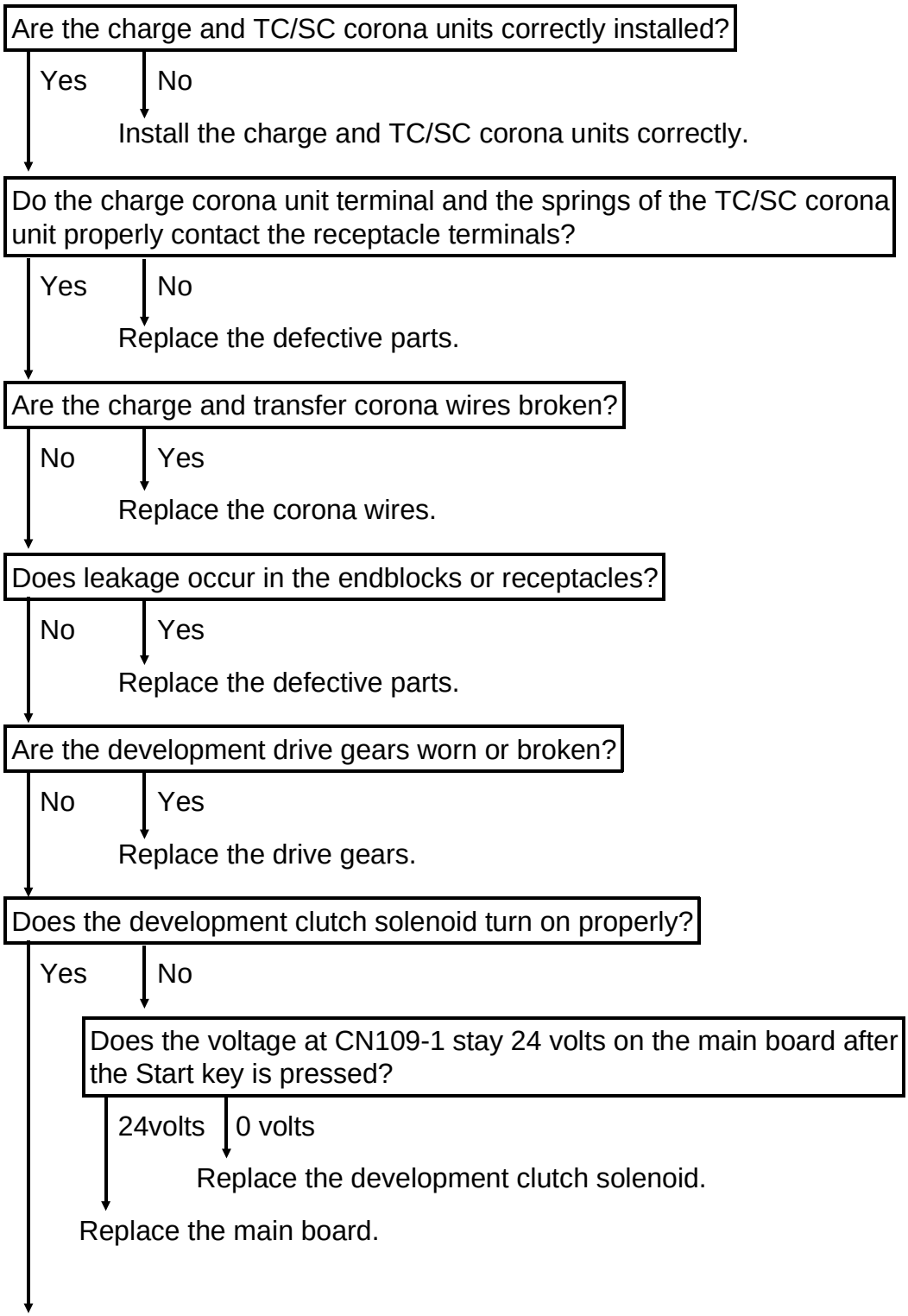
3. Development roller does not rotate.
   - Broken drive gear
   - Defective development clutch solenoid

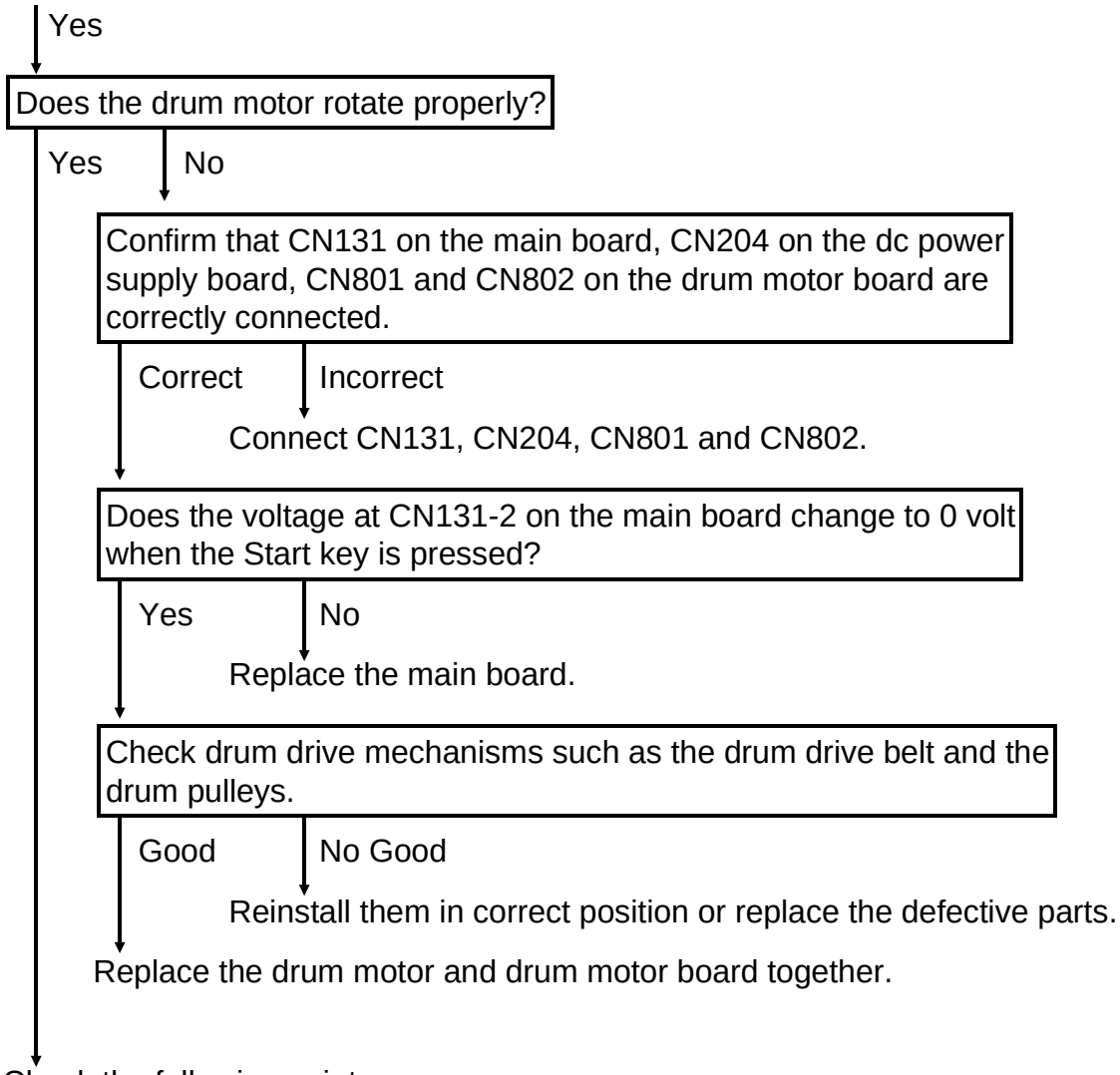
4. The development roller is not properly grounded.

5. Poor drum sensitivity.
   - Drum exposed to fluorescent light or direct sunlight for long period of time.
   - Drum exposed to ammonia gas or fumes for a long period of time.

6. Drum does not rotate.

- Action -


Are the charge and TC/SC corona units correctly installed?
Yes
No
Install the charge and TC/SC corona units correctly.
Do the charge corona unit terminal and the springs of the TC/SC corona unit properly contact the receptacle terminals?
Yes
No
Replace the defective parts.
Are the charge and transfer corona wires broken?
No
Yes
Replace the corona wires.
Does leakage occur in the endblocks or receptacles?
No
Yes
Replace the defective parts.
Are the development drive gears worn or broken?
No
Yes
Replace the drive gears.
Does the development clutch solenoid turn on properly?
Yes
No
Does the voltage at CN109-1 stay 24 volts on the main board after the Start key is pressed?
24volts
0 volts
Replace the development clutch solenoid.
Replace the main board.


Yes
Does the drum motor rotate properly?
Yes
No
Confirm that CN131 on the main board, CN204 on the dc power supply board, CN801 and CN802 on the drum motor board are correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN131, CN204, CN801 and CN802.
Does the voltage at CN131-2 on the main board change to 0 volt when the Start key is pressed?
Yes
No
Replace the main board.
Check drum drive mechanisms such as the drum drive belt and the drum pulleys.
Good
No Good
Reinstall them in correct position or replace the defective parts.
Replace the drum motor and drum motor board together.

Check the following points:

- CN119-6 (Charge trigger line) and CN119-4 (Grid trigger line)
  (1) If the signal stays HIGH after the Start key is pressed, replace the main board.

  (2) If the charge corona does not turn on even if the signal changes to LOW, replace the CC/Grid/Bias power pack.

- CN117-13 (Transfer trigger line)
  (1) If the signal stays HIGH after the Start key is pressed, replace the main board.

  (2) If the transfer corona does not turn on even if the signal changes to LOW, replace the TC/SC power pack.

If there is no problem with the signal lines, replace the drum if the sensitivity does not recover even when the drum is not exposed to light.

1.2 DIRTY BACKGROUND

- Symptom -

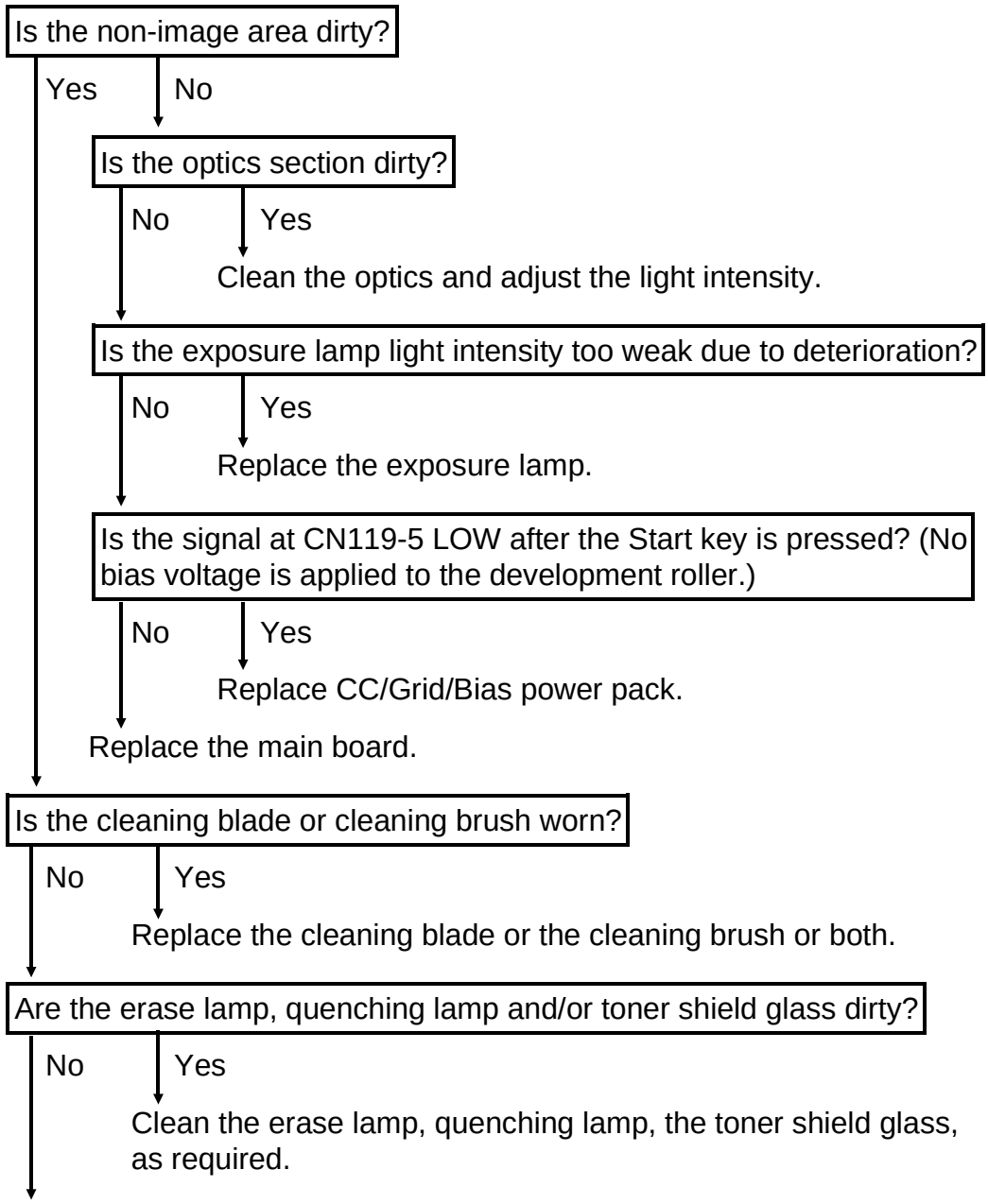
1. Dirty background at image density level 4 (manual setting).
2. When newspapers are copied, the background is dirty even at level 7.
3. ADS copies have a dirty background.

- Possible Causes -

1. Dirty optics
2. Toner scattering
   - High toner density
   - The inlet seal of the development unit is stripped off.
   - The doctor gap is too wide.
3. The exposure lamp is not bright enough. This may be caused by deterioration of the exposure lamp or low lamp voltage.
4. In ADS mode, reflected light from the original is too high.
5. The ADS optical fiber is cut or bent.
6. The development bias is grounded.

- Action -

Make a copy in reduction mode at manual image density level 4.


Is the non-image area dirty?
Yes
No
Is the optics section dirty?
No
Yes
Clean the optics and adjust the light intensity.
Is the exposure lamp light intensity too weak due to deterioration?
No
Yes
Replace the exposure lamp.
Is the signal at CN119-5 LOW after the Start key is pressed? (No bias voltage is applied to the development roller.)
No
Yes
Replace CC/Grid/Bias power pack.
Replace the main board.
Is the cleaning blade or cleaning brush worn?
No
Yes
Replace the cleaning blade or the cleaning brush or both.
Are the erase lamp, quenching lamp and/or toner shield glass dirty?
No
Yes
Clean the erase lamp, quenching lamp, the toner shield glass, as required.

If toner scattering occurs, see the toner scattering section of the manual.

Trouble-shooting

If dirty background occurs only in ADS mode, do the following:

- If the ADS voltage is not within 2.5 ± 0.1 volts standard voltage, readjust the ADS voltage.
- If the signal at CN101-5 stays HIGH, check the harness and sensor, and replace defective parts.
- If the signal at CN101-4 stays LOW, replace the main board.

NOTE: After the light intensity is adjusted, check and, if needed, adjust the ADS voltage using SP56.

1.3 UNEVEN IMAGE DENSITY

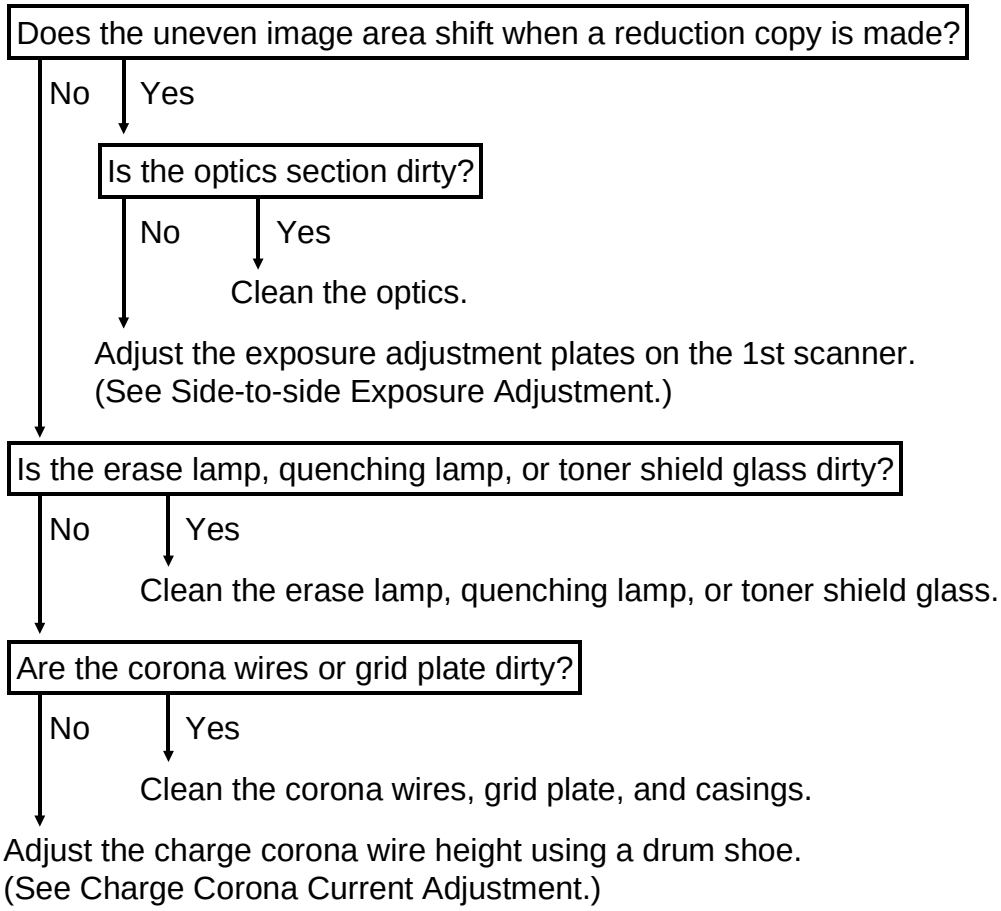
- Symptom -

Uneven image density appears on the copies.

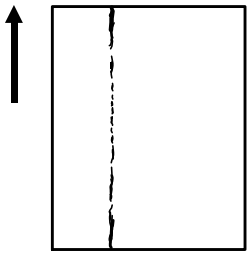
- Possible Cause -

1. Dirty optics
2. Uneven exposure adjustment plates
3. Dirty corona wires or grid
4. Uneven height of charge corona wire

- Action -


Does the uneven image area shift when a reduction copy is made?
No
Yes
Is the optics section dirty?
No
Yes
Clean the optics.
Adjust the exposure adjustment plates on the 1st scanner.
(See Side-to-side Exposure Adjustment.)
Is the erase lamp, quenching lamp, or toner shield glass dirty?
No
Yes
Clean the erase lamp, quenching lamp, or toner shield glass.
Are the corona wires or grid plate dirty?
No
Yes
Clean the corona wires, grid plate, and casings.
Adjust the charge corona wire height using a drum shoe.
(See Charge Corona Current Adjustment.)

1.4 VERTICAL BLACK BANDS



- Symptom -

Vertical black bands appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Dirty optics
2. Dust between the cleaning blade and drum
3. Edge of the cleaning blade deformed
4. Deformed cleaning brush
5. Deformed inlet seal on the development unit

- Action -

Do the black bands shift when a reduction copy is made?

No

Yes → Check and clean the optics section (including the toner shield glass).

Press the blade release lever down two or three times to clean the edge of the cleaning blade. If black bands still appear, go to the next step.

Is the edge of the cleaning blade deformed?

No

Yes → Replace the cleaning blade.

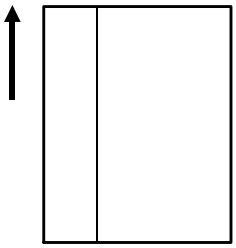
Is the cleaning brush deformed?

No

Yes → Replace the cleaning brush.

If the inlet seal on the development unit is deformed, replace the inlet seal plate and the seal as a set.

1.5 VERTICAL BLACK LINES



- Symptom -

Thin black lines appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Scratched cleaning blade
2. Dirty or scratched exposure glass or dirty or scratched mirrors
3. Scratched or dirty drum
4. Scratched hot roller

- Action -

Do the black lines shift when a reduction copy is made?

No

Yes → Clean or replace the exposure glass or mirrors.

Is the toner shield glass scratched?

No

Yes → Replace the toner shield glass.

Is the edge of the cleaning blade scratched?

No

Yes → Replace the cleaning blade.

Is the hot roller scratched?

No

Yes → Check whether black lines appear on the copy by stopping the copy paper in the transport section. If no black lines appear, replace the hot roller.

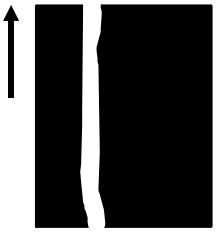
Check whether the drum is scratched or toner is built-up on the drum.

- If toner is built-up on the drum, clean the drum with a damp cloth.
- If the drum is scratched, replace the drum.

NOTE: When replacing the drum, perform drum initial setting using SP66.

1.6 VERTICAL WHITE LINES OR BANDS—1 (DULL OR BLURRED)

- Symptom -



Dull or blurred white lines appear on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

1. Dirty or deteriorated charge corona wire
2. Dirty or deformed grid plate
3. Damp or deformed inlet seal on the development unit

- Action -

Are the charge corona wires or grid plate dirty?

No

Yes → Clean the charge corona wires or grid plate.

Is the inlet seal damp or deformed.

No

Yes → Clean the inlet seal with a dry cloth. If the problem is not corrected, replace the inlet seal plate and the seal as a set.

Is the grid plate deformed?

No

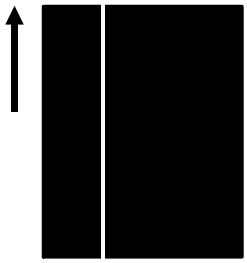
Yes → Replace the grid plate.

Replace the charge corona wire.

1.7 VERTICAL WHITE LINES OR BANDS—2 (THIN, DISTINCT)

- Symptom -

Vertical white lines appear on the copy.



- Possible Causes -

1. Paper dust on the edge of the cleaning blade
2. Scratched drum
3. Scratched hot roller

- Action -

Press the cleaning blade release lever down several times. Make a copy and if white lines still appear, go to the next step.

↓

Make a copy and stop the machine when the paper reaches the transport section. Do white lines appear on the copy?

No ↓

Replace the hot roller if it is scratched.

Yes ↓

Replace the drum if it is scratched.

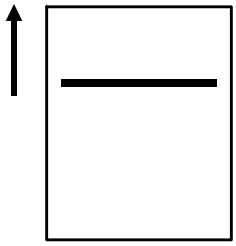
NOTE: If the drum is scratched, find out what caused the scratches on the drum and correct the problem.

- Paper Misfeed
- Incorrect positioning of the pick-off pawls
- Foreign substances on the cleaning brush or blade
- Carrier leakage

When replacing the drum, perform the drum initial setting using SP66.

1.8 HORIZONTAL BLACK/WHITE LINES

- Symptom -

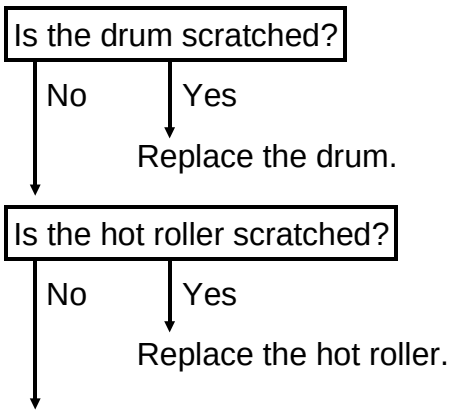


Black or white lines perpendicular to the paper feed direction appear on the copy image.

- Possible Causes -

1. Drum is scratched.
   If black lines appear at 251 mm intervals, the cause is a scratched drum or toner build up.
2. Hot roller is scratched.
   If black lines appear at 91 mm intervals, the cause is a scratched hot roller.
3. Toner adheres to the drum surface.
   Due to insufficient cleaning, foreign matter may accumulate on the blade, causing toner to stick to the drum surface when the drum stops.

- Action -



If toner adheres to the drum surface, clean the drum with water. Also clean or replace the cleaning blade and/or cleaning brush.

1.9 JITTER

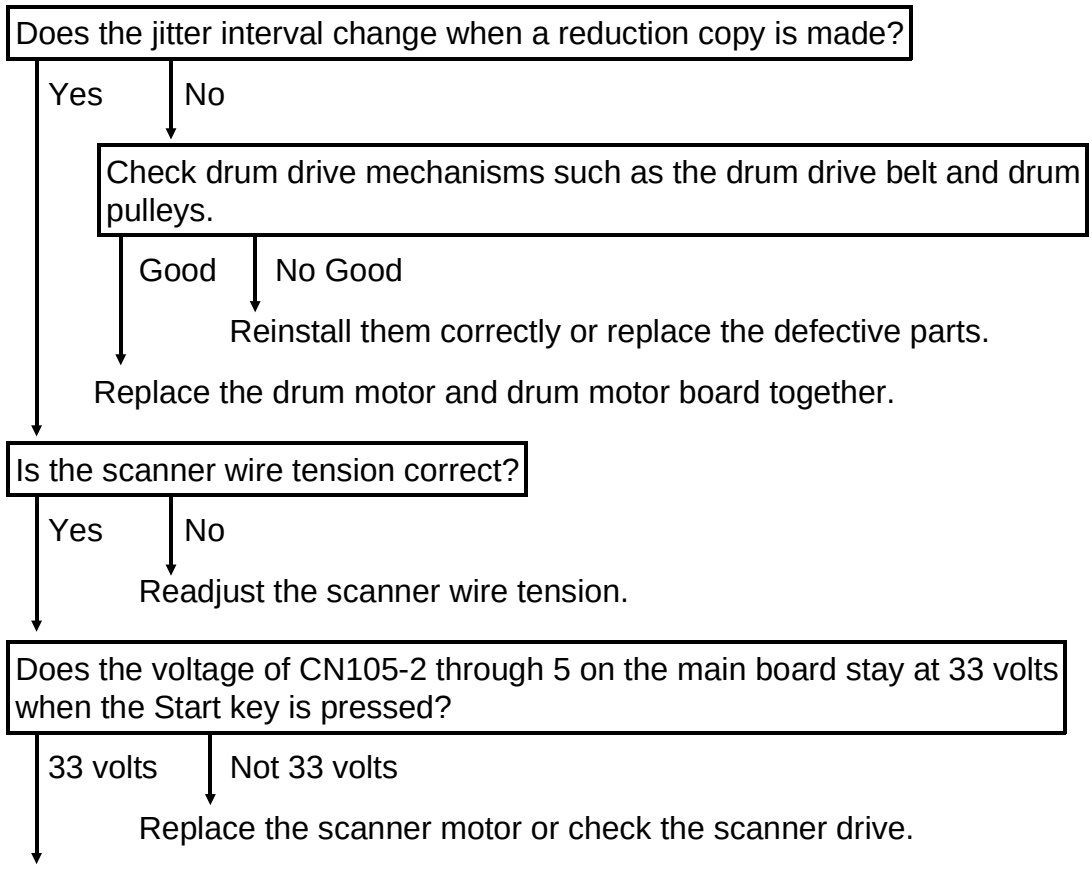
- Symptom -

Jitter appears on the copy.

- Possible Causes -

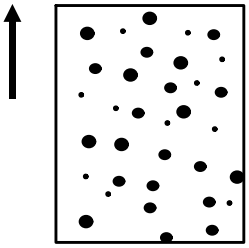
1. Drum not turning smoothly
2. Scanner not moving smoothly

- Action -


Does the jitter interval change when a reduction copy is made?
Yes
No
Check drum drive mechanisms such as the drum drive belt and drum pulleys.
Good
No Good
Reinstall them correctly or replace the defective parts.
Replace the drum motor and drum motor board together.
Is the scanner wire tension correct?
Yes
No
Readjust the scanner wire tension.
Does the voltage of CN105-2 through 5 on the main board stay at 33 volts when the Start key is pressed?
33 volts
Not 33 volts
Replace the scanner motor or check the scanner drive.
Replace the main board.

1.10 BLACK SPOTS ON THE COPY IMAGE

- Symptom -



The grid voltage is not applied correctly.

- Poor contact between the charge corona casing and grid plate
- CC/G/B power pack defective
- Main board defective

- Action -

Is there good electrical contact between the charge corona casing and the grid plate?

Yes

No → Repair the poor contact and replace any parts if needed.

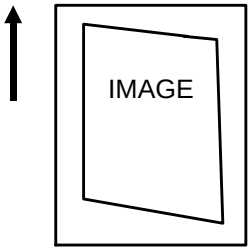
Check the voltage at CN119-1 on the main board.

0 volt

Not 0 volt → Replace the main board.

Replace the CC/G/B power pack.

1.11 SKEWED (OPTICAL) COPY IMAGE



- Symptom -

The copy image is skewed (parallelogram shape).

The sides of the copy image are straight, but the leading and trailing edges are skewed.
(This differs from skewing originating in the paper path type of skewing.)

- Possible Causes -

1. 4th/5th mirror assembly is not parallel with the 1st and 2nd scanners.
2. Mirrors are in the wrong position.
3. The stubs of the 4th/5th mirror assembly are off the rails.

- Action -

Is each mirror positioned correctly on its scanner and on the 4th/5th mirror assembly?

Yes

No → Reposition the mirror correctly. If the spring plates are defective, replace them.

Are the stubs of the 4th/5th mirror assembly off the rails?

No

Yes → Put the mirror assembly stubs back on the rails.

Readjust the height of 4th/5th mirror assembly by turning the adjusting screw.

1.12 TONER DENSITY TOO HIGH

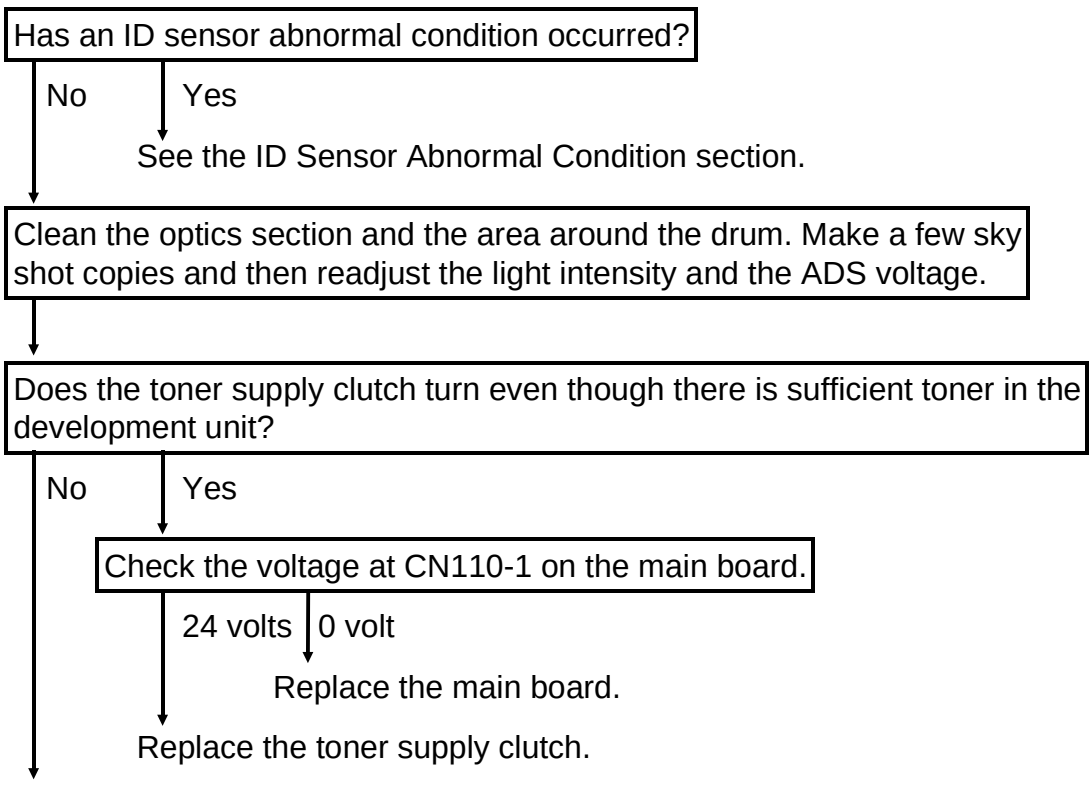
- Symptom -

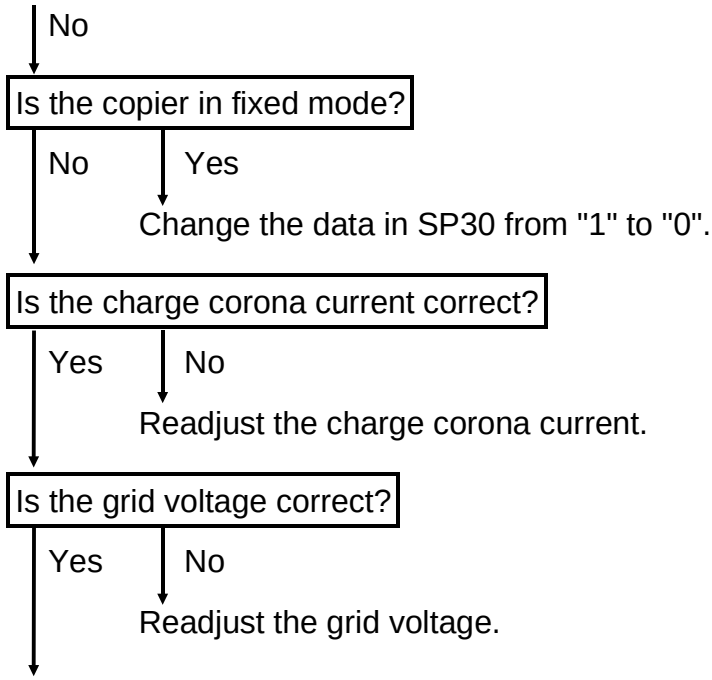
1. Dirty background appears on the copy.
2. The image density of black solid areas is too high.
3. Toner has built up on the endblock cover of the TC/SC corona unit and also on the upper cover of the development unit.

- Possible Causes -

1. Light intensity of the exposure lamp is too high.
2. Toner supply clutch keeps on turning continuously.
3. Copier is in fixed toner supply mode.
4. Main board is defective.
5. ID sensor bias voltage (modules) is too low.
6. Charge corona current is too low.
7. ID sensor grid voltage is too low.

- Action -


Has an ID sensor abnormal condition occurred?
No
Yes
See the ID Sensor Abnormal Condition section.
Clean the optics section and the area around the drum. Make a few sky shot copies and then readjust the light intensity and the ADS voltage.
Does the toner supply clutch turn even though there is sufficient toner in the development unit?
No
Yes
Check the voltage at CN110-1 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Replace the toner supply clutch.



Check SP33. If the setting is greater than "2", reset the data to "0".

1.13 TONER DENSITY TOO LOW

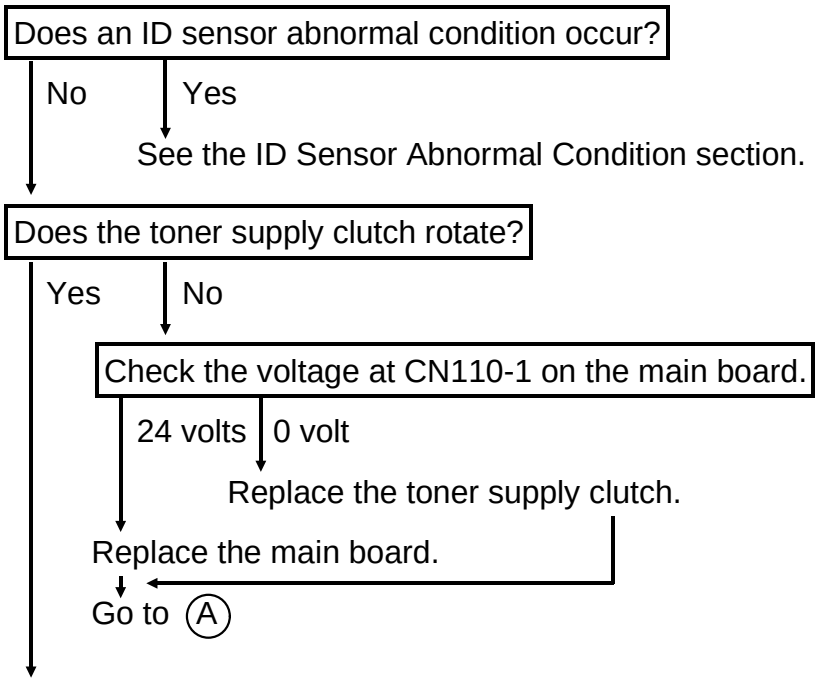
- Symptom -

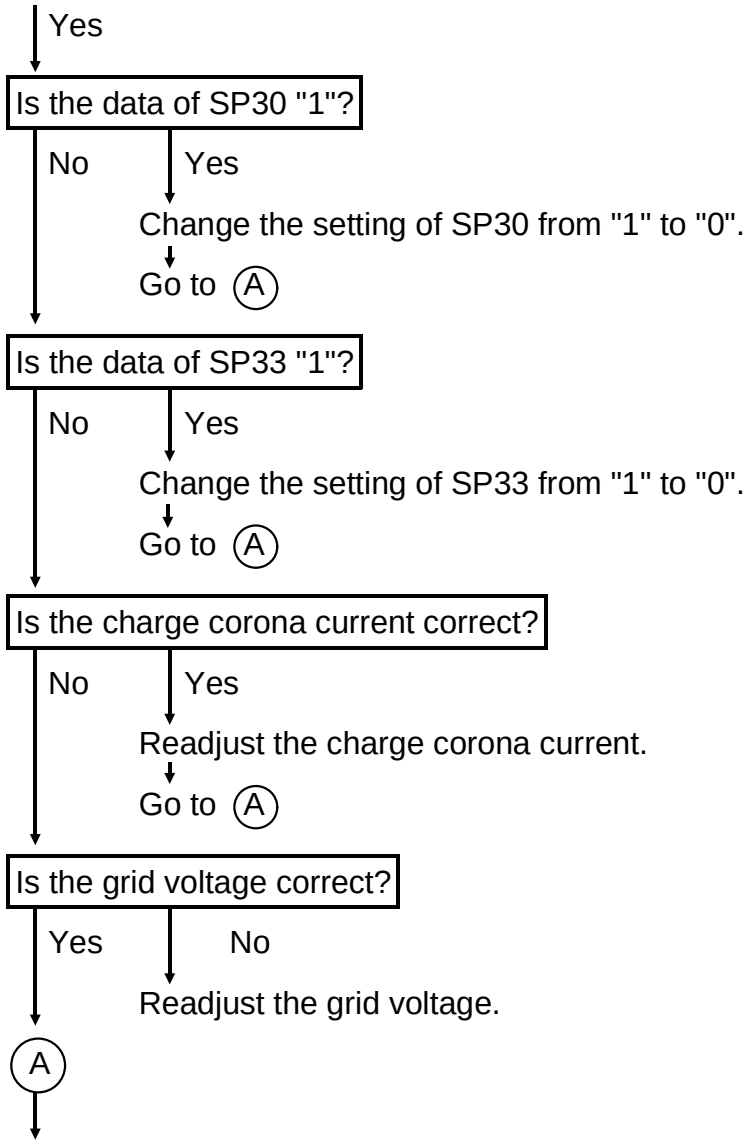
1. Light copy
2. Carrier is on the copy.
3. Light spots appear in black solid areas.

- Possible Causes -

1. Light intensity of the exposure lamp is too low.
2. Toner supply clutch does not rotate.
3. Copier is in the fixed toner supply mode.
4. Main board is defective.
5. ID sensor voltage is too high.
6. Charge corona current is too high.
7. ID sensor grid voltage is too high.

- Action -





Clean the optics section and around the drum.
Turn on DIP switch 101-1 and 101-2 on the main board. Enter SP55. Repeat the free run until Vsp becomes lower than 0.103 Vsg.

Adjust the light intensity, ADS voltage, or Vsg voltage.

1.14 TONER SCATTERING

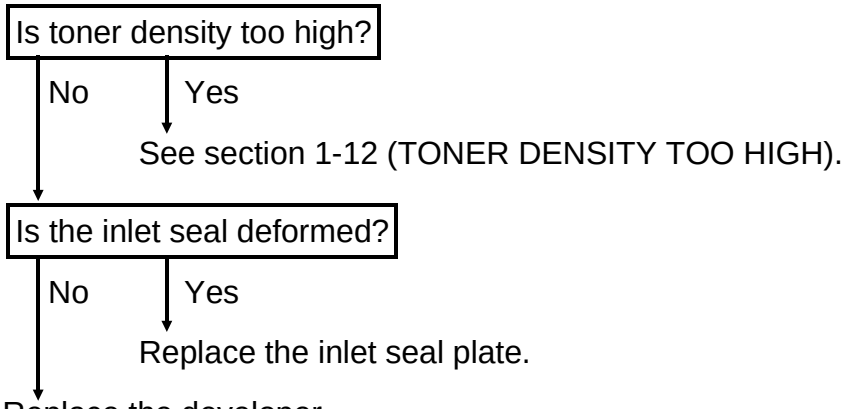
- Symptom -

Toner scatters from the development unit.

- Possible Causes -

1. Toner density is too high.
2. Inlet seal on the development unit is out of position.
3. Developer has deteriorated.

- Action -



1.15 UNFUSED COPY IMAGE

- Symptom -

Solid image rubs off easily.

- Possible Causes -

1. Fusing pressure is too weak.
2. Fusing temperature is too low.
3. Thermistor is malfunctioning.

- Action -

Adjust the position of the pressure springs to increase the fusing pressure.

↓ No good

Increase fusing temperature using SP49.

↓ No good

Check the thermistor. If the thermistor is malfunctioning, replace it.

1.16 PAPER MISFEED

- Symptom -

1. Misfeed location number indicator (J1, J2, J3) turns on when the main switch is turned on, even if there is no paper in the copier.
2. Misfeed location number indicator (J1, J2, J3) always turns on at the same location when copies are made.

- Possible Causes -

1. Sensor defective
2. Mechanical or electrical malfunction

- Action 1 (Initial Misfeed) -

Check which sensor (relay sensor, registration sensor or exit sensor) is defective. Replace the defective sensor. If no sensors are defective, replace the main board.

- Action 2 (Misfeed during copy cycle) -

If the J1 indicator turns on after the Start key is pressed, check whether the paper tray has run out of paper or not.

No

Yes

Load the paper into the paper tray

Set jam Detection OFF mode (SP6) to on and make a copy to see whether a misfeed occurs.

Misfeed

No misfeed

Check which sensor (relay sensor, registration sensor or exit sensor) is defective. If sensors are not defective, replace the main board.

Check whether a mechanical or electrical malfunction occurs. Replace the defective parts.

1.17 DF ORIGINAL MISFEED OR SKEW

- Symptom -

When the DF is in use, the original stops on the exposure glass or is skewed even if the electrical components are functioning normally.

- Possible Causes -

1. Exposure glass upside-down
2. Friction between the exposure glass and the transport belt

- Action -

Is the red mark on the exposure glass positioned on the right hand side facing upwards.

Yes

No

Reinstall the exposure glass so that the red mark is positioned on the right hand side facing upwards.

Clean the exposure glass surface with alcohol or water. Pour a small amount of silicone oil on the exposure glass and wipe the exposure glass with a dry cloth to reduce the friction between the exposure glass and the transport belt.

2. SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

2.1 CODE #11 — EXPOSURE LAMP ERROR

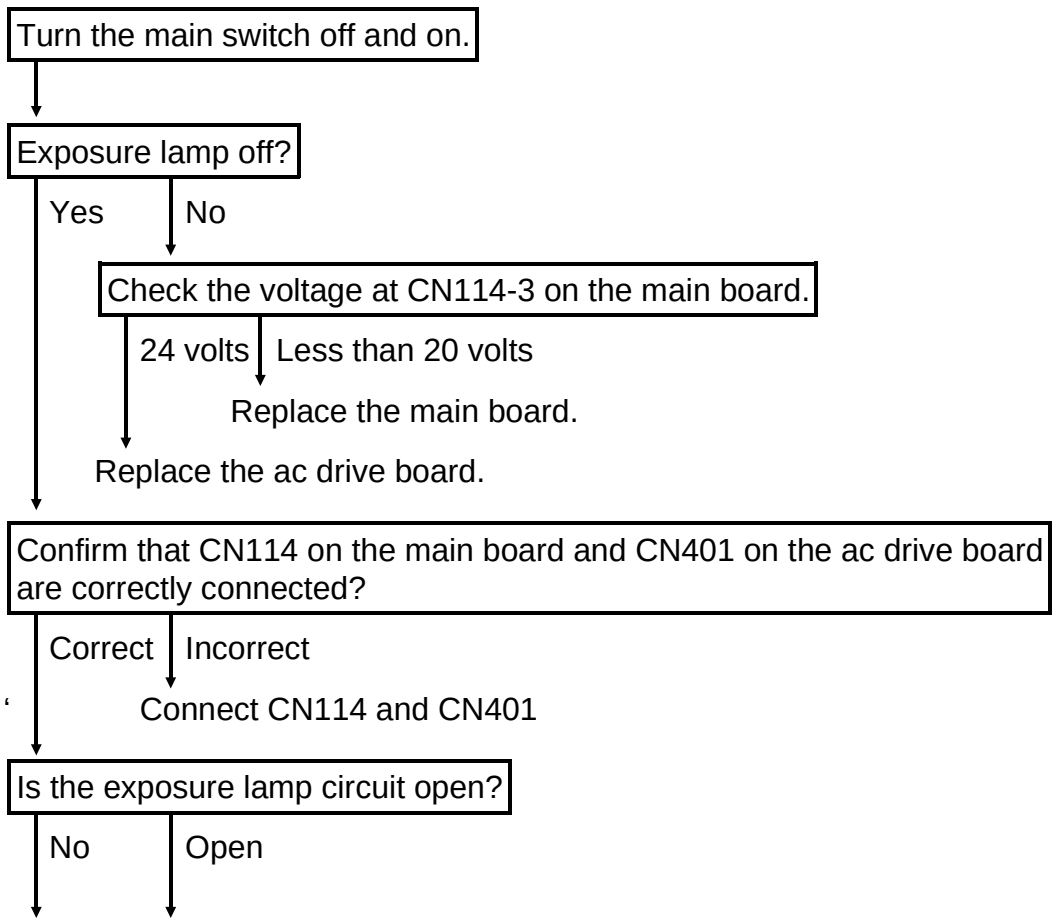
- Definition -

- The feedback signal becomes higher than 4.2 volts (r.m.s.) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is on.
- The feedback signal becomes higher than 1.0 volt (r.m.s.) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is off.

- Possible Causes -

- Exposure lamp open
- Thermofuse open
- Defective ac drive board
- Main board defective
- Defective dc harness
- CN114 on the main board or CN401 on the ac drive board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Exposure lamp off?
Yes
No
Check the voltage at CN114-3 on the main board.
24 volts
Less than 20 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the ac drive board.
Confirm that CN114 on the main board and CN401 on the ac drive board are correctly connected?
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN114 and CN401
Is the exposure lamp circuit open?
No
Open

No → Open → Replace the exposure lamp.

Is the thermofuse open?

No → Open → Replace the thermofuse.

Is the exposure lamp harness defective?

No → Yes → Replace the exposure lamp harness.

Is the voltage at TP108 on the main board higher than 4.2 volts in copy mode?

No → Yes → Replace the ac drive board.

Replace the main board.

2.2 CODE #12 — EXPOSURE LAMP ERROR

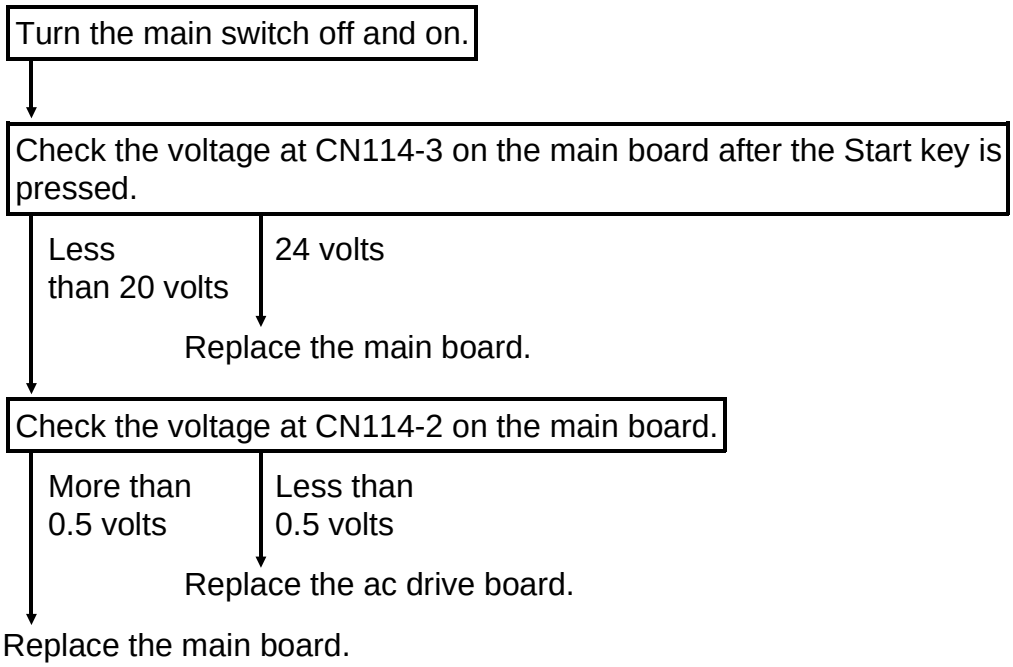
- Definition -

- The feedback signal falls below 0.5 volt (r.m.s.) for 1.0 second when the exposure lamp is on.
- The exposure stays on for longer than 10 seconds.

- Possible Causes -

- Defective ac drive board
- Main board defective

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the voltage at CN114-3 on the main board after the Start key is pressed.
Less than 20 volts
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN114-2 on the main board.
More than 0.5 volts
Less than 0.5 volts
Replace the ac drive board.
Replace the main board.

2.3 CODE #13 — ZERO CROSS SIGNAL ERROR

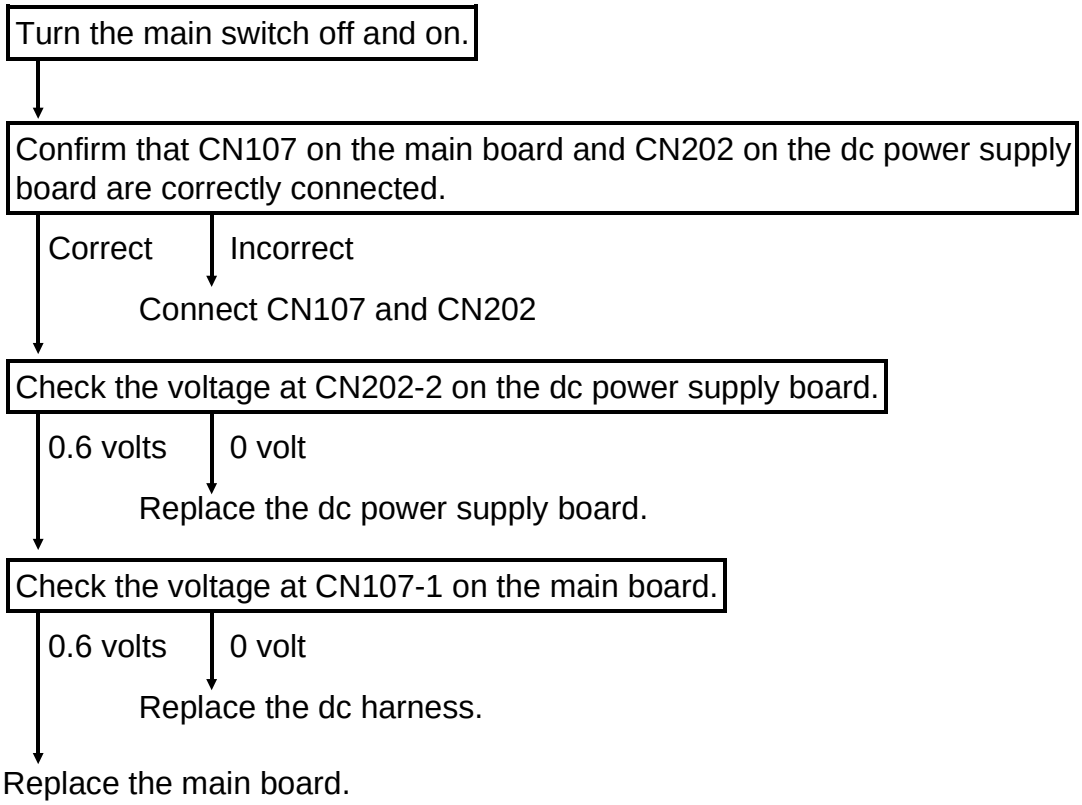
- Definition -

The CPU does not receive the zero cross signal within 0.56 second.

- Possible Causes -

- Main board defective
- Defective dc power supply board
- Zero cross line open
- CN107 on the main board or CN202 on the dc power supply board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Confirm that CN107 on the main board and CN202 on the dc power supply board are correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN107 and CN202
Check the voltage at CN202-2 on the dc power supply board.
0.6 volts
0 volt
Replace the dc power supply board.
Check the voltage at CN107-1 on the main board.
0.6 volts
0 volt
Replace the dc harness.
Replace the main board.

2.4 CODE #21 — SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR

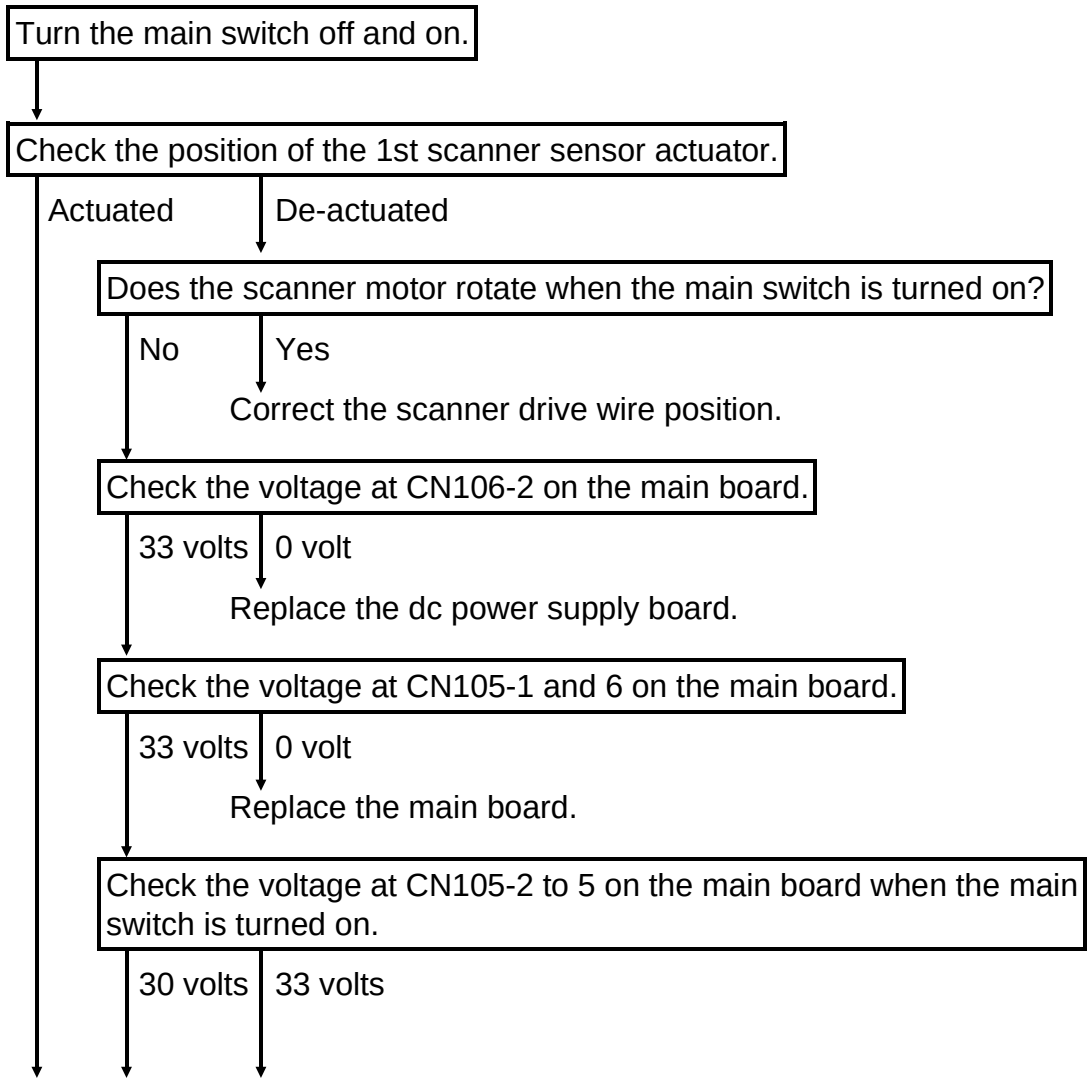
- Definition -

The scanner home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 9 seconds after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Causes -

- Scanner home position sensor failure
- Scanner motor defective
- Main board defective
- Defective dc power supply board
- Incorrect scanner drive wire position

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the position of the 1st scanner sensor actuator.
Actuated
De-actuated
Does the scanner motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Correct the scanner drive wire position.
Check the voltage at CN106-2 on the main board.
33 volts
0 volt
Replace the dc power supply board.
Check the voltage at CN105-1 and 6 on the main board.
33 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN105-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
30 volts
33 volts

30 volts

33 volts

Replace the main board.

Replace the scanner motor.

Is there 5 volts at CN103-11 on the main board when the scanner H.P. sensor is actuated.

Yes

No

Replace the scanner H.P. sensor.

Replace the main board.

2.5 CODE #22 — SCANNER HOME POSITION ERROR

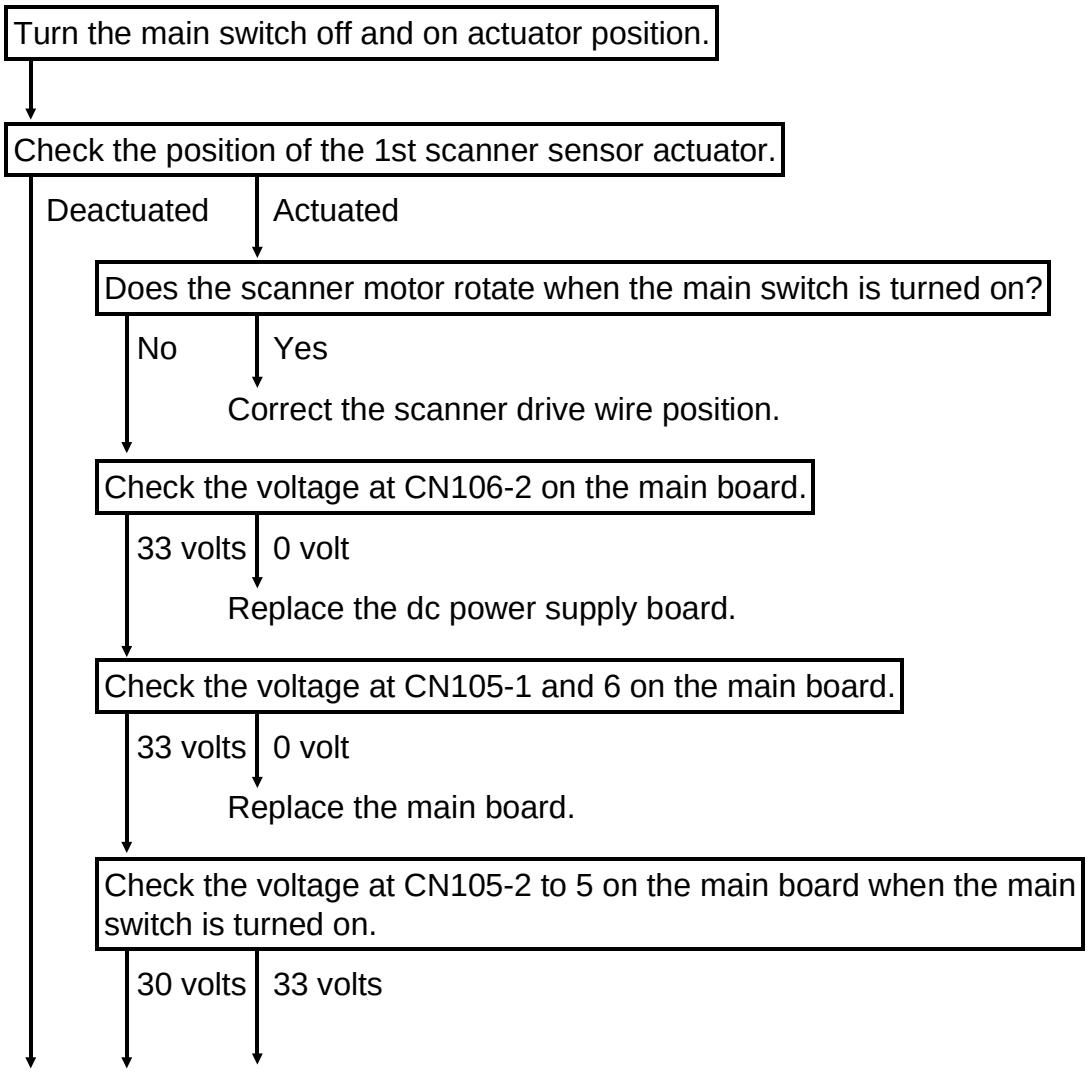
- Definition -

The scanner home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 1.0 second after the scanner starts.

- Possible Causes -

- Scanner home position sensor failure
- Scanner motor defective
- Main Motor defective
- Defective dc power supply board
- Incorrect scanner drive wire position
- Defective dc harness
- CN103 or CN105 on the main board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on actuator position.
Check the position of the 1st scanner sensor actuator.
Deactuated
Actuated
Does the scanner motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Correct the scanner drive wire position.
Check the voltage at CN106-2 on the main board.
33 volts
0 volt
Replace the dc power supply board.
Check the voltage at CN105-1 and 6 on the main board.
33 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN105-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
30 volts
33 volts

30 volts | 33 volts

Replace the main board.

Replace the scanner motor.

Confirm that CN103 and CN105 on the main board are correctly connected.

Correct | Incorrect

Connect CN103 and CN105

Is there 0 volt at CN103-11 on the main board when the scanner H.P. sensor is deactuated?

No | Yes

Replace the main hoard

Check if the dc harness (signal line) for the sensor is defective.

No | Defective

Replace the dc harness.

Replace the scanner H.P. sensor

2.6 CODE #28 — LENS HOME POSITION ERROR (A077/A078 COPIERS ONLY)

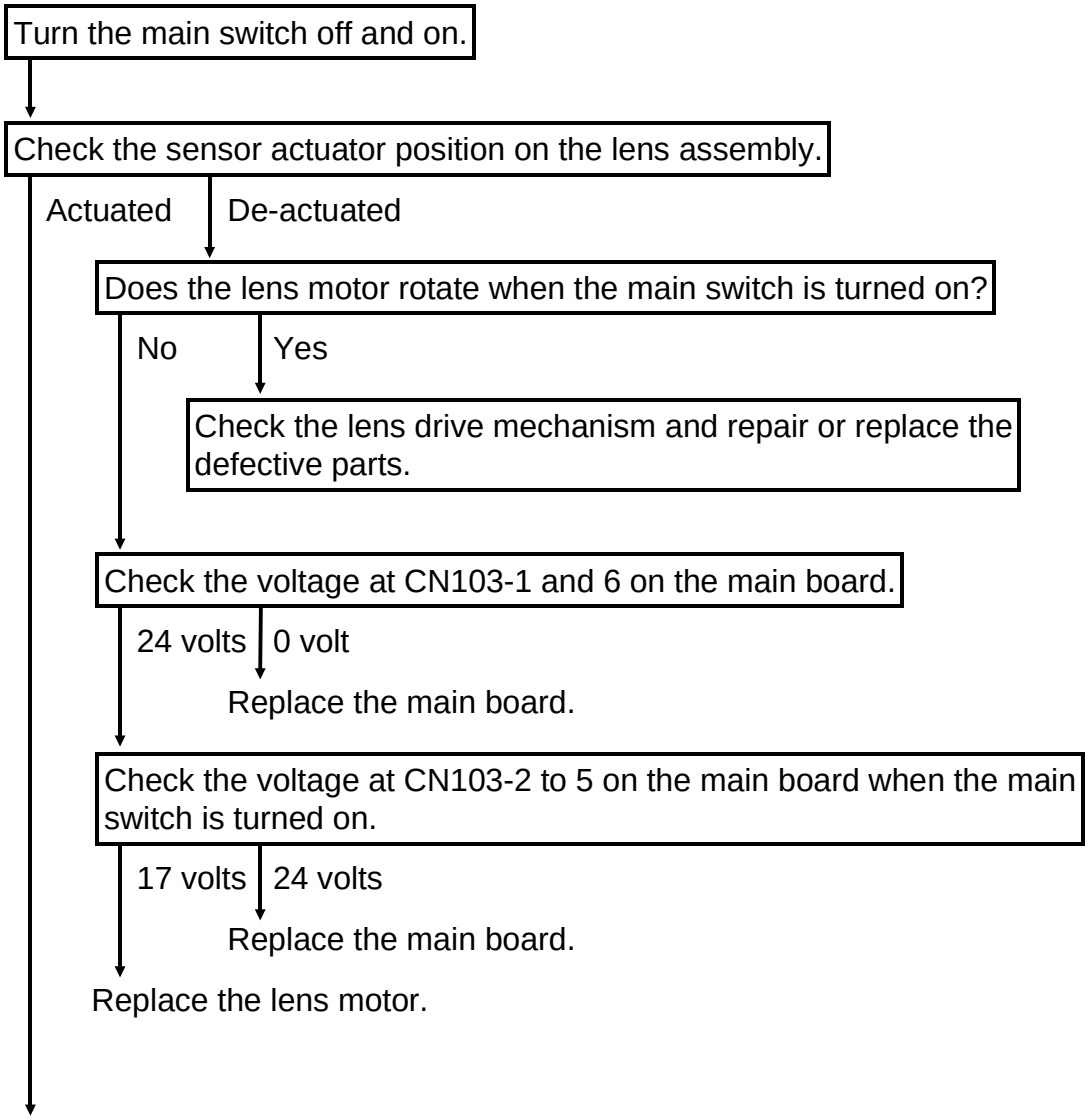
- Definition -

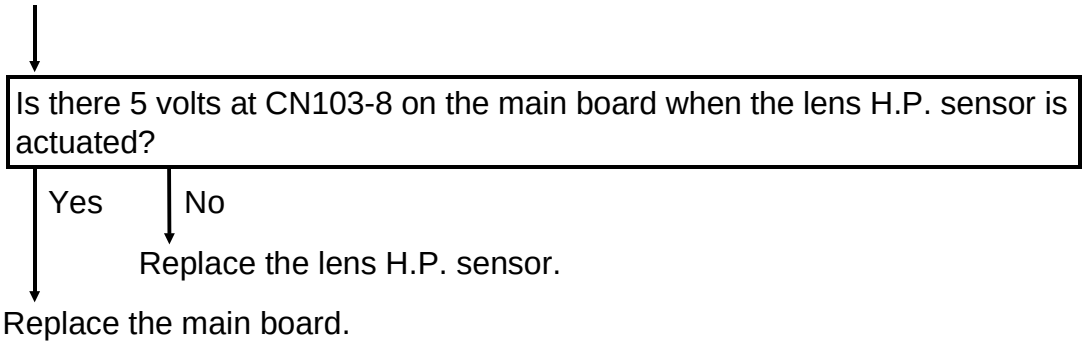
The lens home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 6.0 seconds after the lens moves to the home position.

- Possible Causes -

- Lens home position sensor failure
- Lens drive motor defective
- Main board defective
- Lens drive mechanism defective

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the sensor actuator position on the lens assembly.
Actuated
De-actuated
Does the lens motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Check the lens drive mechanism and repair or replace the defective parts.
Check the voltage at CN103-1 and 6 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN103-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
17 volts
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the lens motor.


Is there 5 volts at CN103-8 on the main board when the lens H.P. sensor is actuated?
Yes
No
Replace the lens H.P. sensor.
Replace the main board.

2.7 CODE #29 — LENS HOME POSITION ERROR (A077/A078 COPIERS ONLY)

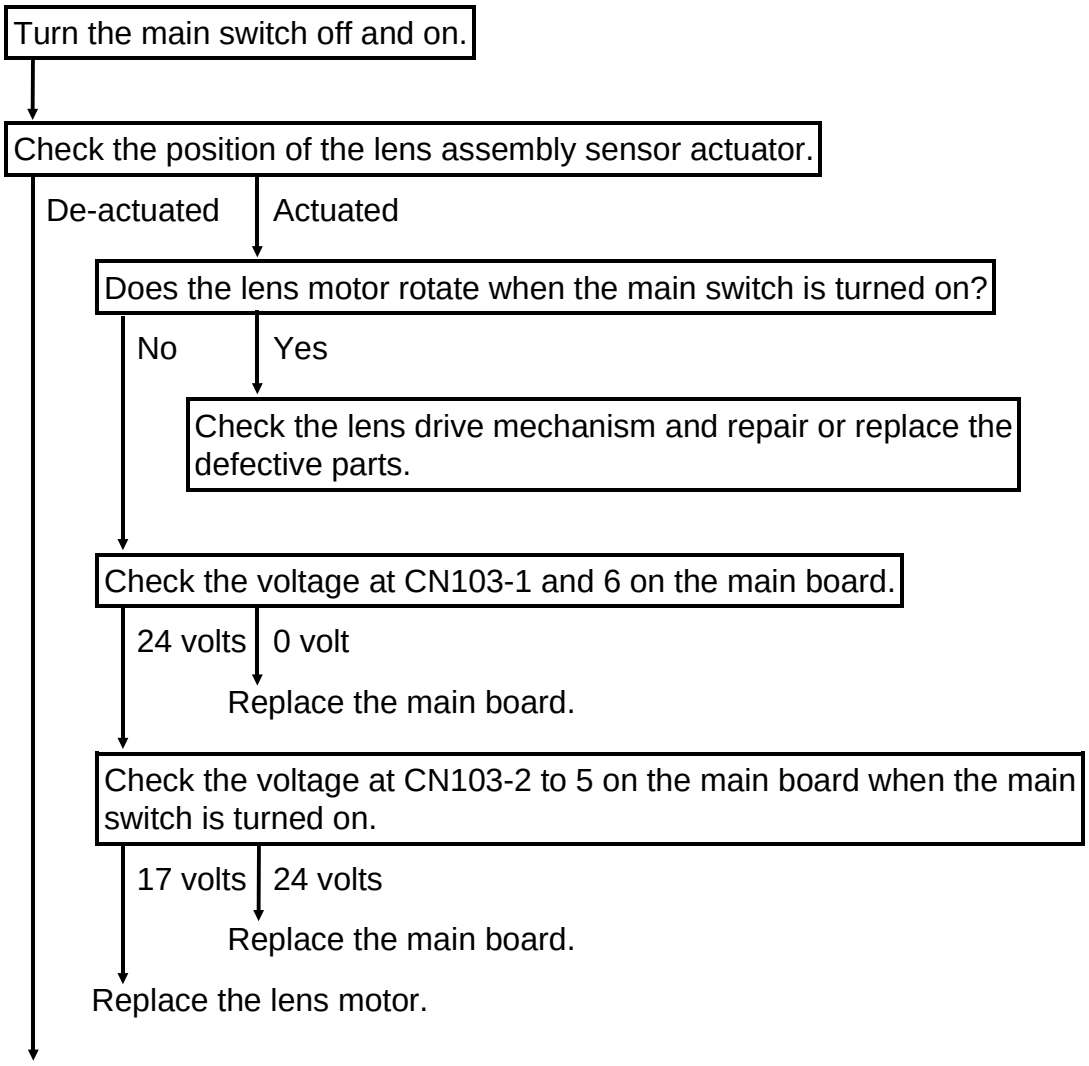
- Definition -

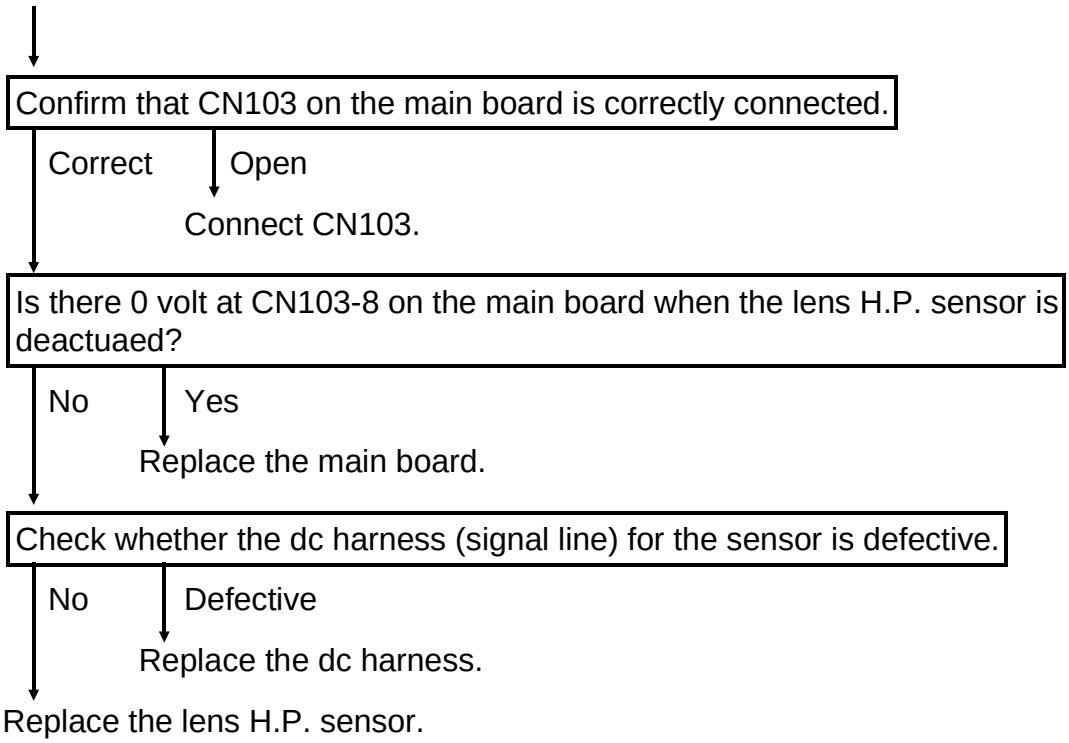
The lens home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 3.5 seconds after the lens leaves the home position.

- Possible Causes -

- Lens home position sensor failure
- Lens drive motor defective
- Main board defective
- Lens drive mechanism defective
- Defective dc harness
- CN103 on the main board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the position of the lens assembly sensor actuator.
De-actuated
Actuated
Does the lens motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Check the lens drive mechanism and repair or replace the defective parts.
Check the voltage at CN103-1 and 6 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN103-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
17 volts
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the lens motor.


Confirm that CN103 on the main board is correctly connected.
Correct
Open
Connect CN103.
Is there 0 volt at CN103-8 on the main board when the lens H.P. sensor is deactuaed?
No
Yes
Replace the main board.
Check whether the dc harness (signal line) for the sensor is defective.
No
Defective
Replace the dc harness.
Replace the lens H.P. sensor.

2.8 CODE #2A — 4TH/5TH MIRROR HOME POSITION ERROR (A077/A078 COPIERS ONLY)

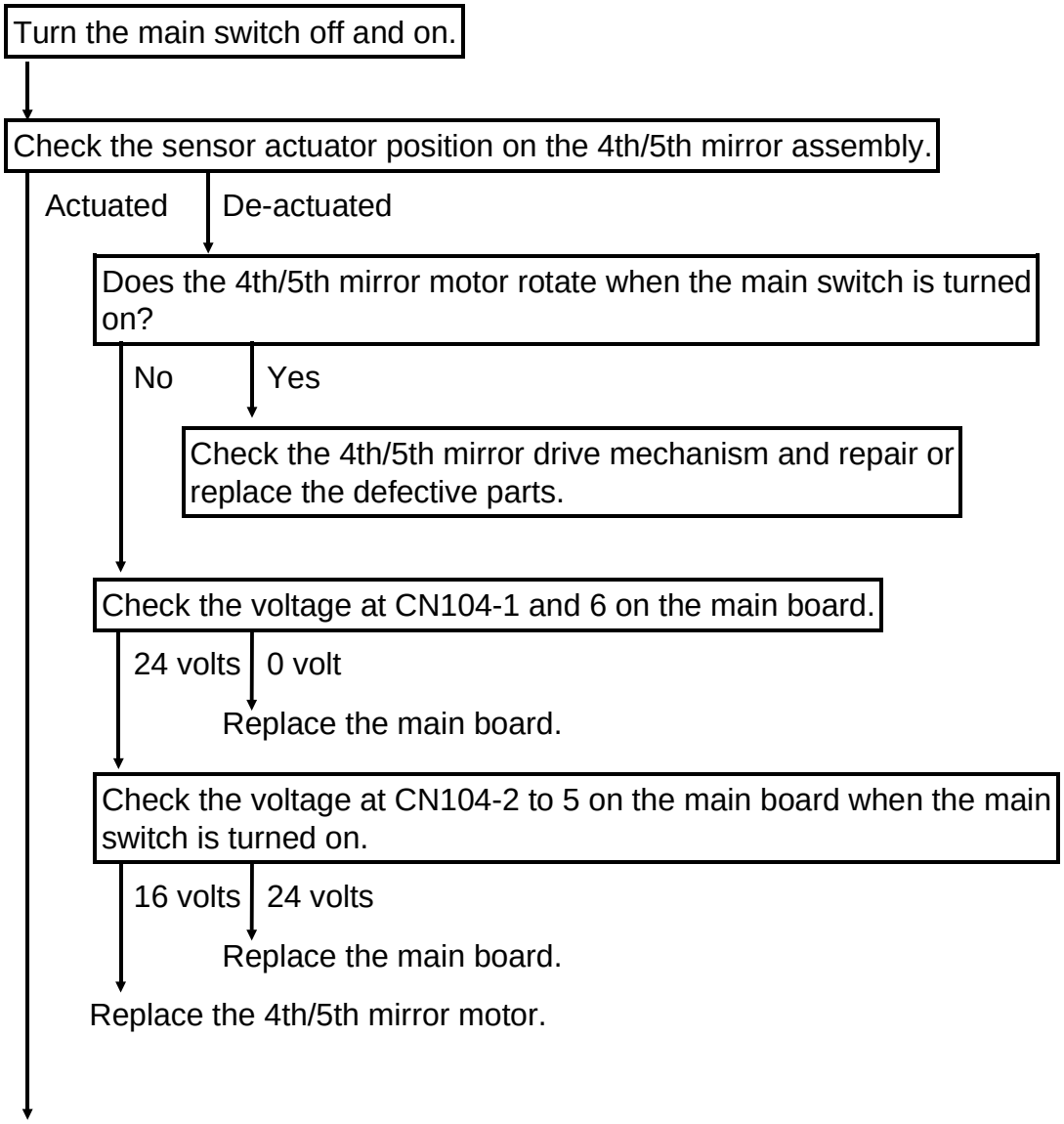
- Definition -

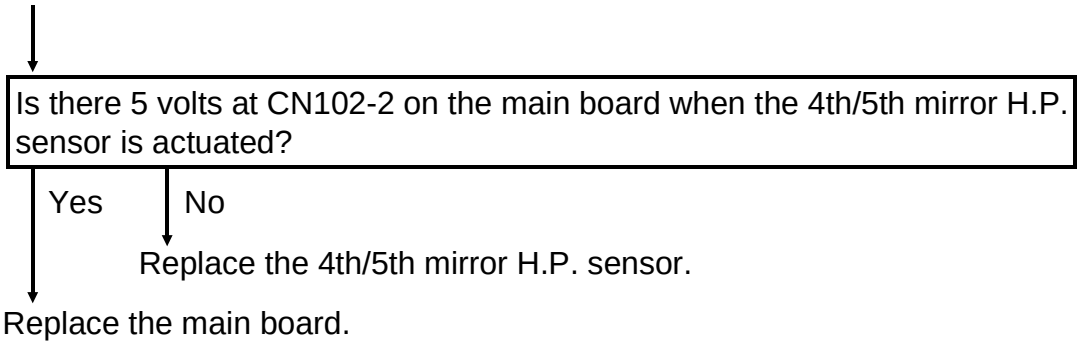
The 4th/5th mirror home position sensor's output remains LOW (de-actuated) for 2.5 seconds after the 4th/5th mirror assembly moves to the home position.

- Possible Causes -

- 4th/5th mirror home position sensor failure
- 4th/5th mirror motor defective
- Main board defective
- 4th/5th mirror drive mechanism defective

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the sensor actuator position on the 4th/5th mirror assembly.
Actuated
De-actuated
Does the 4th/5th mirror motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Check the 4th/5th mirror drive mechanism and repair or replace the defective parts.
Check the voltage at CN104-1 and 6 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN104-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
16 volts
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the 4th/5th mirror motor.


Is there 5 volts at CN102-2 on the main board when the 4th/5th mirror H.P. sensor is actuated?
Yes
No
Replace the 4th/5th mirror H.P. sensor.
Replace the main board.

2.9 CODE #2B — 4TH/5TH MIRROR HOME POSITION ERROR (A077/A078 COPIERS ONLY)

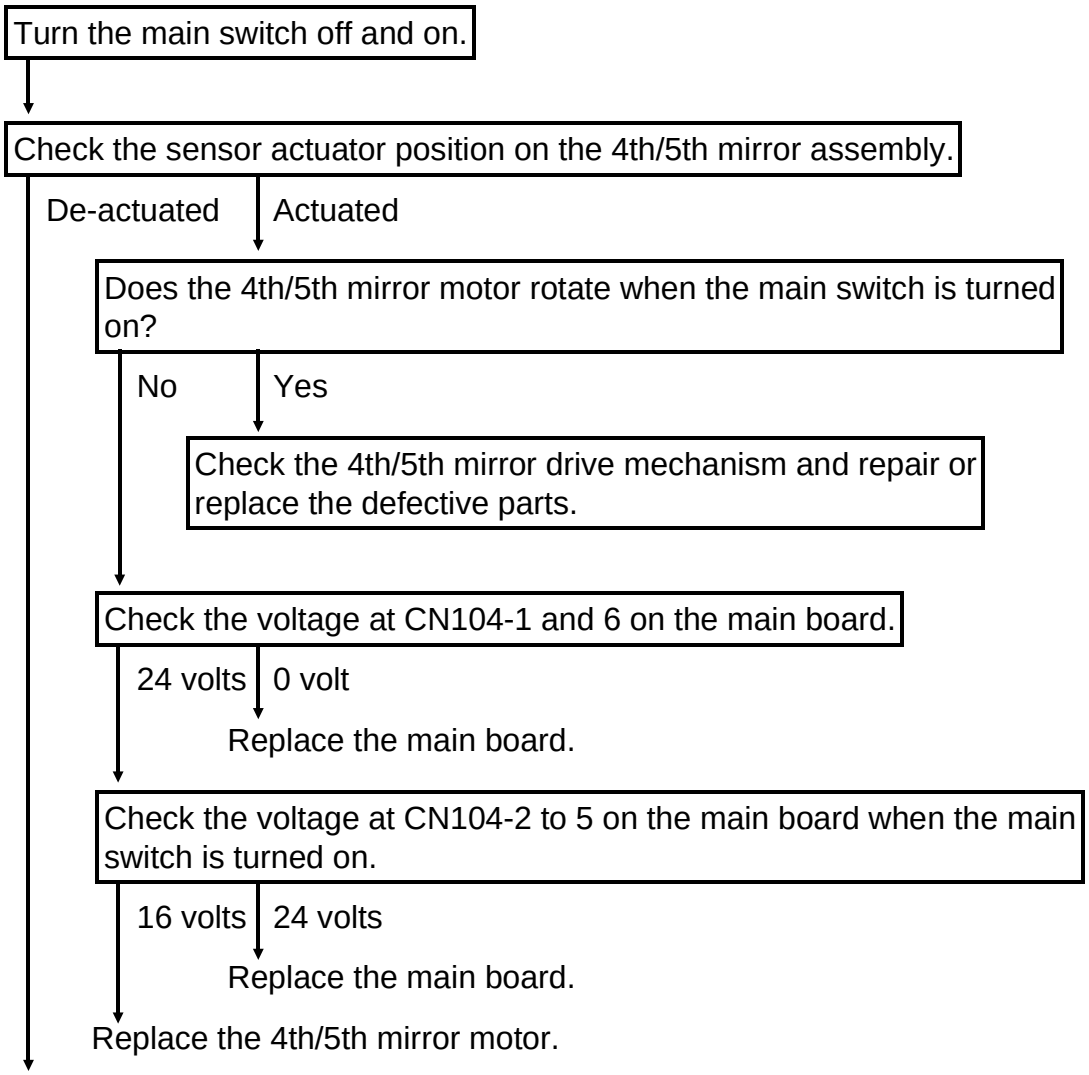
- Definition -

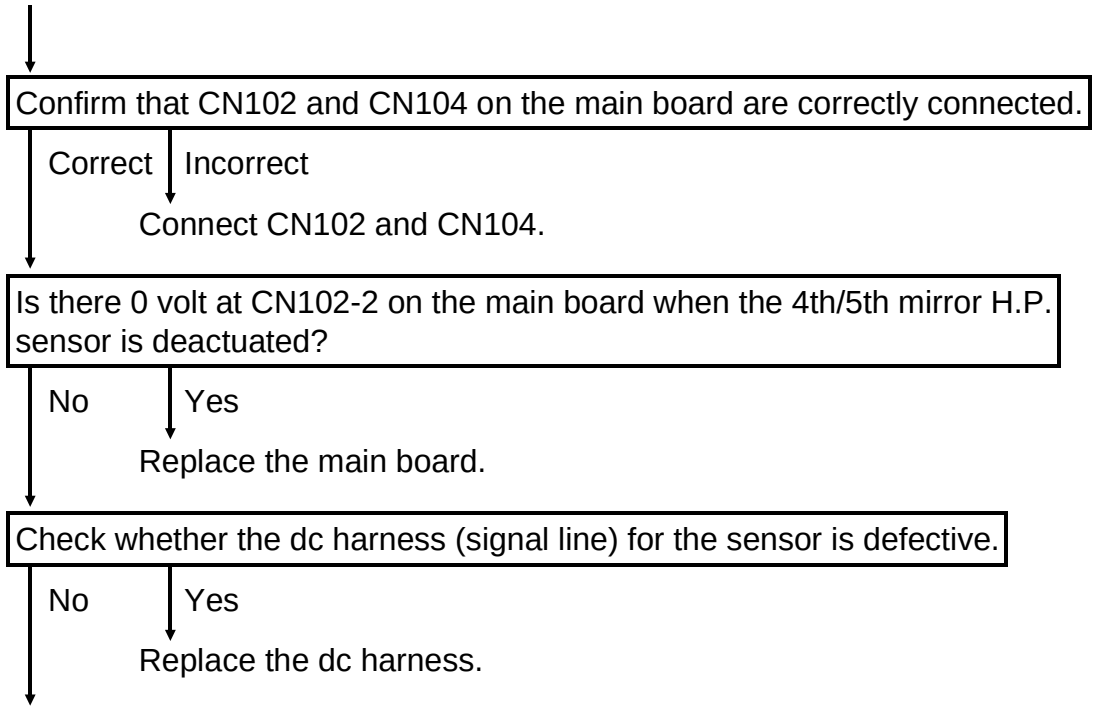
The 4th/5th mirror home position sensor's output remains HIGH (actuated) for 2.5 seconds after the 4th/5th mirror assembly leaves the home position.

- Possible Causes -

- 4th/5th mirror home position sensor failure
- 4th/5th mirror motor defective
- Main board defective
- 4th/5th mirror drive mechanism defective
- Defective dc harness
- CN102 or CN104 on the main board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on.
Check the sensor actuator position on the 4th/5th mirror assembly.
De-actuated
Actuated
Does the 4th/5th mirror motor rotate when the main switch is turned on?
No
Yes
Check the 4th/5th mirror drive mechanism and repair or replace the defective parts.
Check the voltage at CN104-1 and 6 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN104-2 to 5 on the main board when the main switch is turned on.
16 volts
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the 4th/5th mirror motor.


Confirm that CN102 and CN104 on the main board are correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN102 and CN104.
Is there 0 volt at CN102-2 on the main board when the 4th/5th mirror H.P. sensor is deactuated?
No
Yes
Replace the main board.
Check whether the dc harness (signal line) for the sensor is defective.
No
Yes
Replace the dc harness.
Replace the 4th/5th mirror H.P. sensor.

2.10 CODE #52 — FUSING WARM-UP ERROR

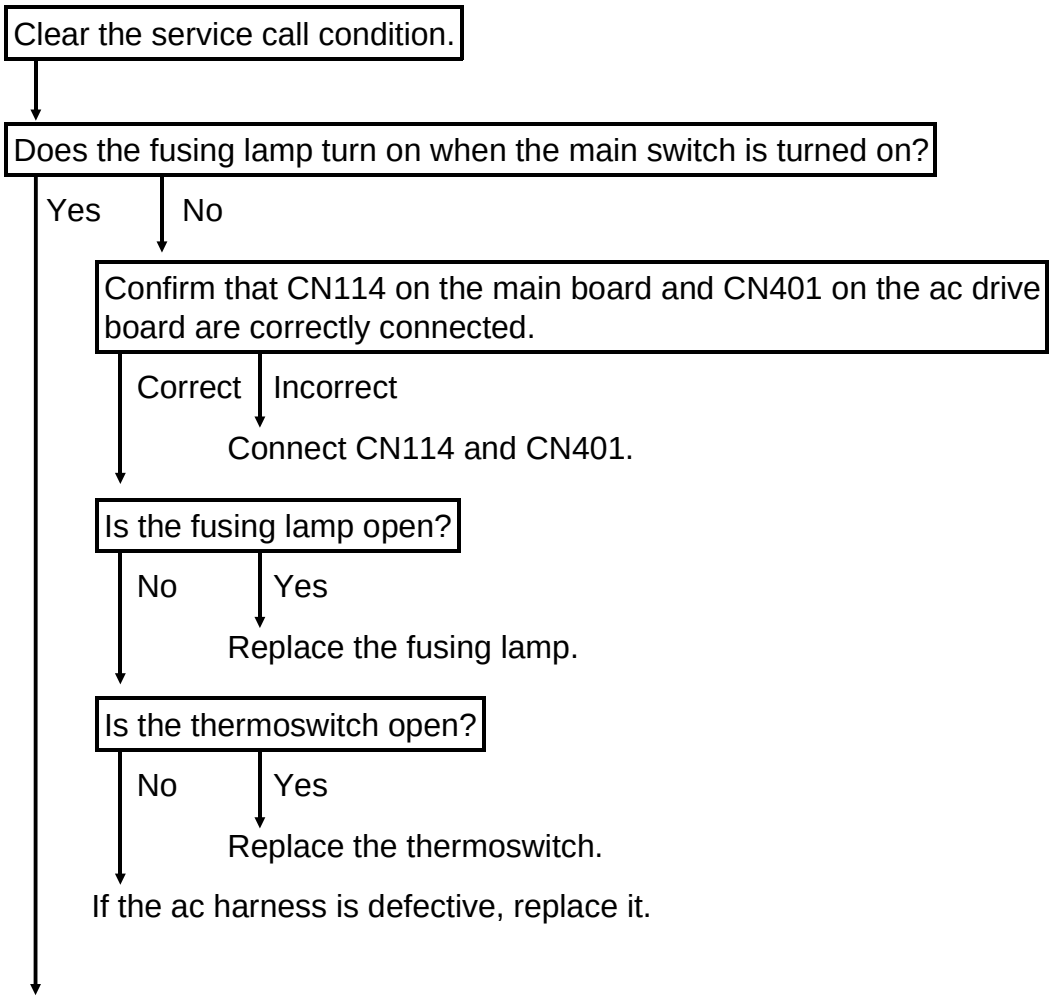
- Definition -

The temperature detected by the thermistor does not reach 150°C within 30 seconds after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Causes -

- Thermistor position error
- Fusing lamp open
- Thermoswitch open
- Defective ac drive board
- Main board defective
- Defective ac harness
- CN114 on the main board or CN401 on the ac drive board is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Clear the service call condition.
Does the fusing lamp turn on when the main switch is turned on?
Yes
No
Confirm that CN114 on the main board and CN401 on the ac drive board are correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN114 and CN401.
Is the fusing lamp open?
No
Yes
Replace the fusing lamp.
Is the thermoswitch open?
No
Yes
Replace the thermoswitch.
If the ac harness is defective, replace it.

Yes

Check the voltage at CN114-6 on the main board.

0 volt

24 volts

Replace the main board.

Check the voltage at CN114-4 on the main board.

0 volt

24 volts

Replace the main board.

Check the voltage at CN114-8 on the main board.

24 volts

0 volt

Replace the main board.

Does the thermistor properly contact the hot roller?

Yes

No

Correctly position the thermistor.

Does the voltage at TP102 on the main board increase after the main switch is turned on?

Yes

No

Replace the thermistor.

Replace the ac drive board.

2.11 CODE #53 — FUSING OVERHEAT

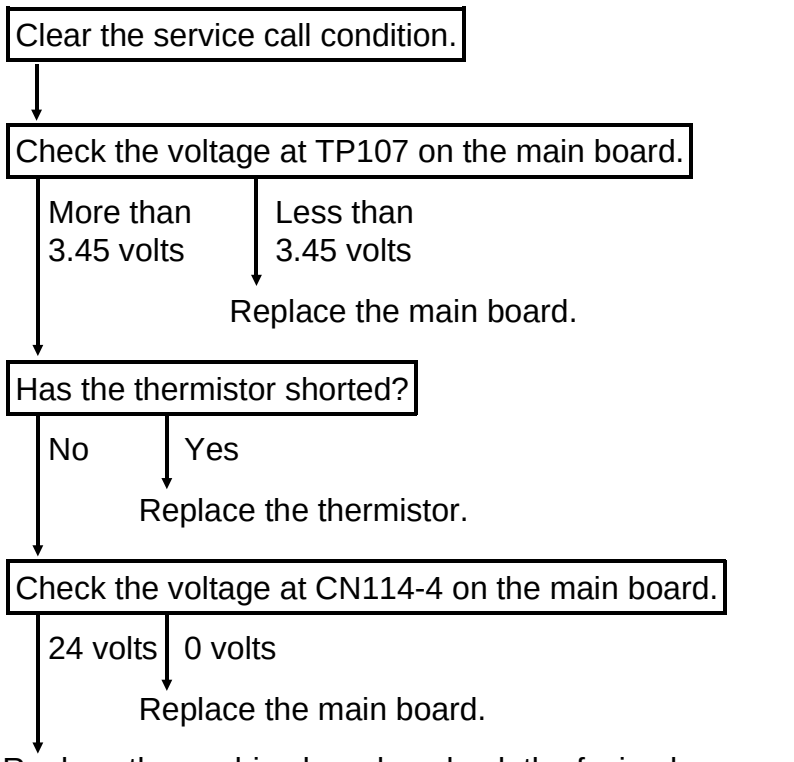
- Definition -

The temperature detected by the thermistor becomes higher than 240°C

- Possible Causes -

- Thermistor short
- Defective ac drive board
- Main board defective
- Fusing harness shorted

- Action -


Clear the service call condition.
Check the voltage at TP107 on the main board.
More than 3.45 volts
Less than 3.45 volts
Replace the main board.
Has the thermistor shorted?
No
Yes
Replace the thermistor.
Check the voltage at CN114-4 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volts
Replace the main board.
Replace the ac drive board or check the fusing harness.

2.12 CODE #55 — FUSING THERMISTOR OPEN

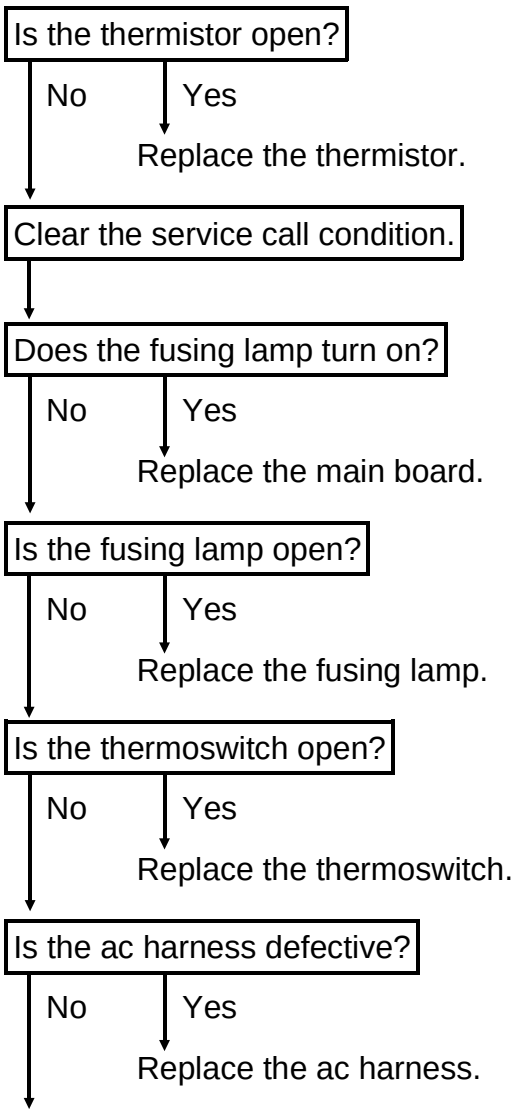
- Definition -

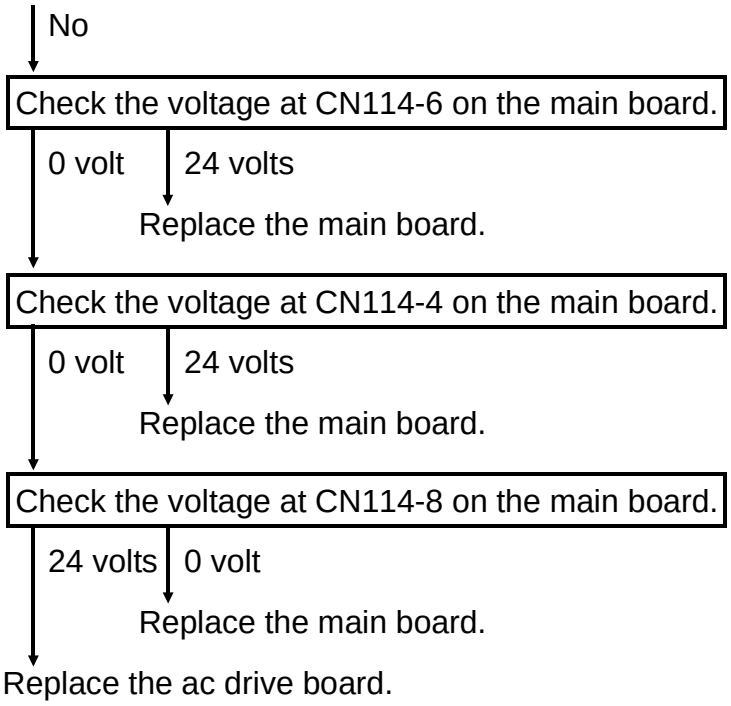
The temperature detected by the thermistor does not reach 2°C within 20 seconds after the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Causes -

- Thermistor open
- Main board defective
- Defective ac drive board
- Fusing lamp open
- Thermoswitch open
- Defective ac harness

- Action -




No
Check the voltage at CN114-6 on the main board.
0 volt
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN114-4 on the main board.
0 volt
24 volts
Replace the main board.
Check the voltage at CN114-8 on the main board.
24 volts
0 volt
Replace the main board.
Replace the ac drive board.

2.13 CODE #96 — DF TIMING PULSE ERROR

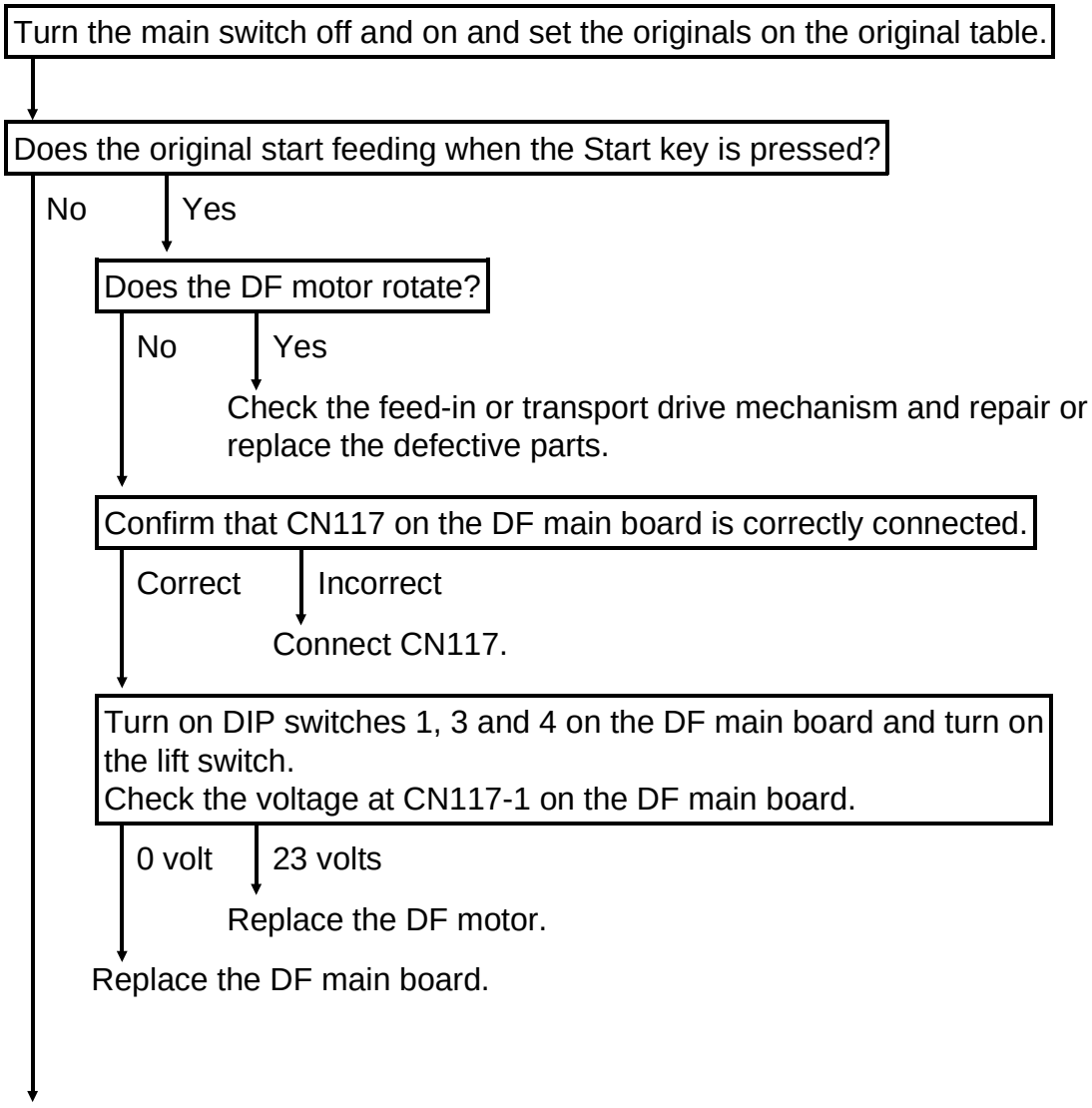
- Definition -

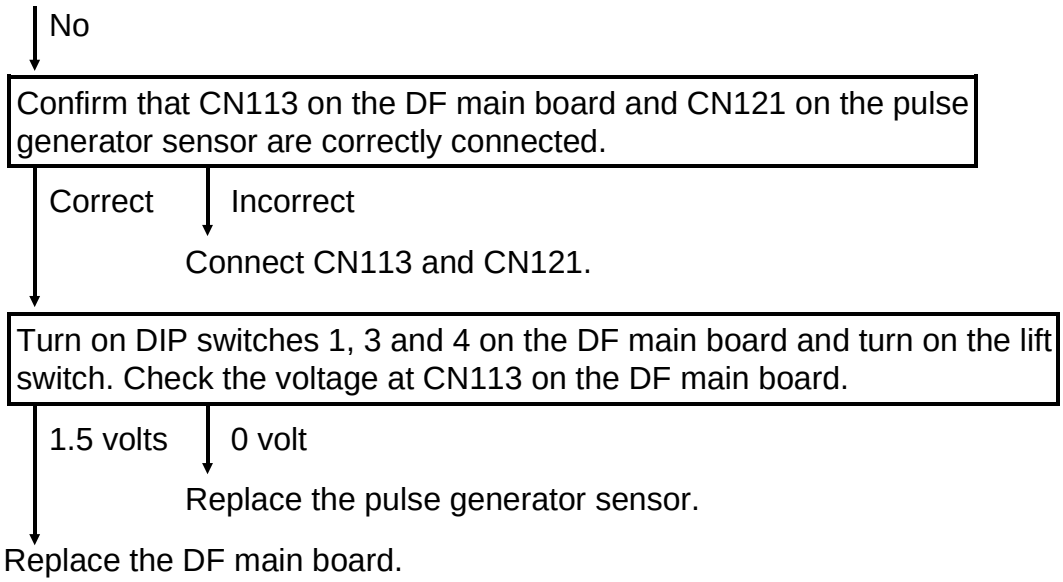
The DF CPU does not receive a DF timing pulse within 100 milliseconds.

- Possible Causes -

- DF main board defective
- DF motor defective
- Pulse generator sensor failure
- Feed-in or transport mechanism defective
- CN113 or CN117 on the DF main board or CN121 on the pulse generator sensor is not correctly connected.

- Action -


Turn the main switch off and on and set the originals on the original table.
Does the original start feeding when the Start key is pressed?
No
Yes
Does the DF motor rotate?
No
Yes
Check the feed-in or transport drive mechanism and repair or replace the defective parts.
Confirm that CN117 on the DF main board is correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN117.
Turn on DIP switches 1, 3 and 4 on the DF main board and turn on the lift switch.
Check the voltage at CN117-1 on the DF main board.
0 volt
23 volts
Replace the DF motor.
Replace the DF main board.


No
Confirm that CN113 on the DF main board and CN121 on the pulse generator sensor are correctly connected.
Correct
Incorrect
Connect CN113 and CN121.
Turn on DIP switches 1, 3 and 4 on the DF main board and turn on the lift switch. Check the voltage at CN113 on the DF main board.
1.5 volts
0 volt
Replace the pulse generator sensor.
Replace the DF main board.

2.14 DF COMMUNICATION ERROR

- Symptom -

The original misfeed indicator blinks (no SC code is indicated).

- Definition -

The DF CPU does not receive the "DF confirmed" signal from the copier CPU when the main switch is turned on.

- Possible Causes -

- Optical fiber cable is not correctly connected to the DF main board or DF interface board.
- CN2 on the DF interface board or CN120 on the main board is not correctly connected.
- Optics fiber cable defective
- Main board defective
- DF main board defective
- DF interface board defective
- Defective dc harness between CN2 and CN120

2.15 ABNORMAL CONDITION IN TONER DENSITY DETECTION

- Symptom -

The Auto ID indicator or the selected manual ID level blinks. (No SC Code is indicated.)

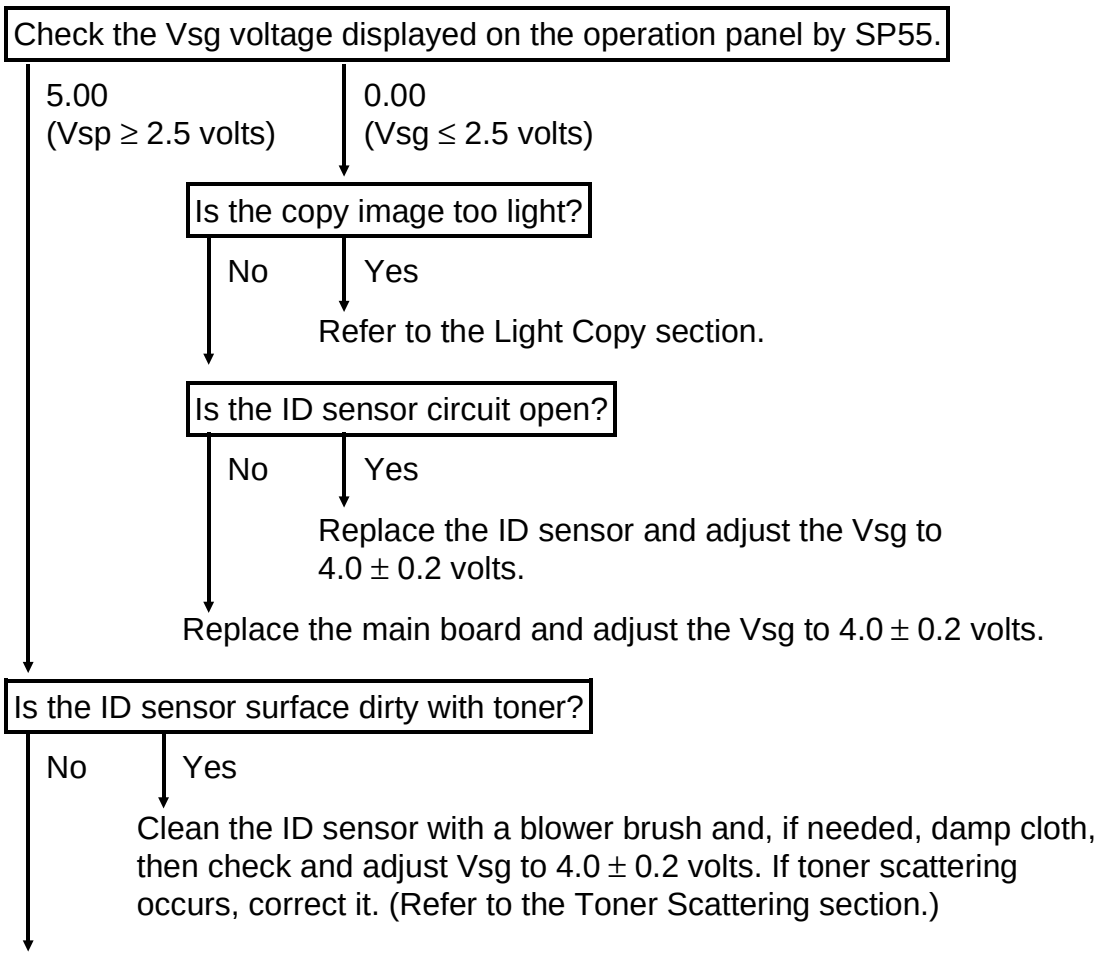
- Definition -

If Vsg goes below 2.5 volts or Vsp goes above 2.5 volts 5 times in a row.

- Possible Causes -

- Incorrect Vsg voltage
- Dirty ID sensor
- Low toner density
- ID sensor defective
- Main board defective

- Action -


Check the Vsg voltage displayed on the operation panel by SP55.
5.00
(Vsp ≥ 2.5 volts)
0.00
(Vsg ≤ 2.5 volts)
Is the copy image too light?
No
Yes
Refer to the Light Copy section.
Is the ID sensor circuit open?
No
Yes
Replace the ID sensor and adjust the Vsg to 4.0 ± 0.2 volts.
Replace the main board and adjust the Vsg to 4.0 ± 0.2 volts.
Is the ID sensor surface dirty with toner?
No
Yes
Clean the ID sensor with a blower brush and, if needed, damp cloth, then check and adjust Vsg to 4.0 ± 0.2 volts. If toner scattering occurs, correct it. (Refer to the Toner Scattering section.)

No

Is Vsg less than 2.5 volts when checking TP110 on the main board by SP 54?

No

Yes

Readjust the Vsg to 4.0 ± 0.2 volts.

Check whether the ID sensor has a short.

No Short

Short

Replace the ID sensor.

Replace the main board.

3. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

3.1 SENSORS

Component	Condition	Symptom
Scanner Home Position Sensor (S1)	Stays HIGH (CN103-11)	SC code (E22) is displayed.
	Stays LOW (CN103-11)	SC code (E21) is displayed.
Lens Home Position Sensor (S2) (A077/A078 copiers only)	Stays HIGH (CN103-8)	SC code (E29) is displayed.
	Stays LOW (CN103-8)	SC code (E28) is displayed.
4th/5th Mirror Home Position Sensor (S3) (A077/A078 copiers only)	Stays HIGH (CN102-2)	SC code (E2B) is displayed.
	Stays LOW (CN102-2)	SC code (E2A) is displayed.
Registration Sensor (S4)	Stays HIGH (CN117-2)	"Check Paper Path" indicator and "J2" indicator light when a copy is made.
	Stays LOW (CN117-2)	"Check Paper Path" indicator and "J2" indicator light when the main switch is turned on.
Exit Sensor (S5)	Stays HIGH (CN116-2)	"Check Paper Path" indicator and "J3" indicator light when a copy is made.
	Stays LOW (CN116-2)	"Check Paper Path" indicator and "J3" indicator light when the main switch is turned on.
Relay Sensor (S6)	Stays HIGH (CN117-6)	"J1" indicator lights when a copy is made.
	Stays LOW (CN117-6)	"Interrupt" indicator stays on although the copy paper is not placed on the manual feed table when the main switch is turned on.
Image Density (ID Sensor) (S7)	Stays HIGH (CN112-5)	The CPU detects an ID sensor abnormal condition. The ADS or Manual Image Density indicator starts blinking.
	Stays LOW (CN112-5)	

3.2 SWITCHES & OTHER ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

Component	Condition	Symptom
Main Switch (SW1)	OPEN	The copier does not turn on.
	SHORTED	The copier does not turn off.
Front Cover Safety Switch (SW2)	OPEN	The copier does not turn on.
	SHORTED	The copier does not turn off when the front or exit cover is opened.
1st Paper Tray SW (SW3)	OPEN	The Start key stays red even when the 1st paper tray is closed.
	SHORTED	The Start key stays green even when the 1st paper tray is open, and "J1" indicator lights after the Start key is pressed.
2nd Paper Tray SW (SW4) (A078 copier only)	OPEN	The Start key stays red even when the 2nd paper tray is closed.
	SHORTED	The Start key stays green even when the 2nd paper tray is open, and "J1" indicator lights after the Start key is pressed.
Exposure Lamp (L1)	OPEN	SC Code (E11) is displayed.
Fusing Lamp (L2)	OPEN	SC Code (E52) is displayed.
Fusing Thermistor (TH1)	OPEN	SC Code (E55) is displayed.
	SHORTED	SC Code (E53) is displayed.
Fusing Thermoswitch (TS)	OPEN	SC Code (E52) is displayed.
Optics Thermofuse (TF)	OPEN	SC Code (E11) is displayed.

3.3 FUSES & CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Component	Condition	Symptom
FU201 (250 V/6.3 A) (dc power supply board)	OPEN	The copier does not turn on even when the main switch is turned on.
FU401 (125 V/15 A) (ac drive board) ... 115 V machine only	OPEN	The copier does not turn on even when the main switch is turned on.
F1 (250 V/2 A) (DF main board)	OPEN	The DF does not turn on even when the main switch is turned on.
FU101 (250 V/2 A) (Between CN418 on the ac drive board and CN1 of the DF connector) ... 220~230 V/240 V machine only	OPEN	The DF does not turn on even when the main switch is turned on.
Circuit Breaker ... 220~230 V/240 V machine only	OPEN	The copier does not turn on even when the main switch is turned on.

RICOH

RICOH FT3113/FT3313/FT3413

PARTS CATALOG

First Edition March 1992 RICOH COMPANY, LTD.

PARTS CATALOG

INTRODUCTION

This chapter instructs you the numbers and names of this parts on this machine

INDEX to PARTS CATALOG

FT3113 (A076)
FT3313 (A077)
FT3413 (A078)
DF40 (A365)

PARTS CATALOG

INTRODUCTION

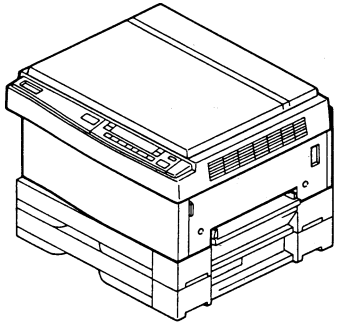
This chapter instructs you the numbers and names of this parts on this machine

INDEX to PARTS CATALOG

Location of Unit **2**
I.Exterior (A076/A077/A078)..... 6
2.Platen Cover (A076/A077/A078) 8
3.Optics I (A076/A077/A078)..... 10
4.Optics II **(A076)** 12
5.Optics II (A077/A078) 14
6.Manual Feed (A076/A077/A078) 16
7.1st Paper Feed (A076/A077/A078) 18
8. 2nd Paper Feed (A078) 20
9.Paper Tray (A076/A077/A078) 22
10.Drum Section (A076/A077/A078) 24
11.Development Unit (A076/A077/A078) 26
12.Toner Supply Uni t(A076/A077/A078) 28
13.Cleaning Unit (A076/A077/A078) 30
14.Transport Section (A076/A077/A078) 32
15.Fusing Unit (A076/A077/A078) 34
16.Paper Exit Section(A076/A077/A078) 36
17.Upper Unit I (A076/A077/A078) 38
18.Upper Unit II (A076/A077/A078) 40
19.Lower Unit I (A076/A077/A078) 42
20.Lower Unit II (A076/A077/A078) 44
21.Drive Section (A076/A077/A078) 46
22. Electrical Section (A076/A077/A078). 48
23.Main Board (A076/A077/A078) 50
24. AC Drive Board - I15V(A076/A077/A078) 52
25. AC Drive Board - 220V(A076/A077/A078) 54
26. AC Harness (A076/A077/A078) 56
27. DC Main Harness (A076/A077/A078). 58
28.Relay Harness-DC Power Supply (A076/A077/A078) 60
29.Decal (A076/A077/A078) 62
30.Special Tools (A076/A077/A078) 64
Parts Index. ... .67

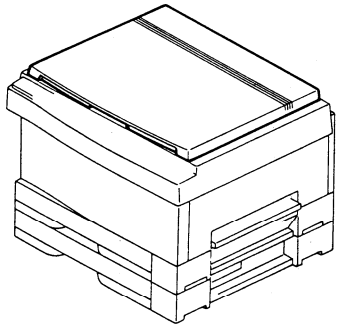
LOCATION OF UNIT

EXTERIOR (A076/A077/A078)



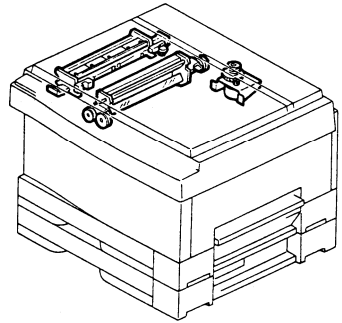
See Page 6

2. PLATEN COVER (A076/A077/A078)



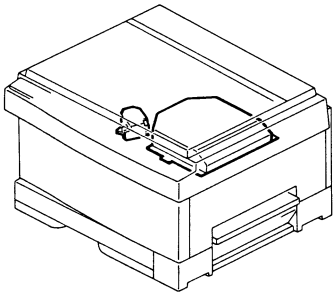
See Page 8

3. OPTICS I (A076/A077/A078)



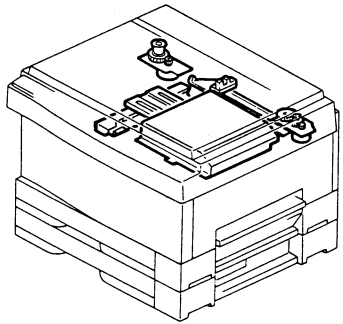
See Page 10

4. OPTICS II **(A076)**



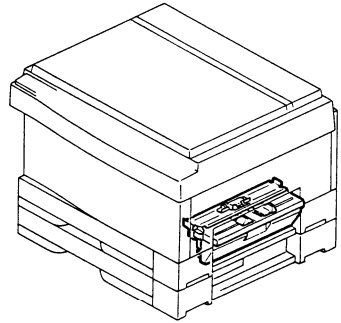
See Page 12

5. OPTICS II **(A077/A078)**



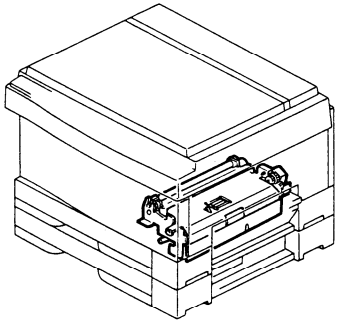
See Page 14

6. MANUAL FEED (A076/A077/A078)



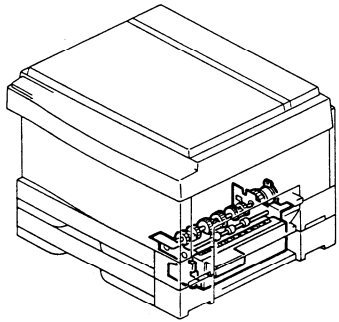
See Page 16

7. 1ST PAPER FEED (A076/A077/A078)



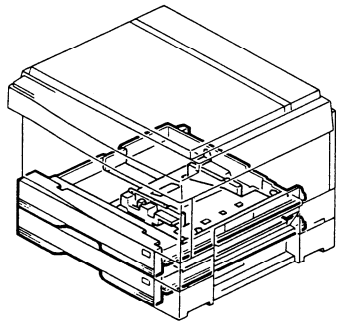
See Page 18

8. 2ND PAPER FEED (A078)



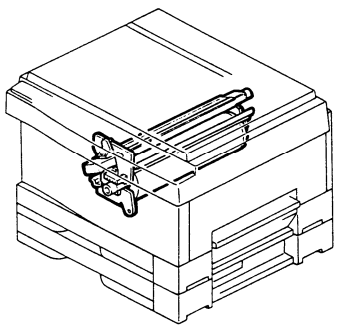
See Page 20

9. PAPER TRAY (A076/A077/A078)



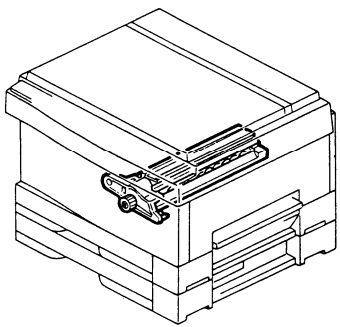
See Page 22

10. DRUM SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



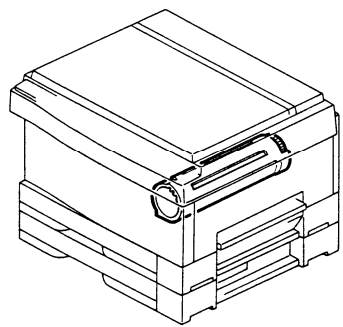
See Page 24

11. DEVELOPMENT UNIT (A076/A077/A078)



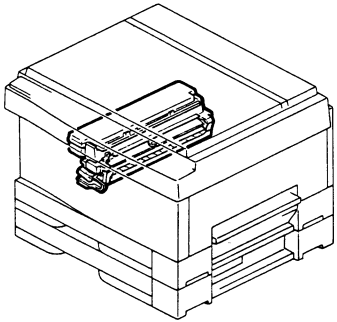
See Page 26

12. TONER SUPPLY UNIT (A076/A077/A078)



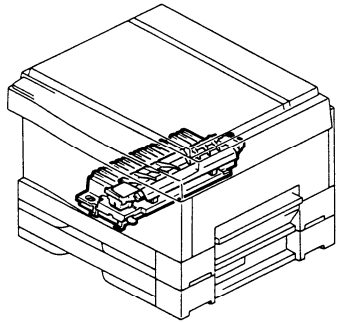
See Page 28

3. CLEANING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)



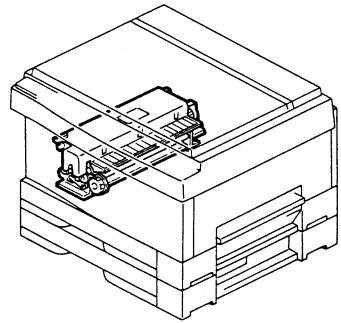
See Page 30

14. TRANSPORT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



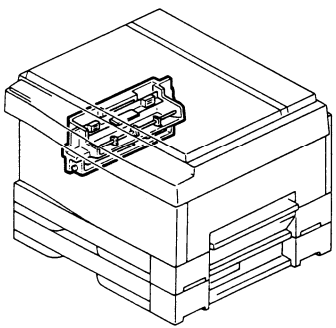
See Page 32

5. FUSING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)



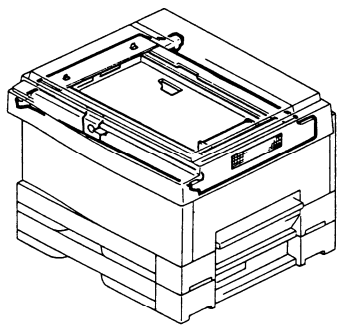
See Page 34

6. PAPER EXIT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



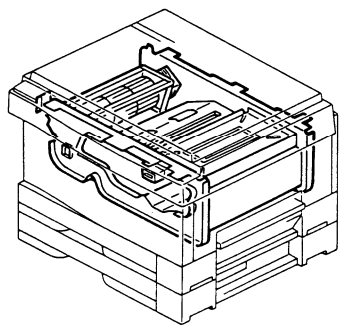
See Page 36

17. UPPER UNIT I (A076/A077/A078)



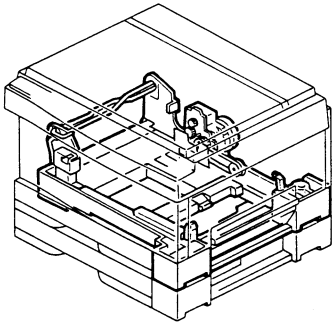
See Page 38

18. UPPER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)



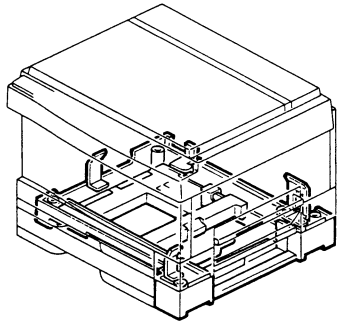
See Page **40**

19. LOWER UNIT I (A076/A077/A078)



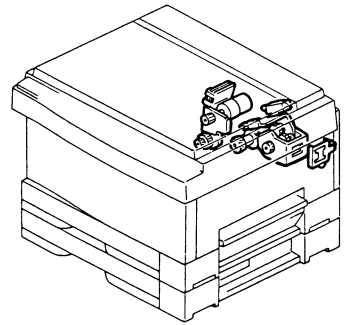
See Page 42

20. LOWER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)



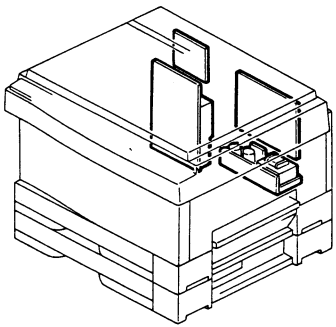
See Page 44

21. DRIVE SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



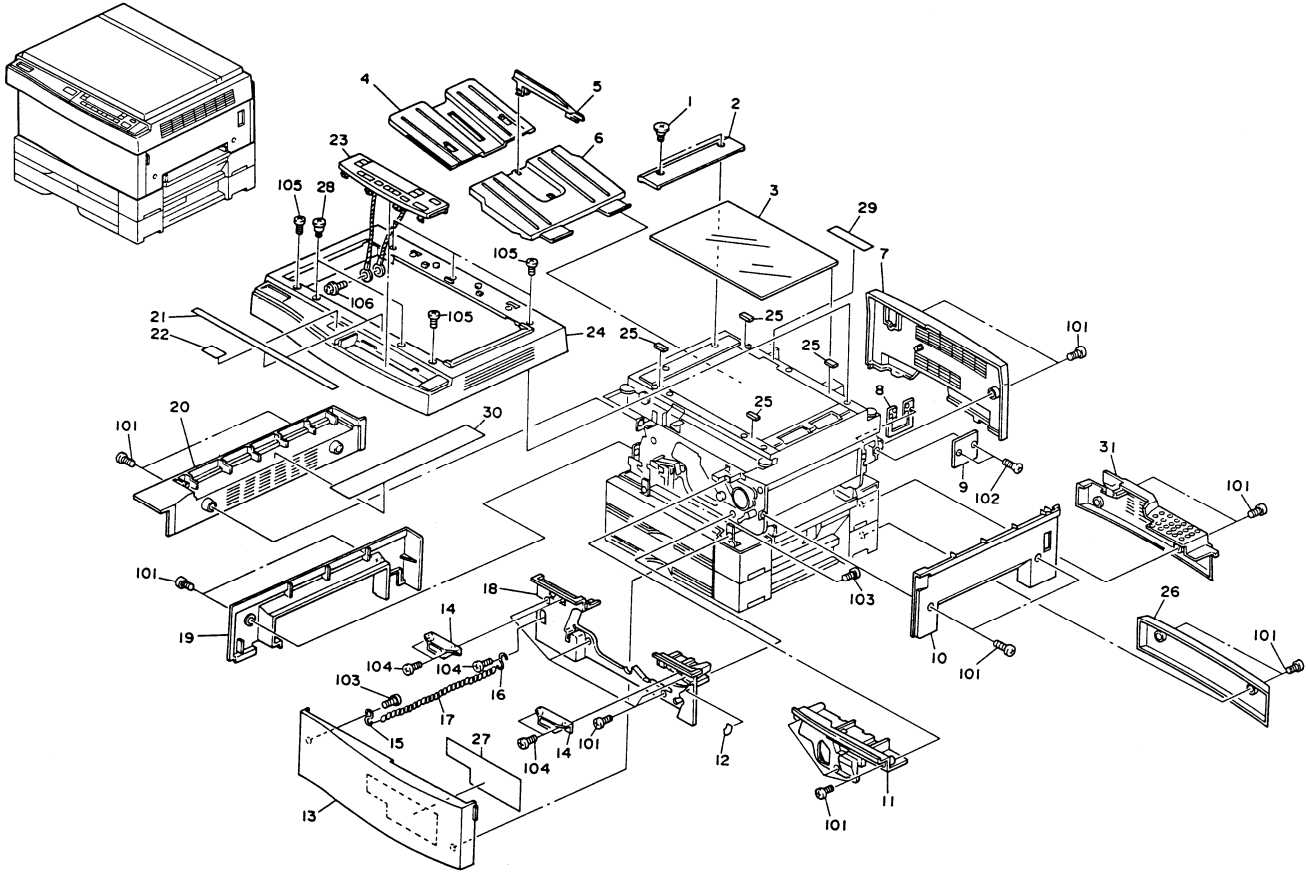
See Page 46

22. ELECTRICAL SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



See Page 48

1. EXTERIOR (A076/A077/A078)

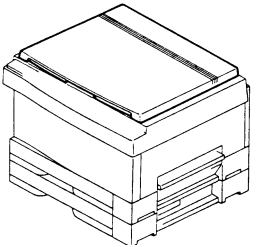


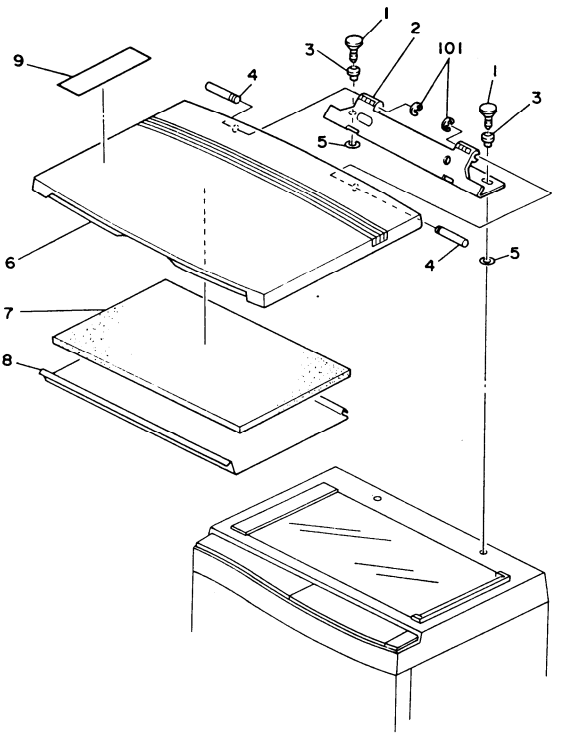
1. EXTERIOR (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	AA14 3070	Shoulder Screw - M2x2	2
2	AC04 2046	Left Scale (FT3113)	1
2	AC04 2044	Left Scale (FT3313/FT3413)	1
3	AC01 2041	Exposure Glass (FT3113)	1
3	AC01 2042	Exposure Glass (FT3313/FT3413)	1
4	AF04 3028	Copy Tray - Slide	1
5	A006 4493	Guide - Copy Tray	1
6	AF04 3035	Copy Tray	1
7	A077 1330	Rear Cover - Upper	1
8	5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	1
9	A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	1
10	A077 1315	Right Cover	1
11	A077 1339	Upper Inner Cover	1
12	A048 1369	Decal - Toner Cartridge Lock	1
13	A077 1275	Front Cover	1
14	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	2
15	A017 1288	Hook	1
16	A017 1287	Chain Stopper Hook	1
17	A077 1287	Front Cover Chain	1
18	A077 1337	Lower Inner Cover	1
19	A027 1325	Left Cover - Lower	1
20	A077 1320	Left Cover - Upper	1
21	A077 1498	Front Scale Decal - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	1
21	AA00 1031	Front Scale Decal - LT(FT3313)	1
22	A077 1493	Decal - Size Magnification - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	1
22	A077 1593	Decal - Size Magnification - LT (FT3313)	1
23	AG01 0026	Operation Panel Ass'y - USA (FT3113)	1
23	AG01 0027	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia (FT3113)	1
23	AG01 0042	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe (FT3113)	1
23	AG01 0020	Operation Panel Ass'y - USA(FT3313)	1
23	AG01 0021	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia(FT3313)	1
23	AG01 0040	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe(FT3313)	1
23	AG01 0024	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia(FT3413)	1
23	AG01 0041	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe(FT3413)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
24	A076 1255	Upper Cover (FT3113)	1
24	A077 1255	Upper Cover (FT3313)	1
24	A078 1255	Upper Cover (FT3413)	1
25	5215 1924	Cushion	4
26	A078 1333	Rear Cover - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	1
27	A077 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3113/FT3313)	1
27	A078 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3413)	1
28	A077 1361	Shoulder Screw	2
29	AA15 0029	Seal - 0.2x12x140	1
30	AA15 0316	Seal - 55x270	1
31	A077 1332	Rear Cover - Lower	1
101	0353 0060F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M3x6	
102	0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	
103	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
104	0434 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
105	0354 0080F	Screw - M4x8	
106	0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	

2. PLATEN COVER (A076/A077/A078)

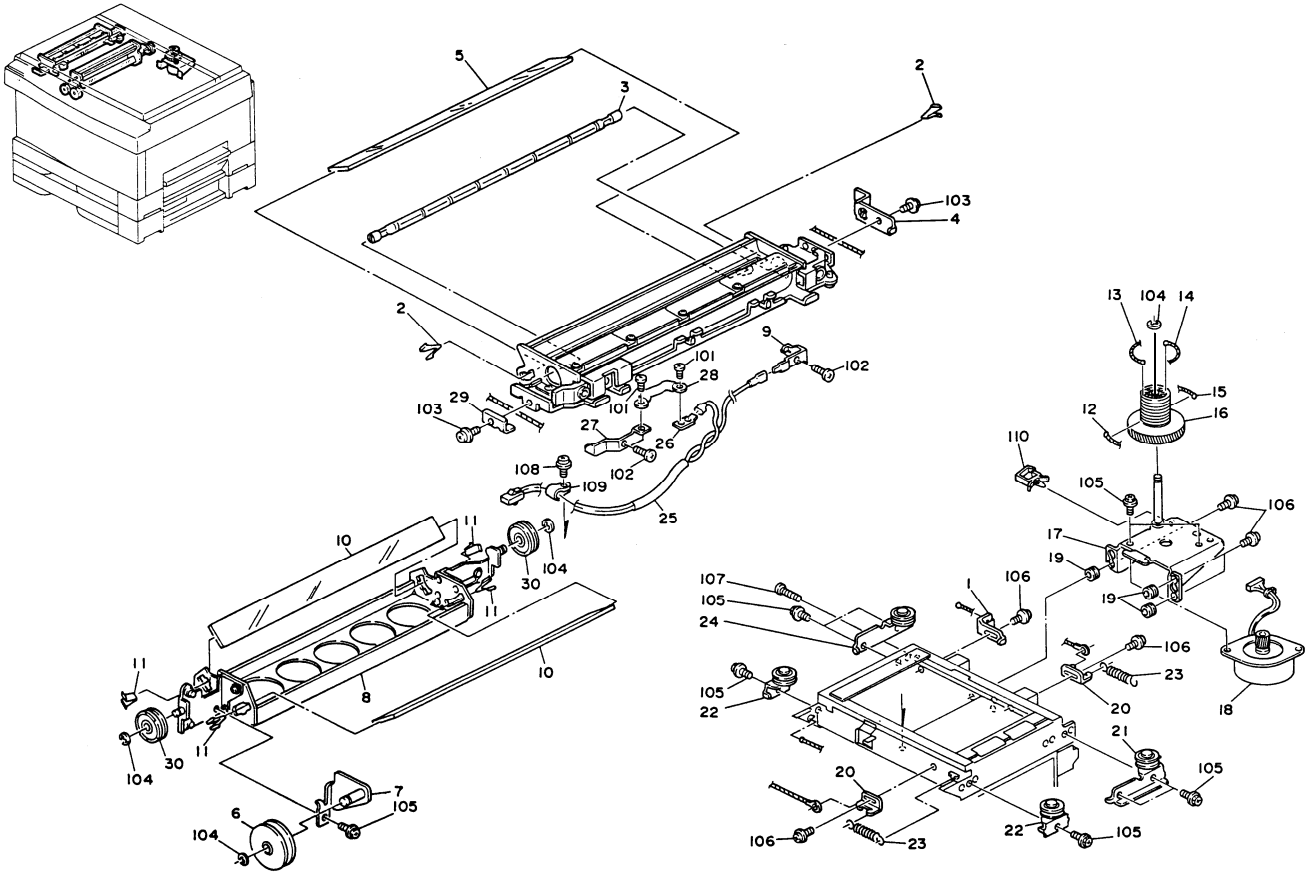




2. PLATEN COVER (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 1350	Platen Cover Ass'y	1
1	5216 1373	Ratch - Plunger	2
2	A017 1924	Flex Hinge - Platen Cover	1
3	5216 1372	Ratch - Grommet	2
4	5216 1374	Hinge Shaft - Platen Cover	2
5	5203 1359	Platen Cover Washer	2
6	A077 1355	Platen Cover	1
7	A077 1357	Platen Cover Pad	1
8	A077 9523	Platen Cover Sheet -10 sheets/set	1
9	A077 1366	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - English	1
9	A077 1411	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - German	1
9	A077 1412	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - French	1
9	A077 1413	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Italian	1
9	A077 1414	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Spanish	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	

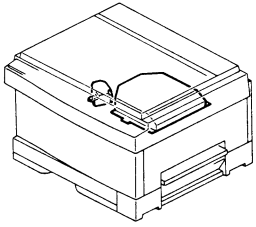

5
3
2
103
4
2
9
102
101
28
101
103
29
27
26
108
102
109
25
10
11
30
104
11
10
8
11
104
30
7
105
6
104
13
104
14
15
12
16
110
105
106
17
19
19
107
105
24
1
106
106
105
22
23
20
18
21
20
105
106
23
22
105

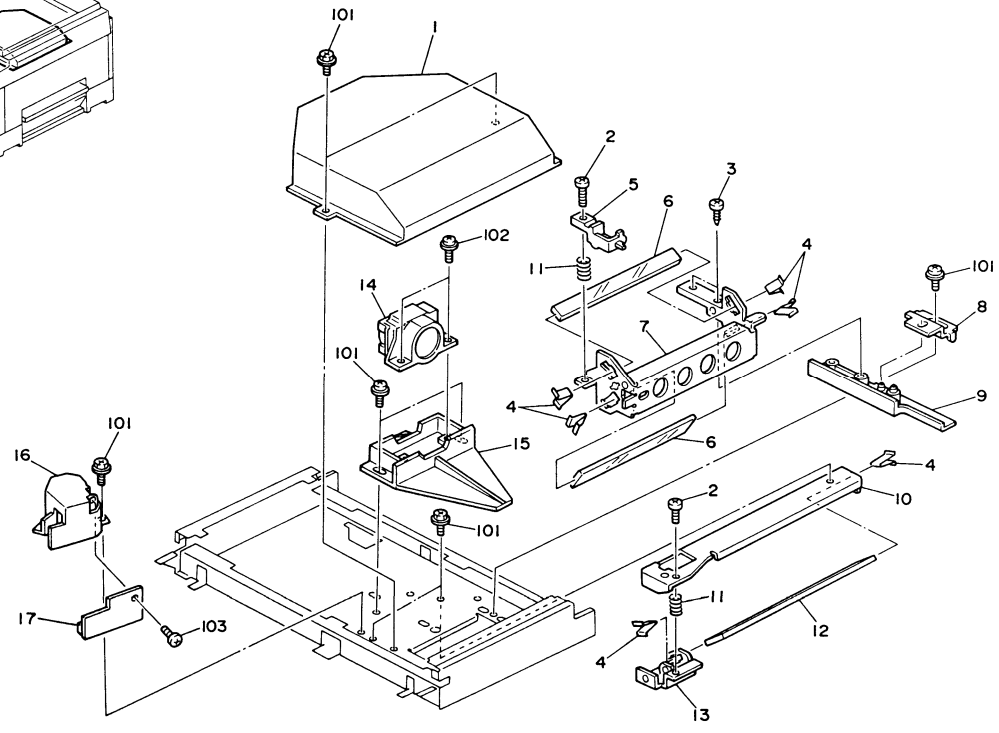
3. **OPTICS** I (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1730	Wire Adjusting Plate	1
2	A048 1721	Spring Plate A	2
3	AX53 0010	Exposure Lamp - 97V/300W (115V)	1
3	AX53 0011	Exposure Lamp - 180V/330W (220V)	1
4	A077 1727	Rear Wire Clamp	1
5	AC03 0067	1st Mirror	1
6	A077 1695	2nd Scanner Pulley	1
7	A077 1693	Pulley Guide Bracket	1
8	A077 1681	2nd Scanner Ass'y	1
9	A077 1672	Rear lamp Terminal	1
10	AC03 0068	2nd/3rd Mirror	2
11	A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	4
12	AA05 0060	Scanner Drive Wire - 1375mm	1
13	AA05 0062	Scanner Drive Wire -921 mm	1
14	AA05 0061	Scanner Drive Wire - 1407mm	1
15	AA05 0059	Scanner Drive Wire -1710mm	1
16	A077 1741	Scanner Motor Pulley	1
17	A077 1738	Scanner Motor Bracket	1
18	A077 5231	Scanner Drive Motor - DC60W	1
19	A077 1742	Cushion - Scanner Motor	3
20	A077 1729	Wire Support Plate	2
21	A077 1733	Rear Right Pulley	1
22	A077 1735	Front Pulley	2
23	AA06 3181	Spring - Scanner Drive Wire	2
24	A077 1731	Rear Left Pulley	1
25	A077 1675	Exposure Lamp Harness	1
26	A077 1673	Thermofuse Terminal	1
27	A077 1671	Front Lamp Terminal	1
28	A077 1674	Thermofuse - 126°C/250V	1
29	A077 1728	Front Wire Clamp	1
30	AB03 2024	Pulley - Scanner Wire	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
102	0433 0060B	Philips Tapping Screw - M3x6	
103	0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer- M4x6	
104	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
105	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
106	0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	
107	0314 0200B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x20	
108	0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
109	1105 0008	Nylon Clip - 2N	
110	1105 0292	Wire Saddle	

4. OPTICS II (A076)

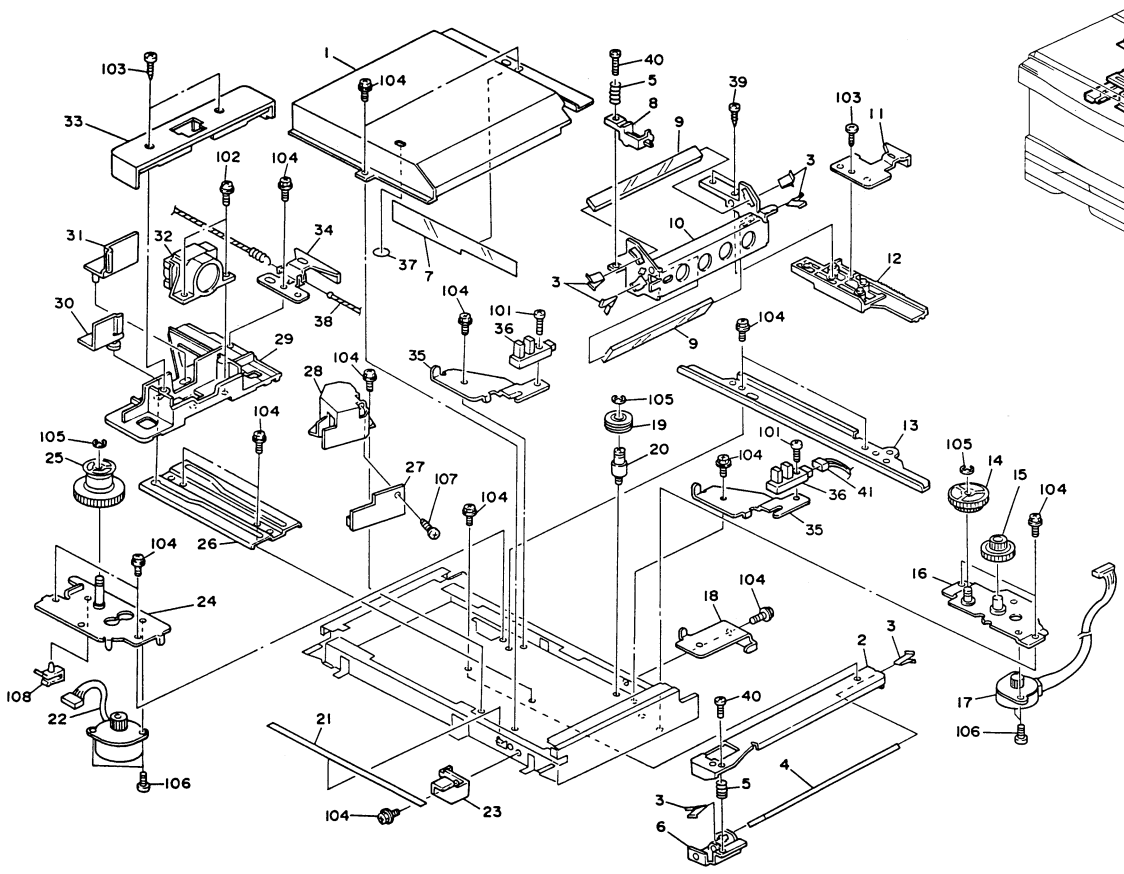




4. OPTICS II (A076)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A076 1775	Lens Cover	1
2	A077 1746	Mirror Adjusting Screw	2
3	A077 1747	Philips Tapping Screw - M3x8	1
4	A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	6
5	A077 1717	4th/5th Mirror Guide	1
6	AC03 0065	4th/5th Mirror	2
7	A077 1714	4th/5th Mirror Bracket	1
8	A076 1720	Mirror Adjusting Bracket	1
9	A076 1715	4th/5th Mirror Holder Bracket	1
10	A077 1724	6th Mirror Bracket	1
11	AA06 3180	Mirror Spring	2
12	AC03 0066	6th Mirror	1
13	A077 1726	6th Mirror Bracket - Small	1
14	AC02 0061	Lens - 10/1 80	1
15	A076 1701	Lens Bracket	1
16	A077 1745	Cover - ADS Sensor	1
17	A048 5110	Optics Control Board	1

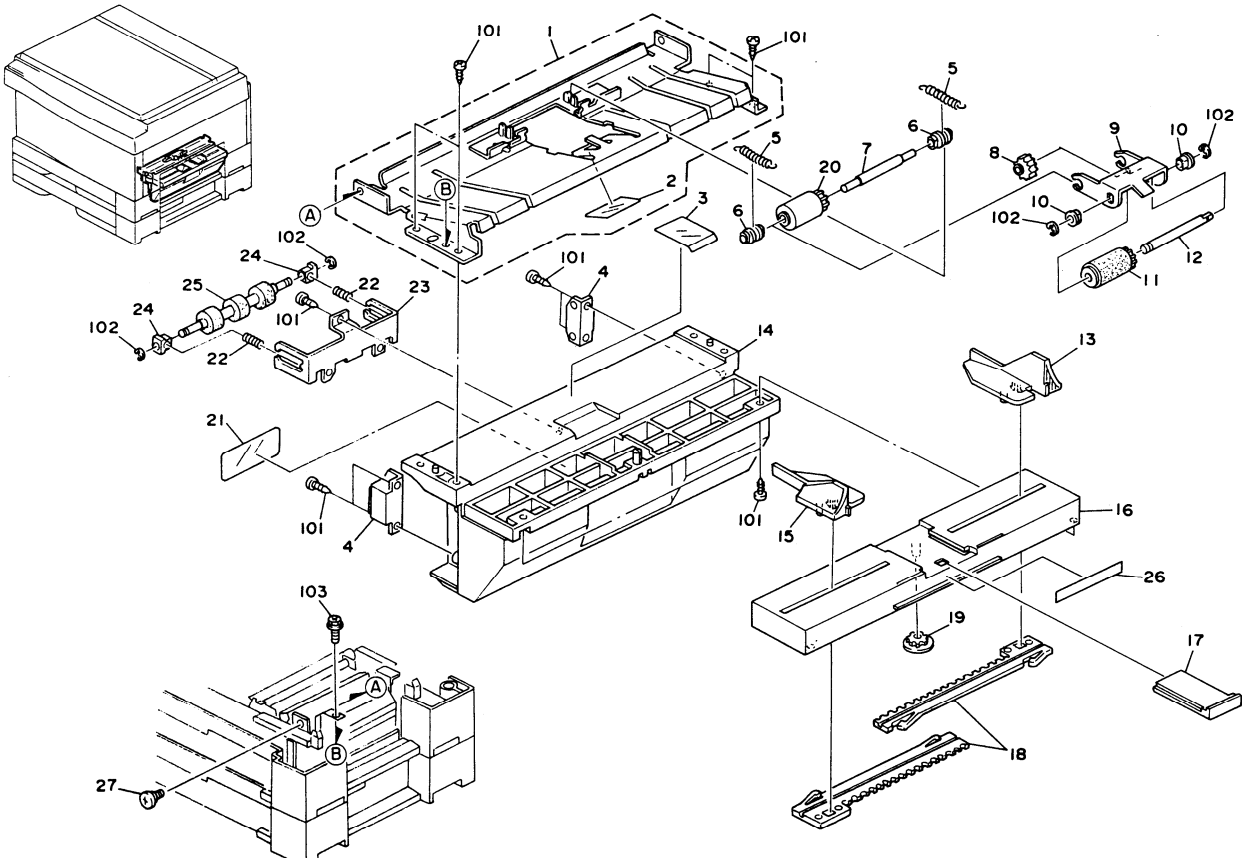
Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
102	0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	
103	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	


103
1
104
40
5
8
39
103
11
33
9
102
104
3
31
32
34
10
12
37
7
3
30
104
101
36
9
104
38
29
35
28
104
105
19
101
13
105
25
20
104
36
41
104
27
107
104
35
105
14
15
104
26
16
104
24
18
104
2
3
108
22
40
17
21
106
4
106
5
104
23
3
6

5. OPTICS II (A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1775	Lens Cover	1
2	A077 1724	6th Mirror Bracket	1
3	A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	6
4	AC03 0066	6th Mirror	1
5	AA06 3180	Mirror Spring	2
6	A077 1726	6th Mirror Bracket - Small	1
7	AA15 0261	Seal - Lens Cover	1
8	A077 1717	4th/5th Mirror Guide	1
9	AC03 0065	4th/5th Mirror	2
10	A077 1714	4th/5th Mirror Bracket	1
11	A077 1716	Sensor Shutter - 4th/5th Mirror	1
12	A077 1715	Rack Gear - Mirror Drive	1
13	A077 1753	Guide Plate - Lens Drive	1
14	AB01 7129	Gear - 20Z/72Z	1
15	AB01 7204	Gear - 24Z/48Z	1
16	A077 1791	Bracket - 4th/5th Mirror Motor	1
17	A077 5232	4th/5th Mirror Motor - DC38.4W	1
18	A077 1773	Lens Cover Bracket	1
19	5215 1806	Pulley	1
20	AA14 3264	Pulley Shaft	1
21	AA15 0262	Seal - 8x260mm	1
22	A077 5233	Lens Motor - DC57.6W	1
23	A077 1769	Upper Cover Bracket - 220V	1
24	A077 1781	Lens Motor Bracket	1
25	5215 1812	Lens Drive Pulley	1
26	A077 1752	Cam Plate - Lens Shield	1
27	A048 5110	Optics Control Board	1
28	A077 1745	Cover - ADS Sensor	1
29	A077 1701	Lens Bracket	1
30	A077 1706	Lens Shielding Plate - Front	1
31	A077 1704	Lens Shielding Plate - Rear	1
32	AC02 0061	Lens - 10/180	1
33	A077 1702	Lens Shielding Cover	1
34	A077 1710	Lens Shutter	1
35	A077 1721	Sensor Bracket	2
36	AW02 0022	Photointerruptor	2
37	AA15 0305	Seal - 20mm	1
38	AA05 0063	Lens Drive Wire - 774mm	1
39	A077 1747	Philips Tapping Screw - M3x8	1
40	A077 1746	Mirror Adjusting Screw	2
41	A077 5331	Relay Harness - 4th/5th Mirror HP	1
101	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
102	0951 3008W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	
103	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
104	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
106	0433 0060W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
107	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
108	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	

6. MANUAL FEED **(A076/A077/A078)**

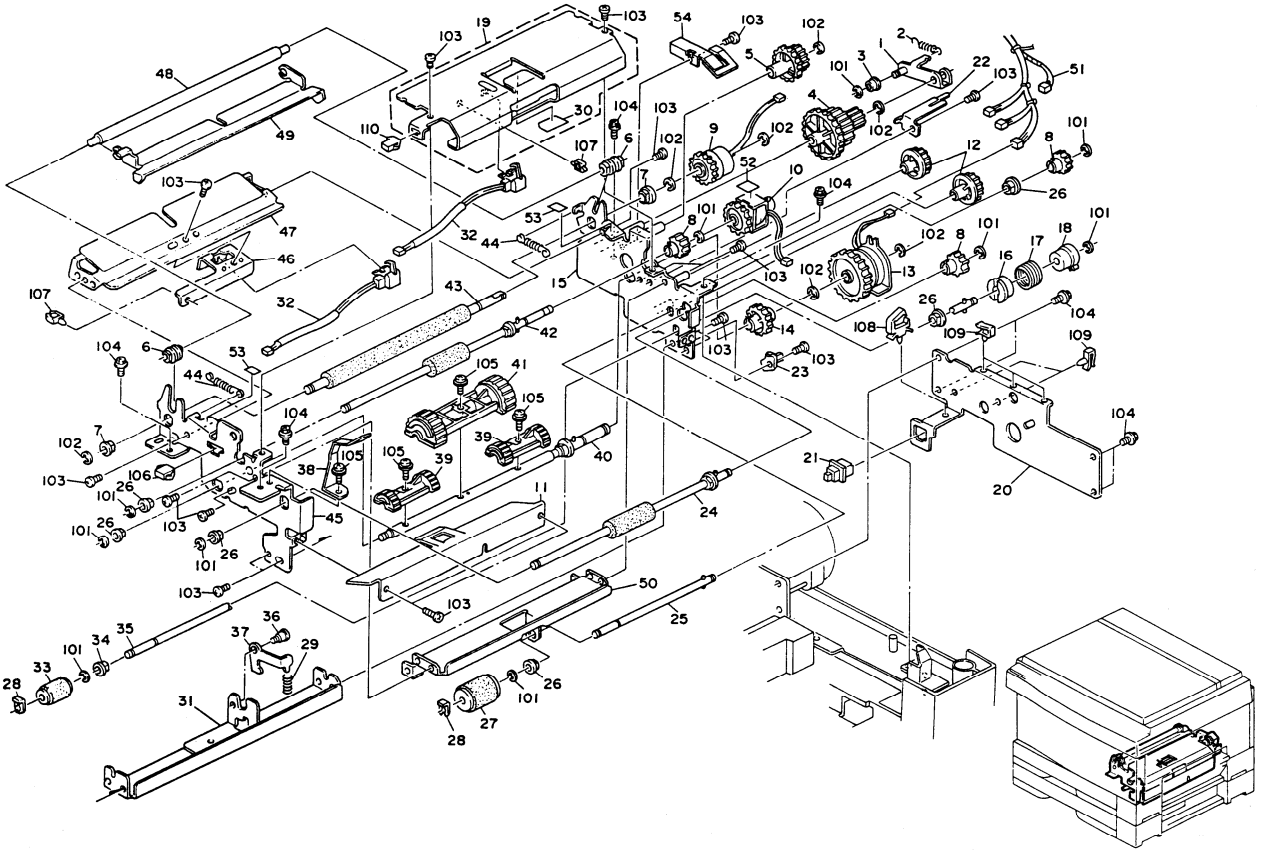


6. MANUAL FEED (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assemby
1	A077 2845	Manual Feed Guide	1
2	A077 2852	Mylar - 20x37	1
3	A077 2855	Mylar - 39x44	1
4	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	2
5	AA06 0471	Spring - Manual Feed	2
6	AA08 0139	Bushing - 4x7x12	2
7	AA14 5186	Shaft - Manual Feed Relay	1
8	AB01 0085	Gear - 28Z	1
9	A077 2841	Manual Feed Roller Bracket	1
10	AA08 0039	Bushing - 4x7x4.5	2
11	AF02 3009	Pick-up Roller - Manual Feed	1
12	AA14 5187	Shaft - Manual Feed Pick-up	1
13	A077 2881	Rear Side Fence - Manual Feed	1
14	A077 2887	Manual Feed Table	1
15	A077 2879	Front Side Fence - Manual Feed	1
16	A077 2884	Manual Feed Cover	1
17	A077 2875	Paper Guide - Manual Feed	1
18	A077 2877	Rack Gear - Manual Feed	2
19	AB01 3609	Gear - 14Z	1
20	AF02 2062	Relay Roller - Manual Feed	1
21	A077 2856	Mylar - 41x80	1
22	AA06 3229	Roller Spring	2
23	A077 2645	Guide Roller Bracket	1
24	AA08 0034	Bushing - 4x5x7	2
25	AF02 0241	Paper Guide Roller - 1st Relay	1
26	A077 2896	Decal - Manual Feed	1
27	AA14 3340	Shoulder Screw - M3	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
102	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
103	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	

7. 1ST PAPER FEED (A076/A077/A078)

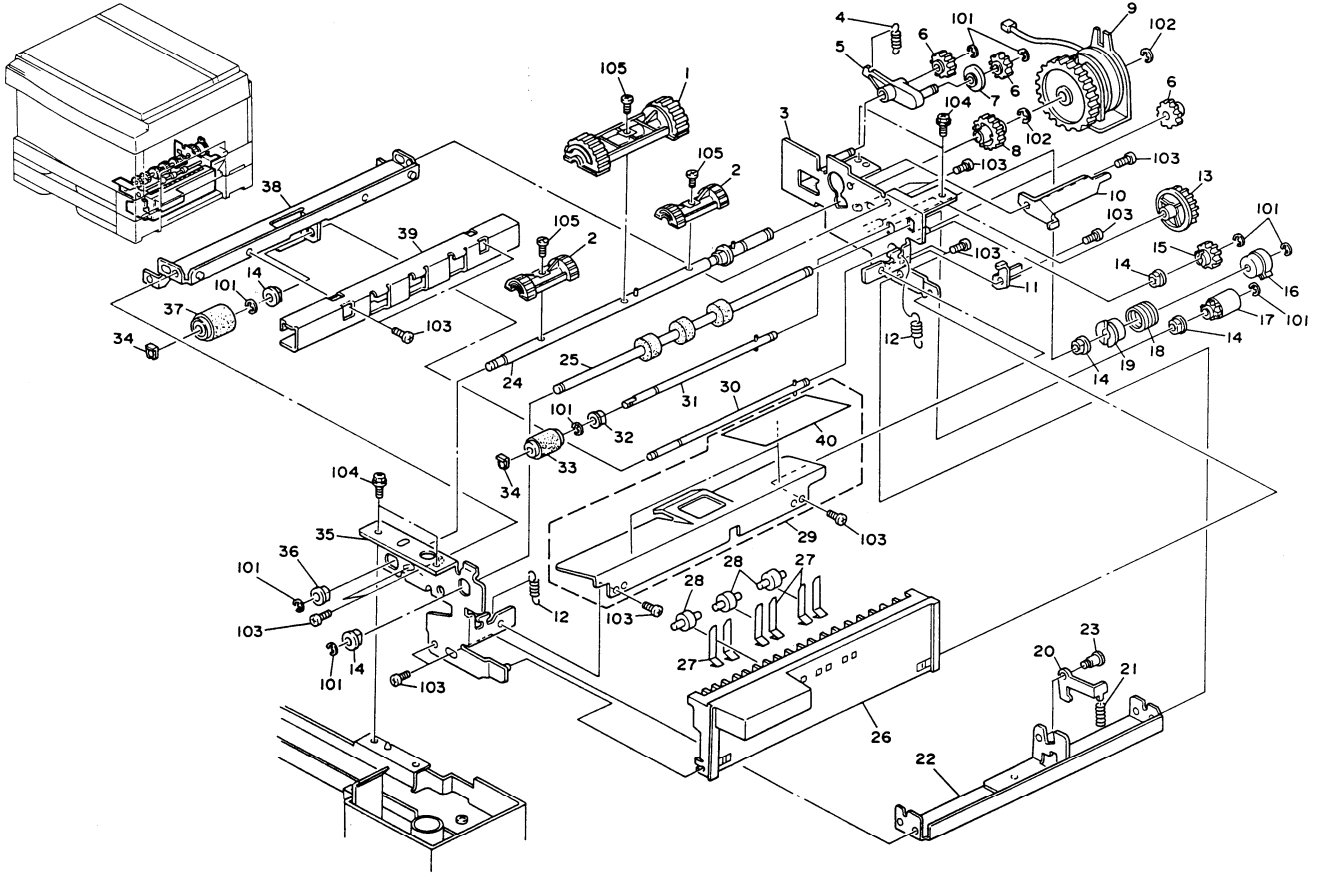


7. 1ST PAPER FEED (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1180	Arm - Tension Pulley	1
2	G617 1819	Spring - Arm Tension Pulley	1
3	A077 1183	Idle Pulley	1
4	AB01 7222	Gear - 17/33/42Z	1
5	AB01 7223	Gear - 22/28Z	1
6	AA08 0106	Bushing - 8x10x14mm	2
7	5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	2
8	AB01 3607	Gear - 17Z	3
9	AX21 0032	Registration Clutch	1
10	AX20 0083	Feed Relay Clutch	1
11	A077 2643	1st Paper Feed Guide	1
12	AB01 3606	Gear - 27Z	2
13	AX21 0029	Paper Feed Clutch	1
14	AB01 3605	Gear -24Z	1
15	A077 2663	Rear Side Plate - 1st Feed	1
16	5447 2695	Input Hub	1
17	AA06 6105	Release Spring	1
18	A077 2566	Output Hub	1
19	A077 2634	Relay Roller Guide	1
20	A077 1086	Support Plate - Paper Feed	1
21	AW50 0012	Push Switch	1
22	A077 2579	Clutch Stopper - Pick-up Roller	1
23	A077 2578	Stopper - Torque Roller	1
24	AF02 0239	1st Relay Roller	1
25	A077 2612	Shaft - Paper Feed Roller	1
26	5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	6
27	AF03 1015	Paper Feed Roller	1
28	5206 2686	Snap Ring	2
29	A077 2740	Spring - Reverse	1
30	A077 2654	Seal - 18x50mm	1
31	A077 2651	Release Plate Bracket	1
32	AW02 0047	Photointerruptor	2
33	AF03 2012	Torque Roller	1
34	AA08 0107	Bushing - 6x8x8mm	1
35	A077 2614	Torque Roller Shaft	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
36	5442 2624	Shoulder Screw - M3	1
37	A077 2657	Pressure Plate - Torque Roller	1
38	A077 2873	Band - Manual Feed Table	1
39	AF03 0012	Support Pick-up Roller	2
40	A077 2610	Shaft - Pick-up Roller	1
41	AF03 0008	Pick-up Roller	1
42	AF02 0237	2nd Relay Roller	1
43	AF02 0236	Lower Registration Roller	1
44	AA06 0441	Spring - Registration Roller	2
45	A077 2661	Front Side Plate - 1st Feed	1
46	A077 2586	Registration Sensor Bracket	1
47	A077 2582	Lower Registration Guide	1
48	AF02 1045	Upper Registration Roller	1
49	A077 2632	Registration Guide Plate	1
50	A077 2641	Paper Feed Stay	1
51	A077 5335	Relay Harness - DC Power Supply	1
52	A077 2668	Seal - 20x26x2	1
53	A077 2666	Spacer - 7x14x0.7	2
54	A077 2909	Paper Feed Drive Cover - 220V	1
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
103	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
106	1102 4559	Connector - 3P	
107	1105 0199	Clamp	
108	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
109	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	
110	1102 5145	Connector - 3P - Blue	

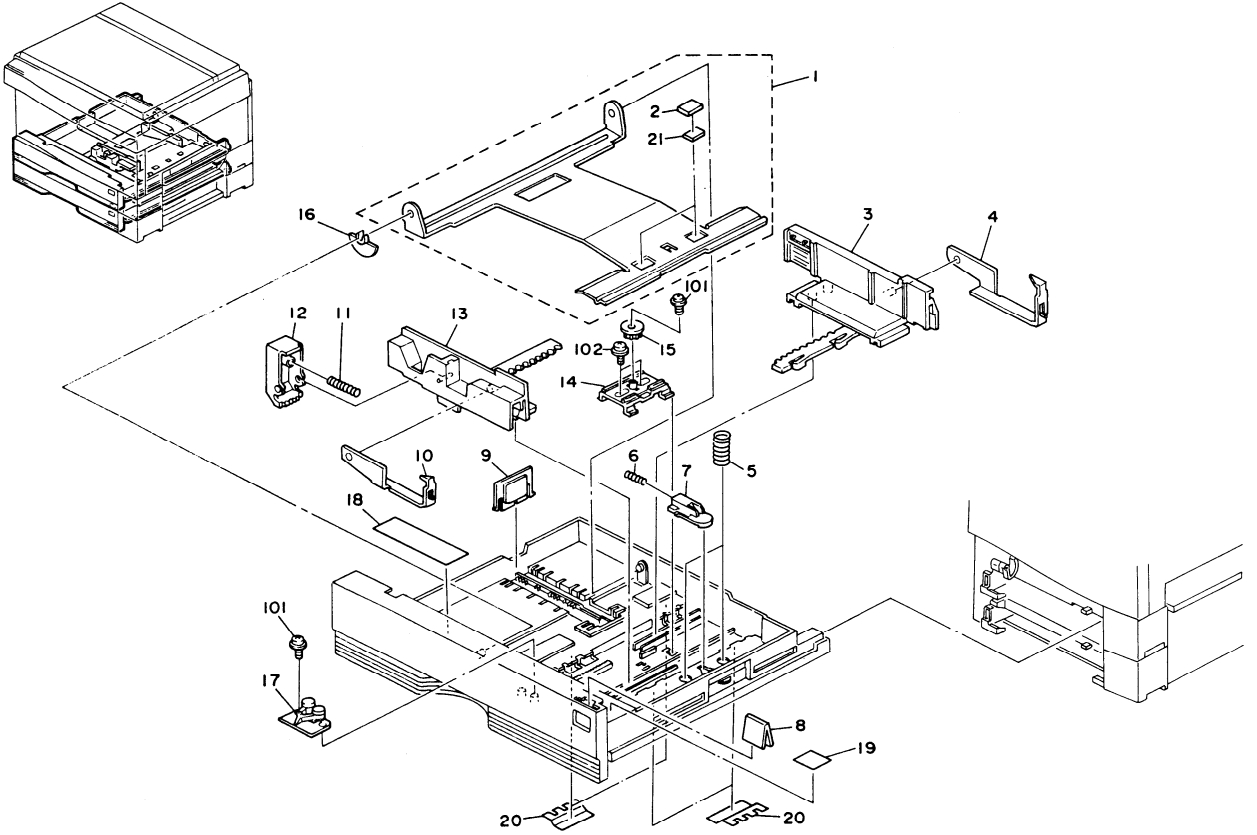
8. 2ND PAPER FEED **(A078)**



8. 2ND PAPER FEED **(A078)**

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	AF03 0008	Pick-up Roller	1
2	AF03 0012	Support Pick-up Roller	2
3	A078 2934	Rear Side Plate - 2nd Feed	1
4	5403 6225	Spring - Shutter Plate	1
5	A078 2914	Double Shaft Anchor	1
6	AB01 3669	Gear - 17Z	3
7	AA13 2150	Spacer - 17mm	1
8	AB01 3605	Gear - 24Z	1
9	AX21 0029	Paper Feed Clutch	1
10	A078 2903	Clutch Stopper - Pick-up Roller	1
11	A077 2578	Stopper - Torque Roller	1
12	A078 2942	Spring - 2nd Paper Feed Cover	2
13	AB01 3606	Gear - 27Z	1
14	5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	5
15	AB01 3607	Gear - 17Z	1
16	A077 2566	Output Hub	1
17	A078 2905	Gear - 12Z	1
18	AA06 6105	Release Spring	1
19	5447 2695	Input Hub	1
20	A077 2657	Pressure Plate - Torque Roller	1
21	A077 2740	Spring - Reverse	1
22	A077 2651	Release Plate Bracket	1
23	5442 2624	Shoulder Screw - M3	1
24	A077 2610	Shaft - Pick-up Roller	1
25	A078 2926	Relay Roller - 2nd Feed	1
26	A078 2951	2nd Paper Feed Cover	1
27	A048 2679	Spring Plate	6
28	AF02 2042	Middle Pressure Roller	3
29	A078 2918	2nd Paper Feed Guide	1
30	A077 2612	Shaft - Paper Feed Roller	1
31	A077 2614	Torque Roller Shaft	1
32	AA08 0107	Bushing - 6x8x8mm	1
33	AF03 2012	Torque Roller	1
34	5206 2686	Snap Ring	2
35	A078 2929	Front Side Plate - 2nd Feed	1
36	5053 0233	Bushing - 8mm	1
37	AF03 1015	Paper Feed Roller	1
38	A077 2641	Paper Feed Stay	1
39	A078 2923	Relay Roller Guide - 2nd Feed	1
40	A078 2920	Mylar - 44x100	2
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
103	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	

9. PAPER TRAY (A076/A077/A078)

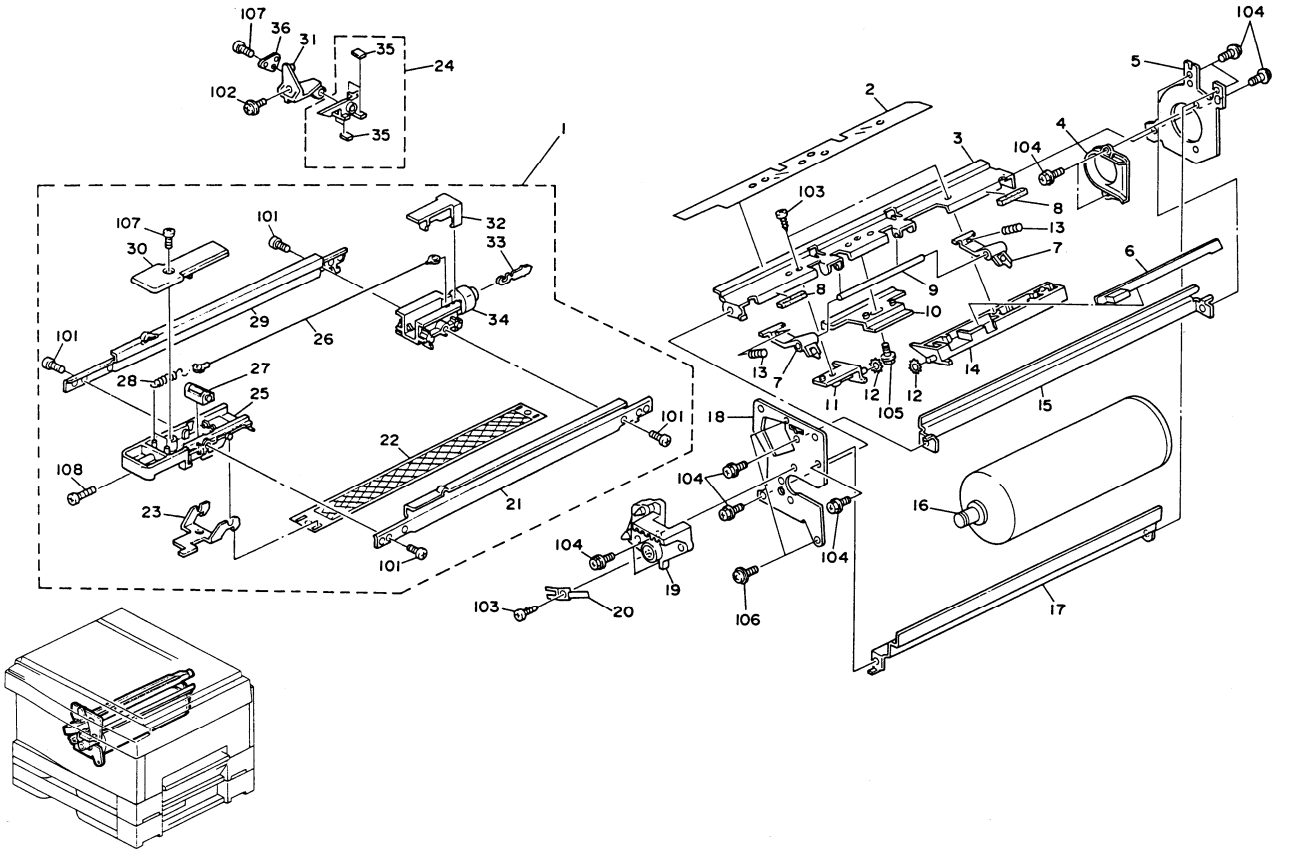


9. PAPER TRAY (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 2803	Paper Tray Ass'y	1
1	AF01 1021	Bottom Plate	1
2	AF01 3013	Bottom Plate Pad	2
3	AF01 6052	Rear Side Fence	1
4	AF01 4008	Rear Corner Separator	1
5	AA06 3207	Spring - Paper Feed Pressure	2
6	AA06 3205	Spring - Bottom Plate Stopper	1
7	A077 2822	Plate Release Slider	1
8	A077 2808	Paper Size Plate	1
9	A077 2817	End Fence	1
10	AF01 4007	Front Corner Separator	1
11	AA06 3206	Spring - Front Side Fence	1
12	A077 2836	Side Fence Stopper	1
13	AF01 6051	Front Side Fence	1
14	A077 2810	Registration Adjustment Plate	1
15	AB01 3621	Gear - 16Z	1
16	A077 2815	Spacer - Bottom Plate	1
17	5409 1238	Catch Rotary	1
18	A077 2897	Decal - Paper Tray	1
19	A077 2898	Decal - Paper Size Plate	1
20	A077 2825	Paper Tray Seal	4
21	A077 2828	Seal - 0.2x18x24	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0965 3008B	Tapping Screw with Washer - M3x8	
102	0951 3006Z	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	

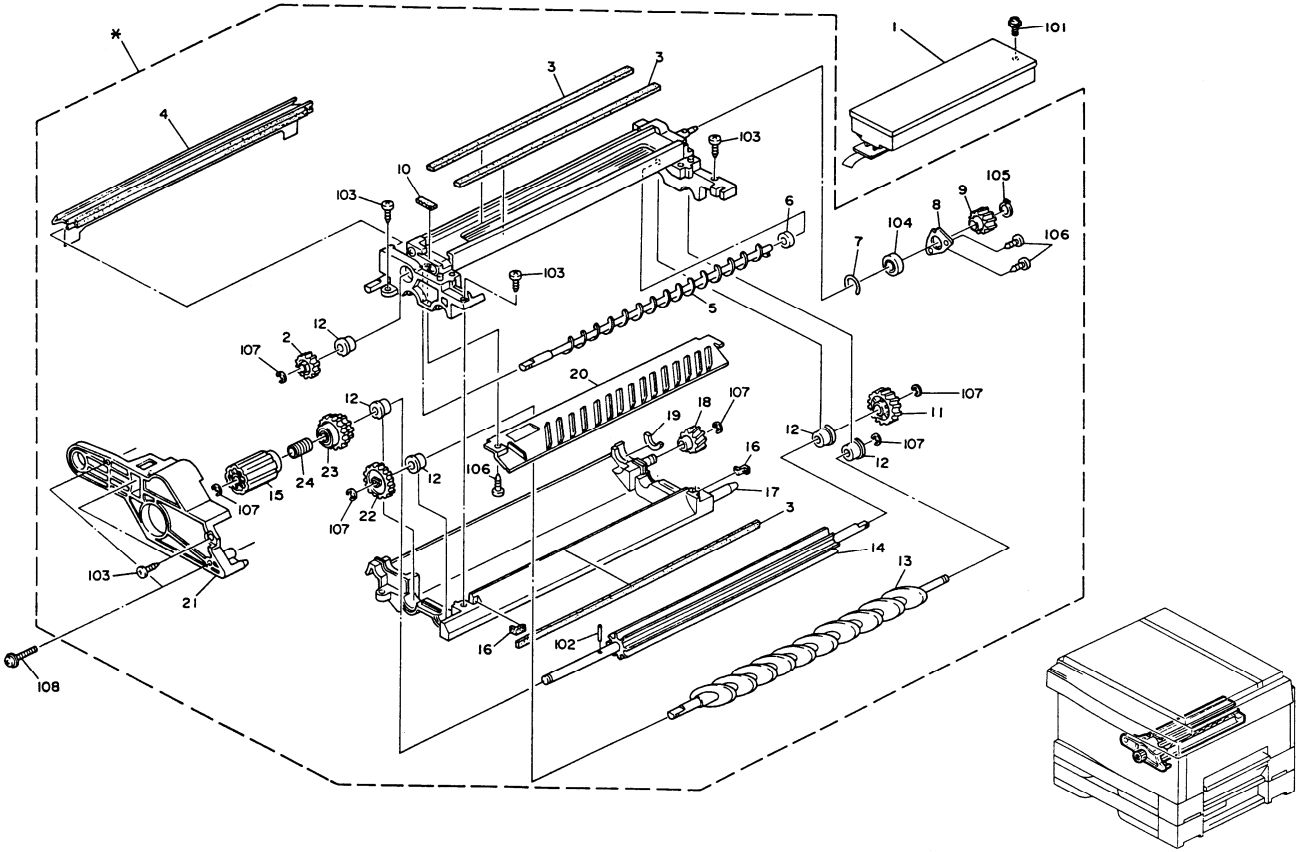
10. DRUM SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



10. DRUM SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 2070	Main Charge Corona Unit	1
2	AA15 0288	Seal - ID Sensor	1
3	A077 2272	Lower Drum Stay	1
4	A006 2280	Drum Guide	1
5	A077 2294	Rear Side Plate - Drum	1
6	A077 5241	ID Sensor Board	1
7	A006 2270	Pick-off Pawl	2
8	AA15 1689	Seal - 6x30mm	2
9	AA14 5158	Pick-off Pawl Shaft	1
10	A077 2278	Pick-off Pawl Stopper	1
11	A077 2282	Pick-off Pawl Guide	1
12	A048 2276	Ring - Transport Bracket	2
13	AA06 3106	Spring - Pick-up Pawl	2
14	A077 2264	ID Sensor Holder	1
15	A077 2290	Upper Left Stay - Drum	1
16	A077 9510	Drum	1
17	A077 2292	Upper Right Stay - Drum	1
18	A077 2259	Front Side Plate - Drum	1
19	AA08 0103	Front Drum Holder	1
20	A077 2254	Grounding Plate - Drum	1
21	AD02 3100	Right Casing - Main Charge	1
22	A077 2072	Charge Corona Grid	1
23	A069 2130	Anchor - Grid	1
24	A077 2051	Cleaner Pad Ass'y	1
25	AD02 2260	Front End Block - Main Charge	1
26	A077 9520	Charge Corona Wire -10 pcs/set	1
27	A069 2127	Adjuster - Main Charge	1
28	5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	1
29	AD02 3101	Left Casing - Main Charge	1
30	AD02 2261	Front End Block Cover - Main Charge	1
31	A069 2152	Cleaner Stay	1
32	AD02 2198	Rear End Block Cover - Main Charge	1
33	5442 2110	Plug - Corona Unit	1
34	AD02 2197	Rear End Block - Main Charge	1
35	A008 2087	Corona Cleaner Pad	4
36	A006 2122	Cleaner Stopper	1
101	0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
102	0951 4006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	
103	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
104	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0964 3006W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
106	0951 3006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
107	0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	
108	0971 3016A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x16	

11. DEVELOPMENT UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

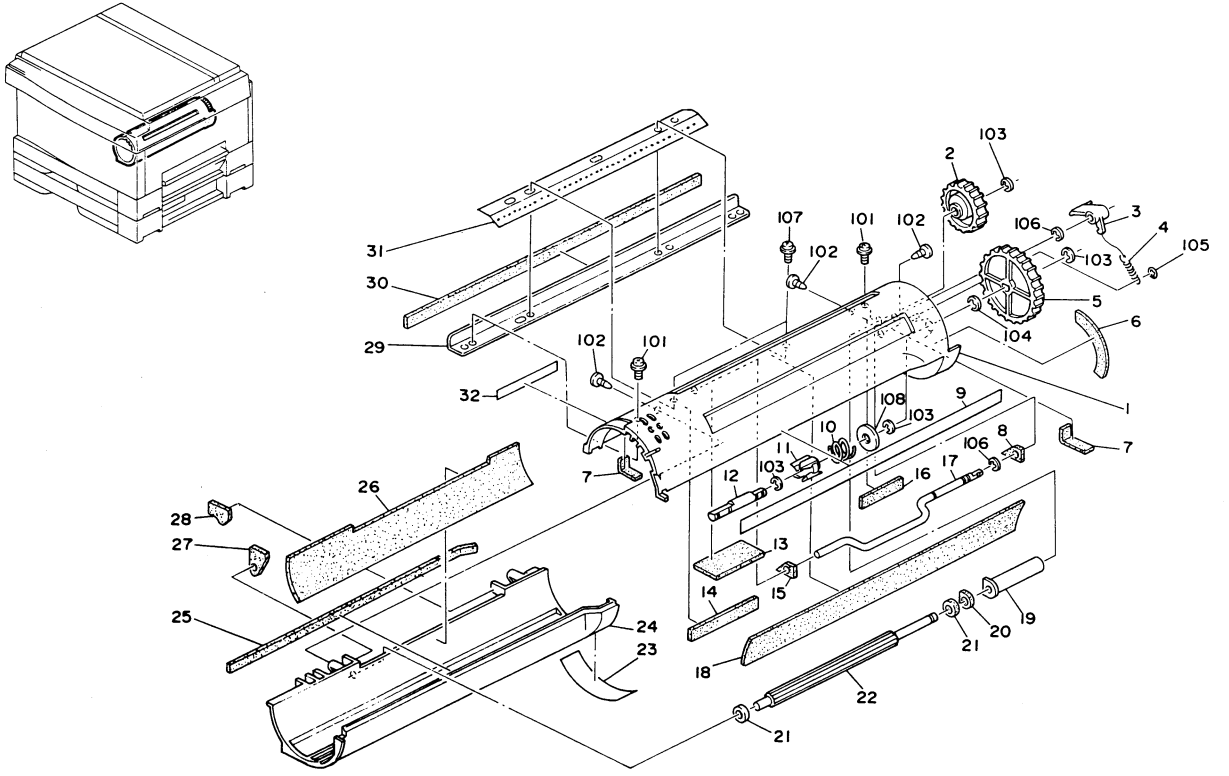


11. DEVELOPMENT UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 7510	Development Unit	1
1	AD03 4002	Developer Tank	1
2	AB01 3441	Gear-20Z	1
3	AA15 1610	Seal-3x4x285mm	3
4	A077 7630	Entrance Seal Plate	1
5	AD03 7027	Mixing Auger	1
6	AA15 2019	Seal - Mixing Auger	1
7	AA15 2202	Seal -Development Roller	1
8	A077 7626	Development Retainer	1
9	AB01 3437	Gear-19Z	1
10	AA15 1478	Seal	1
11	AB01 3439	Gear -232	1
12	5205 3103	Bushing - 6mm	5
13	AD03 8032	Developer Agitator	1
14	AD03 8031	Paddle Roller	1
15	AG05 0055	Development Knob	2
16	AA15 1186	Front Side Plate Seal	1
17	A077 7621	Lower Casing - Development Unit	1
18	AB01 3438	Gear -152	1
19	AA15 2203	Seal - Lower Development Roller	1
20	AD03 6033	Backspill Plate	1
21	A077 7640	Gear Cover	1
22	AB01 3440	Gear -342	1
23	AB01 7206	Gear - 28/342	1
24	AB04 4005	Spring Clutch	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	
102	0622 0140E	Spring Hole Pin - 2x14mm	
103	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
104	0805 3415	Ball Bearing - 9x20x6	
105	0727 0090E	Retaining Ring C - M9	
106	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
107	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
108	0951 3020B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	

12. TONER SUPPLY UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

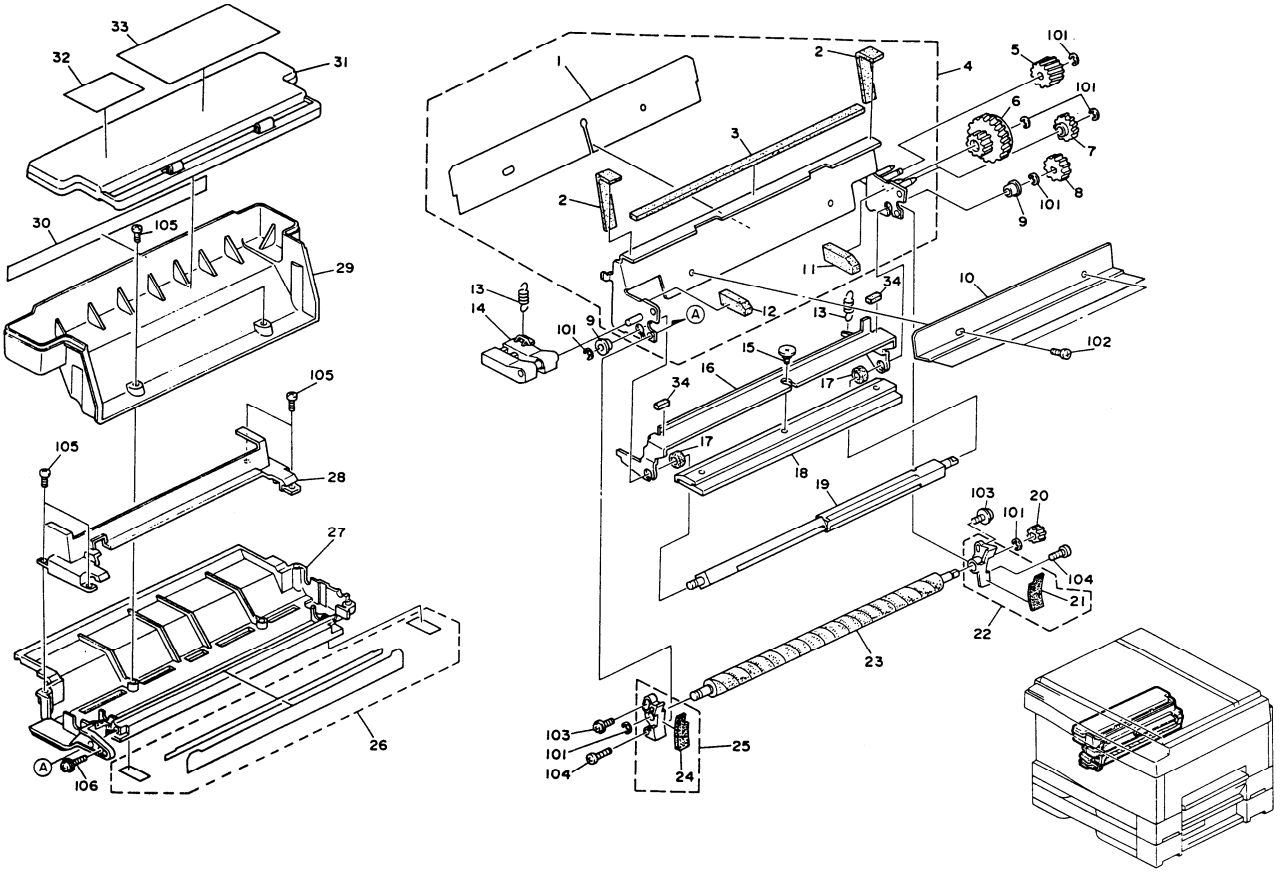


12. TONER SUPPLY UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 7511	Toner Supply Unit - 115V	1
*	A077 7512	Toner Supply Unit - 220V	1
1	A077 7650	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - 115V	1
1	A077 7651	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - 220V	1
2	AB01 3548	Gear-36Z	1
3	A077 7661	Toner Agitator Lever	1
4	AA06 0019	Sector Gear Spring	1
5	AB01 3549	Sear - 60Z	1
6	AA15 1275	Seal - Hopper	1
7	AA15 1099	Seal-2x14x37mm	2
8	AA15 1694	Seal -Rear Lever	1
9	AA15 0269	Seal-12x342mm	1
10	5215 3347	Spring-Gear	1
11	5215 3328	Joint-Hopper	1
12	5215 3327	Shaft-Agitator	1
13	AA15 1617	Seal - 4x23x50mm	1
14	AA15 1614	Seal - 2x11x62.5mm	1
15	AA15 1620	Seal - Front Lever	1
16	AA15 1615	Seal - 2x11x44.5mm	1
17	A077 7660	Toner Agitator Shaft	1
18	AA15 1613	Seal - 4x21x299mm	1
19	A077 7670	Spacer - Toner Supply Roller	1
20	AA15 1488	Seal - Hopper	1
21	5215 3303	Seal - Toner Supply Roller	2
22	AD03 3015	Toner Supply Roller	1
23	AA15 0198	Seal - 19x80	1
24	A077 7665	Lower Casing - Toner Supply	1
25	AA15 1695	Seal - 2x5x337mm	1
26	AA15 1616	Seal - 2x34.5x290mm	1
27	AA15 1618	Seal - Front Hopper	1
28	AA15 1619	Seal - Rear Hopper	1
29	A077 7676	Plate Nut	1
30	AA15 1612	Seal - 3x10x310mm	1
31	A077 7675	Slitter	1
32	AA15 0270	Seal - 15x54mm	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0951 3008B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	
102	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	
105	0805 0077	Retaing Ring - M3	
106	0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	
107	0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	
108	0807 4103	Spacer - 0.5mm	

13. CLEANING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

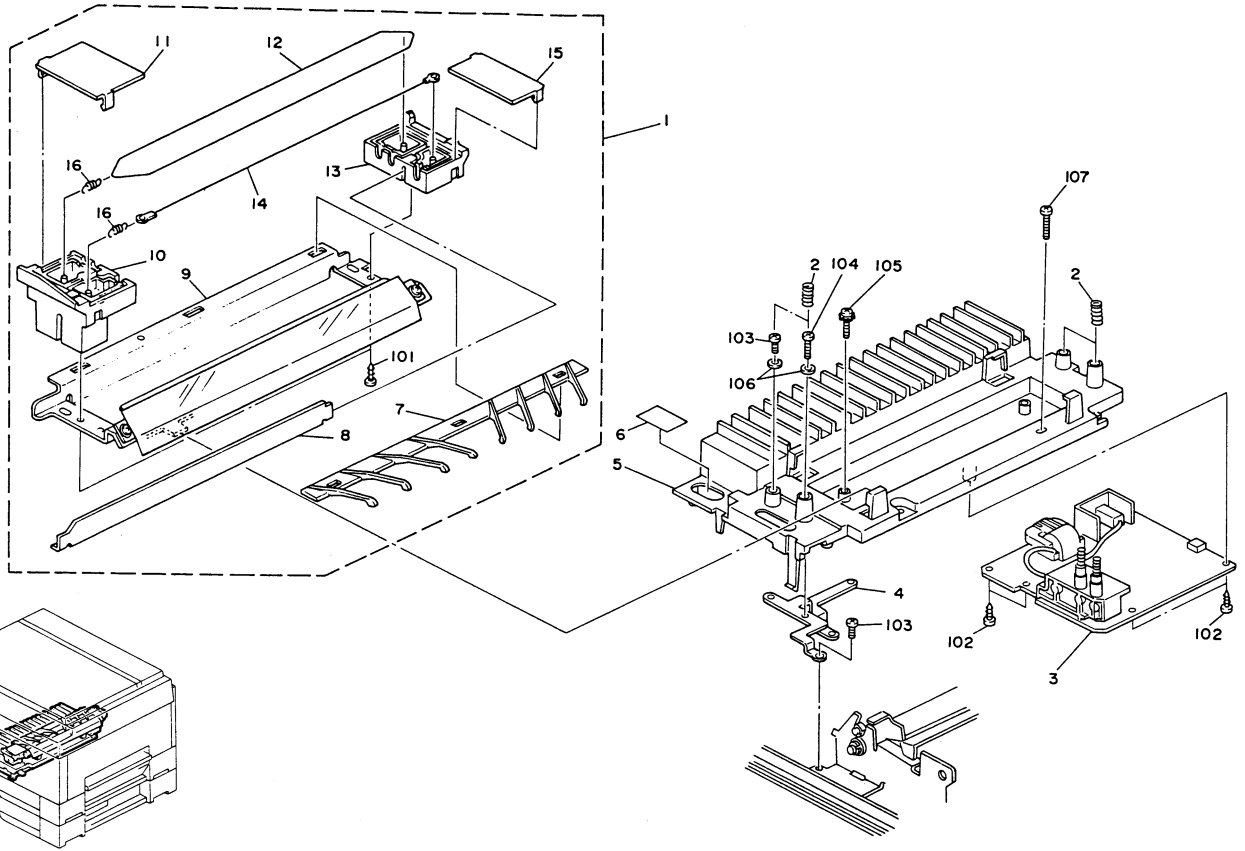


13. CLEANING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 3550	Cleaning Unit	1
1	AA15 2199	Seal - Toner Collection	1
2	AA15 1648	Seal - 2x15x72mm	2
3	AA15 1649	Seal - 2x6x260mm	1
4	A077 3700	Cleaning Unit Frame	1
5	AB01 1120	Gear-18Z	1
6	AB01 7230	Gear-35/15Z	1
7	AB01 1119	Gear-17Z	1
8	AB01 1121	Gear-19Z	1
9	AA08 0030	Bushing-5x13x7	2
10	AD00 2019	Blade Cleaner	1
11	AA15 1717	Rear Blade Seal	1
12	AA15 1716	Front Blade Seal	1
13	AA06 0099	Cleaning Blade Spring	2
14	A077 3606	Cleaning Release Lever	1
15	5446 3648	Stepped Screw-M4	1
16	A077 3690	Cleaning Blade Bracket	1
17	AA15 1109	Seal-5x16x5	2
18	AD00 2018	Cleaning Blade	1
19	A077 3662	Toner Collection Shaft	1
20	AB01 1070	Gear - 12Z	1
21	AA15 2017	Side Seal - Cleaning Rear	1
22	A006 3604	Rear Brush Holder	1
23	AD04 2019	Cleaning Brush	1
24	AA15 2016	Side Seal - Cleaning Front	1
25	A006 3603	Front Brush Holder	1
26	A077 9530	Cleaning Entrance Seal	1
27	A077 3582	Lower Cleaning Casing	1
28	A077 3562	Upper Creaning Casing	1
29	A077 3552	Toner Collection Casing	1
30	AA15 0314	Seal - 15x316mm	1
31	A077 3551	Toner Collection Cover	1
32	AA00 0059	Caution Decal - English	1
33	AA00 0119	Caution Decal - Cleaning	1
34	AA15 1715	Seal - 5x10X20	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
102	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
103	0951 3010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	
104	0413 0142W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	
105	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
106	0951 3014B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x14	

14. TRANSPORT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

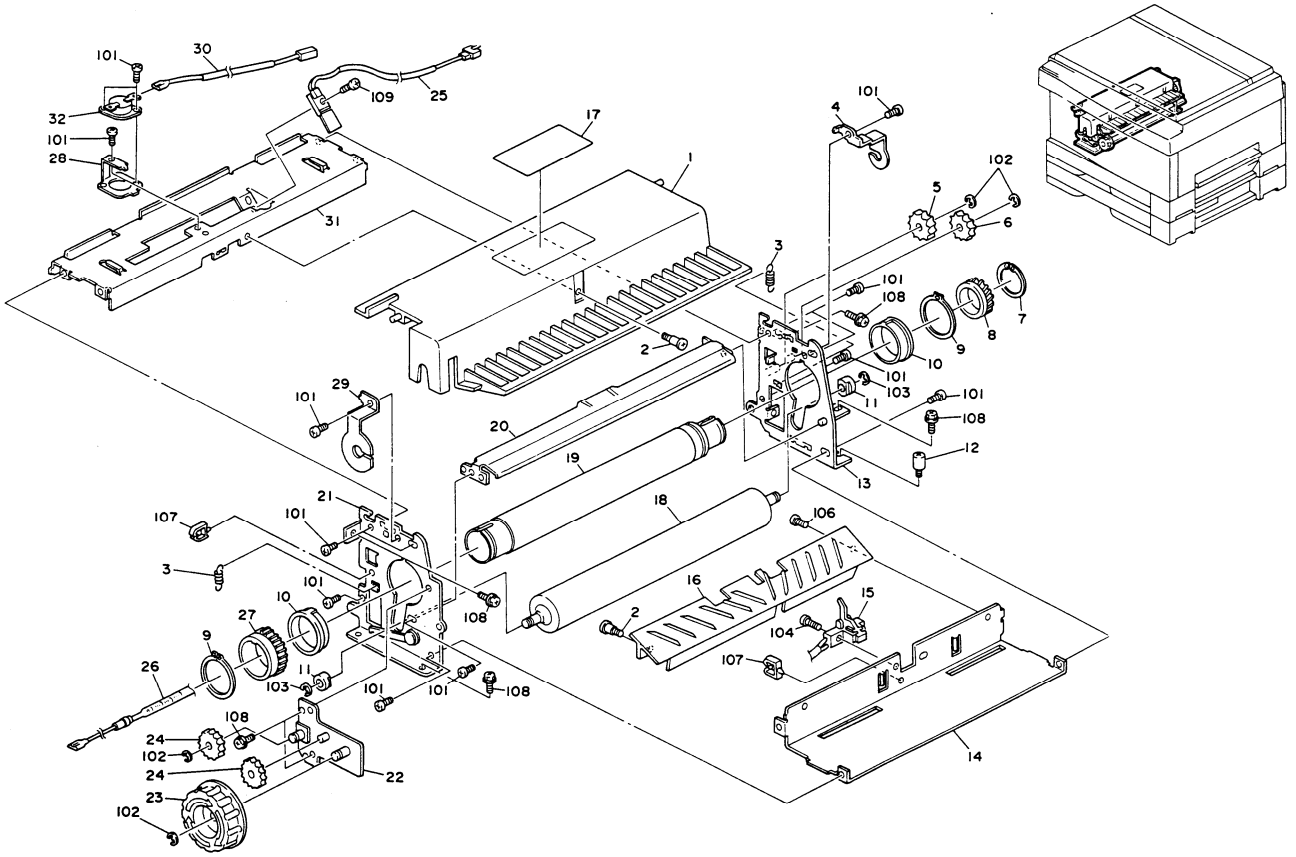


14. TRANSPORT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 3861	T/S Corona Unit	1
2	A077 3918	Spring - T/SUnit	4
3	AZ32 0055	Power Pack-Transfer	1
4	A077 3916	Grounding Plate - Transfer	1
5	A077 3915	Transport Guide	1
6	A077 3917	Decal - T.D.	1
7	A077 3881	Paper Guide-Transfer	1
8	A077 3867	Separator Plate - Transfer	1
9	AD02 3102	Transfer Corona Casing	1
10	AD02 2233	Front End Block - Transfer	1
11	A077 3891	Front End Block Cover - Transfer	1
12	A077 9521	Separation Corona Wire -10pcs/set	1
13	AD02 2234	Rear End Block - Transfer	1
14	A077 9522	Transfer Corona Wire -10pcs/set	1
15	A077 3892	Rear End Block Cover - Transfer	1
16	5446 6168	Spring - Duplex Pressure	2

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
102	0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
103	0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0313 0100M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	
105	0953 3014M	Screw With Toothed Washer - M3x14	
106	0807 2071	Washer - 3.1x7x0.2mm	
107	0414 0202W	Tapping Screw - M4x20	

15. FUSING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

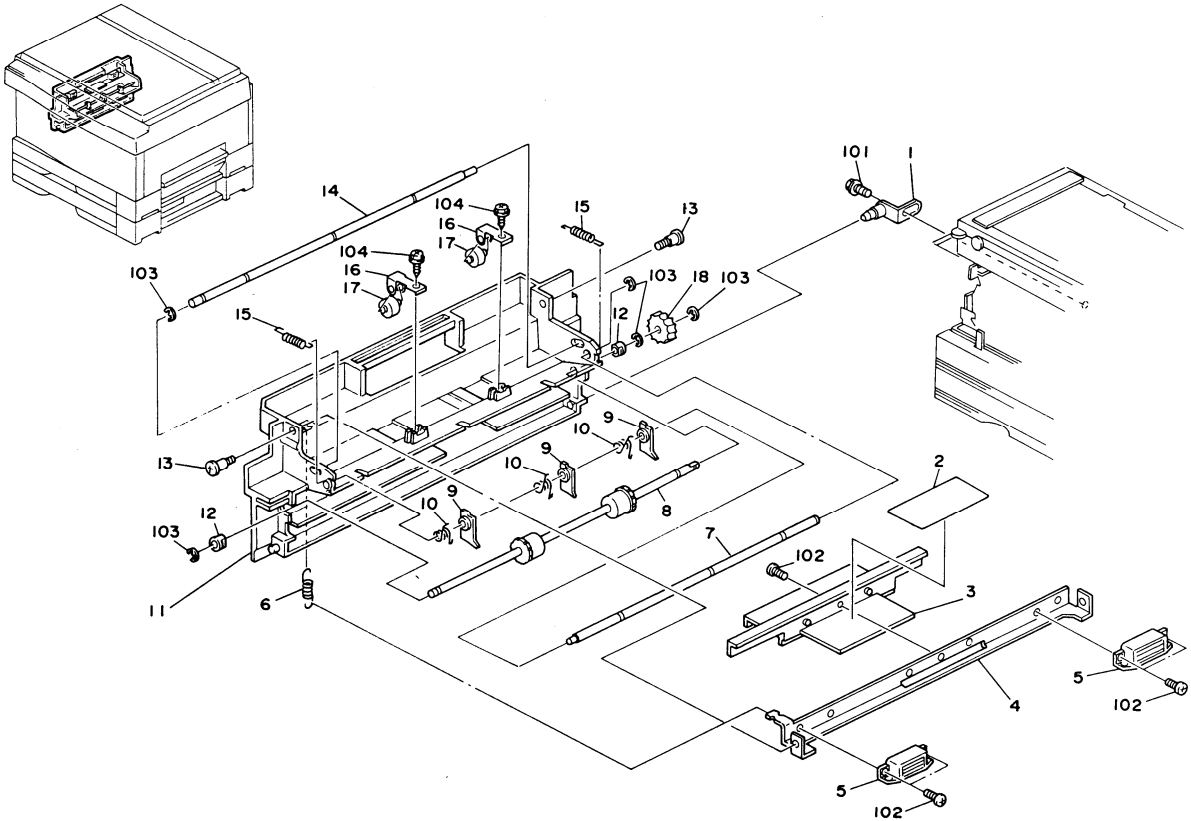


15. FUSING UNIT (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 4058	Fusing Unit - 115V	1
*	A077 4060	Fusing Unit - 220V	1
1	A077 4111	Fusing Cover	1
2	A077 4162	Shoulder Screw - M3	2
3	AA06 0400	Pressure Spring	2
4	A077 4080	Rear Heater Holder	1
5	AB01 3685	Gear - 20Z	1
6	AB01 3686	Gear - 20Z	1
7	A077 4197	Retaning Ring C - M20	1
8	AB01 3642	Gear - 27Z	1
9	AA10 0005	Retaining Ring C - M29	2
10	AE03 1009	Bushing - 8x28.8x35mm	2
11	AE03 1002	Bushing - 8x14x7	2
12	AA14 3285	Shoulder Screw - M4	1
13	A077 4063	Rear Snide Plate - Fusing	1
14	A077 4076	Lower Fusing Stay	1
15	AW02 0048	Photointerruptor	1
16	A077 4120	Fusing Exit Guide	1
17	AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	1
18	AE02 0024	Pressure Roller	1
19	AE01 1009	Hot Roller	1
20	A077 4071	Fusing Entrance Guide	1
21	A077 4059	Front Side Plate - Fusing	1
22	A077 4053	Fusing Knob Bracket	1
23	A077 4198	Fusing Knob	1
24	AB01 3643	Gear - 20Z	2
25	AW10 0016	Thermistor	1
26	AX54 0002	Fusing Lamp - 115V/900W	1
26	AX54 0003	Fusing lamp - 220V/900W	1
27	AB01 3653	Gear - 35Z	1
28	A077 4130	Thermostat Bracket	1
29	A077 4078	Front Heater Holder	1
30	A077 5439	Thermostat Harness	1
31	A077 4074	Upper Fusing Stay	1
32	AW11 0013	Thermostat - 170°C/120V/15A	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
102	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
103	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
104	0353 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x12	
106	0353 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
107	1105 0234	Clamp	
108	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
109	0353 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	

16. PAPER EXIT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

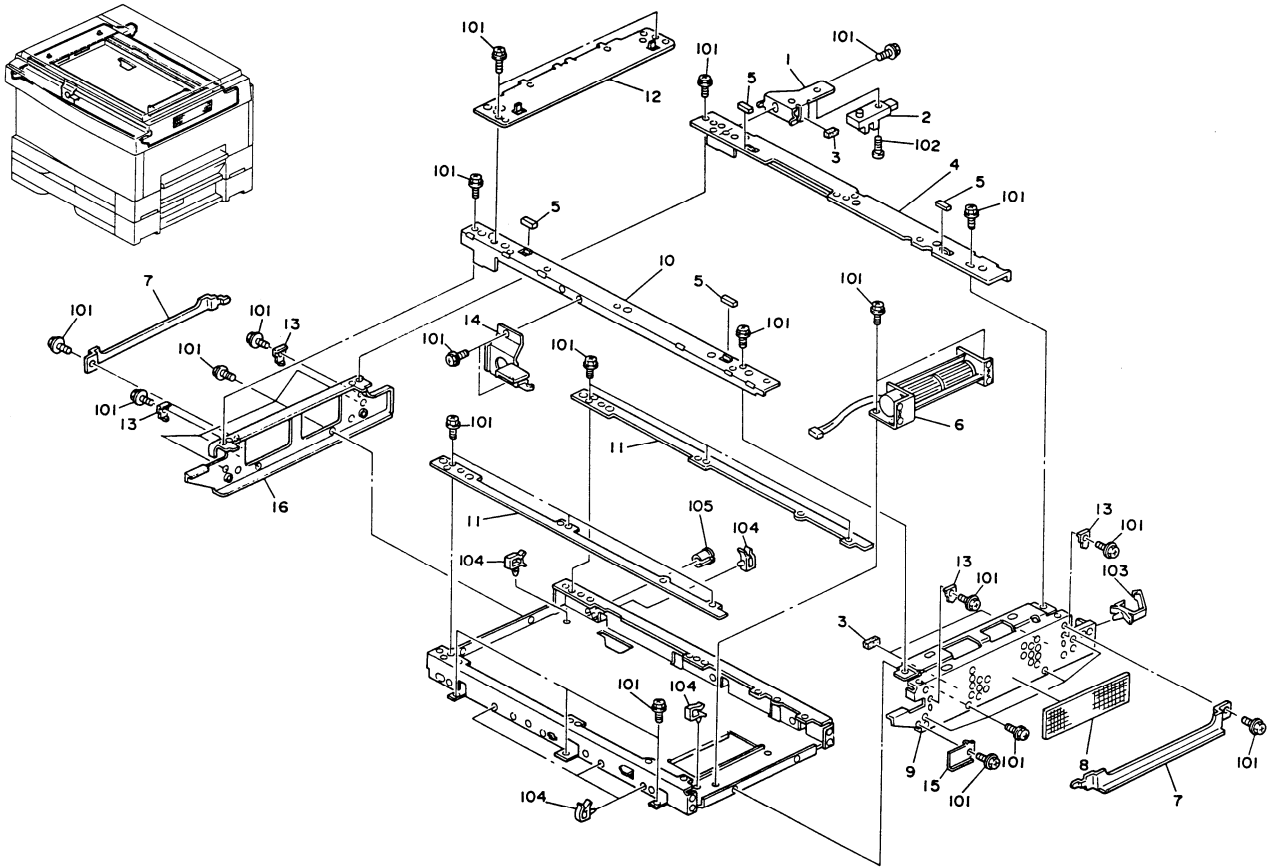


16. PAPER EXIT SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 4085	Exit Cover Holder	1
2	AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	1
3	A077 4126	Exit Cover Handle	1
4	A077 4125	Magnet Catch Holder	1
5	AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	2
6	AA06 0439	Spring - Exit Cover Handle	1
7	AA14 0448	Shaft - Hot Roller Stripper	1
8	AF04 0040	Exit Drive Roller	1
9	A077 9524	Hot Roller Stripper - 3pcs/set	1
10	AA06 6160	Spring - Hot Roller Stripper	3
11	A077 4116	Exit Cover	1
12	AA08 0120	Bushing - 6x7x10mm	2
13	A077 4164	Shoulder Screw - M3	2
14	AA14 0449	Release Spring Shaft	1
15	AA06 0401	Release Spring	2
16	A077 4106	Exit Roller Holder	2
17	A077 4167	Exit Roller	2
18	AB01 3644	Gear - 15Z	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
102	0353 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
103	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
104	0965 3008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	

17. UPPER UNIT I (A076/A077/A078)

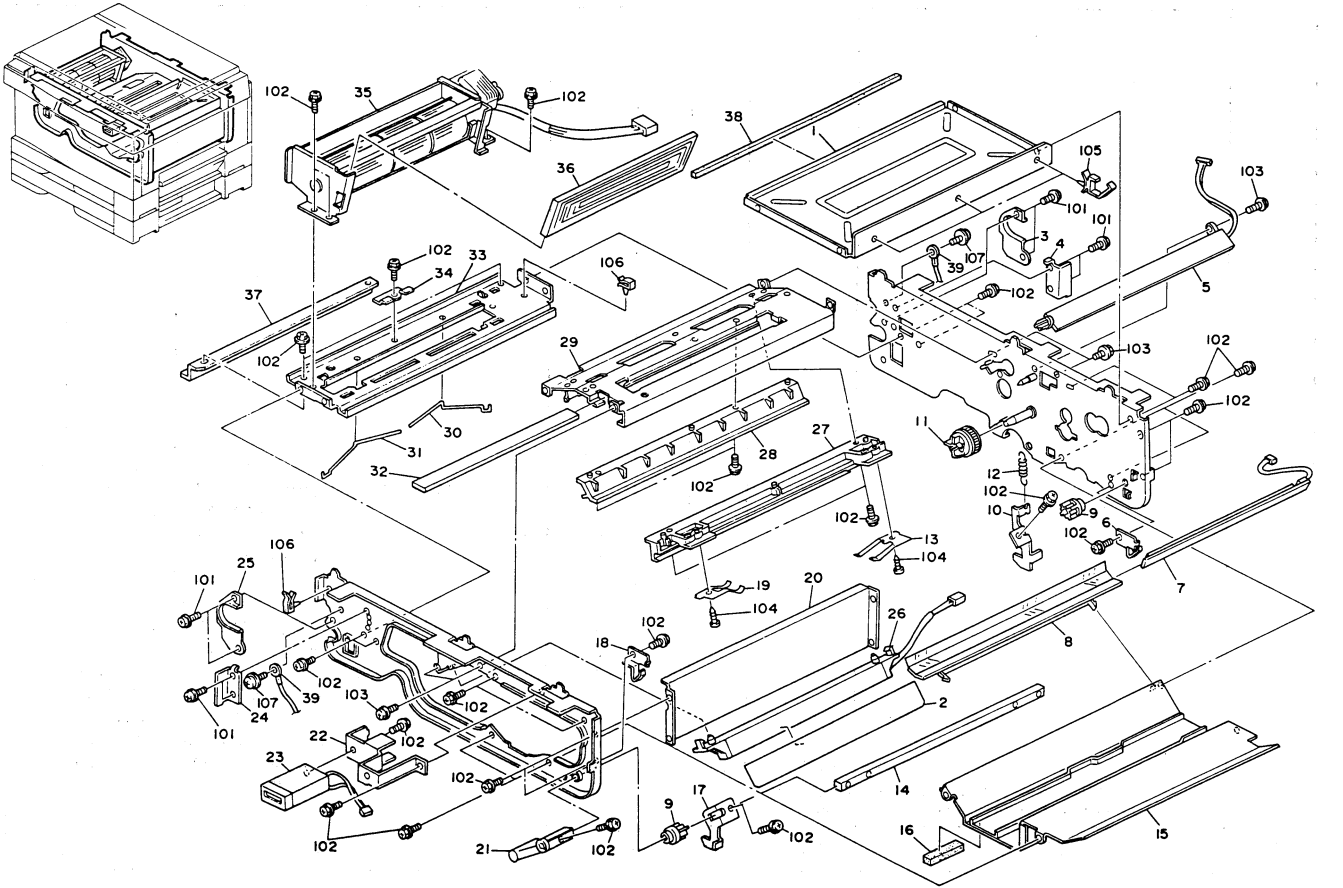


17. UPPER UNIT I (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1719	Sensor Bracket - 1st Scanner	1
2	AW02 0022	Photointerruptor	1
3	A077 1758	Stopper Cushion	3
4	A077 1764	Rear Optics Frame	1
5	5215 1924	Cushion	4
6	AX66 0005	Optics Cooling Fan	1
7	A077 1759	Wire Cover - Large - 220V	2
8	AA01 2048	Cooling Fan Filter	1
9	A077 1757	Right Stay - Optics	1
10	A077 1765	Front Optics Frame	1
11	A077 1766	Scanner Rail	2
12	A077 1770	Left Scale Bracket	1
13	A077 1796	Wire Cover - Small - 220V	4
14	A077 1768	Wire Support Bracket	1
15	A077 1797	Operation Panel Bottom Cover - 220V	1
16	A077 1762	Left Stay - Optics	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
102	0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	
103	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
104	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	
105	1106 0411	Bushing -11.5mm	

18. UPPER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)

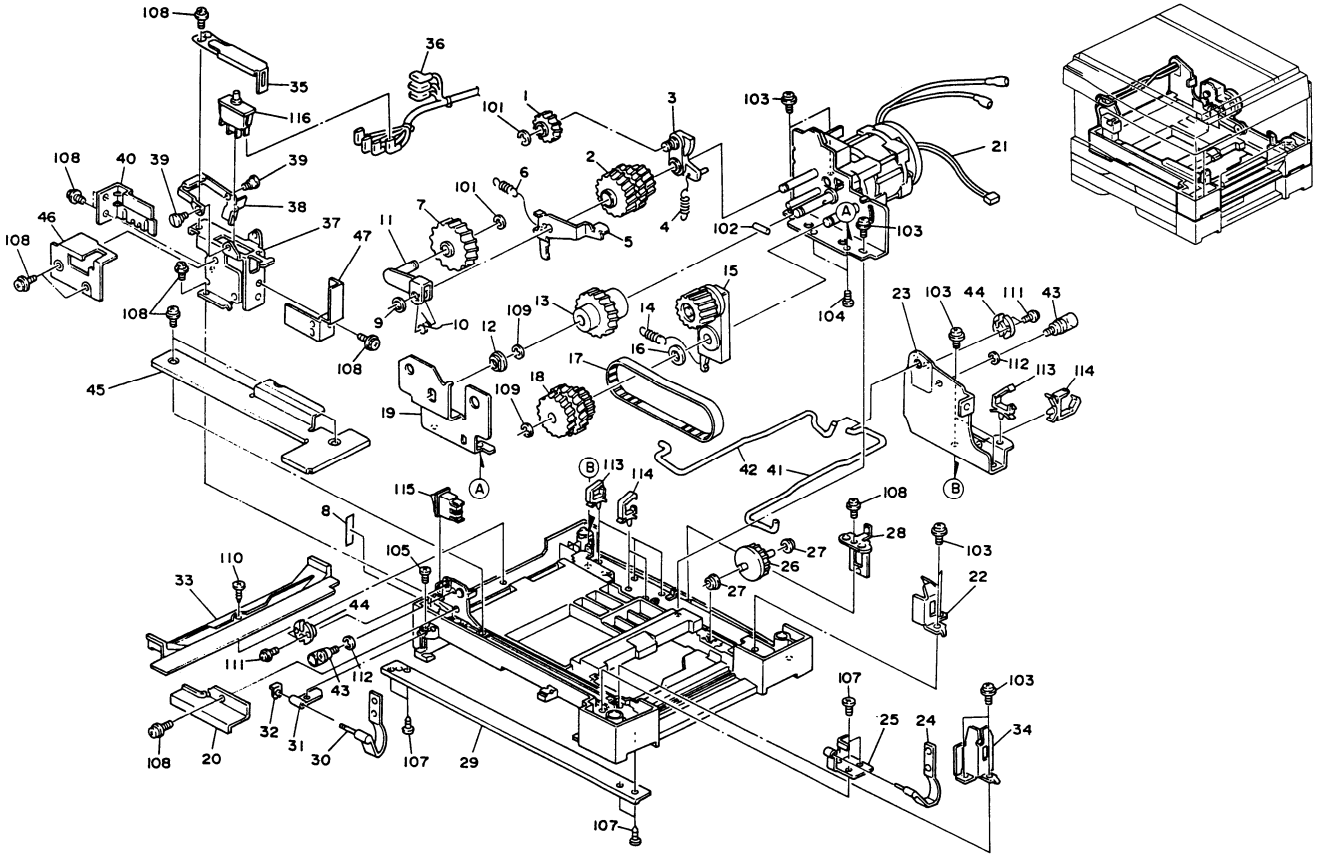


18. UPPER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1128	Shielding Plate	1
2	AA15 0321	Seal - 10x306	1
3	A077 1108	Rear Bracket - Torsion Bar	1
4	A077 1098	Torsion Bar Angle - Rear	1
5	A077 5276	Erase Lamp Unit	1
6	A077 1073	Grounding Plate - Right Rear	1
7	A077 5226	Pre - Transfer Lamp	1
8	A077 2060	PTL Guide	1
9	AA08 0104	Bushing - 6x11.5x15mm	2
10	A077 1102	Rear Lock Hook	1
11	A077 7012	Drum Drive Timing Pulley	1
12	AA06 6152	Lock Pawl Spring	1
13	A077 2056	Rear Spring - Main Charge	1
14	A077 1103	Lock Pawl Shaft	1
15	A077 7690	Development Guide Plate	1
16	AA16 2059	Cushion - 8x12x50	1
17	A077 1101	Front Lock Hook	1
18	A077 1072	Grounding Plate - Right Front	1
19	A077 2057	Front Spring - Main Charge	1
20	A077 1099	Right Development Stay	1
21	A077 1105	Release Lever - Upper Unit	1
22	A077 1127	Total Counter Bracket	1
23	5214 5224	6 Digits Total Counter	1
24	A077 1197	Torsion Bar Angle - Front	1
25	A077 1107	Front Bracket - Torsion Bar	1
26	A077 5611	Quenching Lamp - 115V	1
26	A077 5610	Quenching Lamp - 220V	1
27	A077 2055	Left Rail - Main Charge	1
28	A077 2058	Right Rail - Main Charge	1
29	A077 2052	Rail - Toner Shield Glass	1
30	A048 1097	Rear Spring Plate	1
31	A048 1096	Front Spring Plate	1
32	AC01 5013	Toner Shield Glass	1
33	A077 4222	Exhaust Fan Stay	1
34	A048 1095	Support Spring Plate	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
35	AX62 0020	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC115V 35W	1
35	AX62 0021	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC220V/50Hz 35W	1
35	AX62 0022	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC220V160Hz 35W	1
36	AA01 0072	Ozone Filter	1
37	A077 4226	Exhaust Fan Guide - 220V	1
38	AA15 1609	Seal - 3x6x342	1
39	A077 5326	Ground Wire	2
101	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
102	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
103	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
104	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
105	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
106	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	
107	0950 4006W	Philips Screw with Lock Washer - M4x6	

19. LOWER UNIT I (A076/A077/A078)



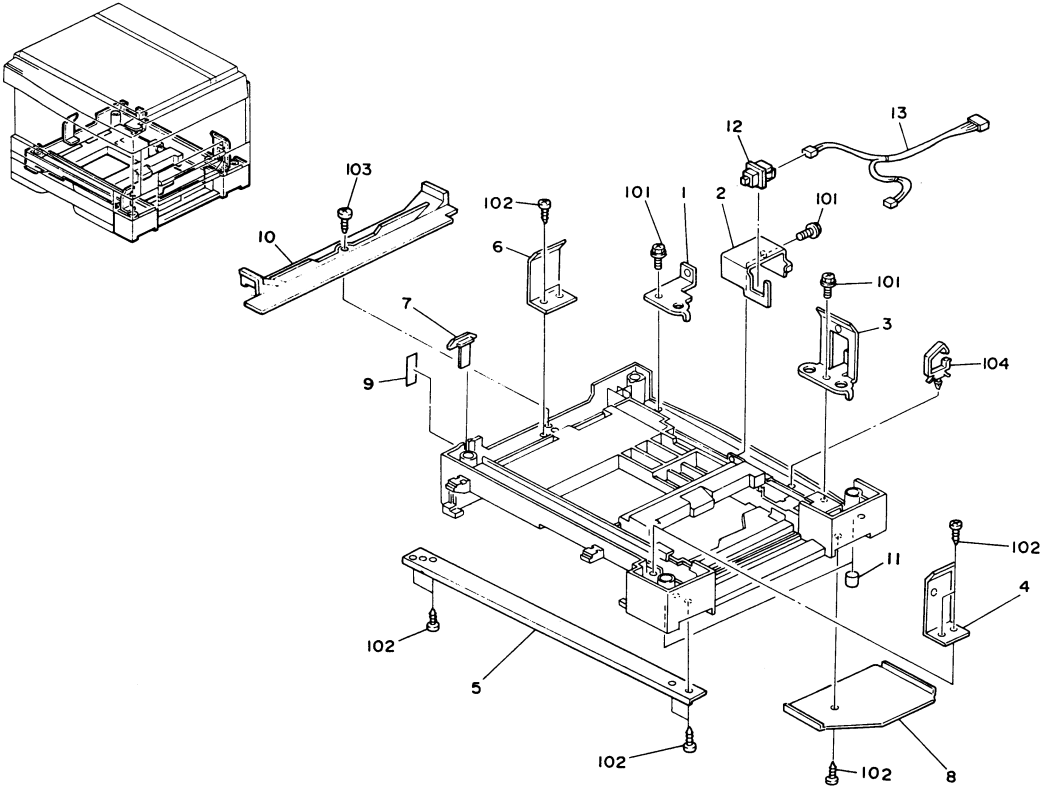
Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	AB01 3581	Gear-27Z	1
2	AB01 7228	Gear-20/33/36Z	1
3	A077 1191	Arm - Idle Gear	1
4	A028 7516	Spring -Arm Gear	1
5	A077 1173	Fusing Arm	1
6	AA06 0244	Spring	1
7	AB01 7229	Gear-35Z	1
8	A077 1394	Decal-Switch	1
9	AA13 2013	Spacer- M8.2	1
10	AA06 6159	Spring-Tension Arm	1
11	A077 1170	Tension Arm	1
12	5053 0420	Bushing - 10mm	1
13	AB01 3580	Gear-33Z(50Hz)	1
13	AB01 3579	Gear-30Z(60Hz)	1
14	5205 2613	Spring-Separation	1
15	A077 1185	Tension Bracket	1
16	A077 1123	Spacer- M16.1	1
17	A077 1168	Timing Belt-255XL	1
18	AB01 7226	Gear-33/36Z	1
19	A077 1085	Support Plate - Main Motor	1
20	A077 1122	Harness Cover - Front Left	1
21	AX02 0055	Main Motor - AC115V 27.4W	1
21	AX02 0056	Main Motor - AC220V/50Hz 22.9W	1
21	AX02 0058	Main Motor - AC220V/60Hz 27.4W	1
22	A077 1053	Rear Hook Guide	1
23	A077 1060	Rear Side Plate - Torsion Bar	1
24	A077 1288	Right Hinge - Front Cover	1
25	A077 1308	Right Hinge Holder	1
26	AB01 3608	Gear - 38Z (FT3413)	1
27	5203 1190	Bushing - 8x10x4mm(FT3413)	2
28	A078 1084	Connecting Bracket - 2nd Feed (~3413)	1
29	A077 1064	Paper Feed Stay	1
30	A077 1300	Left Hinge - Front Cover	1
31	A077 1309	Left t-tinge Holder	1
32	A077 1310	Snap Ring - M2	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
33	A077 1327	AC Harness Cover	1
34	A077 1052	Front Hook Guide	1
35	A077 4235	Switch Arm - Front Cover	1
36	A077 5314	AC Harness - 115V	1
36	A077 5313	AC Harness - 220V	1
37	A077 4233	Switch Bracket - Front Cover	1
38	A077 4234	Switch lever - Front Cover	1
39	A077 4239	Shoulder Screw - M3	2
40	A077 4238	Switch Cover - Front Cover	1
41	A077 1065	Front Torsion Bar	1
42	A077 1066	Rear Torsion Bar	1
43	A077 1074	Stopper Pin	2
44	A077 1094	Collar - Torsion Bar	2
45	A077 1078	Front Harness Cover	1
46	A077 4241	Push Switch Cover - Upper	1
47	A077 4242	Push Switch Cover - Lower	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
I 02	0633 0180G	Parallel Pin - 3x18mm	
I 03	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
I 04	0314 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
I 05	0353 0060F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M3x6	
I 07	0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
108	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
I 09	0720 0080E	Retaining Ring - M8	
110	0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
111	0951 3006W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	
112	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	
113	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
114	1105 0292	Wire Saddle	
115	1204 1576	Main Switch	
116	1204 1373	Push Switch	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly

20. LOWER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)

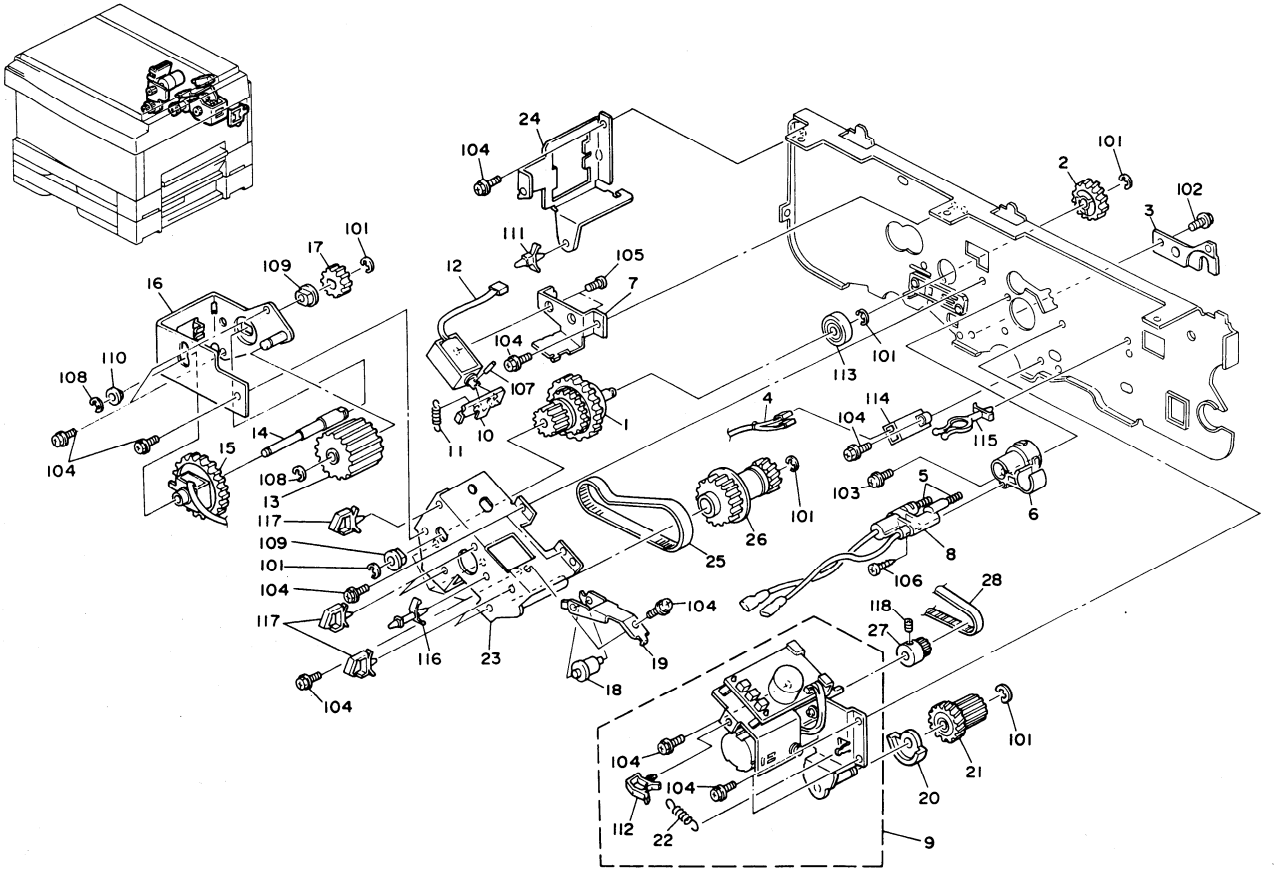


20. LOWER UNIT II (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1084	Rear Support Bracket	1
2	A078 1089	Bracket - Tray Set Sensor (FT3413)	1
3	A078 1085	Rear Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	1
4	A078 1086	Front Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	1
5	A077 1064	Paper Feed Stay	1
6	A078 1087	Left Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	1
7	A078 1091	Shielding Plate - Main Switch (FT3413)	1
8	A077 1118	Base Cover	1
9	A078 1075	Seal - 9.5x29.5 (FT3413)	1
10	A078 1385	2nd Feed Left Cover (FT3413)	1
11	G003 1198	Rubber Foot	2
12	AW50 0012	Push Switch (FT3413)	1
13	A078 5380	2nd Paper Feed Harness (FT3413)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
102	0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
103	0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	
104	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	

21. DRIVE SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

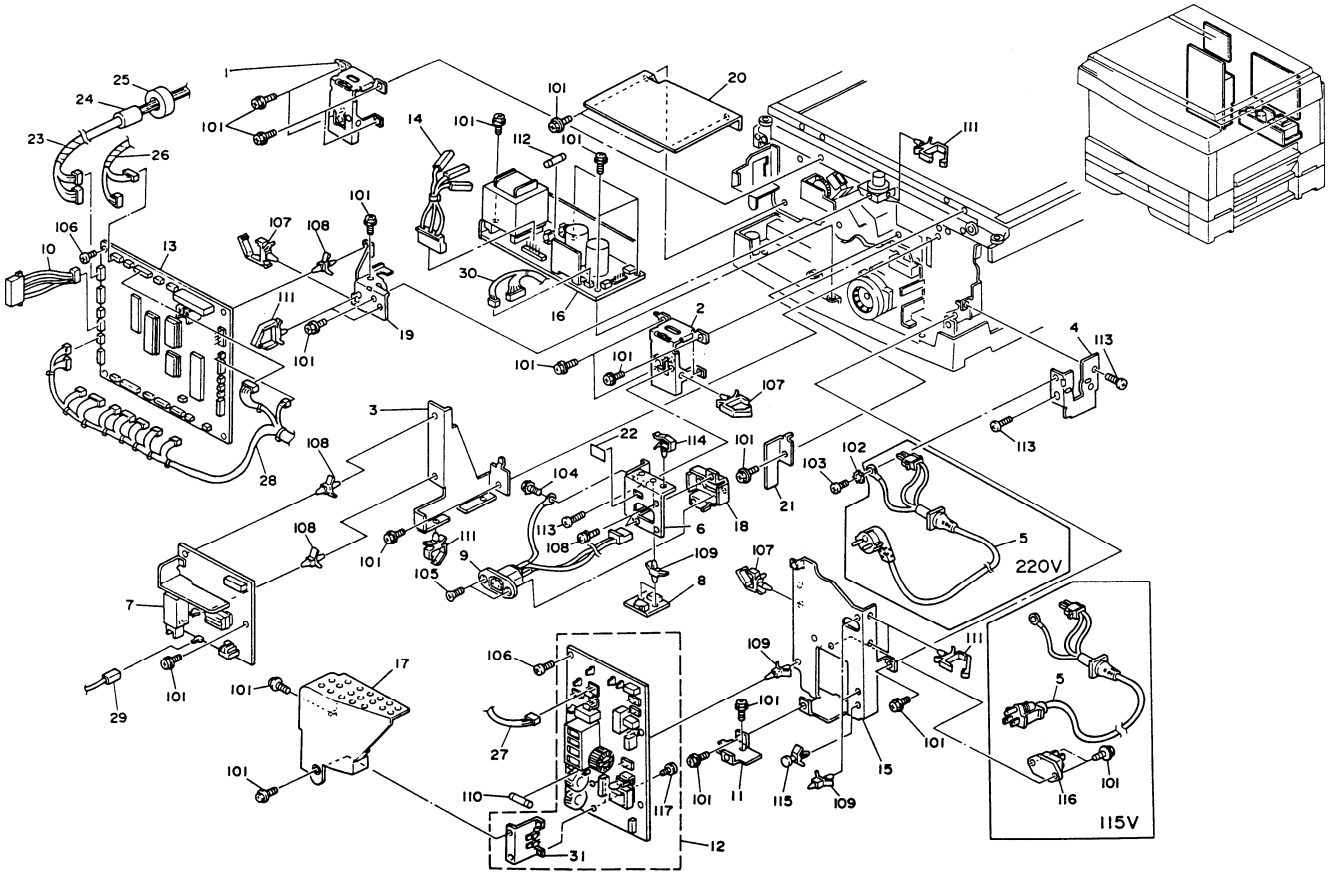


21. DRIVE SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	AB04 0014	Development Roller Clutch	1
2	AB01 3545	Gear - 28Z	1
3	A077 1188	Development Roller Gear Guide	1
4	A077 5345	Relay Harness - ID Sensor	1
5	5442 2107	Spring	2
6	AD02 1015	Receptacle Housing	1
7	A077 1156	Development Roller Solenoid Bracket	1
8	AD02 1013	Charge Corona Receptacle	1
9	A077 7001	Drum Drive Motor Ass'y - DC3.3W	1
10	A048 5870	Development Lever	1
11	5203 3127	Toner End Spring	1
12	AX11 0033	Development Solenoid	1
13	AB01 3547	Gear - 26Z	1
14	AA14 5151	Shaft - Toner Supply Clutch	1
15	AX20 0076	Toner Supply Clutch	1
16	A077 1157	Bracket - Toner Supply Clutch	1
17	AB01 3546	Gear - 18Z	1
18	A077 1154	Tension Roller	1
19	A077 1153	Spring Plate - Timing Belt	1
20	A077 1121	Positioning Collar	1
21	AB01 7224	Gear - 25Z	1
22	AA06 0473	Spring - DD	1
23	A077 1151	Development Drive Bracket	1
24	A077 1124	Key Counter Cover Bracket	1
25	AA04 3129	Timing Belt	1
26	AB01 7205	Gear - 20/35Z	1
27	AB03 0383	Pulley - Drum Drive	1
28	AA04 3195	Timing Belt - 80XL	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assemby
101	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
102	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
103	0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	
104	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
105	0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	
106	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
107	0623 0100E	Spring Pin - 3x10mm	
108	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
109	0805 3386	Bushing - 8mm	
110	0805 3384	Bushing - 5mm	
111	1105 0159	PCB Stud	
112	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	
113	0740 3008S	Ball Bearing - 60x8	
114	1102 5398	CT Connector - 6P	
115	1104 0401	Cable CliP	
116	1105 0163	Locking Support	
117	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
118	0574 0050E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M4x5	

22. ELECTRICAL SECTION (A076/A077/A078)



22. ELECTRICAL SECTION (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1092	Platen Cover Bracket - Right	1
2	A077 1087	Platen Cover Bracket - Left	1
3	A077 7005	Power Pack Bracket	1
4	A077 1075	Bracket - Power Supply Cord	1
5	A077 5306	Power Supply Cord - 115V	1
5	A077 5307	Power Supply Cord - 220V	1
6	A077 1162	ADF Bracket	1
7	AZ32 0056	Power Pack - C/B/G	1
8	A077 5121	Interface Board - ADF	1
9	A077 5316	DF Harness - 115V	1
9	A077 5317	DF Harness - 220V	1
10	A077 5312	Key Counter Harness	1
11	A077 1083	Support Bracket - AC Drive Board	1
12	A077 5660	AC Drive Board - 115V	1
12	A077 5670	AC Drive Board - 220V	1
13	A076 5101	Main Board (FT3113)	1
13	A077 5101	Main Board (FT3313/FT3413)	1
14	A077 5352	AC Switching Harness - 220V	1
15	A077 1069	AC Drive Board Bracket	1
16	AZ22 0012	DC Power Supply Board - 115V	1
16	AZ22 0013	DC Power Supply Board - 220V	1
17	A077 1169	AC Drive Board Cover	1
18	A077 1160	Bracket - ADF Connector	1
19	A077 1076	Main Board Bracket	1
20	A077 1189	Main Board Guide	1
21	A077 1190	AC Drive Board Guide	1
22	A077 1193	Seal - 15x28	1
23	A077 5355	Operation Panel Harness	1
24	1607 0553	Ferrite Core - TR-16-8-16	1
25	1607 0554	Ferrite Core - TR-20-10-10	1
26	A077 5325	Relay Harness - Optics Control PCB	1
27	A077 5350	AC Relay Harness - 115V	1
27	A077 5351	AC Relay Harness - 220V	1
28	A076 5321	DC Main Harness (FT3113)	1
28	A077 5320	DC Main Harness (FT3313/FT3413)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
29	A077 5360	Cable - Development Bias	1
30	A077 5324	Relay Harness - Drum Motor	1
31	A077 5419	Triac Ass'y - 115V	1
31	A077 5420	Triac Ass'y - 220V	1
101	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
102	0704 0050B	Toothed Washer - M5	
103	0314 0080M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	
104	0314 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	
105	0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	
106	0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
107	1105 0310	Wire Clamp	
108	0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
109	1105 0160	Clamp	
110	1107 0485	Fuse - 15A,125V	
111	1105 0292	Wire Clamp	
112	A077 5450	Fuse - 6.3A/125V(115V)	
112	1107 0754	Fuse - 6.3A/250V (220V)	
113	0950 3008W	Philips Screw With Lock Washer - M3x8	
114	1105 0267	Wire Clamp	
115	1105 0183	Spacer	
116	1405 0193	Triac - TG25C40 - 115V	
117	0951 3006B	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	

23. MAIN BOARD (A076/A077/A078)

B

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
B101	133
B102	134
B103	134

CAPACITOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C101	170
C102	170
C103	170
C104	170
C105	170
C106	166
C107	165
C108	170
C109	162
C110	170

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C111	170
C112	170
C113	166
C114	167
C115	167
C116	169
C117	170
C118	170
C119	169
C120	166

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C121	169
C122	166
C123	162
C124	170
C125	169
C126	169
C127	169
C128	168
C129	170
C130	166

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C131	164
C132	162
C133	170
C134	166
C135	166
C136	166
C137	170
C138	166
C139	170
C140	170

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C141	170
C142	170
C143	170
C144	163
C145	168
C146	170
C147	166
C148	170
C149	170
C150	166

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C151	165
C152	170
C153	166
C154	165
C155	170
C156	166
C157	163
C158	170
C159	170
C160	162

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C161	170
C171	170

CONNECTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN101	115
* CN102	105
* CN103	111
* CN104	107
CN105	122
CN106	103
CN107	117
CN108	109
CN109	104
CN110	116

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN111	113
CN112	108
CN113	106
CN114	109
CN115	107
CN116	105
CN117	112
CN118	106
CN119	109
CN120	121

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN121	120
CN122	118
CN123	110
CN124	109
CN126	120
CN130	105
CN131	114

DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D101	131
D102	131
D103	132
D104	132
D105	131

DPS

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
DPS101	126

IC

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC101	142
IC102	148
IC103	144
IC104	149
IC105	141
IC106	146
* IC107	139
IC108	143
IC109	141
* IC110	147

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC111	139
* IC112	139
IC113	1
(IC113)	124
IC114	139
IC115	139
IC116	2
(IC116)	125
IC117	140
IC118	150

*: A077/A078 copiers only

23. MAIN BOARD (A076/A077/A078)

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC119	151
(IC119)	101
(IC119)	188
IC120	135
IC121	136
IC122	138
IC123	137
IC124	143
IC125	141
IC126	142

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC127	161
IC130	145
(IC130)	123

JPS

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
JPS101	119

OSC

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
OSC101	152

RERAY

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
RAY101	156
RAY102	154
RAY103	157
RAY104	158
RAY105	154
RAY106	156
RAY107	154
RAY108	155
RAY109	156

RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R101	179
R102	172
R103	185
R104	184
R105	187
R106	179
R107	173
R108	176
R109	186
R110	184

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R111	184
R112	172
R113	179
R114	179
R115	179
R116	179
R117	172
R118	179
R119	174
R120	174

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R121	171
R122	172
R123	179
R124	174
R125	177
R126	172
R127	172
R128	171
R129	180
R130	182

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R131	178
R132	179
R133	179
R134	175
R135	179
R136	179
R137	181
R138	179
R139	153
R140	172

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R141	177
R142	183
R151	180

TEST POINT

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
TP102	102
TP103	102
TP106	102
TP107	102
TP110	102

TRANSISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
Q101	128
Q102	127

ZENER DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
ZD101	130
ZD102	130
ZD103	129

VARIABLE RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
VR101	160
VR102	159

23. MAIN BOARD (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A076 5101	Main Board (FT3113)	1
*	A077 5101	Main Board (FT3313/FT3413)	1
1	A077 5103	IC - UPD78P312ADW	1
2	A077 5104	IC - TMM27512AD-20	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	1005 0843	Heat Sink - OSH2425SP	
102	1101 0328	Connector Pin Contact	
103	1102 0675	Connector - 6P	
104	1102 4201	CT Header - 2P	
105	1102 4202	CT Header - 3P	
106	1102 4203	CT Header - 4P	
107	1102 4205	Connector - 6P	
108	1102 4206	CT Header - 7P	
109	1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	
110	1102 4210	CT Header - 11P	
111	1102 4211	CT Header - 12P(FT3313/FT3413)	
112	1102 4212	CT Header - 15P	
113	1102 4619	CT Header - 2P	
114	1102 4620	CT Header - 3P	
115	1102 4623	CT Connector - 6P	
116	1102 4631	CT Connector - 2P	
117	1102 4643	CT Connector - 2P	
118	1102 4645	CT Connector - 4P	
119	1102 5077	Connector - 4P	
120	1103 1770	Connector - 4P	
121	1103 1771	Connector - 5P	
122	1103 1772	Pin Header - 6P	
123	1104 0239	LSI Socket - 24P	
124	1104 0370	IC Socket - 64P	
125	1104 0588	DIP Socket - 28P	
126	1204 1541	DIP Switch	
127	1400 0072	Transistor - 2SC372Y	
128	1400 0291	Transistor - 2SA1020Y	
129	1401 0694	Zener Diode - RD6.8FB	
130	1402 0277	Zener Diode -1212 (FT3313/FT3413)	
131	1402 0919	Diode	
132	1402 1029	Diode - 1SS293	
133	1404 0237	Serge Absorber 47V 0.6J	
134	1404 0238	Serge Absorber 22V 0.6J	
135	1407 0610	IC - SN74LS32N	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
136	1407 0612	IC - SN74LS138N	
137	1407 0626	IC - SN74LS11N	
138	1407 1026	IC - SN74LS373N	
139	1407 1535	IC - TD62308AP	
140	1407 1839	IC - TL7705ACP	
141	1407 1970	IC - SN74LS07N	
142	1407 2635	TTL - TD62384AP	
143	1407 2869	IC - MPD71055C	
144	1407 3086	IC - TC74HC04F	
145	1407 3755	IC - MK47Z12B-20	
146	1407 3871	IC - TC74HC4066AP	
147	1407 3872	IC - TC74HC241AP (FT3313/FT3413)	
148	1407 3874	IC - M54667P	
149	1408 0155	IC - LM393	
150	1408 0839	IC - STK6712 BMK3	
151	1408 0939	Regulator - 9V 1A NJM7809FA	
152	1503 0071	Oscillator - 12MHz	
153	1600 1572	Resistor - 24 Ω 3W ±5%	
154	1601 7352	Resistor Array - 4.7k Ω	
155	1601 7356	Resistor Array - 22k Ω 1/8W±5%	
156	1601 7374	Resistor Array - 4.7K Ω	
157	1601 7392	Resistor Array - 1k Ω	
158	1601 7394	Resistor Array - 2.2K Ω	
159	1601 8171	Variable Resistor - 2KΩ ±20% 1/2W	
160	1601 8446	Resistor - 300k Ω 0.3T ±5%	
161	1602 7032	Noise Filter - 220pF 250V 7A	
162	1604 1366	Capacitor - 47μF ±20% 25V	
163	1604 1367	Capacitor - 100μF ±20% 25V	
164	1604 1381	Capacitor - 4.7μF 50V	
165	1604 1386	Capacitor - 100μF ±20% 50V	
166	1605 0604	Capacitor - 0.1μF 50V	
167	1606 1129	Capacitor - 30pF ±5% 50V	
168	1606 1326	Capacitor - 100pF 50v ±10%	
169	1606 1330	Capacitor - 470pF ±10% 50V	
170	1601 1336	Capacitor - 10000pF -20% + 80% 50V	

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
171	1611 4101	Resistor - 100 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
172	1611 4102	Resistor - 1K Ω 1/4T ±5%	
173	1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
174	1611 4106	Resistor - 10M Ω 1/4T ±5%	
175	1611 4220	Resistor - 22 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
176	1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
177	1611 4243	Resistor - 24k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
178	1611 4391	Resistor - 390 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
179	1611 4472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/4W ±5%	
180	1611 4561	Resistor - 560 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
181	1611 4562	Resistor - 5.6K Ω 1/4T ±5%	
182	1611 4682	Resistor - 6.8k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
183	1611 6391	Resistor - 390 Ω 1/2T ±5%	
184	1622 1001	Resistor - 1k Ω 1/4T ±1%	
185	1622 1101	Resistor - 1.1k Ω 1/4W ±1%	
186	1622 1301	Resistor - 1.3k Ω 1/4T ±10%	
187	1622 9761	Resistor - 9.76K Ω 1/4W ±1%	
188	0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	

24. AC DRIVE BOARD - 115V (A076/A077/A078)

AR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
AR401	123

B

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
B401	124
B404	124
B405	124

CAPACITOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C401	132
C411	135
C412	134
C413	134
C450	108

COIL

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
L401	137
L450	113

CONNECTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN401	106
CN411	105
CN413	110
CN415	110
CN417	103
CN418	107
CN419	109
CN420	104

DB

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
DB401	129

DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D401	116
D452	117
D453	117

FUSE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
FU401	133
(FU401)	136

NOISE KILLER

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CR401	131
CR402	131
CR403	130
CR404	130
CR410	130

PHOTO THYRISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
PC401	122
PC402	122

RA

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
RA401	114
RA402	115

RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R401	126
R402	126
R403	140
R404	139
R405	138
R406	125
R411	128
R412	128
R413	112
R414	112

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R451	127

TR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
TR401	1

TRANSFORMER

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
T401	102
T402	101
T403	101
T404	101
T405	101
T406	101
T407	101
T411	101
T412	101

VARIABLE RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
VR401	111

ZENER DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
ZD401	120
ZD402	121
ZD403	119
ZD404	118

24. AC DRIVE BOARD - 115V (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 5660	AC Drive Board - 115V	1
1	AZ10 0001	Transformer -110,115V/13W	1
101	1100 0657	Fastening Tab	
102	1100 1575	Fastening Tab	
103	1102 0959	Connector - 3P	
104	1102 1124	Connector - 3P	
105	1102 3601	Connector - 2P	
106	1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	
107	1102 4868	Connector - 3P -Black	
108	1606 1891	Capasitor - 22μF ±20% 250V	
109	1102 5938	Connector - 2P	
110	1102 5939	Connector - 2P	
111	1601 8138	Variable Resistor - 30k Ω 0.75W	
112	1611 4820	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
113	1607 0543	Choke - SC 15-100-F	
114	1208 1277	Relay - AC250V 16A	
115	1208 1279	Relay - AC250V 5A	
116	1401 0612	Diode - 1S1585	
117	1402 0780	Diode -11ES2	
118	1402 0407	Zener Diode -HZ-6B3	
119	1402 0416	Zener Diode - HZ58 -1	
120	1402 0433	Zener Diode - HZ982 -09	
121	1402 0539	Zener Diode - HZ9C -2	
122	1403 0614	Photo Triac - PB01AP-8	
123	1404 0233	Resistor - 100M Ω 3000V ±600V	
124	1404 0131	Varistor 270V 0.4W	
125	1611 4242	Resistor - 2.4k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
126	1600 1026	Resistor Array - 1kΩ 1W ±5%	
127	1602 0591	Resistor 1M Ω ±20% 1/2W	
128	1601 1880	Fuse Resistor 100 Ω 1/2W	
129	1405 0129	Rectifier - 100V 1.0A IB4B42	
130	1602 0908	Noise Killer	
131	1602 0895	Noise Killer - 0.1MF 120 Ω	
132	1604 0378	Capacitor - 1μF 50V	
133	1107 0485	Fuse - 15A 125V	
134	1605 0727	Capacitor - 4700pF ±20% 400V	
135	1606 1472	Capaciter - 0.1μF ±20% 250V	
136	1104 0375	Fuse Hoider	
137	1607 0054	Noise Filter - SN14-700	
138	1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
139	1611 4153	Resistor - 15k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
140	1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	

25. AC DRIVE BOARD - 220V (A076/A077/A078)

AR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
AR401	123

B

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
B401	124
B404	124
B405	124

CAPACITOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
C401	132
C411	135
C412	134
C413	134
C451	136
C452	136
C453	133

COIL

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
L401	137
L402	137
L451	113

CONNECTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CN401	106
CN411	105
CN413	110
CN415	110
CN417	103
CN418	107
CN419	109
CN420	104
CN421	108
CN425	2

DB

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
DB401	129

DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
D401	116
D452	117
D453	117

NOISE KILLER

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
CR401	131
CR402	131
CR403	130
CR404	130
CR410	130

PHOTO THYRISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
PC401	122
PC402	122

RA

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
RA401	114
RA402	115

RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R401	126
R402	126
R403	140
R404	139
R405	138
R406	125
R411	128
R412	128
R413	112
R414	112

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
R451	127

TR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
TR401	1

TRANSFORMER

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
T401	102
T402	101
T403	101
T404	101
T405	101
T406	101
T407	101
T411	101
T412	101

VARIABLE RESISTOR

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
VR401	111

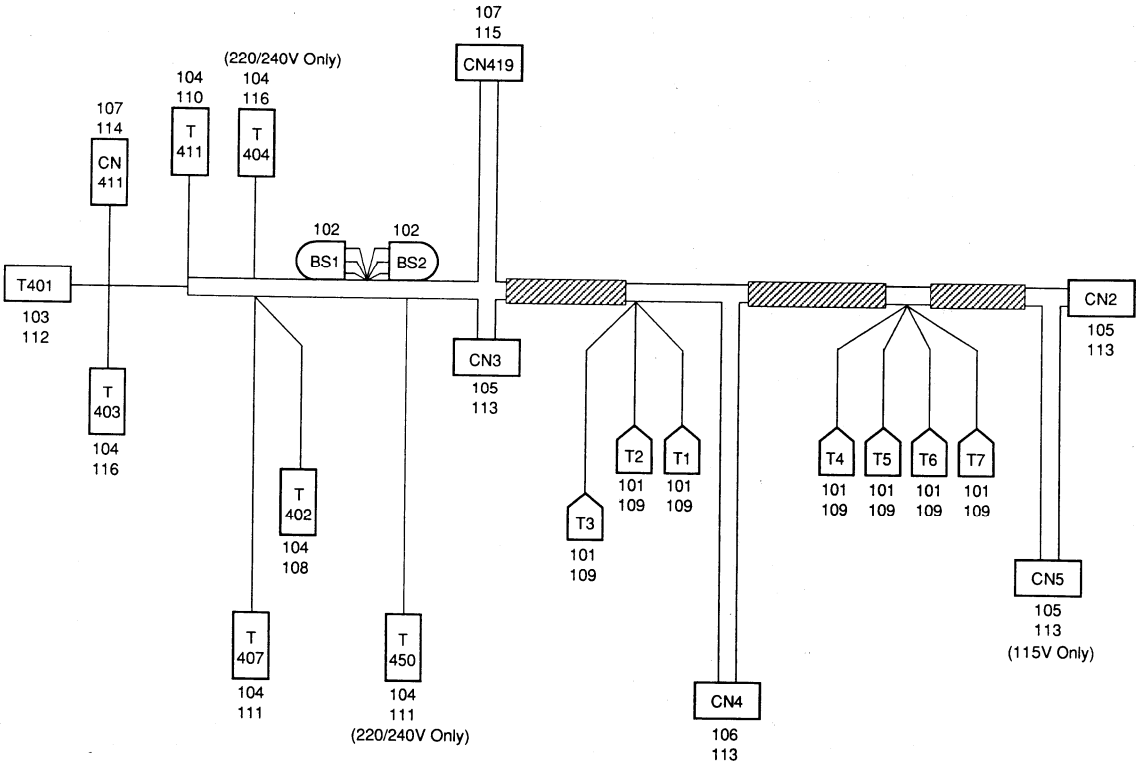
ZENER DIODE

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
ZD401	120
ZD402	121
ZD403	119
ZD404	118

25. AC DRIVE BOARD - 220V (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 5670	AC Drive Board - 220V	1
1	AZ10 0002	Transformer - 220,240V/13W	1
2	A048 5428	Shorted Connector	1
101	1100 0657	Fastening Tab	
102	1100 1575	Fastening Tab	
103	1102 0959	Connector - 3P	
104	1102 1124	Connector - 3P	
105	1102 3601	Connector - 2P	
106	1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	
107	1102 4868	Connector - 3P - Black	
108	1102 5820	Wefer - 3P	
109	1102 5938	Connector - 2P	
110	1102 5939	Connector - 2P	
111	1601 8138	Variable Resistor - 30k Ω 0.75W	
112	1611 4820	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4T ±5%	
113	1201 0069	SN Coil - 220/240V	
114	1208 1277	Relay - AC250V 16A	
115	1208 1279	Relay - AC250V 5A	
116	1401 0612	Diode -1S1585	
117	1402 0780	Diode -11ES2	
118	1402 0407	Zener Diode - HZ-6B3	
119	1402 0416	Zener Diode - HZ58 -1	
120	1402 0433	Zener Diode - HZ982 -09	
121	1402 0539	Zener Diode - HZ9C -2	
122	1403 0521	Photosensor - ON2153GL	
123	1404 0233	Resistor - 100M Ω 3000V ±600V	
124	1404 0247	Varistor - 470V 0.4W	
125	1611 4242	Resistor - 2.4k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
126	1600 1026	Resistor Array - 1kΩ 1W ±5%	
127	1600 1057	Resistor - 56k Ω 2W ±5%	
128	1601 1880	Fuse Resistor 100 Ω 1/2W	
129	1405 0129	Rectifier - 100V 1.0A IB4B42	
130	1602 0908	Noise Killer	
131	1602 0920	Noise Killer - 0.1MF 120 Ω	
132	1604 0378	Capacitor - 1μF 50V	
133	1605 0533	Capacitor - 4700pF ±20% 400V	
134	1606 1121	Capacitor - 0.1μF 25V	
135	1606 1476	Capacitor - 0.22μF 250V	
136	1606 1899	Capacitor - 1μF 250V	
137	1607 0218	Inductor - 6660μF	
138	1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
139	1611 4153	Resistor - 15k Ω 1/4T ±5%	
140	1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	

26. AC HARNESS (A076/A077/A078)

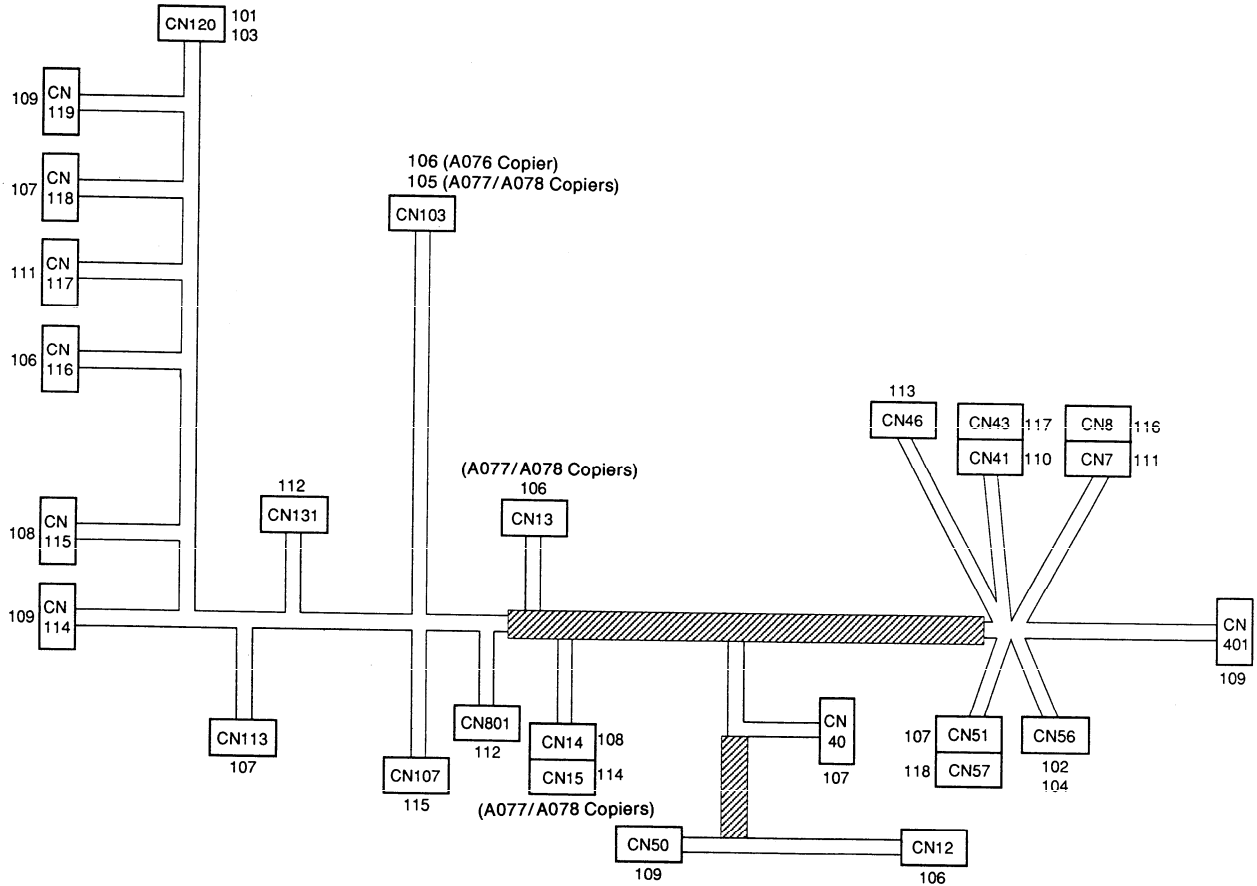


26. AC HARNESS (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A077 5314	AC Harness - 115V	1
*	A077 5313	AC Harness - 220V	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	1100 0301	Fastening Receptacle	
102	1100 0350	Closed Terminal	
103	1100 1168	Fastening Receptacle	
104	1100 1171	Fastening Receptacle	
105	1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
106	1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	
107	1100 1247	Terminal	
108	1102 5827	Connector - 2P	
109	1102 4600	insulating Sleeve	
110	1102 1403	Receptacle Housing	
111	1102 1404	Connector -1 P	
112	1102 1408	Connector - 1P	
113	1102 1515	Connector - 2P	
114	1102 1823	Connector - 2P	
115	1102 1825	Housing - 2P	
116	1102 3203	Contact	

27. DC MAIN HARNESS (A076/A077/A078)

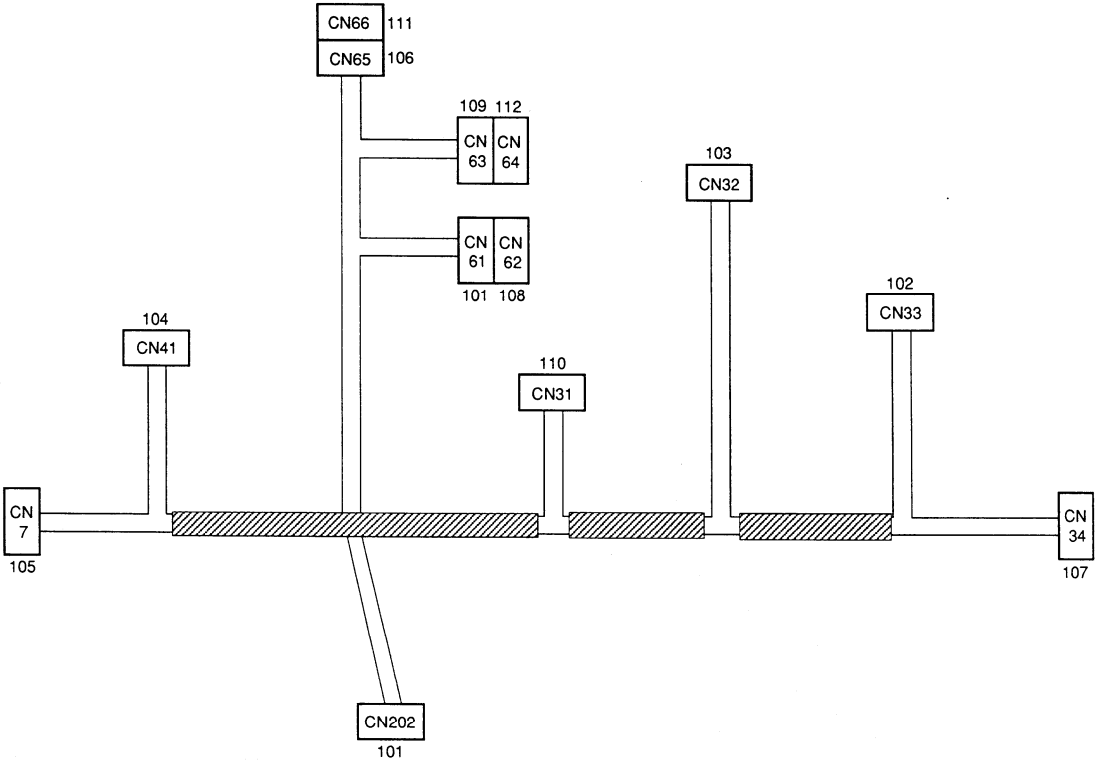


27. DC MAIN HARNESS (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A076 5321	DC Main Harness (FT3113)	1
*	A077 5320	DC Main Harness (FT3313/FT3413)	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	1100 1329	Contact	
102	1100 1330	Socket Contact	
103	1102 1985	Connector - 5P	
104	1102 2025	Pin Housing - 3P	
105	1102 4223	CT Receptacle - 12P	
106	1102 4214	CT Receptacle -3P	
107	1102 4215	Connector - 4P	
108	1102 4217	CT Receptacle 6P	
109	1102 4219	CT Receptacle -8P	
110	1102 4222	CT Receptacle - 11P	
111	1102 4224	CT Receptacle - 15P	
112	1102 4376	CT Receptacle -3P	
113	1102 4378	CT Receptacle -5P	
114	1102 4560	CT Connector -6P	
115	1102 4904	CT Connector -2P - Black	
116	1102 5828	Connector - 15P	
117	1102 5192	Connector - 11P	
118	1102 5851	Connector - 4P	

28. RELAY HARNESS - DC POWER SUPPLY (A076/A077/A078)



28. RELAY HARNESS - DC POWER SUPPLY (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
*	A0775335	Relay Harness -DC Power Supply	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
101	1102 4213	Connector - 2P	
102	1102 4214	CT Receptacle -3P	
103	1102 4215	Connector - 4P	
104	1102 4222	CT Receptacle - 11P	
105	1102 4224	CT Receptacle - 15P	
106	1102 4375	Connector - 2P	
107	1102 4376	CT Receptacle -3P	
108	1102 4473	CT Connector -2P	
109	1102 4893	Connector - 2P	
110	1102 4904	CT Connector -2P - Black	
111	1102 5144	Connector - 2P	
112	1102 5142	connector - 2P - Yellow	

29. DECAL (A076/A077/A078)

1

Symbols

Add Toner
Change toner cartridge.
Light Blinking:
Copying is possible.
Light On:
Copying is not possible.

Set Key Counter

Original Misfeed
Remove misfed original according to the instruction decal on the document feeder.

Paper Misfeed/Load Paper
Either there is a misfeed or paper has run out. Open the front cover and check for a misfeed according to the instruction decal. Pull out the paper tray to load paper.

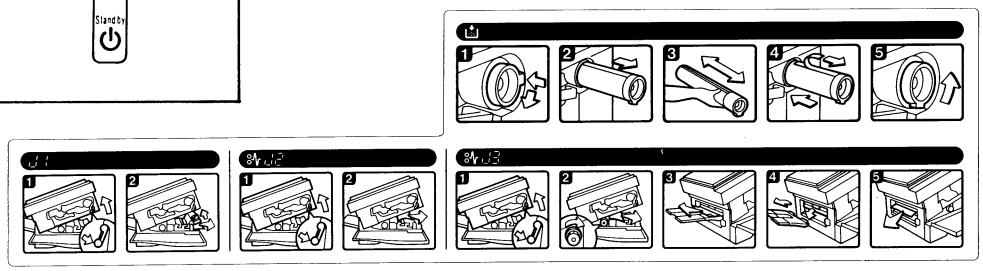
Paper Misfeed
Open the front cover and remove misfed paper according to the instruction decal.

Call Service Representative
Call your service representative and report the problem code displayed.

Blinking
Call a service representative. Copying is possible.

2

3



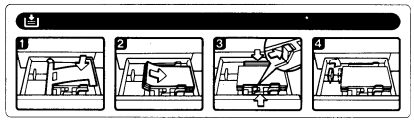
4

Enlarge		129 %
		121 %
Reduce	Create Margin	93 %
	11 ×15 ► 8½×11	74 %
	11 ×17 ► 8½×11	65 %
	A5 ► A4	141 %
	A4 ► B4	122 %
		93 %
	F ► A4 B4 ► A4	82 %
	A3 ► A4 A4 ► A5	71 %

5

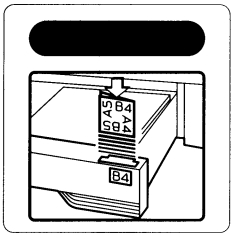
6

7



29. DECAL (A076/A077/A078)

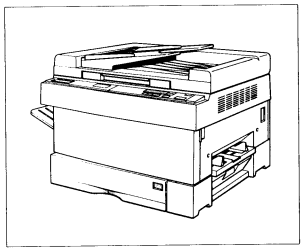
8



11

14

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS



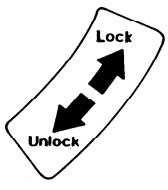
9

T . D

12

WARNING
- Do not incinerate waste toner.
- Toner dust may cause flashback when exposed to open flame.

10



13

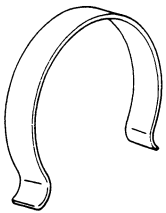
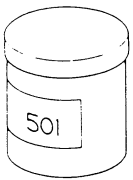
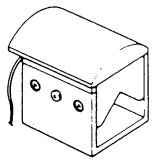
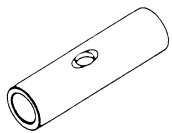
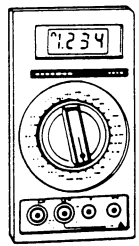
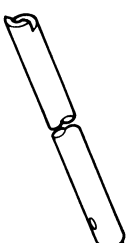
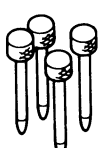
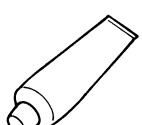
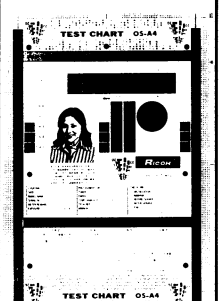
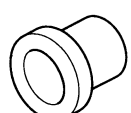
CAUTION
After disposing of the toner in the used toner tank, clear the memory counter (SP mode #58) using SP mode #83.
ATTENZIONE
Dopo l'eliminazione del toner, del serbatoio toner utilizzato, azzerare il contatore di memoria (modo SP #58) usando il modo SP #83.
PRECAUCION
Da Pues de retirar el toner usado de la botella recogedora borre la memória del contador (SP modo #58) utilizando el SP modo #83.
ATTENTION
Après avoir vidé le réservoir de toner usagé, veuillez effacer le compteur mémoire (Mode SP 58) en utilisant le mode SP 83.
ACHTUNG
Nach Entleeren des Tonerrestbehälters den Zähler SP 58 über SP Modus 83 zurückstellen.

29. DECAL (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A077 1366	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - English	1
1	A077 1411	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - German	1
1	A077 1412	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - French	1
1	A077 1413	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Italian	1
1	A077 1414	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Spanish	1
2	A077 1394	Decal - Switch	1
3	A077 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3113/FT3313)	1
3	A078 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3413)	1
4	A077 1493	Decal - Size Magnification - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	1
4	A077 1593	Decal - Size Magnification - LT (FT3313)	1
5	A077 1498	Front Scale Decal - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	1
5	AA00 1031	Front Scale Decal - LT (FT3313)	1
6	A077 2896	Decal - Manual Feed	1
7	A077 2897	Decal - Paper Tray	1
8	A077 2898	Decal - Paper Size Plate	1
9	A077 3917	Decal - T.D.	1
10	A048 1369	Decal - Toner Cartridge Lock	1
11	AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	1
12	AA00 0059	Caution Decal - English	1
13	AA00 0119	Caution Decal - Cleaning	1
14	A077 8607	Operating Instructions - LT	1
14	A077 8608	Operating Instructions - Asia	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly

30. SPECIAL TOOLS (A076/A077/A078)

1	2	3	4	5	6
					
7	8	9	10	11	
					

30. SPECIAL **TOOLS** (A076/A077/A078)

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly
1	A006 9103	Scanner Wire Clamp (Omega Clamp)	1
2	5203 9501	Grease (Shinetsu Silicone G-501)	1
3	5442 9106	Drum Shoe	1
4	5447 9104	Shoe Adapter	1
5	5420 9507	Digital Multimeter	1
6	5447 9078	Heat Resistance grease (MT-78)	1
7	A006 9105	Drum Shoe Shaft	1
8	A006 9104	Scanner Positioning Pin(4pcs)	1
9	A008 9502	Grease G-40M	1
10	5214 9500	Test Chart OS-A4 (10pts/set)	1
10	5214 9501	Test Chart OS-A4 (100pcs/set)	1
11	A077 9505	Drum Shoe Shaft Adapter	1

Index No.	Part No.	Description	Q'ty Per Assembly

PARTS INDEX

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A076 1255	Upper Cover (FT3113)	7- 24
A076 1701	Lens Bracket	13- 15
A076 1715	4th/5th Mirror Holder Bracket	13- 9
A076 1720	Mirror Adjusting Bracket	13- 8
A076 1775	Lens Cover	13- 1
A076 5101	Main Board (FT3113)	49- 13
A076 5101	Main Board (FT3113)	51- *
A076 5321	DC Main Harness (FT3113)	49- 28
A076 5321	DC Main Harness (FT3113)	59- *
A077 1052	Front Hook Guide	43- 34
A077 1053	Rear Hook Guide	43- 22
A077 1060	Rear Side Plate - Torsion Bar	43- 23
A077 1064	Paper Feed Stay	43- 29
A077 1064	Paper Feed Stay	45- 5
A077 1065	Front Torsion Bar	43- 41
A077 1066	Rear Torsion Bar	43- 42
A077 1069	AC Drive Board Bracket	49- 15
A077 1072	Grounding Plate - Right Front	41- 18
A077 1073	Grounding Plate - Right Rear	41- 6
A077 1074	Stopper Pin	43- 43
A077 1075	Bracket - Power Supply Cord	49- 4
A077 1076	Main Board Bracket	49- 19
A077 1078	Front Harness Cover	43- 45
A077 1083	Support Bracket - AC Drive Board	49- 11
A077 1084	Rear Support Bracket	45- 1
A077 1085	Support Plate - Main Motor	43- 19
A077 1086	Support Plate - Paper Feed	19- 20
A077 1087	Platen Cover Bracket - Left	49- 2
A077 1092	Platen Cover Bracket - Right	49- 1
A077 1094	Collar - Torsion Bar	43- 44
A077 1098	Torsion Bar Angle - Rear	41- 4
A077 1099	Right Development Stay	41- 20
A077 1101	Front Lock Hook	41- 17
A077 1102	Rear Lock Hook	41- 10
A077 1103	Lock Pawl Shaft	41- 14

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 1105	Release Lever - Upper Unit	41- 21
A077 1107	Front Bracket - Torsion Bar	41- 25
A077 1108	Rear Bracket - Torsion Bar	41- 3
A077 1118	Base Cover	45- 8
A077 1121	Positioning Collar	47- 20
A077 1122	Harness Cover - Front Left	43- 20
A077 1123	Spacer - M16.1	43- 16
A077 1124	Key Counter Cover Bracket	47- 24
A077 1127	Total Counter Bracket	41- 22
A077 1128	Shielding Plate	41- 1
A077 1151	Development Drive Bracket	47- 23
A077 1153	Spring Plate - Timing Belt	47- 19
A077 1154	Tension Roller	47- 18
A077 1156	Development Roller Solenoid Bracket	47- 7
A077 1157	Bracket - Toner Supply Clutch	47- 16
A077 1160	Bracket - ADF Connector	49- 18
A077 1162	ADF Bracket	49- 6
A077 1168	Timing Belt - 255XL	43- 17
A077 1169	AC Drive Board Cover	49- 17
A077 1170	Tension Arm	43- 11
A077 1173	Fusing Arm	43- 5
A077 1180	Arm - Tension Pulley	19- 1
A077 1183	Idle Pulley	19- 3
A077 1185	Tension Bracket	43- 15
A077 1188	Development Roller Gear Guide	47- 3
A077 1189	Main Board Guide	49-20
A077 1190	AC Drive Board Guide	49-21
A077 1191	Arm - Idle Gear	43- 3
A077 1193	Seal - 15x28	49- 22
A077 1197	Torsion Bar Angle - Front	41-24
A077 1255	Upper Cover (FT3313)	7-24
A077 1275	Front Cover	7- 13
A077 1287	Front Cover Chain	7- 17
A077 1288	Right Hinge - Front Cover	43-24
A077 1300	Left Hinge - Front Cover	43-30

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 1308	Right Hinge Holder	43- 25
A077 1309	Left Hinge Holder	43- 31
A077 1310	Snap Ring - M2	43-32
A077 1315	Right Cover	7- 10
A077 1320	Left Cover - Upper	7- 20
A077 1325	Left Cover - Lower	7- 19
A077 1327	AC Harness Cover	43- 33
A077 1330	Rear Cover- Upper	7- 7
A077 1332	Rear Cover- Lower	7- 31
A077 1337	Lower Inner Cover	7- 18
A077 1339	Upper Inne rCover	7- 11
A077 1350	Platen CoverAss'y	9- *
A077 1355	Platen Cover	9- 6
A077 1357	Platen Cover Pad	9- 7
A077 1361	Shoulder Screw	7- 28
A077 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal(FT3113/FT3313)	7- 27
A077 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal(FT3113/FT3313)	63- 3
A077 1366	Troubleshooting Guide Decal-English	9- 9
A077 1366	Troubleshooting Guide Decal-English	63- 1
A077 1394	Decal-Switch	43- 8
A077 1394	Decal-Switch	63- 2
A077 1411	Troubleshooting Guide Decal -German	9- 9
A077 1411	Troubleshooting Guide Decal -German	63- 1
A077 1412	Troubleshooting Guide Decal-French	9- 9
A077 1412	Troubleshooting Guide Decal-French	63- 1
A077 1413	Troubleshooting Guide Decal-Italian	9- 9
A077 1413	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Italian	63- 1
A077 1414	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Spanish	9- 9
A077 1414	Troubleshooting Guide Decal - Spanish	63- 1
A077 1493	Decal - Size Magnification - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	7-22
A077 1493	Decal - Size Magnification - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	63- 4
A077 1498	Front Scale Decal - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	7-21
A077 1498	Front Scale Decal - A4 (FT3313/FT3413)	63- 5
A077 1593	Decal - Size Magnification - LT (FT3313)	7- 22
A077 1593	Decal - Size Magnification - LT(FT3313)	63- 4

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 1671	Front Lamp Terminal	11- 27
A077 1672	Rear Lamp Terminal	11- 9
A077 1673	Thermofuse Terminal	11- 26
A077 1674	Thermofuse - 126°C/250V	11- 28
A077 1675	Exposure Lamp Harness	11-25
A077 1681	2nd ScannerAss'y	11- 8
A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	11- 11
A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	13- 4
A077 1690	Spring Plate - Mirror	15- 3
A077 1693	Pulley Guide Bracket	11- 7
A077 1695	2nd Scanner Pulley	11- 6
A077 1701	Lens Bracket	15- 29
A077 1702	Lens Shielding Cover	15- 33
A077 1704	Lens Shielding Plate - Rear	15- 31
A077 1706	Lens Shielding Plate - Front	15- 30
A077 1710	Lens Shutter	15-34
A077 1714	4th/5th Mirror Bracket	13- 7
A077 1714	4th/5th Mirror Bracket	15- 10
A077 1715	Rack Gear - Mirror Drive	15- 12
A077 1716	Sensor Shutter - 4th/5th Mirror	15- 11
A077 1717	4th/5th Mirror Guide	13- 5
A077 1717	4th/5th Mirror Guide	15- 8
A077 1719	Sensor Bracket - 1st Scanner	39- 1
A077 1721	Sensor Bracket	15-35
A077 1724	6th Mirror Bracket	13- 10
A077 1724	6th Mirror Bracket	15- 2
A077 1726	6th Mirror Bracket - Small	13- 13
A077 1726	6th Mirror Bracket - Small	15- 6
A077 1727	Rear Wire Clamp	11- 4
A077 1728	Front Wire Clamp	11-29
A077 1729	Wire Support Plate	11-20
A077 1730	Wire Adjusting Plate	11- 1
A077 1731	Rear Left Pulley	11-24
A077 1733	Rear Right Pulley	11-21
A077 1735	Front Pulley	11-22

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 1738	Scanner Motor Bracket	11- 17
A077 1741	Scanner Motor Pulley	11- 16
A077 1742	Cushion - Scanner Motor	11- 19
A077 1745	Cover - ADS Sensor	13- 16
A077 1745	Cover - ADS Sensor	15- 28
A077 1746	Mirror Adjusting Screw	13- 2
A077 1746	Mirror Adjusting Screw	15- 40
A077 1747	PhilipsTapping Screw -M3x8	13- 3
A077 1747	PhilipsTapping Screw -M3x8	15- 39
A077 1752	Cam Plate - Lens Shield	15- 26
A077 1753	GuidePlate-Lens Drive	15- 13
A077 1757	Right Stay -Optics	39- 9
A077 1758	StopperCushion	39- 3
A077 1759	WireCover-Large - 220V	39- 7
A077 1762	Left Stay-Optics	39- 16
A077 1764	Rear Optics Frame	39- 4
A077 1765	Front Optics Frame	39- 10
A077 1766	Scanner Rail	39- 11
A077 1768	Wire Support Bracket	39- 14
A077 1769	Upper Cover Bracket - 220V	15- 23
A077 1770	Left Scale Bracket	39- 12
A077 1773	Lens Cover Bracket	15- 18
A077 1775	Lens Cover	15- 1
A077 1781	Lens Motor Bracket	15- 24
A077 1791	Bracket - 4th/5th Mirror Motor	15- 16
A077 1796	Wire Cover - Small - 220V	39- 13
A077 1797	Operation Panel Bottom Cover - 220V	39- 15
A077 2051	Cleaner PadAss'y	25- 24
A077 2052	Rail - Toner Shield Glass	41-29
A077 2055	Left Rail - Main Charge	41- 27
A077 2056	Rear Spring - Main Charge	41- 13
A077 2057	Front Spring - Main Charge	41- 19
A077 2058	Right Rail - Main Charge	41- 28
A077 2060	PTL Guide	41- 8
A077 2070	Main Charge Corona Unit	25- 1

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 2072	Charge Corona Grid	25-22
A077 2254	Grounding Plate - Drum	25-20
A077 2259	Front Side Plate - Drum	25- 18
A077 2264	ID Sensor Holder	25- 14
A077 2272	Lower Drum Stay	25- 3
A077 2278	Pick-off Pawl Stopper	25- 10
A077 2282	Pick-off Pawl Guide	25- 11
A077 2290	Upper Left Stay - Drum	25- 15
A077 2292	Upper Right Stay - Drum	25- 17
A077 2294	Rear Side Plate - Drum	25- 5
A077 2566	Output Hub	19- 18
A077 2566	Output Hub	21- 16
A077 2578	Stopper - Torque Roller	19- 23
A077 2578	Stopper - Torque Roller	21- 11
A077 2579	Clutch Stopper - Pick-up Roller	19- 22
A077 2582	Lower Registration Guide	19- 47
A077 2586	Registration Sensor Bracket	19-46
A077 2610	Shaft - Pick-up Roller	19-40
A077 2610	Shaft - Pick-up Roller	21- 24
A077 2612	Shaft - Paper Feed Roller	19-25
A077 2612	Shaft - Paper Feed Roller	21-30
A077 2614	Torque Roller Shaft	19-35
A077 2614	Torque Roller Shaft	21-31
A077 2632	Registration Guide Plate	19-49
A077 2634	Relay Roller Guide	19- 19
A077 2641	Paper Feed Stay	19-50
A077 2641	Paper Feed Stay	21-38
A077 2643	1st Paper Feed Guide	19- 11
A077 2645	Guide Roller Bracket	17-23
A077 2651	Release Plate Bracket	19-31
A077 2651	Release Plate Bracket	21-22
A077 2654	Seal - 18x50mm	19-30
A077 2657	Pressure Plate - Torque Roller	19-37
A077 2657	Pressure Plate - Torque Roller	21-20
A077 2661	Front Side Plate - 1st Feed	19-45

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 2663	Rear Side Plate - 1st Feed	19- 15
A077 2666	Spacer - 7x14x0.7	19- 53
A077 2668	Seal - 20x26x2	19- 52
A077 2740	Spring - Reverse	19- 29
A077 2740	Spring - Reverse	21- 21
A077 2803	Paper Tray Ass'y	23- *
A077 2808	Paper Size Plate	23- 8
A077 2810	Registration Adjustment Plate	23- 14
A077 2815	Spacer - Bottom Plate	23- 16
A077 2817	End Fence	23- 9
A077 2822	Plate Release Slider	23- 7
A077 2825	Paper Tray Seal	23- 20
A077 2828	Seal - 0.2x18x24	23- 21
A077 2836	Side Fence Stopper	23- 12
A077 2841	Manual Feed Roller Bracket	17- 9
A077 2845	Manual Feed Guide	17- 1
A077 2852	Mylar - 20x37	17- 2
A077 2855	Mylar - 39x44	17- 3
A077 2856	Mylar - 41x80	17- 21
A077 2873	Band - Manual Feed Table	19- 38
A077 2875	Paper Guide - Manual Feed	17- 17
A077 2877	Rack Gear - Manual Feed	17- 18
A077 2879	Front Side Fence - Manual Feed	17- 15
A077 2881	Rear Side Fence - Manual Feed	17- 13
A077 2884	Manual Feed Cover	17- 16
A077 2887	Manual Feed Table	17- 14
A077 2896	Decal - Manual Feed	17- 26
A077 2896	Decal - Manual Feed	63- 6
A077 2897	Decal - Paper Tray	23- 18
A077 2897	Decal - Paper Tray	63- 7
A077 2898	Decal - Paper Size Plate	23- 19
A077 2898	Decal - Paper Size Plate	63- 8
A077 2909	Paper Feed Drive Cover - 220V	19- 54
A077 3550	Cleaning Unit	31- *
A077 3551	Toner Collection Cover	31- 31

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 3552	Toner Collection Casing	31-29
A077 3562	Upper Cleaning Casing	31- 28
A077 3582	Lower Cleaning Casing	31- 27
A077 3606	Cleaning Release Lever	31- 14
A077 3662	Toner Collection Shaft	31- 19
A077 3690	Cleaning Blade Bracket	31- 16
A077 3700	Cleaning Unit Frame	31- 4
A077 3861	T/S Corona Unit	33- 1
A077 3867	Separator Plate - Transfer	33- 8
A077 3881	Paper Guide - Transfer	33- 7
A077 3891	Front End Block Cover - Transfer	33- 11
A077 3892	Rear End Block Cover - Transfer	33- 15
A077 3915	Transport Guide	33- 5
A077 3916	Grounding Plate - Transfer	33- 4
A077 3917	Decal - T.D.	33- 6
A077 3917	Decal - T.D.	63- 9
A077 3918	Spring - T/S Unit	33- 2
A077 4053	Fusing Knob Bracket	35- 22
A077 4058	Fusing Unit - 115V	35- *
A077 4059	Front Side Plate - Fusing	35-21
A077 4060	Fusing Unit - 220V	35- *
A077 4063	Rear Side Plate - Fusing	35- 13
A077 4071	Fusing Entrance Guide	35-20
A077 4074	Upper Fusing Stay	35- 31
A077 4076	Lower Fusing Stay	35- 14
A077 4078	Front Heater Holder	35-29
A077 4080	Rear Heater Holder	35- 4
A077 4085	Exit Cover Holder	37- 1
A077 4106	Exit Roller Holder	37- 16
A077 4111	Fusing Cover	35- 1
A077 4116	Exit Cover	37- 11
A077 4120	Fusing Exit Guide	35- 16
A077 4125	Magnet Catch Holder	37- 4
A077 4126	Exit Cover Handle	37- 3
A077 4130	Thermostat Bracket	35-28

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 4162	Shoulder Screw - M3	35- 2
A077 4164	Shoulder Screw - M3	37- 13
A077 4167	Exit Roller	37- 17
A077 4197	Retaning Ring C - M20	35- 7
A077 4198	Fusing Knob	35-23
A077 4222	Exhaust Fan Stay	41- 33
A077 4226	ExhaustFanGuide -220V	41- 37
A077 4233	Switch Bracket-Front Cover	43- 37
A077 4234	Switch lever-Front Cover	43-38
A077 4235	Switch Arm -Front Cover	43- 35
A077 4238	Switch Cover-Front Cover	43- 40
A077 4239	Shoulder Screw - M3	43-39
A077 4241	Push Switch Cover -Upper	43- 46
A077 4242	Push Switch Cover -Lower	43- 47
A077 5101	MainBoard(FT3313/FT3413)	49- 13
A077 5101	MainBoard(FT3313/FT3413)	51- *
A077 5103	IC-UPD78P312ADW	51- 1
A077 5104	IC-TMM27512AD-20	51- 2
A077 5121	interface Board- ADF	49- 8
A077 5226	Pre - Transfer Lamp	41- 7
A077 5231	Scanner Drive Motor - DC60W	11- 18
A077 5232	4th/5th Mirror Motor - DC38.4W	15- 17
A077 5233	Lens Motor - DC57.6W	15- 22
A077 5241	ID Sensor Board	25- 6
A077 5276	Erase Lamp Unit	41- 5
A077 5306	Power Supply Cord - 115V	49- 5
A077 5307	Power Supply Cord - 220V	49- 5
A077 5312	Key Counter Harness	49- 10
A077 5313	AC Harness - 220V	43-36
A077 5313	AC Harness - 220V	57- *
A077 5314	AC Harness - 115V	43-36
A077 5314	AC Harness - 115V	57- *
A077 5316	DF Harness - 115V	49- 9
A077 5317	DF Harness - 220V	49- 9
A077 5320	DC Main Harness(FT3313/FT3413)	49- 28

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 5320	DC Main Harness (FT3313/FT3413)	59- *
A077 5324	Relay Harness - Drum Motor	49-30
A077 5325	Relay Harness - Optics Control PCB	49-26
A077 5326	Ground Wire	41-39
A077 5331	Relay Harness - 4th/5th Mirror HP	15- 41
A077 5335	Relay Harness - DC Power Supply	19- 51
A077 5335	Relay Harness - DC Power Supply	61- *
A077 5345	Relay Harness - ID Sensor	47- 4
A077 5350	AC Relay Harness - 115V	49-27
A077 5351	AC Relay Harness - 220V	49- 27
A077 5352	AC Switching Harness - 220V	49- 14
A077 5355	Operation Panel Harness	49- 23
A077 5360	Cable - Development Bias	49-29
A077 5419	Triac Ass'y - 115V	49-31
A077 5420	Triac Ass'y - 220V	49- 31
A077 5439	Thermostat Harness	35-30
A077 5450	Fuse - 6.3A/125V(115V)	49-112
A077 5610	Quenching Lamp - 220V	41-26
A077 5611	Quenching Lamp - 115V	41-26
A077 5660	AC Drive Board - 115V	49- 12
A077 5660	AC Drive Board - 115V	53- *
A077 5670	AC Drive Board - 220V	49- 12
A077 5670	AC Drive Board - 220V	55- *
A077 7001	Drum Drive Motor Ass'y - DC3.3W	47- 9
A077 7005	Power Pack Bracket	49- 3
A077 7012	Drum Drive Timing Pulley	41- 11
A077 7510	Development Unit	27- *
A077 7511	Toner Supply Unit - 115V	29- *
A077 7512	Toner Supply Unit - 220V	29- *
A077 7621	Lower Casing - Development Unit	27- 17
A077 7626	Development Retainer	27- 8
A077 7630	Entrance Seal Plate	27- 4
A077 7640	Gear Cover	27-21
A077 7650	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - 115V	29- 1
A077 7651	Upper Casing - Toner Supply - 220V	29- 1

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A077 7660	Toner Agitator Shaft	29- 17
A077 7661	Toner Agitator Lever	29- 3
A077 7665	Lower Casing - Toner Supply	29- 24
A077 7670	Spacer - Toner Supply Roller	29- 19
A077 7675	Slitter	29-31
A077 7676	Plate Nut	29-29
A077 7690	Development Guide Plate	41- 15
A077 8607	operating Instructions - LT	63- 14
A077 8608	Operating Instructions - Asia	63- 14
A077 9505	Drum Shoe Shaft Adapter	65- 11
A077 9510	Drum	25- 16
A077 9520	Charge Corona Wire -10 pcs/set	25- 26
A077 9521	Separation Corona Wire -10pcs/set	33- 12
A077 9522	Transfer Corona Wire -10 pcs/set	33- 14
A077 9523	Platen Cover Sheet -10 sheets/set	9- 8
A077 9524	Hot Roller Stripper - 3pcs/set	37- 9
A077 9530	Cleaning Entrance Seal	31-26
A078 1075	Seal - 9.5x29.5 (FT3413)	45- 9
A078 1084	Connecting Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	43- 28
A078 1085	Rear Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	45- 3
A078 1086	Front Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	45- 4
A078 1087	Left Support Bracket - 2nd Feed (FT3413)	45- 6
A078 1089	Bracket - Tray Set Sensor (FT3413)	45- 2
A078 1091	Shielding Plate - Main Switch (FT3413)	45- 7
A078 1255	Upper Cover (FT3413)	7- 24
A078 1333	Rear Cover - 2nd Feed (173413)	7- 26
A078 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3413)	7-27
A078 1363	Provisional Corresponding Decal (FT3413)	63- 3
A078 1385	2nd Feed Left Cover(FT3413)	45- 10
A078 2903	Clutch Stopper - Pick-up Roller	21- 10
A078 2905	Gear - 12Z	21- 17
A078 2914	Double Shaft Anchor	21- 5
A078 2918	2nd Paper Feed Guide	21-29
A078 2920	Mylar - 44x100	21-40
A078 2923	Relay Roller Guide - 2nd Feed	21-39
A078 2926	Relay Roller - 2nd Feed	21- 25
A078 2929	Front Side Plate - 2nd Feed	21- 35
A078 2934	Rear Side Plate - 2nd Feed	21- 3
A078 2942	Spring - 2nd Paper Feed Cover	21- 12
A078 2951	2nd Paper Feed Cover	21- 26
A078 5380	2nd Paper Feed Harness (173413)	45- 13

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	35- 17
AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	37- 2
AA00 0041	Decal - High Temperature	63- 11
AA00 0059	Caution Decal - English	31- 32
AA00 0059	Caution Decal - English	63- 12
AA00 0119	Caution Decal - Cleaning	31- 33
AA00 0119	Caution Decal - Cleaning	63- 13
AA00 1031	Front Scale Decal - LT (FT3313)	7- 21
AA00 1031	Front Scale Decal - LT (FT3313)	63- 5
AA01 0072	Ozone Filter	41- 36
AA01 2048	Cooling Fan Filter	39- 8
AA04 3129	Timing Belt	47- 25
AA04 3195	Timing Belt - 80XL	47- 28
AA05 0059	Scanner Drive Wire - 1710mm	11- 15
AA05 0060	Scanner Drive Wire - 1375mm	11- 12
AA05 0061	Scanner Drive Wire - 1407mm	11- 14
AA05 0062	Scanner Drive Wire - 921mm	11- 13
AA05 0063	Lens Drive Wire - 774mm	15- 38
AA06 0019	Sector Gear Spring	29- 4
AA06 0099	Cleaning Blade Spring	31- 13
AA06 0244	Spring	43- 6
AA06 0400	Pressure Spring	35- 3
AA06 0401	Release Spring	37- 15
AA06 0439	Spring - Exit Cover Handle	37- 6
AA06 0441	Spring - Registration Roller	19- 44
AA06 0471	Spring - Manual Feed	17- 5
AA06 0473	Spring - DD	47- 22
AA06 3106	Spring - Pick-up Pawl	25- 13
AA06 3180	Mirror Spring	13- 11
AA06 3180	Mirror Spring	15- 5
AA06 3181	Spring - Scanner Drive Wire	11- 23
AA06 3205	Spring - Bottom Plate Stopper	23- 6
AA06 3206	Spring - Front Side Fence	23- 11
AA06 3207	Spring - Paper Feed Pressure	23- 5
AA06 3229	Roller Spring	17- 22

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AA06 6105	Release Spring	19- 17
AA06 6105	Release Spring	21- 18
AA06 6152	Lock Pawl Spring	41- 12
AA06 6159	Spring - Tension Arm	43- 10
AA06 6160	Spring - Hot Roller Stripper	37- 10
AA08 0030	Bushing - 5x13x7	31- 9
AA08 0034	Bushing - 4x5x7	17- 24
AA08 0039	Bushing - 4x7x4.5	17- 10
AA08 0103	Front Drum Holder	25- 19
AA08 0104	Bushing - 6x11.5x15mm	41- 9
AA08 0106	Bushing - 8x10x14mm	19- 6
AA08 0107	Bushing - 6x8x8mm	19- 34
AA08 0107	Bushing - 6x8x8mm	21- 32
AA08 0120	Bushing - 6x7x10mm	37- 12
AA08 0139	Bushing - 4x7x12	17- 6
AA10 0005	Retaining Ring C - M29	35- 9
AA13 2013	Spacer - M8.2	43- 9
AA13 2150	Spacer - 17mm	21- 7
AA14 0448	Shaft - Hot Roller Stripper	37- 7
AA14 0449	Release Spring Shaft	37- 14
AA14 3070	Shoulder Screw - M2x2	7- 1
AA14 3264	Pulley Shaft	15- 20
AA14 3285	Shoulder Screw - M4	35- 12
AA14 3340	Shoulder Screw - M3	17- 27
AA14 5151	Shaft - Toner Supply Clutch	47- 14
AA14 5158	Pick-off Pawl Shaft	25- 9
AA14 5186	Shaft - Manual Feed Relay	17- 7
AA14 5187	Shaft - Manual Feed Pick-up	17- 12
AA15 0029	Seal - 0.2x12x140	7- 29
AA15 0198	Seal - 19x80	29- 23
AA15 0261	Seal - Lens Cover	15- 7
AA15 0262	Seal - 8x260mm	15- 21
AA15 0269	Seal - 12x342mm	29- 9
AA15 0270	Seal - 15x54mm	29- 32
AA15 0288	Seal - ID Sensor	25- 2

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AA15 0305	Seal - 20mm	15- 37
AA15 0314	Seal - 15x316mm	31- 30
AA15 0316	Seal - 55x270	7- 30
AA15 0321	Seal - 10x306	41- 2
AA15 1099	Seal - 2x14x37mm	29- 7
AA15 1109	Seal - 5x16x5	31- 17
AA15 1186	Front Side Plate Seal	27- 16
AA15 1275	Seal - Hopper	29- 6
AA15 1478	Seal	27- 10
AA15 1488	Seal - Hopper	29- 20
AA15 1609	Seal - 3x6x342	41- 38
AA15 1610	Seal - 3x4x285mm	27- 3
AA15 1612	Seal - 3x10x310mm	29- 30
AA15 1613	Seal - 4x21x299mm	29- 18
AA15 1614	Seal - 2x11x62.5mm	29- 14
AA15 1615	Seal - 2x11x44.5mm	29- 16
AA15 1616	Seal - 2x34.5x290mm	29- 26
AA15 1617	Seal - 4x23x50mm	29- 13
AA15 1618	Seal - Front Hopper	29- 27
AA15 1619	Seal - Rear Hopper	29- 28
AA15 1620	Seal - Front Lever	29- 15
AA15 1648	Seal - 2x15x72mm	31- 2
AA15 1649	Seal - 2x6x260mm	31- 3
AA15 1689	Seal - 6x30mm	25- 8
AA15 1694	Seal - Rear Lever	29- 8
AA15 1695	Seal - 2x5x337mm	29- 25
AA15 1715	Seal - 5x10x20	31- 34
AA15 1716	Front Blade Seal	31- 12
AA15 1717	Rear Blade Seal	31- 11
AA15 2016	Side Seal - Cleaning Front	31- 24
AA15 2017	Side Seal - Cleaning Rear	31- 21
AA15 2019	Seal - Mixing Auger	27- 6
AA15 2199	Seal - Toner Collection	31- 1
AA15 2202	Seal - Development Roller	27- 7
AA15 2203	Seal - Lower Development Roller	27- 19

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AA16 2059	Cushion - 8x12x50	41- 16
AB01 0085	Gear - 28Z	17- 8
AB01 1070	Gear - 12Z	31- 20
AB01 1119	Gear - 17Z	31- 7
AB01 1120	Gear - 18Z	31- 5
AB01 1121	Gear - 19Z	31- 8
AB01 3437	Gear - 19Z	27- 9
AB01 3438	Gear - 15Z	27- 18
AB01 3439	Gear - 23Z	27- 11
AB01 3440	Gear - 34Z	27- 22
AB01 3441	Gear - 20Z	27- 2
AB01 3545	Gear - 28Z	47- 2
AB01 3546	Gear - 18Z	47- 17
AB01 3547	Gear - 26Z	47- 13
AB01 3548	Gear - 36Z	29- 2
AB01 3549	Gear - 60Z	29- 5
AB01 3579	Gear - 30Z (60Hz)	43- 13
AB01 3580	Gear - 33Z (50Hz)	43- 13
AB01 3581	Gear - 27Z	43- 1
AB01 3605	Gear - 24Z	19- 14
AB01 3605	Gear - 24Z	21- 8
AB01 3606	Gear - 27Z	19- 12
AB01 3606	Gear - 27Z	21- 13
AB01 3607	Gear - 17Z	19- 8
AB01 3607	Gear - 17Z	21- 15
AB01 3608	Gear - 38Z (FT3413)	43- 26
AB01 3609	Gear - 14Z	17- 19
AB01 3621	Gear - 16Z	23- 15
AB01 3642	Gear - 27Z	35- 8
AB01 3643	Gear - 20Z	35- 24
AB01 3644	Gear - 15Z	37- 18
AB01 3653	Gear - 35Z	35- 27
AB01 3669	Gear - 17Z	21- 6
AB01 3685	Gear - 20Z	35- 5
AB01 3686	Gear - 20Z	35- 6

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AB01 7129	Gear - 20Z/72Z	15- 14
AB01 7204	Gear - 24Z/48Z	15- 15
AB01 7205	Gear - 20/35Z	47- 26
AB01 7206	Gear - 28/34Z	27- 23
AB01 7222	Gear - 17/33/42Z	19- 4
AB01 7223	Gear - 22/28Z	19- 5
AB01 7224	Gear - 25Z	47- 21
AB01 7226	Gear - 33/36Z	43- 18
AB01 7228	Gear - 20/33/36Z	43- 2
AB01 7229	Gear - 35Z	43- 7
AB01 7230	Gear - 35/15Z	31- 6
AB03 0383	Pulley - Drum Drive	47- 27
AB03 2024	**Pulley - Scanner Wire**	**11-** 30
AB04 0014	Development Roller Clutch	47- 1
AB04 4005	**Spring Clutch**	27-24
AC01 2041	Exposure Glass (FT3113)	7- 3
AC01 2042	Exposure Glass (FT3313/FT3413)	7- 3
AC01 5013	Toner Shield Glass	41- 32
AC02 0061	Lens - 10/180	13- 14
AC02 0061	Lens - 10/180	15-32
AC03 0065	4th/5th Mirror	13- 6
AC03 0065	4th/5th Mirror	15- 9
AC03 0066	6th Mirror	13- 12
AC03 0066	6th Mirror	15- 4
AC03 0067	1st Mirror	11- 5
AC03 0068	2nd/3rd Mirror	11- 10
AC04 2044	Left Scale (FT3313/FT3413)	7- 2
AC04 2046	Left Scale (FT3113)	7- 2
AD00 2018	**Cleaning Blade**	31- 18
AD00 2019	**Blade Cleaner**	31- 10
AD02 1013	**Charge Corona Receptacle**	47- 8
AD02 1015	**Receptacle Housing**	47- 6
AD02 2197	**Rear End Block - Main Charge**	25-34
AD02 2198	**Rear End Block Cover - Main Charge**	25-32
AD02 2233	Front End **Block - Transfer**	**33-** 10

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AD02 2234	Rear End **Block - Transfer**	**33- 13**
AD02 2260	Front End Block - Main Charge	25-25
AD02 2261	Front End Block Cover - Main Charge	25- 30
AD02 3100	Right Casing - Main Charge	25-21
AD02 3101	Left Casing - Main Charge	25-29
AD02 3102	Transfer Corona Casing	33- 9
AD03 3015	Toner Supply Roller	29-22
AD03 4002	Developer Tank	27- 1
AD03 6033	Backspin Plate	27-20
AD03 7027	Mixing Auger	27- 5
AD03 8031	Paddle Roller	27- 14
AD03 8032	Developer Agitator	27- 13
AD04 2019	Cleaning Brush	31-23
AE01 1009	Hot Roller	35- 19
AE02 0024	Pressure Roller	35- 18
AE03 1002	Bushing - 8x14x7	35- 11
AE03 1009	Bushing - **8x28.8x35mm**	**35-** 10
AF01 1021	Bottom Plate	23- 1
AF01 3013	Bottom Plate Pad	23- 2
AF01 4007	Front Corner Separator	23- 10
AF01 4008	Rear Corner Separator	23- 4
AF01 6051	Front Side Fence	23- 13
AF01 6052	**Rear Side Fence**	**23- 3**
AF02 0236	**Lower Registration Roller**	**19- 43**
AF02 0237	**2nd Relay Roller**	**19-42**
AF02 0239	**1st Relay Roller**	**19-24**
AF02 0241	**Paper Guide Roller - 1st Relay**	**17- 25**
AF02 1045	**Upper Registration Roller**	**19-48**
AF02 2042	**Middle Pressure Roller**	**21-28**
AF02 2062	**Relay Roller - Manual Feed**	**17-** 20
AF02 3009	**Pick-up Roller - Manual Feed**	17- 11
AF03 0008	**Pick-up Roller**	19-41
AF03 0008	**Pick-up Roller**	21- 1
AF03 0012	**Support Pick-up Roller**	**19- 39**
AF03 0012	**Support Pick-up Roller**	**21- 2**

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AF03 1015	Paper Feed Roller	19- 27
AF03 1015	Paper Feed Roller	21- 37
AF03 2012	Torque Roller	19- 33
AF03 2012	Torque Roller	21- 33
AF04 0040	Exit Drive Roller	37- 8
AF04 3028	Copy Tray - Slide	7- 4
AF04 3035	Copy Tray	7- 6
AG01 0020	Operation Panel Ass'y - USA (FT3313)	7- 23
AG01 0021	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia (FT3313)	7- 23
AG01 0024	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia (FT3413)	7- 23
AG01 0026	Operation Panel Ass'y - USA (FT3113)	7- 23
AG01 0027	Operation Panel Ass'y - Asia (FT3113)	7- 23
AG01 0040	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe (FT3313)	7- 23
AG01 0041	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe (FT3413)	7- 23
AG01 0042	Operation Panel Ass'y - Europe (FT3113)	7- 23
AG05 0055	Development Knob	27- 15
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	7- 14
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	17- 4
AG07 0004	Magnet Catch	37- 5
AW02 0022	Photointerruptor	15- 36
AW02 0022	Photointerruptor	39- 2
AW02 0047	Photointerruptor	19- 32
AW02 0048	Photointerruptor	35- 15
AW10 0016	Thermistor	35- 25
AW11 0013	Thermostat - 170°C/120V/15A	35- 32
AW50 0012	Push Switch	19- 21
AW50 0012	Push Switch (FT3413)	45- 12
AX02 0055	Main Motor - AC115V 27.4W	43- 21
AX02 0056	Main Motor - AC220V/50Hz 22.9W	43- 21
AX02 0058	Main Motor - AC220V/60Hz 27.4W	43- 21
AX11 0033	Development Solenoid	47- 12
AX20 0076	Toner Supply Clutch	47- 15
AX20 0083	Feed Relay Clutch	19- 10
AX21 0029	Paper Feed Clutch	19- 13
AX21 0029	Paper Feed Clutch	21- 9

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
AX21 0032	Registration Clutch	19- 9
AX53 0010	Exposure Lamp - 97V/300W (115V)	11- 3
AX53 0011	Exposure Lamp - 180V/330W (220V)	11- 3
AX54 0002	Fusing Lamp - 115V/900W	35- 26
AX54 0003	Fusing Lamp - 220V/900W	35- 26
AX62 0020	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC115V 35W	41- 35
AX62 0021	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC220V/50Hz 35W	41- 35
AX62 0022	Exhaust Fan Motor - AC220V/60Hz 35W	41- 35
AX66 0005	Optics Cooling Fan	39- 6
AZ10 0001	Transformer - 110,115V/13W	53- 1
AZ10 0002	Transformer - 220,240V/13W	55- 1
AZ22 0012	DC Power Supply Board - 115V	49- 16
AZ22 0013	DC Power Supply Board - 220V	49- 16
AZ32 0055	Power Pack - Transfer	33- 3
AZ32 0056	Power Pack - C/B/G	49- 7
A006 1352	Key Counter Cover	7- 9
A006 2122	Cleaner Stopper	25- 36
A006 2270	Pick-off Pawl	25- 7
A006 2280	Drum Guide	25- 4
A006 3603	Front Brush Holder	31- 25
A006 3604	Rear Brush Holder	31- 22
A006 4493	Guide - Copy Tray	7- 5
A006 9103	Scanner Wire Clamp (Omega Clamp)	65- 1
A006 9104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4pcs)	65- 8
A006 9105	Drum Shoe Shaft	65- 7
A008 2087	Corona Cleaner Pad	25- 35
A008 9502	Grease G-40M	65- 9
A017 1287	Chain Stopper Hook	7- 16
A017 1288	Hook	7- 15
A017 1924	Flex Hinge - Platen Cover	9- 2
A028 7516	Spring - Arm Gear	43- 4
A048 1095	Support Spring Plate	41- 34
A048 1096	Front Spring Plate	41- 31
A048 1097	Rear Spring Plate	41- 30
A048 1369	Decal - Toner Cartridge Lock	7- 12

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
A048 1369	Decal - Toner Cartridge Lock	63- 10
A048 1721	Spring Plate A	11- 2
A048 2276	Ring - Transport Bracket	25- 12
A048 2679	Spring Plate	21- 27
A048 5110	Optics Control Board	13- 17
A048 5110	Optics Control Board	15- 27
A048 5428	Shorted Connector	55- 2
A048 5870	Development Lever	47- 10
A069 2127	Adjuster - Main Charge	25- 27
A069 2130	Anchor - Grid	25- 23
A069 2152	Cleaner Stay	25- 31
G003 1198	Rubber Foot	45- 11
G617 1819	Spring - Arm Tension Pulley	19- 2
5053 0223	Bushing - 8mm	19- 7
5053 0233	Bushing - 8mm	21- 36
5053 0420	Bushing - 10mm	43- 12
5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	19- 26
5053 0447	Bushing - 6mm	21- 14
5203 1190	Bushing - 8x10x4mm (FT3413)	43- 27
5203 1359	Platen Cover Washer	9- 5
5203 3127	Toner End Spring	47- 11
5203 9501	Grease (Shinetsu Silicone G-501)	65- 2
5205 2613	Spring - Separation	43- 14
5205 3103	Bushing - 6mm	27- 12
5206 2686	Snap Ring	19- 28
5206 2686	Snap Ring	21- 34
5214 5224	6 Digits Total Counter	41- 23
5214 9500	Test Chart OS-A4 (10pcs/set)	65- 10
5214 9501	Test Chart OS-A4 (100pcs/set)	65- 10
5215 1806	Pulley	15- 19
5215 1812	Lens Drive Pulley	15- 25
5215 1924	Cushion	7- 25
5215 1924	Cushion	39- 5
5215 3303	Seal - Toner Supply Roller	29- 21
5215 3327	Shaft - Agitator	29- 12

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
5215 3328	Joint - Hopper	29- 11
5215 3347	Spring - Gear	29- 10
5216 1372	Ratch - Grommet	9- 3
5216 1373	Ratch - Plunger	9- 1
5216 1374	Hinge Shaft - Platen Cover	9- 4
5403 6225	Spring - Shutter Plate	21- 4
5409 1238	Catch Rotary	23- 17
5420 1515	Plate - Key Counter	7- 8
5420 9507	Digital Multimeter	65- 5
5442 2107	Spring	47- 5
5442 2108	Spring - Corona Wire	25- 28
5442 2110	Plug - Corona Unit	25- 33
5442 2624	Shoulder Screw - M3	19- 36
5442 2624	Shoulder Screw - M3	21- 23
5442 9106	Drum Shoe	65- 3
5446 3648	Stepped Screw - M4	31- 15
5446 6168	Spring - Duplex Pressure	33- 16
5447 2695	Input Hub	19- 16
5447 2695	Input Hub	21- 19
5447 9078	Heat Resistance grease (MT-78)	65- 6
5447 9104	Shoe Adapter	65- 4

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	31-102
0313 0050W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x5	47-105
0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	7-106
0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	51-188
0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	11-101
0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	33-103
0313 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	49-106
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	19-103
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	21-103
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	35-101
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	37-101
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	41-103
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	47-102
0313 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	49-108
0313 0100M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x10	33-104
0314 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	43-104
0314 0060M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x6	49-104
0314 0080M	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x8	49-103
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	15-101
0314 0100W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x10	39-102
0314 0200B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M4x20	11-107
0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	7-102
0323 0060W	Philips Sunken Head Screw - M3x6	49-105
0353 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	35-109
0353 0060F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M3x6	7-101
0353 0060F	Philips Truss Head Screw - M3x6	43-105
0353 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	35-106
0353 0060W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	37-102
0353 0120W	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x12	35-104
0354 0080F	Screw - M4x8	7-105
0413 0062W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	25-101
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	7-103
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	15-103
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	17-101
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	25-103

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	27-106
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	33-101
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	41-104
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	47-106
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	13-103
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	15-107
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	27-103
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	29-102
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	31-105
0413 0102W	Tapping Screw - M3x10	33-102
0413 0142W	Tapping Screw - M3x14	31-104
0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	43-110
0414 0102F	Tapping Screw - M4x10	45-103
0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	43-107
0414 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	45-102
0414 0202W	Tapping Screw - M4x20	33-107
0433 0060B	Philips Tapping Screw - M3x6	11-102
0433 0060W	Tapping Screw - M3x6	15-106
0434 0102W	Tapping Screw - M4x10	7-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	11-105
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	13-101
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	15-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	17-103
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	19-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	21-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	25-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	35-108
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	39-101
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	41-102
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	43-108
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	45-101
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	47-104
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	49-101
0574 0050E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M4x5	47-118
0622 0140E	Spring Hole Pin - 2x14mm	27-102

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
0623 0100E	Spring Pin - 3x10mm	47-107
0633 0180G	Parallel Pin - 3x18mm	43-102
0704 0050B	Toothed Washer - M5	49-102
0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	9-101
0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	29-106
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	17-102
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	11-104
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	15-105
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	19-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	21-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	27-107
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	29-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	31-101
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	35-102
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	37-103
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	47-108
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	29-104
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	43-112
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	19-102
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	21-102
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	35-103
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	43-101
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	47-101
0720 0080E	Retaining Ring - M8	43-109
0727 0090E	Retaining Ring C - M9	27-105
0740 3008S	Ball Bearing - 60x8	47-113
0805 0077	Retaing Ring - M3	29-105
0805 3384	Bushing - 5mm	47-110
0805 3386	Bushing - 8mm	47-109
0805 3415	Ball Bearing - 9x20x6	27-104
0807 2071	Washer - 3.1x7x0.2mm	33-106
0807 4103	Spacer - 0.5mm	29-108
0950 3008W	Philips Screw With Lock Washer - M3x8	49-113
0950 4006W	Philips Screw with Lock Washer - M4x6	41-107
0951 3006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	25-106

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
0951 3006B	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	49-117
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	19-105
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	21-105
0951 3006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	27-101
0951 3006W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	43-111
0951 3006Z	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x6	23-102
0951 3008B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	29-101
0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	11-106
0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	13-102
0951 3008W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	15-102
0951 3008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M3x8	29-107
0951 3010W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x10	31-103
0951 3014B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x14	31-106
0951 3020B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	27-108
0951 4006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	25-102
0951 4006W	Philips Screw With Flat Washer - M4x6	11-103
0951 4008W	Philips Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	11-108
0953 3014M	Screw With Toothed Washer - M3x14	33-105
0964 3006W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x6	25-105
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	41-101
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	43-103
0964 4008W	Tapping Screw with Flat Washer - M4x8	47-103
0965 3008B	Tapping Screw with Washer - M3x8	23-101
0965 3008W	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer - M3x8	37-104
0971 3006A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x6	25-107
0971 3016A	Philips Polycarbonate Screw - M3x16	25-108
1005 0843	Heat Sink - OSH2425SP	51-101
1100 0301	Fastening Receptacle	57-101
1100 0350	Closed Terminal	57-102
1100 0657	Fastening Tab	53-101
1100 0657	Fastening Tab	55-101
1100 1168	Fastening Receptacle	57-103
1100 1171	Fastening Receptacle	57-104
1100 1240	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	57-105
1100 1241	Socket - Mate-N-Lock	57-106

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1100 1247	Terminal	57-107
1100 1329	Contact	59-101
1100 1330	Socket Contact	59-102
1100 1575	Fastening Tab	53-102
1100 1575	Fastening Tab	55-102
1101 0328	Connector Pin Contact	51-102
1102 0675	Connector - 6P	51-103
1102 0959	Connector - 3P	53-103
1102 0959	Connector - 3P	55-103
1102 1124	Connector - 3P	53-104
1102 1124	Connector - 3P	55-104
1102 1403	Receptacle Housing	57-110
1102 1404	Connector - 1P	57-111
1102 1408	Connector - 1P	57-112
1102 1515	Connector - 2P	57-113
1102 1823	Connector - 2P	57-114
1102 1825	Housing - 2P	57-115
1102 1985	Connector - 5P	59-103
1102 2025	Pin Housing - 3P	59-104
1102 3203	Contact	57-116
1102 3601	Connector - 2P	53-105
1102 3601	Connector - 2P	55-105
1102 4201	CT Header - 2P	51-104
1102 4202	CT Header - 3P	51-105
1102 4203	CT Header - 4P	51-106
1102 4205	Connector - 6P	51-107
1102 4206	CT Header - 7P	51-108
1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	51-109
1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	53-106
1102 4207	CT Connector - 8P	55-106
1102 4210	CT Header - 11P	51-110
1102 4211	CT Header - 12P (FT3313/FT3413)	51-111
1102 4212	CT Header - 15P	51-112
1102 4213	Connector - 2P	61-101
1102 4214	CT Receptacle - 3P	59-106

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1102 4214	CT Receptacle - 3P	61-102
1102 4215	Connector - 4P	59-107
1102 4215	Connector - 4P	61-103
1102 4217	CT Receptacle 6P	59-108
1102 4219	CT Receptacle - 8P	59-109
1102 4222	CT Receptacle - 11P	59-110
1102 4222	CT Receptacle - 11P	61-104
1102 4223	CT Receptacle - 12P	59-105
1102 4224	CT Receptacle - 15P	59-111
1102 4224	CT Receptacle - 15P	61-105
1102 4375	Connector - 2P	61-106
1102 4376	CT Receptacle - 3P	59-112
1102 4376	CT Receptacle - 3P	61-107
1102 4378	CT Receptacle - 5P	59-113
1102 4473	CT Connector - 2P	61-108
1102 4559	Connector - 3P	19-106
1102 4560	CT Connector - 6P	59-114
1102 4600	Insulating Sleeve	57-109
1102 4619	CT Header - 2P	51-113
1102 4620	CT Header - 3P	51-114
1102 4623	CT Connector - 6P	51-115
1102 4631	CT Connector - 2P	51-116
1102 4643	CT Connector - 2P	51-117
1102 4645	CT Connector - 4P	51-118
1102 4868	Connector - 3P - Black	53-107
1102 4868	Connector - 3P - Black	55-107
1102 4893	Connector - 2P	61-109
1102 4904	CT Connector - 2P - Black	59-115
1102 4904	CT Connector - 2P - Black	61-110
1102 5077	Connector - 4P	51-119
1102 5142	connector - 2P - Yellow	61-112
1102 5144	Connector - 2P	61-111
1102 5145	Connector - 3P - Blue	19-110
1102 5192	Connector - 11P	59-117
1102 5398	CT Connector - 6P	47-114

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1102 5820	Wefer - 3P	55-108
1102 5827	Connector - 2P	57-108
1102 5828	Connector - 15P	59-116
1102 5851	Connector - 4P	59-118
1102 5938	Connector - 2P	53-109
1102 5938	Connector - 2P	55-109
1102 5939	Connector - 2P	53-110
1102 5939	Connector - 2P	55-110
1103 1770	Connector - 4P	51-120
1103 1771	Connector - 5P	51-121
1103 1772	Pin Header - 6P	51-122
1104 0239	LSI Socket - 24P	51-123
1104 0370	IC Socket - 64P	51-124
1104 0375	Fuse Hoider	53-136
1104 0401	Cable CliP	47-115
1104 0588	DIP Socket - 28P	51-125
1105 0008	Nylon Clip - 2N	11-109
1105 0159	PCB Stud	47-111
1105 0160	Clamp	49-109
1105 0163	Locking Support	47-116
1105 0183	Spacer	49-115
1105 0199	Clamp	19-107
1105 0234	Clamp	35-107
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	15-108
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	19-109
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	39-104
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	41-106
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	47-112
1105 0267	Wire Clamp	49-114
1105 0292	Wire Saddle	11-110
1105 0292	Wire Saddle	43-114
1105 0292	Wire Clamp	49-111
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	19-108
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	39-103
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	41-105

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	43-113
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	45-104
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	47-117
1105 0310	Wire Clamp	49-107
1106 0411	Bushing - 11.5mm	39-105
1107 0485	Fuse - 15A,125V	49-110
1107 0485	Fuse - 15A 125V	53-133
1107 0754	Fuse - 6.3A/250V (220V)	49-112
1201 0069	SN Coil - 220/240V	55-113
1204 1373	Push Switch	43-116
1204 1541	DIP Switch	51-126
1204 1576	Main Switch	43-115
1208 1277	Relay - AC250V 16A	53-114
1208 1277	Relay - AC250V 16A	55-114
1208 1279	Relay - AC250V 5A	53-115
1208 1279	Relay - AC250V 5A	55-115
1400 0072	Transistor - 2SC372Y	51-127
1400 0291	Transistor - 2SA1020Y	51-128
1401 0612	Diode - 1S1585	53-116
1401 0612	Diode - 1S1585	55-116
1401 0694	Zener Diode - RD6.8FB	51-129
1402 0277	Zener Diode - 1Z12 (FT3313/FT3413)	51-130
1402 0407	Zener Diode - HZ-6B3	53-118
1402 0407	Zener Diode - HZ-6B3	55-118
1402 0416	Zener Diode - HZ58 - 1	53-119
1402 0416	Zener Diode - HZ58 - 1	55-119
1402 0433	Zener Diode - HZ982 - 09	53-120
1402 0433	Zener Diode - HZ982 - 09	55-120
1402 0539	Zener Diode - HZ9C - 2	53-121
1402 0539	Zener Diode - HZ9C - 2	55-121
1402 0780	Diode - 11ES2	53-117
1402 0780	Diode - 11ES2	55-117
1402 0919	Diode	51-131
1402 1029	Diode - 1SS293	51-132
1403 0521	Photosensor - ON2153GL	55-122

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1403 0614	Photo Triac - PB01AP-8	53-122
1404 0131	Varistor 270V 0.4W	53-124
1404 0233	Resistor - 100M Ω 3000V ±600V	53-123
1404 0233	Resistor - 100M Ω 3000V ±600V	55-123
1404 0237	Serge Absorber 47V 0.6J	51-133
1404 0238	Serge Absorber 22V 0.6J	51-134
1404 0247	Varistor - 470V 0.4W	55-124
1405 0129	Rectifier - 100V 1.0A IB4B42	53-129
1405 0129	Rectifier - 100V 1.0A IB4B42	55-129
1405 0193	Triac - TG25C40 - 115V	49-116
1407 0610	IC - SN74LS32N	51-135
1407 0612	IC - SN74LS138N	51-136
1407 0626	IC - SN74LS11N	51-137
1407 1026	IC - SN74LS373N	51-138
1407 1535	IC - TD62308AP	51-139
1407 1839	IC - TL7705ACP	51-140
1407 1970	IC - SN74LS07N	51-141
1407 2635	TTL - TD62384AP	51-142
1407 2869	IC - MPD71055C	51-143
1407 3086	IC - TC74HC04F	51-144
1407 3755	IC - MK47Z12B-20	51-145
1407 3871	IC - TC74HC4066AP	51-146
1407 3872	IC - TC74HC241AP (FT3313/FT3413)	51-147
1407 3874	IC - M54667P	51-148
1408 0155	IC - LM393	51-149
1408 0839	IC - STK6712 BMK3	51-150
1408 0939	Regulator - 9V 1A NJM7809FA	51-151
1503 0071	Oscillator - 12MHz	51-152
1600 1026	Resistor Array - 1kΩ 1W ±5%	53-126
1600 1026	Resistor Array - 1kΩ 1W ±5%	55-126
1600 1057	Resistor - 56k Ω 2W ±5%	55-127
1600 1572	Resistor - 24 Ω 3W ±5%	51-153
1601 1336	Capacitor - 10000pF -20% + 80% 50V	51-170
1601 1880	Fuse Resistor 100 Ω 1/2W	53-128
1601 1880	Fuse Resistor 100 Ω 1/2W	55-128

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1601 7352	Resistor Array - 4.7k Ω	51-154
1601 7356	Resistor Array - 22k Ω 1/8W±5%	51-155
1601 7374	Resistor Array - 4.7K Ω	51-156
1601 7392	Resistor Array - 1k Ω	51-157
1601 7394	Resistor Array - 2.2K Ω	51-158
1601 8138	Variable Resistor - 30k Ω 0.75W	53-111
1601 8138	Variable Resistor - 30k Ω 0.75W	55-111
1601 8171	Variable Resistor - 2KΩ ±20% 1/2W	51-159
1601 8446	Resistor - 300k Ω 0.3T ±5%	51-160
1602 0591	Resistor 1M Ω ±20% 1/2W	53-127
1602 0895	Noise Killer - 0.1MF 120 Ω	53-131
1602 0908	Noise Killer	53-130
1602 0908	Noise Killer	55-130
1602 0920	Noise Killer - 0.1MF 120 Ω	55-131
1602 7032	Noise Filter - 220pF 250V 7A	51-161
1604 0378	Capacitor - 1μF 50V	53-132
1604 0378	Capacitor - 1μF 50V	55-132
1604 1366	Capacitor - 47μF ±20% 25V	51-162
1604 1367	Capacitor - 100μF ±20% 25V	51-163
1604 1381	Capacitor - 4.7μF 50V	51-164
1604 1386	Capacitor - 100μF ±20% 50V	51-165
1605 0533	Capacitor - 4700pF ±20% 400V	55-133
1605 0604	Capacitor - 0.1μF 50V	51-166
1605 0727	Capacitor - 4700pF ±20% 400V	53-134
1606 1121	Capacitor - 0.1μF 25V	55-134
1606 1129	Capacitor - 30pF ±5% 50V	51-167
1606 1326	Capacitor - 100pF 50v ±10%	51-168
1606 1330	Capacitor - 470pF ±10% 50V	51-169
1606 1472	Capaciter - 0.1μF ±20% 250V	53-135
1606 1476	Capacitor - 0.22μF 250V	55-135
1606 1891	Capasitor - 22μF ±20% 250V	53-108
1606 1899	Capacitor - 1μF 250V	55-136
1607 0054	Noise Filter - SN14-700	53-137
1607 0218	Inductor - 6660μF	55-137
1607 0543	Choke - SC 15-100-F	53-113

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.
1607 0553	Ferrite Core - TR-16-8-16	49- 24
1607 0554	Ferrite Core - TR-20-10-10	49- 25
1611 4101	Resistor - 100 Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-171
1611 4102	Resistor - 1K Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-172
1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-173
1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	53-138
1611 4103	Resistor - 10k Ω 1/4T ±5%	55-138
1611 4106	Resistor - 10M Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-174
1611 4153	Resistor - 15k Ω 1/4T ±5%	53-139
1611 4153	Resistor - 15k Ω 1/4T ±5%	55-139
1611 4220	Resistor - 22 Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-175
1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-176
1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	53-140
1611 4223	Resistor - 22k Ω 1/4T ±5%	55-140
1611 4242	Resistor - 2.4k Ω 1/4T ±5%	53-125
1611 4242	Resistor - 2.4k Ω 1/4T ±5%	55-125
1611 4243	Resistor - 24k Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-177
1611 4391	Resistor - 390 Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-178
1611 4472	Resistor - 4.7K Ω 1/4W ±5%	51-179
1611 4561	Resistor - 560 Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-180
1611 4562	Resistor - 5.6K Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-181
1611 4682	Resistor - 6.8k Ω 1/4T ±5%	51-182
1611 4820	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4T ±5%	53-112
1611 4820	Resistor - 82 Ω 1/4T ±5%	55-112
1611 6391	Resistor - 390 Ω 1/2T ±5%	51-183
1622 1001	Resistor - 1k Ω 1/4T ±1%	51-184
1622 1101	Resistor - 1.1k Ω 1/4W ±1%	51-185
1622 1301	Resistor - 1.3k Ω 1/4T ±10%	51-186
1622 9761	Resistor - 9.76K Ω 1/4W ±1%	51-187

Part No.	Description	Page and Index No.